AUTHENTICATED
U.S. GOVERNMENT
INFORMATION
GPO

Title 10—Energy

(This book contains part 500 to end)

	Part
CHAPTER II—Department of Energy (Continued)	500
CHAPTER III—Department of Energy	706
CHAPTER X—Department of Energy (General Provisions)	1000
CHAPTER XIII—Nuclear Waste Technical Review Board	1303
CHAPTER XVII—Defense Nuclear Facilities Safety Board	1703
CHAPTER XVIII—Northeast Interstate Low-level Radioactive Waste Commission	1800

CHAPTER II—DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (CONTINUED)

SUBCHAPTER E—ALTERNATE FUELS

Part		*Page*
500	Definitions	5
501	Administrative procedures and sanctions	13
503	New facilities	38
504	Existing powerplants	57
508	[Reserved]	
516	[Reserved]	

SUBCHAPTER G—NATURAL GAS (ECONOMIC REGULATORY ADMINISTRATION)

580	Curtailment priorities for essential agricultural uses	66
590	Administrative procedures with respect to the import and export of natural gas	67

SUBCHAPTER H—ASSISTANCE REGULATIONS

600	Financial assistance rules	82
601	New restrictions on lobbying	189
602	Epidemiology and Other Health Studies Financial Assistance Program	200
603	Technology investment agreements	209
605	The Office of Science Financial Assistance Program	241
609	Loan guarantees for projects that employ innovative technologies	253
611	Advanced technology vehicles manufacturer assistance program	271

SUBCHAPTER I—SALES REGULATION

622	Contractual provisions	282
624	Contract clauses	282
625	Price competitive sale of Strategic Petroleum Reserve petroleum	283

Part		Page
626	Procedures for acquisition of petroleum for the Strategic Petroleum Reserve	312
627–699	[Reserved]	

SUBCHAPTER E—ALTERNATE FUELS

PART 500—DEFINITIONS

Sec.
500.1 Purpose and scope.
500.2 General definitions.
500.3 Electric regions—electric region groupings for reliability measurements under the Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978.

AUTHORITY: Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. §7101 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, 92 Stat. 3289 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Energy Security Act, Pub. L.96–294, 94 Stat. 611 (42 U.S.C. 8701 *et seq.*); E.O. 1209, 42 FR 46267, September 15, 1977.

SOURCE: 46 FR 59884, Dec. 7, 1981, unless otherwise noted.

(OMB Control No.: 1903–0075. See 46 FR 63209, Dec. 31, 1981.)

§ 500.1 Purpose and scope.

Unless otherwise expressly provided or the context clearly indicates otherwise, this section defines the terms used in these regulations. The use of the male gender is to include female; the use of singular to include plural.

§ 500.2 General definitions.

For purposes of this part and parts 501–507 term(s):

Act means Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, 42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*

Action means a prohibition by rule or order, in accordance with sections 301(b) and (c) of FUA; any order granting or denying an exemption in accordance with sections 211, 212, 311 and 312 of FUA; a modification or rescission of any such order, or rule; an interpretation; a notice of violation; a remedial order; an interpretive ruling; or a rulemaking undertaken by DOE.

Affiliate, when used in relation to person, means another person who controls, is controlled by, or is under common control, with such person.

Aggrieved, for purposes of administrative proceedings, describes and means a person (with an interest sought to be protected under FUA) who is adversely affected by an action proposed or undertaken by DOE.

Air pollution control agency means any of the following:

(1) A single State agency designated as the official State air pollution control agency;

(2) An agency established by two or more States and having substantial powers or duties pertaining to the prevention and control of air pollution;

(3) A city, county, or other local government health authority or, in the case of any city, county, or other local unit of government in which there is an agency other than the health authority charged with responsibility for enforcing ordinances or laws relating to the prevention and control of air pollution, such other agency; or

(4) An agency or two or more municipalities located in the same State or in different States and having substantial powers or duties pertaining to the prevention and control of air pollution.

Alternate fuel means electricity or any fuel, other than natural gas or petroleum. The term includes, but is not limited to :

(1) Coal;

(2) Solar energy;

(3) Petroleum coke; shale oil; uranium; biomass, tar sands, oil-impregnated diatomaceous earth; municipal, industrial, or agricultural wastes; wood; and renewable and geothermal energy sources (For purposes of this paragraph (3), the term *industrial* does not include refineries.);

(4) Liquid, solid or gaseous waste by-products of refinery or industrial operations which are commercially unmarketable, either by reason of quality or quantity. (For purposes of this paragraph (4), the term *waste by-product* is defined as an unavoidable by-product of the industrial or refinery operation.) A waste by-product of a refinery or industrial operation is commercially unmarketable if it meets the criteria listed in the definition of ''commercial unmarketability,'' set forth below;

(5) Any fuel derived from an alternate fuel; and

(6) Waste gases from industrial operations. (For purposes of this subsection, the term *industrial* does not include refineries.)

Applicable environmental requirements includes:

(1) Any standard, limitation, or other requirement established by or pursuant to Federal or State law (including any final order of any Federal or State Court) applicable to emissions of environmental pollutants (including air and water pollutants) or disposal of solid waste residues resulting from the use of coal or other alternate fuels, natural gas, or petroleum as a primary energy source or from the operation of pollution control equipment in connection with such use, taking into account any variance of law granted or issued in accordance with Federal law or in accordance with State law to the extent consistent with Federal law; and

(2) Any other standard, limitation, or other requirement established by, or pursuant to, the Clean Air Act, the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, the Solid Waste Disposal Act, the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976, or the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969.

Base load powerplant means a powerplant, the electrical generation of which in kilowatt hours exceeds, for any 12-calendar-month period, such powerplant's design capacity multiplied by 3,500 hours.

Boiler means a closed vessel in which water is heated electrically or by the combustion of a fuel to produce steam of one percent or more quality.

Btu means British thermal unit.

Capability to use alternate fuel, for the purposes of Title II prohibitions relating to construction of new powerplants, means the powerplant to be constructed:

(1) Has sufficient inherent design characteristics to permit the addition of equipment (including all necessary pollution devices) necessary to render such electric powerplant capable of using coal or another alternate fuel as its primary energy source; and

(2) Is not physically, structurally, or technologically precluded from using coal or another alternate fuel as its primary energy source.

Capability to use coal or another alternate fuel shall not be interpreted to require any such powerplant to be immediately able to use coal or another alternate fuel as its primary energy source on its initial day of operation. In addition, the owner or operator of a baseload powerplant need not have adequate on-site space for either a coal gasifier or any facilities for handling coal or related fuels.

Certification means a document, signed by an official of the owner or operator, notarized, and submitted to OFE, which declares that a new powerplant will have the ''capability to use alternate fuel'' (as defined herein).

Certifying powerplant means an existing powerplant whose owner or operator seeks to obtain a prohibition order against the use of natural gas or petroleum either totally or in a mixture with coal or an alternate fuel by filing a certification as to both the technical capability and financial feasibility of conversion to coal or another alternate fuel pursuant to section 301 of FUA, as amended.

Clean Air Act means the Clean Air Act, 42 U.S.C. 7401 *et seq*. (1970), as amended by Public Law 93–319, 88 Stat. 246, and Public Law 95–91, 91 Stat. 685.

Coal means anthracite, bituminous and sub-bituminous coal, lignite, and any fuel derivative thereof.

Cogeneration facility means an electric powerplant that produces:

(1) Electric power; and

(2) Any other form of useful energy (such as steam, gas or heat) that is, or will be used, for industrial, commercial, or space heating purposes. In addition, for purposes of this definition, electricity generated by the cogeneration facility must constitute more than five (5) percent and less than ninety (90) percent of the useful energy output of the facility.

NOTE: Any cogeneration facility selling or exchanging less than fifty percent (50%) of the facility's generated electricity is considered an industrial cogenerator and is exempt from the fuel use prohibitions of FUA.

Combined cycle unit means an electric power generating unit that consists of a combination of one or more combustion turbine units and one or more steam turbine units with a substantial portion of the required energy input of the steam turbine unit(s) provided by the exhaust gas from the combustion turbine unit(s).

Substantial amounts of supplemental firing for a steam turbine or waste heat

boiler to improve thermal efficiency will not affect a unit's classification as a combined cycle unit.

Combustion turbine means a unit that is a rotary engine driven by a gas under pressure that is created by the combustion of any fuel.

Commercial unmarketability as used in the definitions of ''alternate fuel,'' ''natural gas'' and ''petroleum'' shall be determined as follows:

(1) A waste by-product of industrial or refinery operations is commercially unmarketable by reason of:

(i) Quality, where the cost of processing (limited to upgrading the waste by-product to commercial quality), storing, and distributing the waste by-product would not be covered by reasonably expected revenues from its sale;

(ii) Quantity, where the cost of aggregating the waste by-product into commercial quantities through storing and distributing the waste by-product would not be covered by reasonably expected revenues from its sale.

(2) A fuel will not be classified as ''natural gas'' when it is commercially unmarketable by reason of:

(i) Quality, where the cost of producing, upgrading to commercial quality, storing, and distributing the fuel would not be covered by reasonably expected revenues from its sale; or

(ii) Quantity, where the quantities of the fuel are so small that the revenues to be reasonably expected from its sale would not cover the cost of its production, distribution or storage.

(3) Costs associated with upgrading, storing, distributing, and aggregating a by-product or other fuel (to determine if such fuel is natural gas) may properly include a reasonable rate of return on any capital investment required to overcome the problems posed by the quality or quantity of a fuel because the return on investment is a normal aspect of any investment decision. A firm may account for this reasonable rate of return by using its customary discount rate for an investment of similar risk.

(4) As part of any consideration of the rate of return on investment, the cost of replacing the Btu's lost if the by-product or other fuel were upgraded and sold instead of used as a fuel may be taken into consideration. The actual expense that would result from burning a replacement fuel in lieu of the by-product or other fuel in question may therefore be considered. The costs associated with using a replacement fuel are indirect costs that result from upgrading and selling the fuel, instead of burning it. These indirect costs as well as the direct costs associated with the upgrading, storing, distributing, and aggregating of by-products or other fuel may be considered in any assessment of commercial unmarketability.

Conference means an informal meeting incident to any proceeding, between DOE and any interested person.

Construction means substantial physical activity at the unit site and includes more than clearance of a site or installation of foundation pilings.

Costs means total costs, both operating and capital, incurred over the estimated remaining useful life of an electric powerplant, discounted to the present, pursuant to rules established in parts 503 and 504 of these regulations.

DEOA means the Department of Energy Organization Act (Pub. L. 95–91) (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*) as implemented by Executive Order 12009 (42 FR 46267, September 15, 1977).

Design capability defined in section 103(a)(7) of FUA, shall be determined as follows:

(1) *Boiler and associated generator turbines.* The design fuel heat input rate of a steam-electric generating unit (Btu/hr) shall be the product of the generator's nameplate rating, measured in kilowatts, and 3412 (Btu/kWh), divided by the overall boiler-turbine-generator unit design efficiency (decimal); or if the generator's nameplate does not have a rating measured in kilowatts, the product of the generator's kilovolt-amperes nameplate rating, and the power factor nameplate rating; and 3412 (Btu/kWh), divided by the boiler turbine-generator unit's design efficiency (decimal). (The number 3412 converts kilowatt-hours (absolute) into Btu's (mean).)

(2) *Combustion turbine and associated generator.* The design fuel heat input rate of a combustion turbine (Btu/hr) shall be the product of its nameplate rating, measured in kilowatts, and 3412

(Btu/kWh), divided by the combustion turbine-generator unit's design efficiency (decimal), adjusted for peaking service at an ambient temperature of 59 degrees Fahrenheit (15 degrees Celsius) at the unit's elevation. (The number 3412 converts kilowatt-hours (absolute) into Btu's (mean).)

(3) *Combined cycle unit.* The design fuel heat input rate of a combined cycle unit (Btu/hr) shall be the summation of the product of its generator's nameplate rating, measured in kilowatts, and 3412 (Btu/kWh), divided by the overall combustion turbine-generator unit's efficiency (decimal), adjusted for peaking service at an ambient temperature of 59 degrees Fahrenheit (15 degrees Celsius) and at the unit's evaluation, plus the product of the maximum fuel heat input to any supplemental heat recovery steam generator/boiler in gallons or pounds per hour and the fuel's heat content. If the generator's nameplate does not have a rating measured in kilowatts, the product of the generator's kilowatt-amperes nameplate rating and power factor nameplate rating must be substituted for kilowatts. (The number 3412 converts kilowatt-hours (absolute) into Btu's (mean).)

Design capacity of a powerplant pursuant to section 103(a)(18) of FUA, is determined according to 18 CFR 287.101.

DOE or *the Department* means the United States Department of Energy, as defined in sections 201 and 301(a) of the DEOA, including the Secretary of Energy or his designee.

Duly authorized representative means a person who is authorized to appear before DOE in connection with a proceeding on behalf of a person interested in or aggrieved by that proceeding. Such appearance may include the submission of applications, petitions, requests, statements, memoranda of law, other documents, or of a personal appearance, oral communication, or any other participation in a proceeding.

Electing powerplant means an existing powerplant, which (1) has been issued a proposed prohibition order under former section 301 (b) or (c) of FUA prior to August 13, 1981, the date of enactment of the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981, Public Law 97–35 (OBRA); and (2) files an election to continue the current prohibition order proceeding under provisions of the former section 301 of FUA, rather than under amended section 301 of FUA.[1] Under the election provisions, an existing powerplant which has an order pending against it under section 2 of the Energy Supply and Environmental Coordination Act of 1974, as amended, 15 U.S.C. 791 *et seq.* (ESECA), as of August 13, 1981, may also elect to continue the current proceeding under section 2 of ESECA. Electing powerplants under ESECA are not included in the FUA definition of ''electing powerplant''. Relevant regulations governing ESECA proceedings are found at 10 CFR part 303 and 305. These elections must have been filed with DOE by November 30, 1981 in the case of FUA orders and by January 14, 1982 in the case of ESECA orders.

Electric generating unit does not include:

(1) Any electric generating unit subject to the licensing jurisdiction of the Nuclear Regulatory Commission (NRC); and

(2) Any cogeneration facility from which less than 50 percent of the net annual electric power generation is sold or exchanged for resale. Excluded from 'sold or exchanged for resale' are sales or exchanges to or with an electric utility for resale by the utility to the cogenerating supplier, and sales or exchanges among owners of the cogeneration facility.

NOTE: For purposes of subparagraph (1) of this definition, OFE will not consider any unit located at a site subject to NRC's licensing authority to be jurisdictional for purposes of FUA.

Electric powerplant means any stationary electric generating unit consisting of (a) a boiler, (b) a gas turbine, or (c) a combined cycle unit which employs a generator to produce electric power for purposes of sale or exchange and has the design capabilityf consuming any fuel (or mixture thereof) at a fuel heat input rate of 100 million Btu's per hour or greater. In accordance with section 103(a)(7)(C) of FUA, the Secretary has determined that it is

[1] The election provisions are published at 46 FR 48118 (October 1, 1981) and will not be codified in the Code of Federal Regulations.

appropriate to exclude from this definition any unit which has a design capability to consume any fuel (including any mixture thereof) that does not equal or exceed 100 million Btu's per hour.

Electric Region is as defined in § 500.3 of this part.

Electric utility means any person, including any affiliate, or Federal agency, which sells electric power.

Emission offset means emission reductions as defined by EPA's regulations set forth at 40 CFR part 51, appendix S.

EPA means the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

ESECA means the Energy Supply and Environmental Coordination Act of 1974, as amended, 15 U.S.C. 791 *et seq.*

Existing powerplant means any powerplant other than a new powerplant.

Federal Water Pollution Control Act means the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, 33 U.S.C. 1251 *et seq.*, as amended.

FERC means the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission.

Firm means a parent company and the consolidated or unconsolidated entities (if any) that it directly or indirectly controls.

Fluidized bed combustion means combustion of fuel in connection with a bed of inert material, such as limestone or dolomite, that is held in a fluid-like state by the means of air or other gases being passed through such materials.

FTC means the Federal Trade Commission.

FUA means the Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, 42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*

Fuel Use Act means *FUA*.

Fuel use order means a directive issued by OFE pursuant to § 501.167 of these regulations.

Gas turbine means ''combustion turbine''.

High-priority user, for purposes of subsection 312(j) of FUA, means any residential user of natural gas, or any commercial user whose consumption of natural gas on peak day is less than 50 MCF.

Internal combustion engine means a heat engine in which the combustion that generates the heat takes place inside the engine proper.

Interpretation means a written statement issued by the DOE General Counsel or his delegate, in response to a written request, that applies the regulations, rulings, and other precedents previously issued by the DOE to the particular facts of a prospective or completed act or transaction.

Mcf means 1,000 cubic feet of natural gas.

Mixture, when used in relation to fuels used in a unit, means a mixture of petroleum or natural gas and an alternate fuel, or a combination of such fuels, used simultaneously or alternately in such unit.

Natural gas means any fuel consisting in whole or in part of natural gas, including components of natural gas such as methane and ethane; liquid petroleum gas; synthetic gas derived from petroleum or natural gas liquids; or any mixture of natural gas and synthetic gas. Natural gas does not include:

(1) Gaseous waste by-products or waste gas specifically designated as an alternate fuel in § 500.2 of these regulations;

(2) Natural gas which is commercially unmarketable, as defined in these rules;

(3) Natural gas produced by the user from a well, the maximum efficient production rate of which is less than 250 million Btu's per day. For purposes of paragraph (3) of this definition:

(i) *Produced by the user* means:

(A) All gas produced by the well, when such gas is delivered for use in the user's facility through a gas delivery, gathering, or transportation system which could not deliver such gas to any other user; or

(B) Only that amount which represents the user's net working (mineral) interest in the gas produced from such well, where such gas is delivered for use in the user's facility through a gas delivery, gathering, or transportation system which could deliver such gas to any other user.

(ii) *Maximum efficient production rate* (MEPR) means that rate at which production of natural gas may be sustained without damage to the reservoir or the rate which may be sustained without damage to the ultimate recovery of oil or gas through the well.

(4) Occluded methane in coal seams within the meaning of section 107(c)(3) of the Natural Gas Policy Act of 1978 (NGPA);

(5) The following gas from wells spudded prior to January 1, 1990:

(i) Gas produced from geopressurized brine, within the meaning of section 107(c)(2) of the NGPA;

(ii) Gas produced from Devonian shale, within the meaning of section 107(c)(4) of the NGPA;

(iii) Gas produced from tight sands, as designated by the FERC in accordance with section 107(c)(5) of the NGPA; and

(iv) Other gases designated by FERC as ''high-cost natural gas'' in accordance with section 107(c)(5) of the NGPA, except as specifically designated as ''natural gas'' by OFE;

(6)(i) Synthetic gas derived from coal or other alternate fuel, the heat content of which is less than 600 Btu's per cubic foot at 14.73 pounds per square inch (absolute) and 60 °F; and

(ii) Commingled natural gas and synthetic gas derived from coal consumed as part of the necessary process of a major fuel burning installation used in the iron and steel industry, so long as the average annual Btu heat content of the commingled stream as consumed within a major fuel burning installation does not exceed 600 Btu's per cubic foot at 14.73 pounds per square inch (absolute) and 60 °F;

(7) Mixtures of natural gas and synthetic gas derived from alternate fuels for which the person proposing to use the gas certifies to OFE that:

(i) He owns, or is entitled to receive at the point of manufacture, synthetic gas derived from alternate fuels;

(ii) He delivers, or arranges for the delivery of such synthetic gas to a pipeline which by transport or displacement is capable of delivering such synthetic gas, mixed with natural gas, to facilities owned by the user;

(iii) The total annual Btu content of the synthetic gas delivered to a pipeline is equal to or greater than the total annual Btu content of the natural gas delivered to the facilities owned by the user, plus the approximate total annual Btu content of any natural gas consumed or lost in transportation; and

(iv) All necessary permits, licenses, or approvals from appropriate Federal, State, and local agencies (including Indian tribes) have been obtained for construction and operation of the facilities for the manufacture of the synthetic gas involved, except that for purposes of the prohibition under section 201(2) of FUA against powerplants being constructed without the capability of using coal or another alternate fuel, only permits, licenses, and approvals for the construction of such synthetic gas facilities shall be required under this subparagraph, to be certified and documented; and

(8) A mixture of natural gas and an alternate fuel when such mixture is deliberately created for purposes of (i) Complying with a prohibition order issued pursuant to section 301(c) of the Act, or (ii) Qualifying for a fuel mixtures exemption under the Act, provided such exemption is granted.

NEPA means the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, as amended, 42 U.S.C. 4321 *et seq*.

New electric powerplant means any electric powerplant: (1) That was not classified as existing under part 515 of this subchapter; (2) That was reconstructed, as defined in these rules under the definition of ''reconstruction''; or (3) For which construction was begun after November 9, 1978.

NGPA means the Natural Gas Policy Act of 1978, 15 U.S.C. 3301 *et seq*.

Nonboiler means any powerplant which is not a boiler and consists of either a combustion turbine unit or combined cycle unit.

Notice of violation means a written statement issued to a person by DOE that states one or more alleged violations of the provisions of these regulations, any order issued pursuant thereto, or the Act.

OBRA means the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981, Public Law 97–35.

OFE means the Office of Fossil Energy of OFE.

Offset means ''emission offset''.

Order means a final disposition, other than the issuance of a rule, issued by DOE pursuant to these regulations or the Act.

Person means any:

(1) Individual, corporation, company, partnership, association, firm, institution, society, trust, joint venture, or joint stock company;

(2) Any State; or

(3) Any Federal, State, or local agency or instrumentality (including any municipality) thereof.

Petroleum means crude oil and products derived from crude oil, other than:

(1) Petroleum products specifically designated as alternate fuels pursuant to these regulations;

(2) Synthetic gas derived from crude oil;

(3) Liquid petroleum gas;

(4) Petroleum coke or waste gases from industrial operations; and

(5) A liquid, solid, or gaseous waste by-product of refinery operations which is commercially unmarketable under the definition of ''commercial unmarketability'' in these rules.

NOTE: For the purposes of this subparagraph, waste by-products do not include components (such as butane and propane) that can be extracted from the waste by-product by reasonable further processing of the waste by-product at the refinery, nor do they include final products that use the waste by-product as a blend stock at the refinery.

Petition means a formal request for any action including an exemption submitted to DOE under these regulations.

Powerplant means ''electric powerplant.''

Product or process requirements means that product or process for which the use of an alternate fuel is not technically feasible due to the necessity to maintain satisfactory control of product quality and for which the substitution of steam is not technically feasible due to process requirements.

Primary energy source means the fuel or fuels used by any existing or new electric powerplant except:

(1) Minimum amounts of fuel required for unit ignition, startup, testing, flame stabilization, and control uses. OFE has determined that, unless need for a greater amount is demonstrated, twenty-five (25) percent of the total annual Btu heat input of a unit shall be automatically excluded under this paragraph.

(2) Minimum amounts of fuel required to alleviate or prevent:

(i) Unanticipated equipment outages as defined in § 501.191 of these regulations; and

(ii) Emergencies directly affecting the public health, safety, or welfare that would result from electric power outages as defined in § 501.191 of these regulations.

NOTE: (1) Any fuel excluded under the provisions of paragraph (1) of this definition is in addition to any fuel authorized to be used in any order granting a fuel mixtures exemption under parts 503 and 504 of these rules. The exclusion of fuel under paragraph (1), together with the authority for such additive treatment, shall apply to any jurisdictional facility, regardless of whether or not it had received an order granting an exemption as of the date these rules are promulgated.

(2) If an auxiliary unit to an electric powerplant consumes fuel only for the auxiliary functions of unit ignition, startup, testing, flame stabilization, and other control uses, its use of minimum amounts of natural gas or petroleum is not prohibited by FUA. The measurement of such minimum amounts of fuel is discussed in *Associated Electric Cooperative*, et al., Interpretation 1980–42 [45 FR 82572, Dec. 15, 1980].

Prohibition order means:

(1) An order issued pursuant to section 301(b) of the Act that prohibits a powerplant from burning natural gas or petroleum as its primary energy source; or

(2) An order issued pursuant to section 301(c) of the Act that prohibits excessive use of natural gas or petroleum in mixtures burned by a powerplant as its primary energy source.

Rated capacity for the purpose of determining reduction in the rated capacity of an existing powerplant, means design capacity, or, at the election of the facility owner or operator, the actual maximum sustained energy output per unit of time that could be produced, measured in power output, expressed in kilowatts, per unit of time.

Reconstruction means the following:

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2) of this definition, reconstruction shall be found to have taken place whenever the capital expenditures for refurbishment or modification of an electric powerplant on a cumulative basis for the current calendar year and

preceding calendar year, are equal to or greater than fifty (50) percent of the capital costs of an equivalent replacement unit of the same capacity, capable of burning the same fuels.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (1) of this definition, reconstruction shall not be found to have taken place whenever:

(i) The capital expenditures for refurbishment or modification of an electric powerplant, on a cumulative basis for the current calendar year and preceding calendar year, are not greater than eighty (80) percent of the capital costs of an equivalent replacement unit of the same capacity, capable of burning the same fuels and the unit, as refurbished or modified, will not have a greater fuel consumption capability than the unit it replaces;

(ii) The unit being refurbished or modified was destroyed, in whole or substantial part, in a plant accident and the unit, as refurbished or modified, will not have a greater fuel consumption capability than the unit it replaces; or

(iii) Refurbishment or modification of the unit is undertaken primarily for the purpose of increasing fuel burning efficiency of the unit, and will not result in:

(A) Increased remaining useful plant life, or

(B) Increased total annual fuel consumption.

Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 means the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976, 42 U.S.C. 6901 *et seq*.

SIP means State Implementation Plan pursuant to section 10 of the Clean Air Act.

Site limitation means a specific physical limitation associated with a particular site that relates to the use of an alternate fuel as a primary energy source for the powerplant such as:

(1) Inaccessibility to alternate fuels;

(2) Lack of transportation facilities for alternate fuels;

(3) Lack of adequate land for facilities for the handling, use and storage of alternate fuels;

(4) Lack of adequate land or facilities for the control or disposal of wastes from such powerplant, including lack of land for pollution control equipment or devices necessary to assure compliance with applicable environmental requirements; and

(5) Lack of an adequate and reliable supply of water, including water for use in compliance with applicable environmental requirements.

Solid Waste Disposal Act means the Solid Waste Disposal Act, 42 U.S.C. 6901 *et seq*., as amended.

State regulatory authority means any State agency that acts as ratemaking or power supply authority with respect to the sale of electricity by any State regulated electric utility.

Synthetic fuel means any fuel derived from an alternate fuel and does not include any fuels derived from petroleum or natural gas.

Wetlands areas means, for purposes of section 103(a)(12) of the Act, those geographical areas designated as wetlands areas by State or local environmental regulatory authorities, or in the absence of any such geographic designation, those areas that are inundated by surface or ground water with frequency sufficient to support, and under normal circumstances does or would support, a prevalence of vegetation or aquatic life that requires saturated, seasonably saturated, or tidally saturated soil conditions for growth or reproduction.

(Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.;* Energy Supply and Environmental Coordination Act of 1974, Pub. L. 93–319, as amended by Pub. L. 94–163, Pub. L. 95–70, and Pub. L. 95–620, (15 U.S.C. 719 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, as amended by Pub. L. 97–35 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981, Pub. L. 97–35)

[46 FR 59884, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 15313, 15314, Apr. 9, 1982; 47 FR 17041, Apr. 21, 1982; 47 FR 29210, July 6, 1982; 47 FR 34972, Aug. 12, 1982; 54 FR 52889, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 500.3 Electric regions—electric region groupings for reliability measurements under the Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978.

(a) The following is a list of electric regions for use with regard to the Act. The regions are identified by FERC Power Supply Areas (PSA's) as authorized by section 202(a) of the Federal Power Act except where noted. They will be reviewed annually by ERA.

Each grouping meets one or more of the following criteria:

(1) Existing centrally dispatched pools and hourly power brokers;

(2) Systems with joint planning and construction agreements;

(3) Systems with coordination agreements in the areas of:

(i) Generation reserve and system reliability criteria;

(ii) Capacity and energy exchange policies;

(iii) Maintenance scheduling; and

(iv) Emergency procedures for dealing with capacity or fuel shortages; or

(4) Systems within the same National Electric Reliability Council (NERC) region with historical coordination policies.

(b) The PSA's referred to in the definition of electric regions in paragraph (a) of this section were first defined by the Federal Power Commission in 1936. The most recent reference to them is given in the *1970 National Power Survey*, Vol. 1, Pg. 1–3–16. In cases where a petitioner finds an ambiguity in a regional assignment, he shall consult with DOE for an official determination.

Electric Region Groupings and FERC PSA's:

1. Allegheny Power System (APS)—7, except Duquesne Light Company.
2. American Electric Power System (AEP)—entire AEP System.
3. New England Planning Pool (NEPOOL)—1, 2.
4. New York Planning Pool (NYPP)—3, 4.
5. Pennsylvania—New Jersey—Maryland interconnection (PJM)—5, 6.
6. Commonwealth Edison Company—14.
7. Florida Coordination Group (FCG)—24.
8. Middle South Utilities—25.
9. Southern Company—22, 23.
10. Gulf States Group—35.
11. Tennessee Valley Authority (TVA)—20.
12. Virginia—Carolina Group (VACAR)—18, 21.
13. Central Area Power Coordination Group (CAPCO)—Cleveland Electric Illuminating Company, Toledo Edison Company, Ohio Edison Company, Duquesne Light Company.
14. Cincinnati, Columbus, Dayton Group (CCD)—Cincinnati Gas and Electric Company, Columbus and Southern Ohio Electric Company, Dayton Power and Light Company.
15. Kentucky Group—19.
16. Indiana Group—Indiana Utilities except AEP.
17. Illinois—Missouri Group (ILLMO)—15, 40.
18. Michigan Electric Coordinated Systems (MECS)—11.
19. Wisconsin—Upper Michigan Group (WUMS)—13.
20. Mid-Continent Area Power Pool (MAAP)—16, 17, 26, 27, 28.
21. Missouri—Kansas Group (MOKAN)—24, 29.
22. Oklahoma Group—33, 36.
23. Texas Interconnected Systems (TIS)—37, 38.
24. Rocky Mountain Power Pool (RMPP)—31, 32.
25. Northwest Power Pool (NWPP)—30, 42, 43, 44, 45.
26. Arizona—New Mexico Group—39, 48 within Arizona. in Nevada and California.
27. Southern California—Nevada—47, 48.
28. Northern California—Nevada—46.
29. Alaska (non-interconnected systems to be considered separately)—49.
30. Idaho—Utah Group—41.

PART 501—ADMINISTRATIVE PROCEDURES AND SANCTIONS

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
501.1 Purpose and scope.
501.2 Prepetition conference.
501.3 Petitions.
501.4–501.5 [Reserved]
501.6 Service.
501.7 General filing requirements.
501.8 [Reserved]
501.9 Effective date of orders or rules.
501.10 Order of precedence.
501.11 Address for filing documents.
501.12 Public files.
501.13 Appeal.
501.14 Notice to Environmental Protection Agency.

Subpart B [Reserved]

Subpart C—Written Comments, Public Hearings and Conferences During Administrative Proceedings

501.30 Purpose and scope.
501.31 Written comments.
501.32 Conferences (other than prepetition conferences).
501.33 Request for a public hearing.
501.34 Public hearing.
501.35 Public file.

Subpart D—Subpoenas, Special Report Orders, Oaths and Witnesses

501.40 Issuance.

Subpart E—Prohibition Rules and Orders

501.50 Policy.

501.51 Prohibitions by order—electing powerplants.
501.52 Prohibitions by order—certifying powerplants.
501.53–501.56 [Reserved]

Subpart F—Exemptions and Certifications

501.60 Purpose and scope.
501.61 Certification contents.
501.62 Petition contents.
501.63 Notice of the commencement of an administrative proceeding on an exemption petition.
501.64 Publication of notice of availability of tentative staff analysis.
501.65 Publication of notice of availability of draft EIS.
501.66 OFE evaluation of the record, decision and order.
501.67 Petition redesignations.
501.68 Decision and order.
501.69 Judicial review.

Subpart G—Requests for Modification or Rescission of a Rule or Order

501.100 Purpose and scope.
501.101 Proceedings to modify or rescind a rule or order.
501.102 OFE evaluation of the record, decision and order for modification or rescission of a rule or order.
501.103 OFE decision.

Subpart H—Requests for Stay

501.120 Purpose and scope.
501.121 Filing and notice of petitions for stays.
501.122 Contents.
501.123 Evaluation of the record.
501.124 Decision and order.

Subpart I—Requests for Interpretation

501.130 Purpose and scope.
501.131 Filing a request for interpretation.
501.132 Contents of a request for interpretation.
501.133 DOE evaluation.
501.134 Issuance and effect of interpretations.

Subpart J—Rulings

501.140 Purpose and scope.
501.141 Criteria for issuance.
501.142 Modification or rescission.
501.143 Comments.

Subpart K—Enforcement

501.160 Purpose and scope.
501.161 Filing a complaint.
501.162 Contents of a complaint.
501.163 OFE evaluation.
501.164 Decision to initiate enforcement proceedings.
501.165 Commencement of enforcement proceedings.
501.166 Hearings and conferences.
501.167 Fuel use order.

Subpart L—Investigations, Violations, Sanctions and Judicial Actions

501.180 Investigations.
501.181 Sanctions.
501.182 Injunctions.
501.183 Citizen suits.

Subpart M—Use of Natural Gas or Petroleum for Emergency and Unanticipated Equipment Outage Purposes

501.190 Purpose and scope.
501.191 Use of natural gas or petroleum for certain unanticipated equipment outages and emergencies defined in section 103(a)(15)(B) of the act.
501.192 [Reserved]

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.;* 42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.;* 42 U.S.C. 8701 *et seq.;* E.O. 12009, 42 FR 46267; 28 U.S.C. 2461 note.

SOURCE: 46 FR 59889, Dec. 7, 1981, unless otherwise noted.

(OMB Control No.: 1903–0075. See 46 FR 63209, Dec. 31, 1981.)

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 501.1 Purpose and scope.

Part 501 establishes the procedures to be used in proceedings before DOE under parts 500–508 of this chapter except as otherwise provided.

§ 501.2 Prepetition conference.

(a) Owners and operators of powerplants may request a prepetition conference with OFE for the purpose of discussing the applicability of 10 CFR parts 503 and 504 to their situations and the scope of any exemption or other petition that OFE would accept as adequate for filing purposes.

(b) The owner or operator who requests a prepetition conference may personally represent himself or may designate a representative to appear on his behalf. A prepetition conference or a request for a prepetition conference does not commence a proceeding before OFE.

(c) If OFE agrees to waive any filing requirements under § 501.3(d), a memorandum of record stating this fact will

be furnished to the potential petitioner within thirty (30) days after the conference. Copies of all applicable memoranda of record must be attached to any subsequently-filed petition.

(d) A record of all prepetition conferences will be included in the public file. OFE may provide for the taking of a formal transcript of the conference and the transcript will be included in the public file.

[46 FR 59889, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52891, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.3 Petitions.

(a) *Filing of petitions.* Petitions for exemptions are to be filed with OFE at the address given in § 501.11.

(b) *Acceptance of petition.* (1) Upon acceptance (as distinguished from filing) of the petition, OFE shall publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a Notice of Acceptance of Petition or, in the case of an exemption by certification, a Notice of Acceptance and Availability of Certification, signifying that an exemption proceeding has commenced.

(2) OFE will notify each petitioner in writing within thirty (30) days of receipt of the petition that it has been accepted or rejected and, if rejected, the reasons therefor.

(3) A petition, including supporting documents, will be accepted if the information contained appears to be sufficient to support an OFE determination. Additional information may be requested during the course of the proceeding, and failure to respond to such a request may ultimately result in denial of the requested exemption.

(4) Acceptance of petition does not constitute a determination that the requested exemption will be granted.

(c) *Rejection of petition.* (1) OFE will reject a petition if it does not meet the information of certification requirements established for the relevant exemptions under parts 503 and 504 of this chapter. A written explanation of the reasons for rejection will be furnished with notification of the rejection.

(2) A timely-filed petition rejected as inadequate will not be rendered untimely if resubmitted in amended form within ninety (90) days of the date of rejection.

(3) OFE will, within thirty (30) days of receipt of a petition that is found to be incomplete due to minor deficiencies, notify the petitioner of the deficiencies and allow ninety (90) days from the date of notification to cure the specified deficiencies. The failure to cure the deficiencies during this time may result in denial of the requested exemption.

(d) *Waiver of filing requirements.* Upon its own motion or at the request of a petitioner, OFE may waive some or all of the regulatory requirements if the purposes of FUA would be best achieved by doing so.

§§ 501.4–501.5 [Reserved]

§ 501.6 Service.

(a) DOE will serve all orders, notices interpretations or other documents that it is required to serve, personally or by mail, unless otherwise provided in these regulations.

(b) DOE will consider service upon a petitioner's duly authorized representative to be service upon the petitioner.

(c) Service by mail is effective upon mailing.

[54 FR 52891, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.7 General filing requirements.

Except as indicated otherwise, all documents required or permitted to be filed with OFE or DOE in connection with a proceeding under parts 503 and 504 shall be filed in accordance with the following provisions:

(a) *Filing of documents.* (1) Documents including, but not limited to, applications, requests, complaints, petitions (including petitions for exemption), and other documents submitted in connection therewith, filed with OFE are considered to be filed upon receipt.

(2) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (a)(1) of this section, an application for modification or rescission in accordance with subpart G of this part, a reply to a notice of violation, a response to a denial of a claim of confidentiality, or a comment submitted in connection with any proceeding transmitted by registered or certified mail and addressed to the appropriate office is considered to be filed upon mailing.

(3) *Timeliness.* Documents are to be filed with the appropriate DOE or OFE office listed in § 501.11. Documents that

are to be considered filed upon receipt under paragraph (a)(1) of this section and that are received after regular business hours are deemed filed on the next regular business day. Regular business hours are 8 a.m. to 4:30 p.m.

(4) *Computation of time.* In computing any period of time prescribed or allowed by FUA, these regulations or by an order, the day of the act, event, or default from which the designated period of time begins to run is not to be included. The last day of the period so computed is to be included unless it is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal legal holiday in which event the period runs until the end of the next day that is neither a Saturday, Sunday, nor a Federal legal holiday.

(5) *Additional time after service by mail.* Whenever a person is required to perform an act, to cease and desist therefrom, or to initiate a proceeding under this part within a prescribed period of time and the order, notice, interpretation or other document is served by mail, three (3) days shall be added to the prescribed period.

(6) *Extension of time.* When a document is required to be filed within a prescribed time, an extension of time to file may be granted upon good cause shown.

(7) *Signing.* All applications, petitions, requests, comments, and other documents that are required to be signed, shall be signed by the person filing the document or a duly authorized representative. Any application, petition, request, complaint, or other document filed by a duly authorized representative shall contain a statement by such person certifying that he is a duly authorized representative, unless an OFE form otherwise requires. (A false certification is unlawful under the provisions of 18 U.S.C. 1001 (1970).)

(8) *Labeling.* An application, petition, or other request for action by DOE or OFE should be clearly labeled according to the nature of the action involved, e.g., ''Petition for Temporary Exemption;'' ''Petition for Extension (or Renewal) of Temporary Exemption,'' both on the document and on the outside of the envelope in which the document is transmitted.

(9) *Obligation to supply information.* A person who files an application, petition, complaint, or other request for action is under a continuing obligation during the proceeding to provide DOE or OFE with any new or newly discovered information that is relevant to that proceeding. Such information includes, but is not limited to, information regarding any other application, petition, complaint, or request for action that is subsequently filed by that person with any DOE office or OFE office.

(10) *The same or related matters.* In filing a petition or other document requesting OFE action, the person must state whether, to the best of his knowledge, the same or a related issue, act or transaction has been or presently is being considered or investigated by a DOE office, other Federal agency, department or instrumentality, or a State or municipal agency.

(11) *Request for confidential treatment.* (i) If any person filing a document with DOE or OFE claims that some or all of the information contained in the document is exempt from the mandatory public disclosure requirements of the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552); is information referred to in 18 U.S.C. 1905; or is otherwise exempt by law from public disclosure, and if such person requests DOE or OFE not to disclose such information, such person shall make a filing in accordance with paragraph (b)(2) of this section. The person shall indicate in the original document that it is confidential or contains confidential information and may file a statement specifying the justification for non-disclosure of the information for which confidential treatment is claimed. If the person states that the information comes within the exception in 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4) for trade secrets and commercial or financial information, such person shall include a statement specifying why such information is privileged or confidential. If a document is not so filed, OFE may assume that there is no objection to public disclosure of the document in its entirety, unless the person subsequently files a claim of confidentiality prior to public disclosure of the document.

(ii) DOE or OFE retains the right to make its own determination with regard to any claim of confidentiality.

Notice of the decision by DOE or OFE to deny such claim, in whole or in part, and an opportunity to respond or take other appropriate action to avoid release shall be given to a person claiming confidentiality of information no less than seven (7) days prior to its public disclosure.

(iii) The above provisions in paragraphs (a)(11) (i) and (ii) of this section do not apply to information submitted on OFE forms that contain their own instructions concerning the treatment of confidential information.

(12) *Separate applications, petitions or requests.* Each application, petition, or request for DOE or OFE action shall be submitted as a separate document, even if the applications, petitions, or requests deal with the same or a related issue, act, or transaction, or are submitted in connection with the same proceeding.

(b) *Number of documents to be filed.* (1) A petitioner must file an executed original and fourteen (14) copies of all exemption requests submitted to DOE. For certification requests, an original and three (3) copies shall be submitted.

(2) Where the petitioner requests confidential treatment of some or all of the information submitted, an original and eleven (11) copies of the confidential document and three (3) copies of the document with confidential material deleted must be filed.

[46 FR 59889, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 15314, Apr. 9, 1982; 54 FR 52891, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.8 [Reserved]

§ 501.9 Effective date of orders or rules.

(a) When OFE issues a rule or order imposing a prohibition or granting an exemption (or permit) under FUA, the rule or order will be effective sixty (60) days after publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER, unless it is stayed, modified, suspended or rescinded.

(b) If the appropriate State regulatory authority has not approved a powerplant for which a petition has been filed, such exemption, to the extent it applies to the prohibition under section 201 of FUA against construction without the capability of using coal or another alternate fuel, shall not take effect until all approvals required by such State regulatory authority which relate to construction have been obtained.

[54 FR 52891, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.10 Order of precedence.

If there is any conflict or inconsistency between the provisions of this part and any other provisions or parts of this chapter, except for general procedures which are unique to part 515 of this chapter, the provisions of this part will control respect to procedure.

[54 FR 52891, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.11 Address for filing documents.

Send all petitions, self-certifications and written communications to the following address: Office of Fossil Energy, Office of Fuels Programs, Coal and Electricity Division, Mail Code FE–52, 1000 Independence Avenue, SW., Washington, DC 20585.

[54 FR 52891, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.12 Public files.

DOE will make available at the Freedom of Information reading room, room 1E190, 1000 Independence Avenue SW., Washington, DC for public inspection and copying any information required by statute and any information that OFE determines should be made available to the public.

[54 FR 52891, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.13 Appeal.

There is no administrative appeal of any final administrative action to which this part applies.

§ 501.14 Notice to Environmental Protection Agency.

A copy of any proposed rule or order that imposes a prohibition, order that imposes a prohibition, or a petition for an exemption or permit, shall be transmitted for comments, if any, to the Administrator and the appropriate Regional Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). The Administrator of EPA shall be given the same opportunity to comment and question as is given other interested persons.

[54 FR 52891, Dec. 22, 1989]

Subpart B [Reserved]

Subpart C—Written Comments, Public Hearings and Conferences During Administrative Proceedings

§ 501.30 Purpose and scope.

This subpart establishes the procedures for requests for and the conduct of public hearings; for submission of written comments; and for requests for and conduct of conferences pursuant to an administrative proceeding before OFE. Hearings shall be convened at the request of any interested person, in accordance with section 701(d) of FUA, and shall be held at a time and place to be decided by the Presiding Officer.

§ 501.31 Written comments.

(a) *New facilities*. Except as may be provided elsewhere in these regulations, OFE shall provide a period of at least forty-five (45) days, commencing with publication of the Notice of Acceptance of Petition, of in the case of certification exemptions, Notice of Acceptance and availability of Certification, in the FEDERAL REGISTER in accordance with § 501.63(a), for submission of written comments concerning a petition for an exemption. Written comments shall be made in accordance with § 501.7.

(b) *Existing facilities*. Except as may be provided elsewhere in these regulations, OFE shall provide a period of at least 45 days for submission of written comments concerning a proposed prohibition rule or order or a petition for a permit. In the case of a proposed prohibition rule or order issued to an existing electing powerplant, OFE shall also provide for a period of at least 45 days for submission of written comments concerning a Tentative Staff Analysis. This period shall commence on the day after publication of the Notice of Availability of the Tentative Staff Analysis in the FEDERAL REGISTER. In the case of prohibition order proceedings for certifying powerplants under section 301 of FUA, as amended, OFE shall provide a period of at least 45 days, beginning the day after the Notice of Acceptance of certification is published, for submission of written comments concerning the certification and OFE's proposed prohibition order, and requests for public hearings. Prohibition order proceedings under section 301, as amended by OBRA, will have only one period of 45 days, since no Tentative Staff Analysis will be prepared. The comment period may be extended by OFE in accordance with § 501.7. See § 501.52(b) of this part for further information with respect to the comment period. Written comments shall be filed in accordance with § 501.7.

(Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, 92 Stat. 3289 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (Pub. L. 97–35); E.O. 12009, 42 FR 46267, Sept. 15, 1977)

[46 FR 59889, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 50848, Nov. 10, 1982; 54 FR 52892, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.32 Conferences (other than prepetition conferences).

(a) At any time following commencement of a proceeding before OFE, an interested person may request a conference with the staff of OFE to discuss a petition, permit or any other issue pending before OFE. The request for a conference should generally be in writing and should indicate the subjects to be covered and should describe the requester's interest in the proceeding. Conferences held after the commencement of an administrative proceeding before OFE shall be convened at the discretion of OFE or the Presiding Officer.

(b) When OFE convenes a conference in accordance with this section, any person invited may present views as to the issue or issues involved. Documentary evidence may be submitted at the conference and such evidence, to the extent that it is not deemed to be confidential, will be included in the administrative record. OFE will not normally have a transcript of the conference prepared but may do so at its discretion.

(c) Because a conference is solely for the exchange of views incident to a proceeding, there will be no formal report or findings by OFE unless OFE in its discretion determines that the preparation of a report or findings would be

advisable. OFE will, however, place in the public file a record of any conference.

§ 501.33 Request for a public hearing.

(a) *New facilities*. In the case of a petition for an exemption under title II of FUA, any interested person may submit a written request that OFE convene a public hearing in accordance with section 701 of FUA no later than forty-five (45) days after publication of either the Notice of Acceptance of a petition, or in the case of a certification exemption, the publication of the Notice of Acceptance of Certification. This time period may be extended at the discretion of OFE.

(b) *Existing powerplants*. In the case of a petition for an exemption from a prohibition imposed by a final rule or order issued by OFE to an electing powerplant under former sections of title III of FUA or a petition for a permit under § 504.1, any interested person may submit a written request that OFE convene a public hearing in accordance with section 701 of FUA within 45 days after the notice of the filing of a petition is published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. In the case of a proposed prohibition rule or order issued to an electing powerplant under former section 301, the 45 day period in which to request a public hearing shall commence upon the publication of the Notice of Availability of the Tentative Staff Analysis. In the case of a proposed prohibition order to be issued to certifying powerplants under section 301 of FUA, as amended, the 45 day period in which to request a public hearing commences upon publication of the Notice of Acceptance of Certification. This time limit may be extended at the discretion of OFE in accordance with § 501.7.

(c) *Contents of request*. A request for a public hearing must be in writing and must include a description of the requesting party's interest in the proceeding and a statement of the issues involved. The request should, to the extent possible, identify any witnesses that are to be called, summarize the anticipated testimony to be given at the hearing, and outline questions that are to be posed.

(Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, 92 Stat. 3269 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (Pub. L. 97–35); E.O. 12009, 42 FR 46267, Sept. 15, 1977)

[46 FR 59889, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 50848, Nov. 10, 1982; 54 FR 52892, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.34 Public hearing.

(a) A public hearing under this subsection is for the purpose of insuring that all issues are fully and properly developed, but is not a formal adjudicatory hearing subject to the provisions of 5 U.S.C. 554 and 556.

(b) *Opportunity to be heard at a public hearing*. (1) Any interested person, may request, and OFE will provide, an opportunity to present oral or written data, views and arguments at a public hearing on any proposed prohibition rule or order, or on any petition for an exemption or permit. An interested person may file a request to be listed as a party to a hearing on the service list prepared by the Presiding Officer pursuant to § 501.34(d) of this part.

(2) Participants at the public hearing will have an opportunity to present oral or written data, views and arguments.

(3) A request for a public hearing may be withdrawn by the requestor at any time. If other persons have requested to participate as parties in the public hearing, OFE may cancel the hearing only if all parties agree to cancellation. OFE will give notice, whenever possible, in the FEDERAL REGISTER of the cancellation of any hearings for which there has been prior notice.

(c) *Presiding Officer*. OFE will appoint a Presiding Officer to conduct the public hearing.

(d) *Powers of the Presiding Officer*. The Presiding Officer is responsible for orderly conduct of the hearing and for certification of the record of the public hearing. The Presiding Officer will not prepare any recommended findings, conclusions, or any other recommendations for disposition of a particular

case, except those of a procedural nature. The Presiding Officer has, but is not limited to the following powers:

(1) Administer oaths, affirmations and protective orders;

(2) Issue administrative subpoenas and rule on motions to modify or withdraw subpoenas that he has issued;

(3) Rule on questions as to relevance and materiality of evidence;

(4) Regulate the course of the public hearing;

(5) Hold conferences for the simplification of issues by consent of the parties;

(6) Require submission of evidence in writing where appropriate;

(7) Establish service lists;

(8) Dispose of procedural requests and similar matters; and

(9) Take other actions authorized by these rules.

The Presiding Officer may also limit the number of witnesses to be presented by any party and may impose reasonable time limits for testimony. The Presiding Officer shall establish and maintain a service list that contains the names and addresses of all parties to the OFE proceeding. At the time the Presiding Officer certifies the record, he will provide the staff of OFE with an index of the issues addressed in the record.

(e) *Notice*. OFE will convene a public hearing only after publishing a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER that states the time, place and nature of the public hearing.

(f) *Opportunity to question at the public hearing*. At any public hearing requested pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section, with respect to disputed issues of material fact, OFE will provide any interested person an opportunity to question:

(1) Other interested persons who make oral presentations;

(2) Employees and contractors of the United States who have made written or oral presentations or who have participated in the development of the proposed rule or order or in the consideration of the petition for an exemption or permit; and

(3) Experts and consultants who have provided information to any person who makes an oral presentation and which is contained in or referred to in such presentation.

(g) OFE encourages persons who wish to question Government witnesses to submit their questions at least ten (10) days in advance of the hearing.

(h) The Presiding Officer will allow questions by any interested person to be asked of those making presentations or submitting information, data, analyses or views at the hearing. The Presiding Officer may restrict questioning if he determines that such questioning is duplicative or is not likely to result in a timely and effective resolution of issues pending in the administrative proceeding for which the hearing is being conducted.

(i) The Presiding Officer or OFE may exercise discretion to control a hearing by denying, temporarily or permanently, the privilege of participating in a particular OFE hearing if OFE finds, for example, that a person:

(1) Has knowingly made false or misleading statements, either orally or in writing;

(2) Has knowingly filed false affidavits or other writings;

(3) Lacks the specific authority to represent the person seeking an OFE action; or

(4) Has disrupted or is disrupting a hearing.

(j) *Evidence*. (1) The Presiding Officer is responsible for orderly submission of information, data, materials, views or other evidence into the record of the public hearing. The Presiding Officer may exclude any evidence that is irrelevant, immaterial or unduly repetitious. Judicial rules of evidence do not apply.

(2) Documentary material must be of a size consistent with ease of handling, transportation and filing, and a reasonable number of copies should be made available at the public hearing for the use of interested persons. An original and fourteen (14) copies shall be furnished to the Presiding Officer and one copy to each party listed on the service list. Large exhibits that are used during the hearing must be provided on no larger than 11½″ × 14″ legal size paper if they are to be submitted into the hearing record.

(k) *Hearing record*. OFE will have a verbatim transcript made of the public

hearing. The hearing record shall remain open for a period of fourteen (14) days following the public hearing, unless extended by OFE, during which time the participants at the hearing may submit additional written statements which will be made part of the administrative record and will be served by the Presiding Officer upon those parties listed on the service list. OFE may also request additional information, data or analysis following the hearing in order to resolve disputed issues in the record. If OFE receives or obtains any relevant information or evidence that is placed in the record after the close of the public hearing or comment period, it will so notify all participants, and allow an additional fourteen (14) days for submission of evidence in rebuttal. In addition, OFE may, in its discretion, re-open the hearing at the request of a party or participant, to permit further rebuttal of evidence or statements submitted to OFE and made part of the hearing record after the close of the hearing. The transcript, together with any written comments submitted in the course of the proceeding, will be made part of the record available for public inspection and copying at the OFE Public Information Office, as provided in § 501.12.

§ 501.35 Public file.

(a) *Contents*. The public file shall consist of the rule, order, or petition, with supporting data and supplemental information, and all data and information submitted by interested persons. Materials which are claimed by any party to be exempt from public disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) shall be excised from the public file provided OFE has made a determination that the material is confidential in accordance with § 501.7(a)(11) of this part.

(b) *Availability*. The public file shall be available for inspection at room 1E190, 1000 Independence Avenue SW., Washington, DC. Photocopies may be made available, on request. The charge for such copies shall be made in accordance with a written schedule.

[46 FR 59889, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52892, Dec. 22, 1989]

Subpart D—Subpoenas, Special Report Orders, Oaths and Witnesses

§ 501.40 Issuance.

(a) *Authority*. As authorized by section 711 of FUA and section 645 of the DEOA, the Administrator, his duly authorized agent or a Presiding Officer may, in accordance with 10 CFR 205.8, sign, issue, and serve subpoenas; issue special report orders (SRO); administer oaths and affirmations; take sworn testimony, compel attendance of and sequester witnesses; control the dissemination of any record of testimony taken pursuant to this section; and subpoena and reproduce books, papers, correspondence, memoranda, contracts, agreements, or other relevant records of tangible evidence including, but not limited to, information retained in computerized or other automated systems in the possession of the subpoenaed person.

(b) *Petition to withdraw or modify*. Prior to the time specified for compliance in the subpoena or SRO, the person to whom the subpoena or SRO is directed may apply for its withdrawal or modification as provided in 10 CFR 205.8, except that if the subpoena or SRO is issued by a duly appointed Presiding Officer, the request to withdraw or modify must be addressed to that Presiding Officer, and its grant or denial will be decided by him.

Subpart E—Prohibition Rules and Orders

§ 501.50 Policy.

Except in conjunction with a prohibition order requested by the intended recipient, OFE shall not propose to prohibit or prohibit by rule or order the use of petroleum or natural gas either as a primary energy source or in amounts in excess of the minimum amount necessary to maintain reliability of operation consistent with reasonable fuel efficiency in an existing installation unless and until OFE adopts rules establishing regulatory requirements governing the issuance of such orders and rules in accordance

with the applicable procedural and substantive requirements of law.

(Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, 92 Stat. 3269 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (Pub. L. 97–35); E.O. 12009, 42 FR 46267, Sept. 15, 1977)

[47 FR 50848, Nov. 10, 1982]

§ 501.51 Prohibitions by order—electing powerplants.

(a) OFE may prohibit by order the use of petroleum or natural gas as a primary energy source or in amounts in excess of the minimum amount necessary to maintain reliability of operation consistent with reasonable fuel efficiency in an electing powerplant, if:

(1) That facility has not been identified as a member of a category subject to a final rule at the time of the issuance of such order; and

(2) The requirements of § 504.6 have been met.

(b) *Notice of order and public participation.* (1) OFE may hold a conference with the proposed order recipient prior to issuing the proposed order.

(2) Pursuant to section 701 of FUA, prior to the issuance of a final order to an electing powerplant, OFE shall publish a proposed order in the FEDERAL REGISTER together with a statement of the reasons for the order. In the case of a proposed order that would prohibit the use of petroleum or natural gas as a primary energy source, the finding required by former section 301(b)(1) of the Act shall be published with such proposed order.

(3) OFE shall provide a period for the submission of written comments of at least three months after the date of the proposed order. During this period, the recipient of the proposed order and any other interested person must submit any evidence that they have determined at that time to support their respective positions as to each of the findings that OFE is required to make under section 301(b) of the Act. A proposed order recipient may submit additional new evidence at any time prior to the close of the public comment period which follows publication of the Tentative Staff Analysis or prior to the close of the record of any public hearing, whichever occurs later. A request by the proposed order recipient for an extension of the three-month period may be granted at OFE's discretion.

(4) Subsequent to the end of the comment period, OFE will issue a notice of whether OFE intends to proceed with the prohibition order proceeding.

(5) An owner or operator of a facility that may be subject to an order may demonstrate prior to issuance of a final prohibition order that the facility would qualify for an exemption if the prohibition had been established by rule. OFE will not delay the issuance of a final prohibition order or stay the effective date of such an order for the purpose of determining whether a proposed order recipient qualifies for a particular exemption unless the demonstration or qualification is submitted prior to or during the second three-month comment period, commencing after issuance of a notice of intention to proceed, or unless materials submitted after the period (i) could not have been submitted during the period through the exercise of due diligence, (ii) address material changes in fact or law occurring after the close of the period, or (iii) consist of amplification or rebuttal occasioned by the subsequent course of the proceeding. A request by the proposed order recipient for an extension of this time period may be granted at OFE's discretion.

(6) Subsequent to the end of the second three (3) month period, OFE will, if it intends to issue a final prohibition order, prepare and issue a Notice of Availability of a Tentative Staff Analysis. Interested persons wishing a hearing must request a hearing within forty-five (45) day after issuance of the Notice of Availability of the Tentative Staff Analysis. During this forty-five (45) days period, interested persons may also submit written comments on the Tentative Staff Analysis.

(7) If a hearing has been requested, OFE shall provide interested persons with an opportunity to present oral data, views and arguments at a public hearing held in accordance with subpart C of this part. The hearing will consider the findings which OFE must make in order to issue a final prohibition order and any exemption for which the proposed order recipient submitted

its demonstration in accordance with paragraph (b)(5) of this section.

(8) Upon request by the recipient of the proposed prohibition order, the combined public comment periods provided for in this section may be reduced to a minimum of forty-five (45) days from the time of publication of the proposed order.

(9) OFE may terminate a prohibition order proceeding at any time prior to the date upon which a final order shall become effective. Should OFE terminate the proceeding, it will notify the proposed order recipient, and publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(c) *Decision to issue a final order*. (1) OFE will base its determination to issue an order on consideration of the whole record or those parts thereof cited by a party and supported by and in accordance with reliable, probative and substantial evidence.

(2) OFE shall include in the final order a written statement of the pertinent facts, a statement of the basis upon which the final order is issued, a recitation of the conclusions regarding the required findings and qualifications for exemptions. The final order shall state the effective date of the prohibition contained therein. If it is demonstrated that the facility would have been granted a temporary exemption, the effective date of the prohibition contained in the final order shall be delayed until such time as the temporary exemption would have terminated. If it is demonstrated that a facility will need a period of time to comply with the final order, the effective date of the prohibition contained in the final order may be delayed, in OFE's discretion, so as to allow an order recipient to comply with the final order.

(3) OFE will enclose with a copy of the final order, where appropriate, a schedule of steps that should be taken by a stated date (a compliance schedule) to ensure that the affected facility will be able to comply with the prohibitions stated in the order by the effective date of the prohibition contained in the final order. The compliance schedule may require the affected person to take steps with regard to a unit 60 days after service of the final order.

(4) A copy of the final order and a summary of the basis therefore will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. The order will become effective 60 days after publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(d) *Request for order*. (1) A proceeding for issuance of a prohibition order to a specific unit may be commenced by OFE, in its sole discretion, in response to a request for an order filed by the owner or operator of a facility.

(2) A petition requesting OFE to commence a prohibition order proceeding should include the following information for all units to be covered by the prohibition order:

(i) A statement of the reasons the owner or operator is seeking the issuance of a prohibition order; and

(ii) Sufficient information for OFE to make the findings required by section 301(b) of FUA.

(3) If OFE determines to accept the request, OFE shall publish a proposed order in the FEDERAL REGISTER together with a statement of the reasons for the order.

(Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*); Energy Supply and Environmental Coordination Act of 1974; Pub. L. 93–319, as amended by Pub. L. 94–163, Pub. L. 95–70, (15 U.S.C. 719 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, 92 Stat. 3269 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981, (Pub. L. 97–35); E.O. 12009, 42 FR 46267, Sept. 15, 1977)

[46 FR 59889, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 17042, Apr. 21, 1982; 47 FR 50848, Nov. 10, 1982; 54 FR 52892, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.52 Prohibitions by order—certifying powerplants.

(a) OFE may prohibit by order the use of petroleum or natural gas as a primary energy source or in amounts in excess of the minimum amount necessary to maintain reliability of operation consistent with maintaining reasonable fuel efficiency in an existing powerplant if the owner or operator of the powerplant certifies, and OFE concurs in such certification in accordance with the requirements of §§ 504.5, 504.6 and 504.8.

(b) *Notice of order and participation*. (1) OFE may hold a conference with the

proposed order recipient, at the recipient's election, prior to issuing the proposed order. The conference may resolve any questions regarding the certification required by section 301 of the Act, as amended, and §§ 504.5, 504.6, and 504.8, and OFE's review and concurrence therein.

(2) Pursuant to section 701(b) of FUA, prior to the issuance of a final order to a certifying powerplant owner or operator, OFE must publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER, a proposed prohibition order stating the reasons for such order. OFE will review all of the information submitted by a proposed order recipient within 60 days after receipt by OFE. If the certification is complete, OFE will, within 30 days after the end of the 60 day review period, publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a Notice of Acceptance of certification together with a proposed prohibition order stating therein the reasons for such order. This commences the prohibition order proceeding. If OFE does not believe it is able to concur in the certification, OFE shall notify the proposed order recipient and shall publish a Notice of Proposed Non-Concurrence in the FEDERAL REGISTER within 30 days after the end of the 60 day review period. If OFE finds that the certification with compliance schedule is incomplete, OFE will notify the proposed prohibition order recipient as to the deficiencies, and provide an additional period of 30 days for the certification to be amended and resubmitted. If a complete certification is not submitted within this period, the proceeding shall be terminated in accordance with § 501.52(b)(5). OFE will notify the proposed order recipient and other parties to the proceeding of the termination and publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER. OFE, on its own motion, may extend any period of time by publishing a notice to that effect in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(3) The publication of the Notice of Acceptance or Notice of Proposed Non-Concurrence commences a period of 45 days during which interested persons may submit written comments or request a public hearing. During this period, the recipient of the proposed order and any other interested person may submit any evidence that they have available relating to the proposed order, the certification or the concurrence that OFE must make. A proposed order recipient may submit additional new evidence at any time prior to the close of the public comment period which follows the commencement of the proceeding or prior to the close of the record of any public hearing, whichever occurs later. A request for an extension of the 45 day period may be granted at OFE's discretion. In the case of a Notice of Acceptance, as set forth in § 504.9, no final prohibition order can be issued until any necessary environmental review pursuant to the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, 42 U.S.C 4321 *et seq.* (NEPA) has been completed. Upon completion of the NEPA review and unless OFE determines on the basis of the record of the proceeding that the certification fails to meet the requirements of §§ 504.5, 504.6, and 504.8, OFE shall publish a final prohibition order, together with the information required by paragraph (c) of this section. In the case of a Notice of Proposed Non-Concurrence, at the end of the 45 day comment period, OFE will notify the proposed order recipient and parties to the proceeding and publish a final Notice of Non-Concurrence in the FEDERAL REGISTER, if OFE determines it cannot concur in the certification based upon additional information submitted during the proceeding. If, at the end of the 45 day period, OFE believes it can concur in the certification, OFE will notify the proposed order recipient and parties to the proceeding and publish a Notice of Acceptance followed by a new 45 day comment period.

(4) If a hearing has been requested, OFE shall provide interested persons with an opportunity to present oral data, views and arguments at a public hearing held in accordance with subpart C of this part. The hearing may consider, among other matters, the sufficiency of the certification of the owner or operator of the powerplant required by section 301 of FUA, as amended, and §§ 504.5, 504.6, and 504.8 of these regulations.

(5) OFE may terminate a prohibition order proceeding at any time prior to the date upon which a final prohibition order is issued whenever OFE believes,

from any information contained in the record of the proceeding, that the certification does not meet the requirements of section 301 of the Act, as amended, or §§ 504.5, 504.6, and 504.8 of these regulations. If OFE terminates the proceeding or publishes a final Notice of Non-Concurrence, or the proposed order recipient fails to submit a complete certification, OFE will notify the proposed order recipient and other parties to the proceeding and publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER. In such event, the proposed order recipient may submit a new certification under any provision of section 301 of the Act, as amended, at a later date. Specifically, a Notice of Non-Concurrence under either section 301(b) or 301(c) shall not affect a proposed order recipient's ability to make a certification under the other subsection.

(c) *Record and decision to issue a final order*. (1) OFE will base its determination to issue an order on consideration of the whole record or those parts thereof cited by a party and supported by and in accordance with reliable, probative and substantial evidence.

(2) OFE shall include in the final order a written statement of the basis upon which the final order is issued, and its concurrence in the required certification. A copy of the final order and a summary of the basis therefor will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. While the prohibition order is final for purposes of judicial review under section 702 of FUA, the prohibitions contained in the final order shall not become effective for purposes of amendment under section 301(d) of FUA, as amended, and § 501.52(d) of these regulations until the effective date of the prohibitions stated in the order, or, where the order is subject to one or more conditions subsequent listed in the prohibition order compliance schedule, until all its conditions are met.

(d) *Amendment to certifications under §§ 504.5 and 504.6*. The proposed prohibition order recipient may amend its compliance schedule under § 504.5(d), or its certification under section 301 of FUA, as amended, and §§ 504.5, 504.6 and 504.8 of these regulations in order to take into account changes in relevant facts and circumstances at any time prior to the effective date of the prohibitions contained in the final prohibition order.

(e) *Rescission of prohibition orders*. The rescission or modification of final prohibition orders issued to existing electric powerplants will be governed by the procedure in § 501.101 of these regulations.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 1903–0077)

(Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.;* Energy Supply and Environmental Coordination Act of 1974, Pub. L. 93–319, as amended by Pub. L. 94–163, Pub. L. 95–70, and Pub. L. 95–620, 15 U.S.C. 719 *et seq.;* Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, as amended by Pub. L. 97–35, 42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.;* Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981, (Pub. L. 97–35))

[47 FR 17042, Apr. 21, 1982]

§§ 501.53–501.56 [Reserved]

Subpart F—Exemptions and Certifications

§ 501.60 Purpose and scope.

(a) (1) If the owner or operator plans to construct a new baseload powerplant and the unit will not be in compliance with the prohibition contained in section 201(a) of FUA, this subpart establishes the procedures for filing a petition requesting a temporary or permanent exemption under, respectively, sections 211 and 212 of FUA.

(2) Self-certification alternative. If the owner or operator plans to construct a new baseload powerplant not in compliance with the prohibitions contained in section 201(a) of FUA, this subpart establishes the procedures for the filing of a self-certification under section 201(d) of FUA.

(3) If the petitioner owns, operates or controls a new powerplant, this subpart provides the procedures for filing a petition requesting extension of a temporary exemption granted under sections 211 or 311 of FUA.

(4) If the petitioner owns, operates or controls a new or existing powerplant or MFBI, this subpart provides the procedures for filing a petition requesting extension of a temporary exemption granted under section 211 or section 311 of FUA.

(b) If the petition is for an extension of a temporary exemption, the petitioner must apply for this extension at least (90) days prior to the expiration of the temporary exemption.

(Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, 92 Stat. 3269 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981, Pub. L. 97–35; E.O. 12009, 42 FR 46267, Sept. 15, 1977)

[46 FR 59889, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 50849, Nov. 10, 1982; 54 FR 52892, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.61 Certification contents.

(a) A self-certification filed under section 201(d) of FUA should include the following information:

(1) Owner's name and address.

(2) Operator's name and address.

(3) Plant location and address.

(4) Plant configuration (combined cycle, simple cycle, topping cycle, etc.)

(5) Design capacity in megawatts (MW).

(6) Fuel(s) to be used by the new facility.

(7) Name of utility purchasing electricity from the proposed facility and percent of total output to be sold.

(8) Date unit is expected to be placed in service.

(9) Certification by an officer of the company or his designated representative certifying that the proposed facility:

(i) Has sufficient inherent design characteristics to permit the addition of equipment (including all necessary pollution devices) necessary to render such electric powerplant capable of using coal or another alternate fuel as its primary energy source; and

(ii) Is not physically, structurally, or technologically precluded from using coal or another alternate fuel as its primary energy source.

(b) A self-certification filed pursuant to § 501.61(a) shall be effective to establish compliance with the requirement of section 201(a) of FUA as of the date filed.

(c) OFE will publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER within fifteen days reciting that the certification has been filed. Publication of this notice does not serve to commence a public comment period.

(d) OFE will notify the owner or operator within 60 days if supporting documentation is needed to verify the certification.

[54 FR 52892, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.62 Petition contents.

(a) A petition for exemption should include the following information:

(1) The name of the petitioner;

(2) The name and location of the unit for which an exemption is being requested;

(3) The specific exemption(s) being requested; and

(4) The name, address, and telephone number of the person who can supply further information.

(b) *Table of contents.* Include only those sections contained in the petition.

(c) *Introduction.* Include the following:

(1) Description of the facility under consideration;

(2) Description of the unit and fuel the petitioner proposes to burn in that unit, including the purpose of and need for the unit; and

(3) Description of the operational requirements for the unit, including size (capacity, input and output in millions of Btu's per hour), output in terms of product or service to be supplied, fuel capability, and operating mode, including capacity factor, utilization factor, and fluctuations in the load.

(d) *General requirements.* The evidence required under part 503 subpart B for each exemption(s) for which the petitioner is applying:

(1) No alternate power supply (§ 503.8):

(2) Use of mixtures (§ 503.9);

(3) Alternative site (§ 503.11);

(4) Compliance Plan (§ 503.12);

(5) Environmental impact analysis (§ 503.13);

(6) Fuels search (§ 503.14).

(e) *Specific evidence.* Evidence required for each exemption, segregated by exemption (part 503 subparts C and D).

(f) *References.* (1) Specify the reports, documents, experts, and other sources consulted in compiling the petition. Cite these sources in accordance with acceptable documentation standards,

and indicate the part of the petition to which they apply. If the source is unusual or little known, briefly describe its contents.

(2) Identify at the end of each section of the petition any information or any statement based, in whole or in part, on information or principles which, to petitioner's knowledge, represent significant innovations to or departures from generally accepted facts or principles.

(g) *Appendices*. Include in the appendices material which the petitioner believes substantiates any analyses fundamental to the petition, materials prepared in connection with it, and any other documents, studies, or analyses which are believed to be relevant to the decision to be made. Also, include in the appendices copies of any forms submitted as part of the petition.

(h) *List of preparers*. List the names with the qualifications and professional credentials of the principal contributors to the preparation of the petition. Indicate the sections or subject matters for which each principal contributor was responsible.

(i) *Incorporation by reference*. Pertinent information may be incorporated into the petition by reference when this can be done without impeding agency and public review. Referenced materials must be specifically identified and their contents briefly described in the petition. To incorporate by reference, the material must be submitted with the petition, or if previously submitted, the office to which it was submitted must be identified in the petition. The petitioner cannot incorporate by reference material based on proprietary data not available to OFE for review.

(Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, 92 Stat. 3269 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981, Pub. L. 97–35; E.O. 12009, 42 FR 46267, Sept. 15, 1977)

[46 FR 59889, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 50849, Nov. 10, 1982]

§ 501.63 Notice of the commencement of an administrative proceeding on an exemption petition.

(a)(1) When a petition is accepted, OFE will publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a Notice of Acceptance, or, in the case of a certification exemption, a Notice of Acceptance and Availability of Certification, signifying that an exemption proceeding has commenced. The notice will include a summary of the exemption petition, and publication will commence a public comment period of no less than forty-five (45) days during which interested parties may file written comments concerning the petition. In the case of a certification exemption, interested persons may request a public hearing during this period, pursuant to § 501.33.

(2) OFE will notify the appropriate State agency having apparent primary authority to permit or regulate the construction or operation of a powerplant that an exemption proceeding has commenced and will consult with this agency to the maximum extent practicable. Copies of all accepted petitions also will be forwarded to EPA, as provided in § 501.14(a).

(b) In processing an exemption petition, OFE shall comply with the requirements of the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (NEPA), the Council on Environmental Quality's implementing regulations, and the DOE guidelines implementing those regulations (45 FR 20694, Mar. 28, 1980). Compliance with NEPA may involve the preparation of (1) an environmental impact statement (EIS) evaluating the grant or denial of an exemption petition, (2) an environmental assessment (EA), or (3) a memorandum to the file finding that the grant of the requested petition would not be considered a major federal action significantly affecting the quality of the human environment. If an EIS is required, OFE will publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a Notice of Intent (NOI) to prepare an EIS as soon as practicable after commencement of the proceeding. A public meeting may be held pursuant to 40 CFR 1501.7 to solicit comments or suggestions on the structure and content of the EIS.

[46 FR 59889, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52893, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.64 Publication of notice of availability of tentative staff analysis.

OFE will publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a Notice of the Availability of Tentative Staff Analysis for the noncertification temporary public interest exemption, for noncertification environmental exemptions, and for a cogeneration exemption based on the public interest. OFE will provide a public comment period of at least fourteen (14) days from the date of publication during which interested persons may make written comments and request a public hearing.

§ 501.65 Publication of notice of availability of draft EIS.

A Notice of Availability of any draft EIS will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER and comments thereon will also be solicited. Interested persons may request a hearing on any draft EIS. Such hearing must be requested within thirty (30) days of publication of the Notice of Availability of the draft EIS.

[54 FR 52893, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.66 OFE evaluation of the record, decision and order.

(a) The administrative record in a proceeding under this part will consist of the proposed prohibition order and/or petition and related documents, all relevant evidence presented at the public hearing, all written comments, and any other information in the possession of OFE and made a part of the public record of the proceeding. OFE will base its determination to issue a rule or order on consideration of the whole record, or those parts thereof cited by a party and supported by reliable, probative, and substantial evidence.

(b) OFE may investigate and corroborate any statement in any petition, document, or public comments submitted to it. OFE also may use any relevant facts it possesses in its evaluation and may request submissions from third persons relevant to the petition or other documents. OFE also may request additional information, data, or analyses following a public hearing, if any, if this information is necessary to resolve disputed issues in the record. Any relevant information received by OFE following the hearing that is not declared to be confidential under § 501.7(a)(11) shall be made part of the public record with opportunity provided for rebuttal.

(c) OFE will notify all participants if, after the close of any public hearing or comment period, it receives or obtains any relevant information or evidence. Participants may respond to such information or evidence in writing within fourteen (14) days of such notification. If OFE finds that the additional information or evidence relates to material issues of disputed fact and may significantly influence the outcome of the proceeding, OFE shall reopen the hearing on the issue or issues to which the additional information or evidence relates.

§ 501.67 Petition redesignations.

OFE, with the petitioner's approval, will redesignate an exemption petition if the petitioner qualifies for an exemption other than the one originally requested, even though he may not qualify for the specific exemption originally requested, or be entitled to the full exemption period provided by requested exemption. OFE shall give public notice of any redesignation of an exemption petition, and where a public hearing has been requested notice shall be given at least thirty (30) days prior to such hearing.

§ 501.68 Decision and order.

(a)(1) OFE shall issue an order either granting or denying the petition for an exemption or permit within six (6) months after the end of the period for public comment and hearing applicable to any petition.

(2) OFE may extend the six (6) month period for decision to a date certain by publishing notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER, and stating the reasons for such extension.

(3) OFE will publish a final EIS at least thirty (30) days prior to take issuance of the final order in all cases where an EIS is required.

(b)(1) OFE shall serve a copy of the order granting or denying a petition for exemption to the petitioner and all persons on the service list in cases involving a public hearing.

(2) OFE shall publish any order granting or denying a petition under this subpart in the FEDERAL REGISTER together with a statement of the reasons for the grant or denial.

(c)(1) Any order granting or denying a petition for exemption shall be based upon consideration of the whole record or those parts thereof cited by a party and supported by, and in accordance with, reliable, probative and substantive evidence.

(2) The denial of a petition for exemption shall be without prejudice to the petitioner's right to submit an amended petition. OFE may, however, reject the amended petition if it is not materially different from the denied petition.

(d) OFE may design any terms and conditions included in any temporary exemption issued or extended under section 211 of FUA, to ensure, among other things, that upon expiration of the exemption the persons and powerplant covered by the exemption will comply with the applicable prohibitions under FUA. For purposes of the provision, the subsequent grant of a permanent exemption to the subject unit shall be deemed compliance with applicable prohibitions.

(Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, 92 Stat. 3269 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981, Pub. L. 97–35; E.O. 12009, 42 FR 46267, Sept. 15, 1977)

[46 FR 59889, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 50849, Nov. 10, 1982; 54 FR 52893, Dec. 22, 1989]

§501.69 Judicial review.

Any person aggrieved by any order issued by OFE under this subpart, must file, within sixty (60) days of publication of the final order in the FEDERAL REGISTER, a petition for judicial review in the United States Court of Appeals for the Circuit wherein he resides, or has his principal place of business. Exhaustion of administrative remedies for purposes of judicial review does not require filing a petition pursuant to subpart G for modification or rescission of the order to be reviewed.

Subpart G—Requests for Modification or Rescission of a Rule or Order

§501.100 Purpose and scope.

(a) Anyone may request that OFE commence a rulemaking proceeding pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 553(e); however, this subpart provides the procedures to be followed by—

(1) An interested person seeking the modification or rescission of a prohibition by rule applicable to a new facility;

(2) An owner or operator of a facility named in a prohibition by rule requesting the modification or rescission of that rule; or

(3) An owner or operator subject to an exemption order or a specific prohibition imposed by order requesting the modification or a rescission of that order.

(b) OFE also may commence a modification or rescission proceeding on its own initiative.

§501.101 Proceedings to modify or rescind a rule or order.

(a) In response to a request duly filed by an interested person, OFE may commence a proceeding to modify or rescind a rule or order. If OFE determines that a request to modify or rescind a rule or order does not warrant commencement of a proceeding, it will deny the request and issue a brief statement of the reason(s) for the denial.

(b) A request for modification or rescission of a rule or order must comply with the requirements of §501.7 and must be filed at the address set forth in §501.11.

(c) Notice of the request for modification or rescission of an order must be given by the requester to each party to the original proceeding that resulted in the issuance of the original order for which modification or rescission is sought. If the number of parties to the original proceeding is too large to allow actual notice at a reasonable cost or within a reasonable time, a requester may ask that OFE give notice to the parties by publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER; however, this alternate notice does not bind OFE to

commence a proceeding, if it subsequently determines that the request is not warranted.

(d) If OFE determines to grant a request to commence a proceeding to rescind or modify a rule or order, or OFE on its own initiative, commences a proceeding for the modification or rescission of a rule or order, it will give notice, either by service of a written notice or by oral communication (which communication must be promptly confirmed in writing) to each person upon whom the order was served that OFE proposes to modify or rescind, or, alternatively, by publication of notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER. OFE will give a reasonable period of time for each person notified to file a written response.

(e)(1) A copy of any written comments submitted to OFE under this subpart by a party to the original proceeding must also be sent to the requester. The party submitting such comments must certify to OFE that he has sent a copy of such comments to the requester.

(2) OFE may notify other persons participating in the proceeding of the comments and provide an opportunity for those notified to respond.

(f) A request for modification or rescission of a rule or order must contain a complete statement of all facts relevant to the action sought. The request must also include the names and addresses of all reasonably ascertainable persons who will be affected. Pertinent provisions contained in any documents believed to support a request may be briefly described, however, OFE reserves the right to obtain copies of any significant documents that will assist in making a determination on the merits of a request. The request must identify the specific order or rule for which modification or rescission is sought. A request should also indicate whether an informal conference will facilitate OFE's determination to commence, or not to commence a proceeding, or will assist OFE in making any determinations on material issues raised by the request.

(g) A decision by OFE to commence a proceeding under this subpart does not entitle the requester to a public hearing on the request for modification or rescission. A public hearing may be held, however, if, in its discretion, OFE considers that a public hearing will advance its evaluation of the request.

§ 501.102 OFE evaluation of the record, decision and order for modification or rescission of a rule or order.

(a) OFE will consider the entire administrative record in its evaluation of the decision and order for modification or rescission of a rule or order. OFE may investigate and corroborate any statement in the petition or related documents and may utilize in its evaluation any relevant facts obtained by its investigations. OFE may solicit or accept submissions from third persons relevant to any request under this subpart and all interested persons will be afforded an opportunity to respond to these submissions. OFE may, in its discretion and on its own initiative, convene a conference, if it considers that a conference will advance its evaluation of the request.

(b) *Criteria.* Except where modification or rescission of a rule or order is initiated by OFE, OFE's decision to rescind or modify a rule or order will be based on a determination that there are significantly changed circumstances with respect to the applicability of a particular prohibition or exemption to the requester. OFE believes that there may be ''significantly changed circumstances'', if:

(1) Significant material facts are subsequently discovered which were not known and could not have been known to the petitioner or to OFE at the time of the original proceeding;

(2) A law, regulation, interpretation, ruling, order or decision on appeal that was in effect at the time of the proceeding upon which the rule or order is based and which, if it had been made known to OFE, would have been relevant to the proceeding and would have substantially altered the outcome is subsequently discovered; or

(3) There has been a substantial change in the facts or circumstances upon which an outstanding and continuing order was based, which change occurred during the interval between issuance of the order and the date of filing of the request under this subpart,

and was caused by force or circumstances beyond the requester's control.

§ 501.103 OFE decision.

(a) OFE shall issue an appropriate rule or order after considering the request for modification or rescission of a rule or order and other relevant information received during the proceeding.

(b) OFE will either grant or deny the request for modification or rescission and will briefly state the pertinent facts and legal basis for the decision.

(c) OFE will serve the rule or order granting or denying the request for modification or rescission upon the requester, or, if the action was initiated by OFE, upon the owner or operator of the affected powerplant or installation. OFE will publish a notice of the issuance of a rule or order modifying or rescinding a rule or order in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

Subpart H—Requests for Stay

§ 501.120 Purpose and scope.

(a) This subpart sets forth the procedures for the request and issuance of a stay of a rule or order or other requirement issued or imposed by OFE or these regulations but does not apply to the mandatory stays provided for in sections 202(b) and 301(a) of FUA. The application for a stay under this subpart will only be considered incidental to a proceeding on a request for modification or rescission of a final prohibition rule or order.

(b) The petitioner must comply with all final and effective OFE orders, regulations, rulings, and generally applicable requirements unless a petition for a stay is granted or is applicable under FUA.

§ 501.121 Filing and notice of petitions for stays.

(a)(1) The petition for a stay must be in writing and comply with the general filing requirements stated in § 501.7, in addition to any other requirements set forth in this subpart, and must be filed at the address provided in § 501.11.

(2) A claim for confidential treatment of any information contained in the petition for stay and supporting documents must be in accordance with § 501.7(a)(11), and filed at the address provided in § 501.11.

(b) OFE will publish notice of receipt of a petition for a stay under this subpart in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§ 501.122 Contents.

(a) A petition for a stay shall contain a full and complete statement of all facts believed to be pertinent to the act or transaction for which a stay is sought. The facts shall include, but not be limited to, the criteria listed below in § 501.123(b).

(b) The petitioner may request a conference regarding the application. If the request is not made at the time the application is filed, it must be made as soon thereafter as possible. The request and OFE's determination regarding it will be made in accordance with subpart C of this part.

§ 501.123 Evaluation of the record.

(a) The record in a proceeding on a petition for stay shall consist of the petition and any related documents, evidence submitted at any public proceedings and any other information in the possession of OFE and made part of the record. OFE may investigate and corroborate any statement in the petition or any other document submitted to it and may utilize in its evaluation any relevant facts obtained by its investigations. OFE may solicit or accept submissions from third persons relevant to the petition for stay or other document and any interested person will be afforded an opportunity to respond to these submissions. OFE, on its initiative, may convene a conference, if, in its discretion, it considers that the conference will advance its evaluation of the petition.

(b) *Criteria.* (1) OFE may grant a stay incident to a proceeding on a petition for modification of a rule or order if the petitioner shows:

(i) Irreparable injury will result if the stay is denied;

(ii) There is a strong likelihood of success on the merits;

(iii) The denial of a stay will result in a more immediate hardship or inequity to the petitioner than to other persons affected by the proceeding; and

(iv) It would be desirable for reasons of public policy to grant the stay.

§ 501.124 Decision and order.

(a) OFE will issue an order granting or denying the petition for a stay upon consideration of the request and other relevant information received or obtained during the proceeding.

(b) OFE will include in the order a brief written statement setting forth the relevant facts and the basis of the decision, including any appropriate terms and conditions of the stay.

Subpart I—Requests for Interpretation

§ 501.130 Purpose and scope.

This subpart establishes procedures for filing a formal request for and the issuance of an interpretation of a rule, order or other action by DOE. Any response, whether oral or written, to a general inquiry, or to other than a formal written request for interpretation filed with DOE, is not an interpretation and merely provides general information that may not be relied upon in any proceeding to determine compliance with the applicable requirements of FUA.

§ 501.131 Filing a request for interpretation.

A proceeding to request an interpretation is commenced by the filing of a ''Request for Interpretation (FUA).'' The request must be in writing and must also comply with the general filing requirements stated in § 501.7. Any claims for confidential treatment for any information contained in the request or other related documents must be made pursuant to § 501.7(a)(11). A request for interpretation should be filed with the Assistant General Counsel for Interpretations and Rulings at the address provided in § 501.11.

§ 501.132 Contents of a request for interpretation.

(a) A request for an interpretation must contain a complete statement of all the facts believed to be relevant to the circumstances, acts or transactions that are the subject of the request. The facts must include the names and addresses of all potentially affected persons (if reasonably ascertainable) and a full discussion of the pertinent provisions and relevant facts contained in any documents submitted with the request. Copies of relevant contracts, agreements, leases, instruments, and other documents relating to the request must be submitted if DOE believes they are necessary for determination of any issue pending in the proceeding under this subpart. When the request pertains to only one step in a larger integrated transaction, the requesting party must also submit the facts, circumstances, and other relevant information pertaining to the entire transaction.

(b) The requesting party must include in the request a discussion of all relevant legal authorities, rulings, regulations, interpretations and decisions on appeal relied upon to support the particular interpretation sought.

(c) DOE may refuse to issue an interpretation if it determines that there is insufficient information upon which to base an interpretation.

§ 501.133 DOE evaluation.

(a)(1) The record shall consist of the request for an interpretation and any supporting documents, all relevant evidence presented at any public proceedings, written comments and any information in the possession of DOE that has been made part of the record.

(2) DOE may investigate and corroborate any statement in a request or related documents and may utilize in its evaluation any relevant facts obtained by the investigation. DOE may solicit or accept submissions from third persons relevant to the request for interpretation, or any other document submitted under this subpart, and the person requesting the interpretation will be afforded an opportunity to respond to these submissions.

(3) The General Counsel or his delegate will issue an interpretation on the basis of the information provided in the request, unless that information is supplemented by other information brought to the attention of DOE during the proceeding. DOE's interpretation will, therefore, depend on the accuracy of the factual statements, and the requesting party may rely upon it only

to the extent that the facts of the actual situation correspond to those upon which the interpretation is based.

(b) *Criteria*. (1) DOE will base its FUA interpretations on the DEOA and FUA, as applicable, and the regulations and published rulings of DOE as applied to the specific factual situation presented.

(2) DOE will take into consideration previously issued interpretations dealing with the same or a related issue.

§ 501.134 Issuance and effect of interpretations.

(a) DOE may issue an interpretation after consideration of the request for interpretation and other relevant information received or obtained during the proceeding.

(b) The interpretation will contain a written statement of the information upon which it is based and a legal analysis of and conclusions regarding the application of rulings, regulations and other precedent to the situation presented in the request.

(c) Only those persons to whom an interpretation is specifically addressed, and other persons upon whom the DOE serves the interpretation and who are directly involved in the same transaction or act, are entitled to rely upon it. No person entitled to rely upon an interpretation shall be subject to civil or criminal penalties stated in title VII of FUA for any act taken in reliance upon the interpretation, notwithstanding that the interpretation shall thereafter be declared by judicial or other competent authority to be invalid.

(d) DOE may at any time rescind or modify an interpretation on its own initiative. Rescission or modification shall be made by notifying persons entitled to rely on the interpretation that it is rescinded or modified. This notification will include a statement of the reasons for the rescission or modification and, in the case of a modification, a restatement of the interpretation as modified.

(e) An interpretation is modified by a subsequent amendment to the regulations or ruling to the extent that it is inconsistent with the amended regulation or ruling.

(f) Any person who believes he is directly affected by an interpretation issued by DOE, and who believes that he will be aggrieved by its implementation, may submit a petition for reconsideration of that interpretation to the General Counsel. DOE will acknowledge receipt of all requests for reconsideration; however, this acknowledgement in no way binds DOE to commence any proceeding on the request. If within sixty (60) days of DOE's acknowledgement of the receipt of a request for reconsideration, DOE has not issued either a notice of intent to commence a proceeding to reconsider the interpretation or a modification, revision or rescission of the original interpretation, the request for reconsideration will be deemed denied. DOE may, in its discretion, issue a formal denial of a request for reconsideration if:

(1) The request has not been filed in a timely manner, and good cause therefor has not been shown;

(2) The person requesting reconsideration is not aggrieved or otherwise injured substantially by the interpretation; or

(3) The request is defective because it fails to state and to present facts and legal argument that the interpretation was erroneous in fact or in law, or that it was arbitrary or capricious.

Subpart J—Rulings

§ 501.140 Purpose and scope.

DOE may issue rulings in accordance with the provisions of this subpart. DOE will publish each ruling in the FEDERAL REGISTER and in 10 CFR part 518. A person is entitled to rely upon a ruling to the extent provided in this subpart.

§ 501.141 Criteria for issuance.

(a) The General Counsel may issue a ruling whenever:

(1) There has been a substantial number of inquiries with regard to similar factual situations or a particular section of the regulations; or

(2) It is determined that a ruling will be of assistance to the public in applying the regulations to a specific situation.

§ 501.142 Modification or rescission.

(a) A ruling may be modified or rescinded by—

(1) Publication of the modification or rescission by DOE in the FEDERAL REGISTER and in 10 CFR part 518; or

(2) Adoption of a rule that supersedes or modifies a prior ruling.

(b) A person shall not be subject to the sanctions or penalties stated in these regulations for actions taken in reliance upon a ruling, notwithstanding that the ruling is subsequently declared to be invalid or no longer applicable. A person affected by a ruling may not rely upon it for more than 30 days after it has been rendered invalid pursuant to issuance of a superseding rule by OFE, or after it has been rescinded or modified by DOE.

§ 501.143 Comments.

Any interested person may file a written comment on or objection to a published ruling at any time with the Assistant General Counsel for Interpretations and Rulings at the address provided in § 501.11.

Subpart K—Enforcement

§ 501.160 Purpose and scope.

This subpart provides the procedures by which OFE may initiate enforcement proceedings on its own behalf and by which complaints concerning a violation of the Act or any rule or order thereunder may be filed.

§ 501.161 Filing a complaint.

(a) A complaint under this subpart must be submitted in writing over the signature of the person making the complaint in accordance with the general filing requirements stated in § 501.7. OFE will accept oral complaints that otherwise satisfy the requirements of this subpart, but OFE may request written verification.

(b) A complaint shall be filed at the address provided in § 501.11.

§ 501.162 Contents of a complaint.

A complaint must contain a complete statement of all relevant facts pertaining to the act or transaction that is the subject of the complaint. It must also include the names and addresses of all persons involved (if reasonably ascertainable), a description of the events that led to the complaint, and a statement describing the statutory provision, regulation, ruling, order, rule, or interpretation that allegedly has been violated.

§ 501.163 OFE evaluation.

(a) The record shall consist of the complaint and any supporting documents and all other relevant information developed in the course of any investigations or proceedings related to that complaint. OFE may investigate and corroborate any statement in the complaint or related documents submitted, and may utilize in its evaluation any relevant facts obtained by such investigation or from any other source of information. OFE may solicit or accept submissions from third persons relevant to the complaint or other related documents.

(b) *Confidentiality of information.* OFE will treat as confidential information received in any investigation of a complaint, including the identity of the complainant and the identity of any other persons who provide information to the extent such information is exempt from public disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552. OFE reserves the right to make disclosures that would be in the public interest.

§ 501.164 Decision to initiate enforcement proceedings.

After investigation of a specific complaint or based on any relevant information received or obtained during an investigation, OFE may issue a notice of violation, determine that no violation has occurred, or take such other actions as it deems appropriate. Prior to issuance of a notice of violation, and before commencement of an enforcement proceeding, OFE may transmit a draft of the notice of violation to the potentially affected person in order to promote an informal resolution of the violation.

§ 501.165 Commencement of enforcement proceedings.

(a) Whenever, on the basis of any information available, OFE determines that a person is in violation or about

to be in violation of any provision of these regulations, OFE may issue a notice of violation stating, in writing and with reasonable specificity, the nature of the violation. An enforcement proceeding commences with the issuance of a notice of violation.

(b) *Contents of the notice of violation.* OFE will set forth in the notice of violation the nature of the violation, the relevant facts that OFE believes establish the violation and the legal basis for the conclusions reached therein. OFE may also include with the notice of violation a copy of a proposed order. The notice of violation will also state whether or not OFE proposes to assess civil penalties.

(1) If OFE proposes to assess a civil penalty, a notice of violation will be issued to the violator with an opportunity for a hearing before an Administrative Law Judge, as set forth in §501.166(a)(1) of this part, before any final determination on the violation and penalty are made by OFE. The recipient of the notice will also be informed of his right to elect to have the procedures of §501.166(a)(2) apply, in lieu of the hearing, with respect to a final determination on the assessment of any civil penalty.

(2) If OFE does not propose to assess a civil penalty, the violator will be provided the opportunity for a conference, as set forth in §501.166(b), before a final determination on the violation is made by OFE. OFE may, in its discretion, also provide the violator an opportunity for a hearing pursuant to §501.166(a)(1).

(c) *Service.* OFE will serve the notice of violation in accordance with provisions set forth in §501.6.

(d) *Rescission.* If, after issuance of a notice of violation and any related investigation, OFE finds no basis for the belief that a violation has occurred, is continuing to occur, or is about to occur, OFE may rescind the notice of violation by giving written notice to that effect to the recipient.

§501.166 Hearings and conferences.

(a) *When a civil penalty is proposed—* (1) *Hearing alternative in civil penalty assessment proceedings.* Unless the recipient of a notice of violation elects in writing to have the provisions of paragraph (a)(2) of this section apply, OFE will commence a proceeding to assess a penalty and, prior to a final determination on the violation and assessment of a penalty, provide an opportunity for a hearing pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 554 before an Administrative Law Judge.

(2) *Election alternative in civil penalty assessment proceedings.* The recipient of a notice of violation in which a civil penalty assessment has been proposed may elect, in writing, within thirty (30) days of receipt of the notice, to waive the administrative proceedings described in paragraph (a)(1) of this section. OFE will make a determination on the proposed civil penalty assessment and issue a final order to that effect within forty-five (45) days after receiving notice of the exercise of this election.

(b) *When a civil penalty is not proposed—opportunity to request a conference.* If a person has received a notice of violation in which a civil penalty has not been proposed, he may, within thirty (30) days after receipt of the notice, request a conference with OFE to discuss the notice. In order to request a conference he must comply with the instructions set forth in the notice.

§501.167 Fuel use order.

(a) *General.* OFE will issue a Fuel Use Order if, after considering all the information received during the proceeding, OFE determines that a person has committed, is committing, or is about to commit a violation of FUA or of an order or rule thereunder.

(b) *Contents.* Any Fuel Use Order issued under this section shall set forth the relevant facts and legal basis for the order and where appropriate, the final penalty assessment and the basis therefor. When an administrative hearing is requested under §501.166(a) of this part, the Fuel Use Order will include the recommended findings and conclusions of the Administrative Law Judge (ALJ) and the basis for the penalty assessment. OFE will make a final determination as to any penalty assessment or other appropriate remedy based upon the recommended findings and conclusions of the ALJ and other information in the record of the enforcement proceeding. The order will

be effective upon service, unless otherwise provided therein, or stayed pursuant to § 501.120.

(c) *Service.* OFE will serve a copy of the Fuel Use Order upon any person who was served a copy of the notice of violation and upon all parties to any public proceeding on the notice of violation. OFE will place a copy of each final order on file in the Public Information Office described in § 501.12.

(d) *Judicial review.* Any person against whom a penalty is assessed pursuant to § 501.167(b) after a hearing before an ALJ may, within sixty (60) calendar days after the date of issuance of the order assessing such penalty, institute an action in the United States Court of Appeals for the appropriate judicial circuit for judicial review of such order in accordance with the provisions of section 723 of FUA.

Subpart L—Investigations, Violations, Sanctions and Judicial Actions

§ 501.180 Investigations.

(a) *General.* Pursuant to section 711 of FUA, the DEOA, and in accordance with the provisions of 10 CFR 205.201, OFE may initiate and conduct investigations relating to the scope, nature, and extent of compliance by any person with the rules, regulations, and orders issued by OFE under the authority of the Act, or any order or decree of court relating thereto, or any other agency action. When the circumstances warrant, OFE may issue subpoenas as provided in subpart D of this part. OFE may also conduct investigative conferences in conjunction with any investigation.

(b) Any duly authorized representative of OFE has the authority to conduct an investigation and to take such action as he deems necessary and appropriate to the conduct of the investigation.

(c) *Notification.* If any person is required to furnish information or documentary evidence pursuant to a subpoena or special report order, OFE will, upon written request, inform that person as to the general purposes of the investigation.

(d) *Confidentiality.* OFE shall not disclose any information received during an investigation under this section, including the identities of the person investigated and any other person who provides information, to the extent it is exempt from public disclosure pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552 and 10 CFR part 1004.

§ 501.181 Sanctions.

(a) *General.* (1) A violation of any provision of the Act (other than section 402 of FUA), or any rule or order thereunder shall be subject to the penalties and sanctions provided in subtitle C of title VII of FUA.

(2) Each day that any provision of the Act (other than section 402), or any rule or order thereunder is violated constitutes a separate violation within the meaning of the provisions of this section relating to civil penalties.

(b) *Criminal penalties.* Any person who willfully violates any provision of the Act (other than section 402), or any rule or order thereunder will be subject to a fine of not more than $50,000, or to imprisonment for not more than 1 year, or both, for each violation.

(c) *Civil Penalties.* (1) Any person who violates any provisions of the Act (other than section 402) or any rule or order thereunder will be subject to the following civil penalty, which may not exceed $40,000 for each violation: Any person who operates a powerplant or major fuel burning installation under an exemption, during any 12-calendar-month period, in excess of that authorized in such exemption will be assessed a civil penalty of up to $3.30 for each MCF of natural gas or up to $20 for each barrel of oil used in excess of that authorized in the exemption.

(2) OFE may compromise and settle, and collect civil penalties whenever it considers it to be appropriate or advisable.

(d) *Corporate personnel.* (1) If a director, officer, or agent of a corporation willfully authorizes, orders, or performs any act or practice constituting in whole or in part a violation of the Act, or any rule or order thereunder, he will be subject to the penalties specified in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section without regard to any penalties to which the corporation may be subject. He will not, however, be subject to imprisonment under paragraph (b) of

this section unless he knew of noncompliance by the corporation, or had received from OFE notice of noncompliance by the corporation.

(2) Purposes of this paragraph:

(i) *Agent* includes any employee or other person acting on behalf of the corporation on either a temporary or permanent basis; and

(ii) *Notice of noncompliance* is a final Fuel Use Order issued under §501.167 of this part.

[46 FR 59889, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 62 FR 46183, Sept. 2, 1997; 74 FR 66032, Dec. 14, 2009]

§501.182 Injunctions.

Whenever it appears to OFE that any person has committed, is committing, or is about to commit a violation of any provision of the Act, or any rule or order thereunder, OFE may, in accordance with section 724 of FUA, bring a civil action in the appropriate United States District Court to enjoin such acts or practices. The relief sought may include a mandatory injunction commanding any person to comply with any provision of such provision, order or rule, the violation of which is prohibited by section 724 of FUA and may also include interim equitable relief.

§501.183 Citizen suits.

(a) *General.* A person who believes he is aggrieved by the failure of OFE to perform any nondiscretionary act of duty under the Act may file a Petition for Action for OFE to take such action as he may feel to be proper. This petition must be filed at the address provided in §501.11. The petition must specify the action requested and set forth the facts and legal arguments that constitute the basis for the request. The filing of a Petition for Action will serve as notice to OFE under FUA section 725(b) for purposes of any citizens suit that may be subsequently filed.

(b) *OFE decision.* Within sixty (60) days of receiving the Petition for Action, OFE will notify the person giving notice under this section that it has instituted the action requested or that other described action is being taken, or that other described action is being taken, or that no action is being taken and the reasons therefor.

Subpart M—Use of Natural Gas or Petroleum for Emergency and Unanticipated Equipment Outage Purposes

§501.190 Purpose and scope.

(a) If a person operates a powerplant covered by any of the prohibitions of titles II, III, or IV of FUA, §501.191 of this subpart establishes procedures to be followed for the use of minimum amounts of natural gas or petroleum under FUA section 103(a)(15)(B) in order to alleviate or prevent unanticipated equipment outages and emergencies directly affecting the public health, safety, or welfare that would result from electric power outages.

(b) *Explanatory note:* If a person operates a rental boiler as a powerplant covered by any of the prohibitions of titles II, III, or IV of FUA, he may be able to use the provisions of this subpart for the emergency use of natural gas or petroleum.

[54 FR 52893, Dec. 22, 1989]

§501.191 Use of natural gas or petroleum for certain unanticipated equipment outages and emergencies defined in section 103(a)(15)(B) of the act.

(a) In the event of the occurrence or imminent occurrence of an emergency, or of the occurrence or imminent occurrence of an unanticipated equipment outage in the unit, an owner or operator of a powerplant is automatically permitted to use minimum amounts of natural gas or petroleum in the unit or in a substitute unit to prevent or alleviate the outage or to prevent or alleviate the emergency if he complies with procedures contained in paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) If the use of minimum amounts of petroleum or natural gas is required for purposes specified in this section, the owner or operator must notify OFE of such use by telegram or telephone within 24 hours after the commencement of such use. Immediately thereafter a written confirmation must be submitted to OFE, describing, to the best estimate of the owner or operator,

(1) the nature of the emergency and (2) how long petroleum or natural gas use is likely to be required.

(c) For purposes of this section only:

(1) An *emergency* is the occurrence or threat of imminent occurrence of a condition which results or would result from an electric power outage and directly effects or would directly effect the public health, safety or welfare;

(2) *Unanticipated equipment outage* shall mean an unexpected outage due to equipment failure.

(3) *Minimum amounts required to alleviate or prevent* shall mean:

(i) For powerplants, the amounts of natural gas or petroleum required to prevent curtailment of electric supply where the operating utility has, to the maximum extent possible, utilized alternate fuel-fired capacity to prevent such curtailment. Note—A utility operating hydroelectric facilities may take into account seasonal fluctuations in storage capacity and shall be permitted to prevent depletion of stored power-producing capacity as deemed necessary by the utility; and

(ii) For installations, the amounts of natural gas or petroleum required to meet plant protection or human health and safety needs, including services to hospitals, public transportation facilities, sanitation, or water supply and pumping.

[46 FR 59889, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52893, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 501.192 [Reserved]

PART 503—NEW FACILITIES

Subpart A—General Prohibition

Sec.
503.1 Purpose and scope.
503.2 Prohibition.
503.3 [Reserved]

Subpart B—General Requirements for Exemptions

503.4 Purpose and scope.
503.5 Contents of petition.
503.6 Cost calculations for new powerplants and installations.
503.7 State approval—general requirement for new powerplants.
503.8 No alternate power supply—general requirement for certain exemptions for new powerplants.
503.9 Use of mixtures—general requirement for certain permanent exemptions.
503.10 Use of fluidized bed combustion not feasible—general requirement for permanent exemptions.
503.11 Alternative sites—general requirement for permanent exemptions for new powerplants.
503.12 Terms and conditions; compliance plans.
503.13 Environmental impact analysis.
503.14 Fuels search.

Subpart C—Temporary Exemptions for New Facilities

503.20 Purpose and scope.
503.21 Lack of alternate fuel supply.
503.22 Site limitations.
503.23 Inability to comply with applicable environmental requirements.
503.24 Future use of synthetic fuels.
503.25 Public interest.

Subpart D—Permanent Exemptions for New Facilities

503.30 Purpose and scope.
503.31 Lack of alternate fuel supply for the first 10 years of useful life.
503.32 Lack of alternate fuel supply at a cost which does not substantially exceed the cost of using imported petroleum.
503.33 Site limitations.
503.34 Inability to comply with applicable environmental requirements.
503.35 Inability to obtain adequate capital.
503.36 State or local requirements.
503.37 Cogeneration.
503.38 Permanent exemption for certain fuel mixtures containing natural gas or petroleum.
503.39–503.44 [Reserved]

AUTHORITY: Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. § 7101 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, 92 Stat. 3289 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Energy Security Act, Pub. L. 96–294, 94 Stat. 611 (42 U.S.C. 8701 *et seq.*); E.O. 1209, 42 FR 46267, September 15, 1977.

SOURCE: 46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, unless otherwise noted.

(OMB Control No.: 1903–0075. See 46 FR 63209, Dec. 31, 1981.)

Subpart A—General Prohibition

§ 503.1 Purpose and scope.

This subpart sets forth the statutory prohibition imposed by the Act upon new powerplants. The prohibition in the subpart applies to all new baseload

electric powerplants unless an exemption has been granted by OFE under subparts C and D of this part. Any person who owns, controls, rents, leases or operates a new powerplant that is subject to the prohibition may be subject to sanctions provided by the Act or these regulations.

[54 FR 52893, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.2 Prohibition.

Section 201 of the Act prohibits, unless an exemption has been granted under subpart C or D of this part, any new electric powerplant from being constructed or operated as a baseload powerplant without the capability to use coal or another alternate fuel as a primary energy source.

[54 FR 52893, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.3 [Reserved]

Subpart B—General Requirements for Exemptions

§ 503.4 Purpose and scope.

This subpart establishes the general requirements necessary to qualify for either a temporary or permanent exemption under this part and sets out the methodology for calculating the cost of using an alternate fuel and the cost of using imported petroleum.

§ 503.5 Contents of petition.

Before OFE will accept a petition for either a temporary or permanent exemption under this part, the petition must include all of the evidence and information required in this part and part 501 of this chapter.

§ 503.6 Cost calculations for new powerplants and installations.

(a) *General.* (1) This calculation compares the cost of using alternate fuel to the cost of using imported petroleum. It must be performed for each alternate fuel and/or alternate site that the petitioner is required to examine.

(2) The cost of using an alternate fuel as a primary energy source will be deemed to substantially exceed the cost of using imported petroleum if the difference between the cost of using alternate fuel and the cost of using imported oil is greater than zero.

(3) There are two comparative cost calculations—a general cost test and a special cost test. Both take into consideration cash outlays for capital investments, annual expenses, and the effect of depreciation and taxes on cash flow. To demonstrate eligibility for a permanent exemption, a petitioner must use the procedures specified in the general cost test (paragraph (b) of this section). To demonstrate eligibility for a temporary exemption, the petitioner may apply the procedures specified in either the general cost test or the special cost test (paragraph (c) of this section).

(b) *Cost calculation—general cost test.* (1) A petitioner may be eligible for a permanent exemption if he can demonstrate that the cost of using an alternate fuel from the first year of operation substantially exceeds the cost of using imported petroleum. Unless the best practicable cost estimates as prescribed below will not materially change during the first ten years of operation of the unit (given the best information available at the time the petition is filed), the petitioner must also demonstrate that the cost of using an alternate fuel beginning at any time within the first ten years of operation and using imported petroleum or natural gas until such time (*i.e.*, delayed use of alternate fuel) would substantially exceed the cost of using only imported petroleum.

(2) The petitioner would only be eligible for a temporary exemption if the computed costs of delayed alternate fuel use, commencing at the start of the second through eleventh years of operation, do not always substantially exceed the cost of using only imported petroleum. The length of the temporary exemption would be the minimum period from the start of operation in which the cost of using alternate fuel substantially exceeds the cost of using imported petroleum.

(3) To conduct the general cost test, calculate the difference (DELTA) between the cost of using an alternate fuel (COST(ALTERNATE)) and the cost of using imported petroleum (COST(OIL)) using Equations 1 through 3 below and the comparison procedures in paragraph (b)(5) of this section.

EQ 1 DELTA = COST (ALTERNATE) - COST (OIL)

where COST(ALTERNATE) and COST(OIL) are determined by:

$$\text{EQ 2} \qquad \text{COST} = I + \sum_{i=1}^{N} \frac{(OM_i + FL_i)(1-t_i)}{(1+k)^i}$$

and I (capital investment) is:

$$\text{EQ 3} \qquad I = \sum_{i=-g}^{N} \frac{I_i - ITC_i - S_i - t_i(DPR_i)\left(\frac{IX_e}{IX_i}\right)}{(1+k)^i}$$

(4) The terms in Equations 2 and 3 are defined as follows:

i = Year. i is a specified year either before year 0 or after year 0. Year 0 is the year before the unit becomes operational. For example, in the third year before the unit becomes operational, i would equal −2, and in the third year following commencement of operations of the unit, i would equal + 3. Years are represented by 52 week periods prior to or following the date on which the unit becomes operational. Outlays before the unit becomes operational are future valued to the year before the unit becomes operational (year 0), and outlays after the unit becomes operational are present valued to the year before the unit becomes operational. Year 0 must be the same for the units being compared.

g = The number of years prior to the year before the unit becomes operational (year 0) that (1) a cash outlay is first made for capital investments, or (2) an investment tax credit is first used—whichever occurs first.

N = The useful life of the unit (see paragraph (d)(5) of this section).

I_i = Yearly cash outlay (in dollars) from the year outlays first occur to the last year of the unit's useful life for capital investments. (See paragraph (d)(2) of this section for the items that must be included.)

OM_i = Annual cash outlay in year i (in dollars) for all operations and maintenance expenses except fuel (*i.e.*, all non-capital and non-fuel cash outlays caused by putting the capital investments (I) into service). This may include labor, materials, insurance, taxes (except income taxes), etc. (See paragraph (d)(3) of this section.)

S_i = Salvage value of capital investment (in dollars) in year i.

FL_i = Annual cash outlay for delivered fuel expenses (in dollars) in year i. (See paragraph (d)(3) of this section for FL_i calculation instructions and appendix II of these regulations for the procedures to determine fuel price.)

k = The discount rate expressed as a fraction (see paragraph (d)(4) of this section).

ITC_i = Federal investment tax credit used in year i resulting from capital investments (see paragraph (d)(6) of this section).

DPR_i = Depreciation in year i resulting from capital investments (see paragraph (d)(6) of this section).

t_i = Marginal income tax rate in year i (see paragraph (d)(6) of this section).

IX_i = Inflation index value for year i (see appendix II to part 504 for method of computation).

IX_e = Inflation index value for the year e, the year before the asset is placed in service.

(5) The step-by-step procedure that follows shows the comparison that the petitioner must make.

(i) Compute the cost of using an alternate fuel (COST(ALTERNATE)) unit throughout the useful life of the unit using Equations 2 and 3.

(ii) Compute the cost of using oil or natural gas (COST(OIL)) throughout the useful life of the unit using Equations 2 and 3.

(iii) Using Equation 1, compute the difference (DELTA) between COST (ALTERNATE) and COST (OIL). If the difference (DELTA) is less than or equal to zero, a petitioner is not eligible for a permanent or temporary exemption using the general cost test and need not complete the remainder of the general cost test calculation. However, he still may be eligible for a temporary exemption using the special cost test (paragraph (c) of this section). If the difference (DELTA) is greater than zero and if the best practicable cost estimates will not materially change during the first ten years of operation (given the best information available at the time the petition is filed), the petitioner has completed the test and is eligible for a permanent exemption. However, if the best practicable cost estimate will materially change during the first ten years, the petitioner must complete the remainder of the general cost test—the delayed use calculations which follow.

(iv) Recompute COST (ALTERNATE) with Equations 2 and 3, assuming that an alternate fuel is not used as the primary energy source until the start of the second year of operation and that imported petroleum or natural gas is used for the first year of operation. All cash outlays should reflect postponed use of alternate fuel.

(v) Successively recompute COST (ALTERNATE) with Equations 2 and 3, assuming that the alternate fuel use is postponed until the start of the third year, fourth year, and so on, through the beginning of the eleventh year of operation (with imported petroleum or natural gas used in the years preceding alternate fuel use).

(vi) Compute the difference (DELTA) between each of the ten COST(ALTERNATE)s calculated in paragraph (b)(5) (iv) and (v) of this section and the COST(OIL) calculated in paragraph (b)(5)(ii) of this section.

(vii) If *all* the DELTAs computed in paragraph (b)(5) (iii) and (vi) of this section are greater than zero, the petitioner is eligible for a permanent exemption. If one or more of the DELTAs is less than or equal to zero, he is eligible for a temporary exemption for the period beginning at the start of the first year of operation and terminating at the beginning of the first year in which a DELTA is zero or less.

(c) *Cost calculations—special cost test.* (1) A petitioner may be eligible for a temporary exemption if he demonstrates that the cost of using an alternate fuel will substantially exceed the cost of using imported petroleum or (natural gas) over the period of the proposed exemption. The period of the proposed temporary exemption may not exceed ten years.

The petitioner must demonstrate that the cost of using an alternate fuel substantially exceeds the cost of using imported petroleum for the first year of operation, the first two years of operation, and so forth, through the period of the proposed exemption. OFE will limit the duration of a temporary exemption to the shortest time possible.

(2) To conduct the test, calculate the difference (DELTA) between the cost of using an alternate fuel (COST (ALTERNATE)) and the cost of using imported petroleum (COST (OIL)) using Equations 4 and 5 below, Equation 3 (paragraph (b)(3) of this section), and the comparison procedures in paragraph (c)(4) of this section.

EQ 4 DELTA = COST (ALTERNATE) - COST (OIL)

where COST(ALTERNATE) and COST(OIL) are determined by:

EQ 5
$$\text{COST} = I \times \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{P} (1+k)^{-i}}{\sum_{i=1}^{N} (1+k)^{-i}} + \sum_{i=1}^{P} \frac{(OM_i+FL_i)(1-t_i)}{(1+k)^i}$$

Capital investment (I) is calculated with Equation 3 (paragraph (b)(3) of this section).

(3) The terms in Equation 5 are the same as those in Equation 2 with the addition of P, the length of the proposed temporary exemption in years. (See paragraph (b)(4) of this section for other terms.)

(4) The step-by-step procedure that follows shows the comparisons which must be made.

(i) Using Equation 5, compute the cost of using an alternate fuel (COST(ALTERNATE)) assuming the length of the proposed exemption is one year.

(ii) Likewise, compute the cost of using imported petroleum or natural gas (COST(OIL)) assuming the length of the proposed exemption is one year.

(iii) Compute the difference (DELTA) between COST (ALTERNATE) and COST (OIL) using Equation 4.

(iv) Repeat the calculations made in (i), (ii), and (iii) above, assuming the length of the proposed exemption is two years, three years, four years, and so on, up through the period of the proposed exemption.

(v) A petitioner is eligible for a temporary exemption for the period beginning at the start of the first year of operation and terminating at the beginning of the first year in which a DELTA is zero or less.

(d) *Information on parameters used in the calculations.* (1) All estimated expenditures, except fuel, shall be expressed in real terms (unadjusted for inflation) by using the prices in effect at the time the petition is submitted. Instructions for fuel price calculations are contained in appendix II.

(2) Capital investment yearly cash outlays (I_i) must include all items that are capital investments for Federal income tax purposes. All purchased equipment that has a useful life greater than one year, capitalized engineering costs, land, construction, environmental offsets, fuel inventory, transmission facilities, piping, etc., that are necessary for the operation of the unit must be included. However, an item must only be included if a cash outlay is required after the decision has been made to build the unit; sunk costs must not be included (*e.g.*, if the firm owns the land, its purchase price may not be included).

NOTE: The guidelines for the fuel inventory for powerplants not using natural gas shall be: (a) All powerplants with only steam driven turbines—78 days, (b) all powerplants with only combustion turbines—142 days, (c) all powerplants with combined cycles—both steam driven turbines and combustion turbines—142 days. The guidelines for the fuel inventory for installations not using natural gas shall be the greater of: (1) 21 days fuel supply, or (2) sufficient fuel to fill sixty (60) percent of the storage volume. The guidelines for the fuel inventory for all facilities using natural gas shall be zero unless the gas supply is interruptible in which case an appropriate inventory of back-up fuel must be included. Other inventory levels may be used if they are more appropriate than these guidelines; however, the source or derivation of these levels must be discussed in the evidential summary.

(3)(i) The annual cash outlays for operations and maintenance expense (OM_i) and fuel expense (FL_i) for a powerplant may be computed by one of the following three methods; however, the one chosen must be consistently applied throughout the analysis.

(A) Assume the energy produced by the powerplant equals seventy (70) percent of design capacity times 8760 hours for each year during the life of the powerplant, and compute cash outlays for operations, maintenance, and fuel expenses for the powerplant.

(B) *Economically dispatch the new powerplant*. The cash outlays for operations, maintenance, and fuel expenses of all powerplants being dispatched (where oil and natural gas are priced according to the procedures of appendix II[1]) are the corresponding expenses for the purpose of the cost calculation. The dispatch analysis area must be that area with which the firm currently dispatches, anticipates dispatching, and will be interconnected. It must also include all anticipated exchanges of energy with other utilities or powerpools. The outlays for operations, maintenance, and fuel may also be estimated using a methodology that incorporates the benefits of economically dispatching units and provides consistent treatment in the alternate fuel and oil or natural gas cases being compared.

(C) Use a dispatch analysis to project the energy produced by the powerplant for a representative (not atypical) year of operation when consuming an alternate fuel. Compute the cash outlays for operations, maintenance, and fuel expenses for the powerplant based upon the level of energy production estimated for the representative year. The dispatch analysis and fuel expenses for the cost calculation must include oil and natural gas priced according to the procedures of appendix II.[1]

(ii) When computing the annual cash outlays for operations and maintenance expense (OM_i) and fuel expense (FL_i) for an installation, specify the firing rates and the length of time each firing rate will be maintained.

(4) The discount rate (k) for analyses is 2.9 percent or that which is computed as specified in appendix I. The method of computing the inflation index (IX) is shown in appendix II to part 504. OFE will modify these specified rates from time to time as required by changed conditions after public notice and an opportunity to comment. However, the relevant set of specified rates for a specific petition for exemption will be the set in effect at the time the petition is submitted or the set in effect at the time a decision is rendered, whichever set is more favorable to the petitioner.

(5)(i) The guidelines for the useful life (N) of all powerplants except nuclear will be thirty-five (35) years. The guidelines for the useful life of a nuclear powerplant will be forty (40) years. The guidelines for the useful life of major fuel burning installations will be forty (40) years. Other useful life projections may be used if they are more appropriate than these guidelines; however, the source or derivation of these projections must be contained in the evidential summary. The summary should include a discussion of engineering, economic historical or other evidence.

(ii) If the units being compared have different useful lives, the petitioner will have to modify his calculation so that the two cash flows being compared have the length of the shorter useful life. To do this, (A) use the shorter of the two useful lives in Equations 2 and 5 for both units, and (B) multiply capital investment (I) of the unit with the longer life (computed with Equation 3) by the following adjustment factor (A):

$$\text{EQ 6} \quad A = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{Q}(1+k)^{-i}}{\sum_{i=1}^{R}(1+k)^{-i}}$$

where:

R = The useful life of the facility with the longer life.

Q = The useful life of the facility with the shorter life.

k = The discount rate (see paragraph (d)(4) above).

(6) All Federal investment tax credits (ITC_i) and depreciation (PR_i) values are those used for Federal income tax purposes and must be applied consistently throughout the analysis and in a manner consistent with the Federal tax

laws. All investment tax credits allowed under Federal tax law must be reflected in the computations. The petitioner must use the method of depreciation which results in the greatest present value of the cash flow due to the tax and depreciation effect. The marginal income tax rate (t_i) is the firm's anticipated marginal Federal income tax rate in year i. The relevant investment tax credits, depreciation methodology, and marginal Federal income tax rates for a specific exemption petition will be those prescribed by Federal law in effect (or those tax parameters which are known with certainty will be in effect) at the time a decision is rendered. (However, if an investment tax credit expires in a certain year under the law which is in effect at the time the petition is submitted, the petitioner must assume that it will in fact expire in that year.)

(7) If powerplants are being compared, the design capacities or the maximum sustained energy per unit of time that could be produced must be the same. If installations are being compared, the maximum sustained energy per unit of time that could be produced must be the same.

(8) All estimated cash outlays must be computed in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles consistently applied.

(9) The scope of the estimates of relevant costs (as discussed above) of units being compared must be the same.

(10) All allowances for uncertainty and risk in the cost estimates must be explicit.

(11) All cash outlays must be net of any government subsidies or grants.

(e) *Evidence in support of the cost calculation.* Petitioners for an exemption which requires the use of the cost calculation shall certify that the cost of using alternate fuel substantially exceeds the cost of using oil as primary energy source as calculated in this section. A brief summary of the petitioner's supporting calculations and estimates shall be submitted with the certification. The summary should include the following:

(1) Cash outlays, Investment tax credits, depreciation methodologies, and anticipated salvage for capital investments including a description of all major construction and equipment;

(2) Annual cash outlays for operations and maintenance expenses including the formulas used to compute them; and

(3) Annual cash outlays for delivered fuel expenses including the formulas used to compute them.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981; 46 FR 63033, Dec. 30, 1981; 47 FR 15314, Apr. 9, 1982; 54 FR 52893, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.7 State approval—general requirement for new powerplants.

(a) Where approvals by the appropriate State regulatory authority are required prior to the construction or use of a new powerplant, a petition for an exemption for consideration by OFE may be submitted to OFE prior to obtaining such approvals from the State regulatory authority.

(b) An exemption granted for a powerplant shall not become effective until an adequate demonstration has been made to OFE that all applicable approvals required by the State regulatory authorities have been obtained.

§ 503.8 No alternate power supply—general requirement for certain exemptions for new powerplants.

(a) *Application.* To qualify for an exemption, except in the case of an exemption for cogeneration units, section 213(c) of the Act requires a demonstration that, despite reasonable good faith efforts, there is no alternative supply of electric power available within a reasonable distance at a reasonable cost without impairing short-run or long-run reliability of service. If a petitioner is unable to demonstrate that there is no alternate supply during the first year of operation, OFE will conclude that the absence of the proposed powerplant will not impair short-term reliability of service, and as a result will not grant the exemption. Such action would not impair long-term reliability of service, since a petition may be submitted for a powerplant that would begin operation in a subsequent year.

(b) *Criteria.* To meet the demonstration required under paragraph (a) of this section, a petitioner must certify that:

(1) A diligent effort has been made to purchase firm power for the first year of operation to cover all or part of the projected shortfall at a cost that is less than ten (10) percent above the annualized cost of generating power from the proposed plant (including the capital, operation and maintenance expenses, and fuel prices); and

(2)(i) Despite these efforts, the reserve margin in the petitioner's electric region, normal dispatch area, or service area, in the absence of the proposed plant, would fall below twenty (20) percent during the first year of proposed operation; or

(ii) Despite these efforts, the reserve margin will be greater than twenty (20) percent but reliability of service would be impaired. In such case, the certification must be related to factors not included in the calculation of reserve margin, such as transmission constraints.

(c) *Evidence.* The petition must include the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Duly executed certification required under paragraph (b) of this section; and

(2) Exhibits containing the basis for the certification submitted under this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support its certification to this general requirement).

(d) *FERC consultation.* OFE will forward a copy of any petition for which a showing is required under this section to FERC promptly after it is filed with OFE, and OFE will consult with FERC before making the no alternate supply of power finding.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 15314, Apr. 9, 1982; 54 FR 52894, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.9 Use of mixtures—general requirement for certain permanent exemptions.

(a) *Criteria.* To qualify for a permanent exemption, except in the case of an exemption for fuel mixtures, section 213(a)(1) of the Act requires a demonstration that the use of a mixture of natural gas and petroleum and an alternate fuel for which an exemption under 10 CFR 503.38 (Fuel mixtures) would be available, would not be economically or technically feasible.

(b) *Evidence.* The petition must include the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Duly executed certifications to the criteria set forth in paragraph (a) of this section; and

(2) Exhibits containing the basis for the certifications submitted under this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support its certifications to this general requirement.)

NOTE: In meeting this general requirement, OFE will require a petitioner to examine only mixtures of oil and coal and natural gas and coal, or, where petitioner wishes to examine an additional or substitute mixture, such other alternate fuels as OFE and the petitioner agree are reasonable to petitioner's circumstances.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52894, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.10 Use of fluidized bed combustion not feasible—general requirement for permanent exemptions.

(a) *OFE finding.* Except in the case of an exemption for fuel mixtures, OFE may deny permanent exemptions authorized under section 212 of the Act if OFE finds on a site-specific or generic basis that use of a method of fluidized bed combustion of an alternate fuel is economically and technically feasible.

(b) *Demonstration.* If OFE has made such a finding, OFE will deny a petitioner's request for exemption unless the petitioner demonstrated that the use of a method of fluidized bed combustion is not economically or technically feasible. The petition or any supplement thereto required by OFE must include the following evidence:

(1) If use of a method of fluidized bed combustion were to be required, evidence that the petitioner would be eligible for a permanent exemption for lack of alternate fuel supply, site limitations, environmental requirements, lack of adequate capital, or State or local requirements; or

(2) Use of a method of fluidized bed combustion is not technically or economically feasible due to design or special circumstances.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52894, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.11 Alternative sites—general requirement for permanent exemptions for new powerplants.

(a) *Criteria*. To qualify for permanent exemption due to lack of alternate fuel supply, site limitations, environmental requirements, or inadequate capital, section 212(a) of the Act requires a demonstration that one of these exemptions would be available for any reasonable alternative site for the facility.

(b) *Evidence*. The petition must include the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Duly executed certifications to the criteria set forth in paragraph (a) of this section; and

(2) Exhibits containing the basis for the certifications submitted under this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support its certifications to this general requirement).

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52894, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.12 Terms and conditions; compliance plans.

(a) *Terms and conditions generally*. A petitioner must comply with any terms and conditions imposed upon the grant of an exemption petition. OFE will limit any such terms and conditions to the unit(s) which is the subject of the petition.

(b) *Compliance plans for temporary exemptions*. (1) Any compliance plan required to accompany a petition for a temporary exemption shall include the following:

(i) A detailed schedule of progressive events and the dates upon which the events are to take place, indicating how compliance with the applicable prohibitions of the Act will occur;

(ii) Evidence of binding contracts for fuel, or for facilities for the production of fuel, which are required for compliance with the applicable prohibitions of the Act;

(iii) A schedule indicating how any necessary permits and approvals required to burn an alternate fuel will be obtained; and

(iv) Any other documentary evidence which indicates an ability to comply with the applicable prohibitions of the Act.

(2) Any exemption for which a compliance plan is required shall not be effective until the compliance plan is approved by DOE.

(3) If the petition is granted, an updated, duly executed plan must be submitted to OFE within one (1) month of an alteration of any milestone in the compliance plan, together with the reasons for the alteration and its impact upon the scheduling of all other milestones in the plan.

§ 503.13 Environmental impact analysis.

In order to enable OFE to comply with NEPA, a petitioner must include the information indicated in this section if a permanent exemption is requested. Material which has been prepared pursuant to any Federal, State or local requirement for environmental information for this unit or site may be incorporated by reference and appended to the petition. Guidelines issued by OFE for environmental reports should be used in preparing this analysis (44 FR 63740, November 5, 1979). These guidelines, which are also available in the OFE public document room, have been designed to insure that environmental reports follow the format prescribed by Council on Environmental Quality final regulations implementing NEPA. The guidelines are subject to discussion at a prepetition conference and to modification according to the facts of a particular case.

(a) All petitions for permanent exemptions must contain the following information:

(1) A description of the facility, including site location, and surroundings, alternative site(s), the facility's current proposed operations, its

fuel capability, and its pollution abatement systems and equipment (including those systems and equipment necessary for all fuel scenarios considered);

(2) A description of the existing environment, including air, water, and land resources;

(3) Direct and indirect environmental impacts of the proposed action including impacts of alternative fuel scenarios, and no build alternatives.

(4) Regulatory requirements governing the facility, including a description of Federal, State and local requirements for air, water, noise and solid waste disposal which must be met for each fuel considered.

(b) For exemptions for cogeneration, the information enumerated below is to be submitted in lieu of the information required by paragraph (a) of this section. However, submission of the following information merely establishes a rebuttable presumption that the grant or denial of the exemption would have no significant environmental impact. OFE may, in individual cases, during the course of the administrative proceeding, determine that additional environmental information is required. In such cases, the petitioner will be required to submit the information described in paragraph (a) of this section.

(1) A certification that the petitioner will, prior to operating the unit under the exemption, secure all applicable environmental permits and approvals pursuant to, but not limited to, the following: Clean Air Act, Rivers and Harbors Act, Coastal Zone Management Act, Safe Drinking Water Act, Resource Conservation and Recovery Act; and

(2) Information required by the following environmental checklist must be provided and certified as accurate:

Environmental Checklist for FUA Certification Exemptions Instructions

All questions are to be answered by placing a check in the appropriate box. N/A represents (not applicable). Although it is not required, the petitioner may elaborate on any question in writing on a separate sheet of paper.

	Yes	No	N/A
(1) Is your facility located in, or will it affect a wetland (Protection of Wetlands Executive Order No. 11990)?.			
(2) Is your facility located in, or will it affect, a 100-year floodplain (Floodplain Management Executive Order No. 11988)?.			
(3) Will your facility affect a designated wild, scenic, or recreation river (Wild and Scenic Rivers Act)?.			
(4)(A) Is your facility located within a county in which critical habitat for threatened or endangered species are known to exist (Endangered Species Act)?.			
(4)(B) Has a qualified biologist determined that your facility will not affect any species on the Threatened and Endangered Species list?.			
(5) Is your facility located on, or will it affect land that has been classified as prime or unique farmland or rangeland by the U.S. Department of Agriculture?.			
(6) Is your facility located on, or will it affect, historical archaeological, or cultural resources that have been designated pursuant to the National Historic Preservation Act?.			

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 15315, Apr. 9, 1982; 51 FR 18866, May 22, 1986; 52 FR 658, Jan. 7, 1987; 54 FR 52894, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.14 Fuels search.

Prior to submitting a petition for a permanent exemption for lack of alternate fuel supply, site limitations, inadequate capital, or state or local requirements, a petitioner must examine the use of conventional solid coal as a primary energy source at the site under consideration, and at reasonable alternative sites. Where a petitioner believes that its use of such coal would be infeasible, however, and where OFE and the petitioner can reach accord, it may evaluate use of a different alternate fuel in lieu of solid coal. A petitioner of these exemptions must demonstrate for any fuel examined that he would qualify for an exemption.

[54 FR 52894, Dec. 22, 1989]

Subpart C—Temporary Exemptions for New Facilities

§ 503.20 Purpose and scope.

(a) This subpart implements the provisions contained in section 211 of the Act with regard to temporary exemptions for new facilities.

(b) This subpart establishes the criteria and standards which owners or operators of new powerplants who petition for a temporary exemption must meet to sustain their burden of proof under the Act.

(c) All petitions for temporary exemptions shall be submitted in accordance with the procedures set out in part 501 of this chapter and the applicable requirements of part 503 of these regulations.

(d) The duration of any temporary exemption granted under this subpart shall be measured from the date that the facility is placed in service using petroleum or natural gas.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52894, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.21 Lack of alternate fuel supply.

(a) *Eligibility*. Section 211(a)(1) of the Act provides for a temporary exemption due to the unavailability of an adequate and reliable supply of an alternate fuel at a cost which does not substantially exceed the cost of using imported petroleum. To qualify, a petitioner must certify that:

(1) A good faith effort has been to obtain an adequate and reliable supply of an alternate fuel of the quality necessary to conform to the design and operational requirements of the unit;

(2) For the period of the proposed exemption, the cost of using such alternate fuel would substantially exceed the cost of using imported petroleum as a primary energy source as defined in § 503.6 (Cost calculation) of these regulations;

(3) The petitioner will be able to comply with the applicable prohibitions of the Act at the end of the proposed exemption period; and

(4) No alternate power supply exists, as required under § 503.8 of these regulations.

(b) *Evidence required in support of a petition*. The petition must include the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Duly executed certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section;

(2) Exhibits containing the basis for the certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support the granting of this exemption);

(3) All data required by § 503.6 (cost calculation) of these regulations necessary for computing the cost calculation formula; and

(4) The anticipated duration of the lack of alternate fuel supply which constitutes the basis for the exemption.

(c) *Duration*. This temporary exemption, taking into account any extensions or renewals, may not exceed 10 years.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 15315, Apr. 9, 1982; 54 FR 52894, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.22 Site limitations.

(a) *Eligibility*. Section 211(a)(2) of the Act provides for a temporary exemption due to a site limitation. To qualify for such an exemption, a petitioner must certify that:

(1) One or more specific physical limitations relevant to the location or operation of the proposed facility exist which, despite diligent good faith efforts, cannot be overcome before the end of the proposed exemption period;

(2) The petitioner will be able to comply with the applicable prohibitions of the Act at the end of the proposed exemption period; and

(3) No alternate power supply exists, as required under § 503.8 of these regulations.

NOTE: Examples of the types of site limitations to which a petitioner may certify in order to qualify for this exemption include:

(i) Inaccessability of alternate fuels as a result of a specific physical limitation;

(ii) Unavailability of transportation facilities for alternate fuels;

(iii) Unavailability of adequate land or facilities for handling, using, or storing an alternate fuel;

(iv) Unavailability of adequate land or facilities for controlling and disposing of wastes, including pollution control equipment or devices necessary to assure compliance with applicable environmental requirements;

(v) Unavailability of adequate and reliable supply of water, including water for use in compliance with applicable environmental requirements; or

(vi) Other site limitations exist which will not permit the location or operation of the proposed unit using an alternate fuel.

(b) *Evidence required in support of a petition*. The petition must include the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Duly executed certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section;

(2) Exhibits containing the basis for the certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support the granting of this exemption); and

(3) The anticipated duration of the site limitation which constitutes the basis for the exemption.

(c) *Duration*. This temporary exemption, taking into account any extensions and renewals, may not exceed five years.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52894, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.23 Inability to comply with applicable environmental requirements.

(a) *Eligibility*. Section 211(a)(3) of the Act provides for a temporary exemption due to an inability to comply with applicable environmental requirements. To qualify a petitioner must demonstrate that despite diligent good faith efforts:

(1) The petitioner will be unable, as of the projected date of commencement of operation, to comply with the applicable prohibitions of the Act without violating applicable Federal or State environmental requirements; and

(2) The petitioner will be able to comply with the applicable prohibitions of the Act and with applicable environmental requirements by the end of the temporary exemption period.

NOTE: (1) For purposes of considering an exemption under this section, OFE's decision will be based solely on an analysis of the petitioner's capacity to physically achieve applicable environmental requirements. The petition should be directed toward those conditions or circumstances which make it physically impossible to comply during the temporary exemption period. The cost of compliance is not relevant, but cost-related considerations may be presented as part of a demonstration submitted under § 503.21.

(2) Prior to submitting an exemption petition, it is recommended that a meeting be requested with OFE and EPA or the appropriate State or local regulatory agency to discuss options for operating an alternate fuel fired facility in compliance with applicable environmental requirements.

(b) *Evidence required in support of a petition*. The petition must include the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Where the petitioner has applied for a construction permit from EPA or an appropriate State agency prior to petitioning for an exemption under this section, a copy of that application and synopsis of supporting documents filed with or subsequent to that application must be submitted to OFE with the petition or at the time filed with the permitting agency;

(2) To the extent applicable, a copy of the EPA or State denial of the construction permit application;

(3) To the extent applicable, a synopsis of the administrative record of the EPA or State or local permit proceedings;

(4) To the extent applicable, a summary of the technology upon which the denial was based, including a performance comparison between the proposed technology and that technology which would provide the maximum possible reduction of pollution;

(5) An examination of the environmental compliance of the facility, including an analysis of its ability to meet applicable standards and criteria when using both the proposed fuel and the alternate fuel(s) which would provide the basis for exemption. All such analysis must be based on accepted analytical techniques, such as air quality

modeling, and reflect current conditions of the area which would be affected by the facility. The petitioner is responsible for obtaining the necessary data to accurately characterize these conditions. Environmental compliance must be examined in the context of available pollution control equipment which would provide the maximum possible reduction of pollution. The analysis must contain: (i) Requests for bids and other inquiries made and responses received by the petitioner concerning the availability and performance of pollution control equipment; (ii) contracts signed, if any, for an alternate fuel supply and for the purchase and installation of pollution control equipment; or (iii) other comparable evidence such as technical studies documenting the efficacy of equipment to meet applicable requirements;

(6) An examination of any regulatory options available to the petitioner in seeking to achieve environmental compliance (such as offsets, variances, and State Implementation Plan revisions);

(7) Any other documentation which demonstrates an inability to comply with applicable environmental requirements;

(8) No alternate power supply exists, as required under § 503.8 of these regulations.

(c) *Duration*. This temporary exemption, taking into account any extension and renewals, may not exceed 5 years.

(d) *Certification alternative*. (1) To qualify for this exemption, in lieu of meeting the evidentiary requirements of paragraph (b) of this chapter, a petitioner may certify that, for the period of the exemption:

(i) The site for the facility is or will be located in a Class I area or Class II area in which the allowable increment established by law has been consumed, as defined in part C of the Clean Air Act; the use of an alternate fuel will cause or contribute to concentrations of pollutants which would exceed the maximum allowable increases in a Class I or Class II area even with the application of best available control technology; the site for the facility is or will be located in a non-attainment area as defined in part D of the Clean Air Act for any pollutant which would be emitted by the facility; or, even with the application of the lowest achievable emission rate, the use of an alternate fuel will cause or contribute to concentrations in an air quality control region, of a pollutant for which any national ambient air quality standard is or would be exceeded; and

(ii) No alternate power supply exists, as required under § 503.8 of these regulations.

(2) A petition by certification under this paragraph must include:

(i) Duly executed certifications required under paragraph (d)(1) of this section;

(ii) Exhibits containing the basis for the certifications required under paragraph (d)(1) of this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support the granting of this exemption); and

(iii) The anticipated duration of the circumstances which constitute the basis for the exemption.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52894, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.24 Future use of synthetic fuels.

(a) *Eligibility*. Section 211(b) of the Act provides for a temporary exemption based upon the future use of synthetic fuels. To qualify, a petitioner must certify that:

(1) The petitioner will be able to comply with the applicable prohibitions imposed by the Act by the use of a synthetic fuel derived from coal or another alternate fuel as a primary energy source in the proposed facility by the end of the proposed exemption period;

(2) The petitioner will not be able to comply with the applicable prohibitions imposed by the Act by use of a synthetic fuel until the end of the proposed exemption period; and

(3) No alternate power supply exists, as required under § 503.8 of these regulations.

(b) *Evidence required in support of a petition*. The petition must include the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Duly executed certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section;

(2) Exhibits containing the basis for the certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support the granting of this exemption); and

(3) A preliminary compliance plan, including to the extent available, the information required under § 503.12.

(c) *Final Compliance Plan*. Before an exemption may become effective, the petitioner must submit and OFE must approve a final compliance plan as required by § 503.12.

(d) *Duration*. This temporary exemption may be granted for a period of up to ten (10) years. Unless the petitioner requests otherwise, any temporary exemption from the fuel use prohibitions of the Act for the future use of synthetic fuels will commence on the date of commercial operation of the facility.

NOTE: Contracts based on the anticipated successful demonstration of a development program and/or the anticipated economic feasibility of a synthetic fuels facility, will generally be sufficient to meet the ''binding contract'' requirements for this exemption.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981; 47 FR 15315, Apr. 9, 1982; 54 FR 52894, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.25 Public interest.

(a) *Eligibility*. Section 211(c) of the Act provides for a temporary public interest exemption. To qualify, a petitioner must demonstrate that:

(1) The unit will be capable of complying with the applicable prohibitions at the end of the proposed exemption period;

(2) The granting of the exemption would be in accord with the purposes of the Act and would be in the public interest; and

(3) No alternate power supply exists, as required under § 503.8 of these regulations.

(b) *Evidence required in support of a petition*. The petition must include the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Substantial evidence to corroborate the eligibility requirements identified above; and

(2) The anticipated duration of the circumstances which constitute the basis for the exemption.

(c) *Certification alternative*. If the petitioner requires use of oil or natural gas in a unit, during the construction of an alternate-fuel fired unit, the petitioner may substitute, in lieu of the evidentiary requirements of paragraphs (b)(1) and (2) of this section:

(1) A duly executed certification, including the requested duration of the exemption, that the unit will be operated on oil or natural gas only during the construction of an alternate fuel fired unit to be owned or operated by the petitioner; and

(2) Exhibits containing the basis for the certifications required under paragraph (c)(1) of this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support the granting of this exemption).

(d) *Duration*. This temporary exemption, taking into account extension and renewals, may not exceed 5 years.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52894, Dec. 22, 1989]

Subpart D—Permanent Exemptions for New Facilities

§ 503.30 Purpose and scope.

(a) This subpart implements the provisions contained in section 212 of the Act with regard to permanent exemptions for new facilities.

(b) This subpart establishes the criteria and standards which owners or operators of new powerplants and installations who petition for a permanent exemption must meet to sustain their burden of proof under the Act.

(c) All petitions for permanent exemptions for new facilities shall be submitted in accordance with the procedures set out in part 501 of this chapter and the applicable requirements of part 503 of these regulations.

§ 503.31 Lack of alternate fuel supply for the first 10 years of useful life.

(a) *Eligibility*. Section 212(a)(1)(A)(i) of the Act provides for a permanent exemption due to lack of an adequate and reliable supply of alternate fuel within the first 10 years of useful life of the proposed unit. To qualify, a petitioner must certify that:

(1) A good faith effort has been made to obtain an adequate and reliable supply of an alternate fuel for use as a primary energy source of the quality and quantity necessary to conform with the design and operational requirements of the unit;

(2) Such a supply is not likely to be available within the first 10 years of useful life of the proposed unit;

(3) No alternate power supply exists, as required under § 503.8 of these regulations;

(4) Use of mixtures is not feasible, as required under § 503.9 of these regulations; and

(5) Alternative sites are not available, as required under § 503.11 of these regulations.

(b) *Evidence required in support of a petition*. A petition must include the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Duly executed certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section;

(2) Exhibits containing the basis for the certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support the granting of this exemption);

(3) Environmental impact analysis, as required under § 503.13 of these regulations; and

(4) Fuels search, as required under § 503.14 of these regulations.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52895, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.32 Lack of alternate fuel supply at a cost which does not substantially exceed the cost of using imported petroleum.

(a) *Eligibility*. Section 212(a)(1) (A)(ii) of the Act provides for a permanent exemption due to lack of an alternate fuel supply at a cost which does not substantially exceed the cost of using imported petroleum. To qualify a petitioner must certify that:

(1) A good faith effort has been made to obtain an adequate and reliable supply of an alternate fuel for use as a primary energy source of the quality and quantity necessary to conform with the design and operational requirements of the proposed unit;

(2) The cost of using such a supply would substantially exceed the cost of using imported petroleum as a primary energy source during the useful life of the proposed unit as defined in § 503.6 (cost calculation) of these regulations;

(3) No alternate power supply exists, as required under § 503.8 of these regulations.

(4) Use of mixtures is not feasible, as required under § 503.9 of these regulations; and

(5) Alternative sites are not available, as required under § 503.11 of these regulations.

(b) *Evidence required in support of a petition*. The petition must include the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Duly executed certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section;

(2) Exhibits containing the basis for certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support the granting of this exemption);

(3) Environmental impact analysis, as required under § 503.13 of these regulations;

(4) Fuels search, as required under § 503.14 of these regulations; and

(5) All data required by § 503.6 (cost calculation) of these regulations necessary for computing the cost calculation formula.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 15315, Apr. 9, 1982; 54 FR 52895, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.33 Site limitations.

(a) *Eligibility*. Section 212(a)(1)(B) of the Act provides for a permanent exemption due to site limitations. To qualify for such an exemption, a petitioner must certify that:

(1) One or more specific physical limitations relevant to the location or operation of the proposed facility exist which, despite good faith efforts, cannot reasonably be expected to be overcome within five years after commencement of operations;

(2) No alternate power supply exists, as required under § 503.8 of these regulations;

(3) Use of mixtures is not feasible, as required under § 503.9 of these regulations; and

(4) Alternative sites are not available, as required under § 503.11 of these regulations.

NOTE: Examples of the types of site limitations to which a petitioner may certify in order to qualify for this exemption include:

(i) Inaccessibility of alternate fuels as a result of a specific physical limitation;

(ii) Unavailability of transportation facilities for alternate fuels;

(iii) Unavailability of adequate land or facilities for handling, using or storing an alternate fuel;

(iv) Unavailability of adequate land or facilities for controlling and disposing of wastes, including pollution control equipment or devices necessary to assure compliance with applicable environmental requirements;

(v) Unavailability of adequate and reliable supply of water, including water for use in compliance with applicable environmental requirements; or

(vi) Other site limitations exist which will not permit the location or operation of the proposed unit using an alternate fuel.

(b) *Evidence required in support of the petition*. A petitioner must include in the petition the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Duly executed certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section;

(2) Exhibits containing the basis for the certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support the granting of this exemption);

(3) Environmental impact analysis, as required under § 503.13 of these regulations; and

(4) Fuels search, as required under § 503.14 of these regulations.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52895, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.34 Inability to comply with applicable environmental requirements.

(a) *Eligibility*. Section 212(a)(1)(C) of the Act provides for a permanent exemption due to the inability to comply with applicable environmental requirements. To qualify, a petitioner must demonstrate that despite good faith efforts:

(1) The petitioner will be unable within 5 years after beginning operation, to comply with the applicable prohibitions imposed by the Act without violating applicable Federal or state environmental requirements; and

(2) Reasonable alternative sites, which would permit the use of alternate fuels in compliance with applicable Federal or state environmental requirements, are not available.

NOTE: (1) For purposes of considering an exemption under this section, OFE's decision will be based solely on an analysis of the petitioner's capacity to physically achieve applicable environmental requirements. The cost of compliance is not relevant, but cost-related considerations may be presented as part of a demonstration submitted under § 503.32 (Lack of alternate fuel supply).

(2) Prior to deciding to submit an exemption petition, it is recommended that a petitioner request a meeting with OFE and EPA or the appropriate state or local regulatory agency to discuss options for operating an alternate fuel-fired facility in compliance with the applicable environmental requirements.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) *Evidence required in support of a petition*. The petitioner must include in the petition the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Where the petitioner has applied for a construction permit from EPA or an appropriate state agency prior to petitioning for an exemption from OFE under this section, a copy of such application and a synopsis of all supporting documents filed with or subsequent to the application must be submitted to OFE with the petition or at the time filed with the permitting agency;

(2) To the extent applicable, a copy of the EPA or state denial of the construction permit application;

(3) To the extent applicable, a synopsis of the administrative record of the EPA or state or local permit proceedings;

(4) To the extent applicable, a summary of the technology upon which the denial was based, including a performance comparison between the proposed technology and that technology which

provides the maximum possible reduction of pollution;

(5) An examination of the environmental compliance of the facility, including an analysis of its ability to meet applicable standards and criteria when using both the proposed fuel and the alternate fuel(s) which would provide the basis for the exemption. All such analysis must be based on accepted analytical techniques, such as air quality modeling, and reflect current conditions of the area which would be affected by the facility. The petitioner is responsible for obtaining the necessary data to accurately characterize these conditions. Environmental compliance must be examined in the context of available pollution control equipment which would provide the maximum possible reduction of pollution. The analysis must contain: (i) Requests for bids and other inquiries made and responses received by the petitioner concerning the availability and performance of pollution control equipment; or (ii) other comparable evidence such as technical studies documenting the efficacy of equipment to meet applicable requirements;

(6) An examination of any regulatory options available to the petitioner in seeking to achieve environmental compliance (such as offsets, variances and State Implementation Plan (SIP) revisions); and

(7) Any other documentation which demonstrates an inability to comply with applicable environmental requirements;

(8) No alternate power supply exists as required under § 503.8 of these regulations;

(9) Use of mixtures is not feasible, as required under § 503.9 of these regulations;

(10) Alternative sites are not available, as required under § 503.11 of these regulations;

(11) Environmental impact analysis, as required under § 503.13 of these regulations; and

(12) Fuels search, as required under § 503.14 of these regulations.

(d) *Certification alternative.* (1) To qualify for this exemption, in lieu of meeting the evidentiary requirements of paragraph (c) of this section, a petitioner may certify that:

(i) The site for the facility is or will be located in a Class I area or Class II area in which the allowable increment established by law has been consumed, as defined in part C of the Clean Air Act; the use of an alternate fuel will cause or contribute to concentrations of pollutants which would exceed the maximum allowable increases in a Class I or Class II area even with the application of best available control technology; the site for the facility is or will be located in a non-attainment area as defined in part D of the Clean Air Act for any pollutant which would be emitted by the facility; or, even with the application of the lowest achievable emission rate, the use of an alternate fuel will cause or contribute to concentrations in an air quality control region of a pollutant for which any national ambient air quality standard is or would be exceeded;

(ii) No alternate power supply exists, as required under § 503.8 of these regulations;

(iii) Alternative sites are not available, as required under § 503.11 of these regulations; and

(iv) Use of mixtures is not feasible, as required under § 503.19 of these regulations.

(2) A petition by certification under this paragraph must include:

(i) Duly executed certifications required under paragraph (d)(1) of this section;

(ii) Exhibits containing the basis for the certifications required under paragraph (d)(1) of this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support the granting of this exemption);

(iii) Environmental impact analysis, as required under § 503.13 of these regulations; and

(iv) Fuels search, as required under § 503.14 of these regulations.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52895, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.35 Inability to obtain adequate capital.

(a) *Eligibility.* Section 212(a)(1)(D) of the Act provides for a permanent exemption due to inability to obtain adequate capital. To qualify, a petitioner must certify that:

(1) Despite good faith efforts the petitioner will be unable to comply with the applicable prohibitions imposed by the Act because the additional capital required for an alternate fuel-capable unit beyond that required for the proposed unit cannot be raised;

(2) The additional capital cannot be raised:

(i) Due to specific restrictions (e.g., convenants on existing bonds) which constrain management's ability to raise debt or equity capital;

(ii) Without a substantial dilution of shareholder equity;

(iii) Without an unreasonably adverse affect on the utility's credit rating; or

(iv) In the case of non-investor-owned public utilities, without jeopardizing the utility's ability to recover its capital investment, through tariffs, without unreasonably adverse economic effect on its service area (such as adverse impacts on local industry or undue hardship to ratepayers).

(3) No alternative power supply exists, as required under § 503.8 of these regulations;

(4) Use of mixtures is not feasible, as required under § 503.9 of these regulations; and

(5) Alternative sites are not available, as required under § 503.11 of these regulations.

(b) *Evidence required in support of a petition*. A petition must include the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Duly executed certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section;

(2) Exhibits containing the basis for the certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support the granting of this exemption);

(3) Environmental impact analysis, as required under § 503.13 of these regulations; and

(4) Fuels search, as required under § 503.14 of these regulations.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 15315, Apr. 9, 1982; 54 FR 52895, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.36 State or local requirements.

(a) *Eligibility*. Section 212(b) of the Act provides for an exemption due to certain State or local requirements. To qualify a petitioner must certify that:

(1) With respect to the proposed site of the unit, the operation or construction of the new unit using an alternate fuel is infeasible because of a State of local requirement other than a building code, nuisance, or zoning law;

(2) The petitioner has made a good faith effort to obtain a variance from the State or local requirement but has been unable to do so or has demonstrated why none is available;

(3) The granting of the exemption would be in the public interest and would be consistent with the purposes of the Act;

(4) The petitioner is not entitled to an exemption for lack of alternate fuel supply, site limitation, environmental requirements, or inability to obtain adequate capital at the site of the proposed powerplant or at any reasonable alternative site for the alternate fuel(s) considered;

(5) At the proposed site and every reasonable alternative site where the petitioner is not entitled to an exemption for lack of alternate fuel supply, site limitation, environmental requirements, or inability to obtain adequate capital, the petitioner nevertheless would be barred at each such proposed or alternate site from burning an alternate fuel by reason of a State or local requirement;

(6) No alternate power supply exists, as required under § 503.8 of these regulations; and

(7) Use of mixtures is not feasible, as required under § 503.9 of these regulations.

(b) *Evidence required in support of a petition*. The petition must include the following evidence in order to make the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Duly executed certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section;

(2) Exhibits containing the basis for the certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section (including those factual and analytical materials

deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support the granting of this exemption);

(3) Environmental impact analysis, as required under § 503.13 of these regulations; and

(4) Fuels search, as required under § 503.14 of these regulations.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981; 46 FR 63033, Dec. 30, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52895, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.37 Cogeneration.

The following table may be used to determine eligibility for a permanent exemption based on oil and natural gas savings.

AVERAGE ANNUAL UTILIZATION OF OIL AND NATURAL GAS FOR ELECTRICITY GENERATION BY STATE

[BTU's per KWHR sold]

State name	Oil/gas savings Btu/kWh
Alabama	33
Arizona	802
Arkansas	1,363
California	3,502
Colorado	289
Connecticut	3,924
Delaware	3,478
Washington, DC.	895
Florida	3,177
Georgia	45
Idaho	0
Illinois	250
Indiana	53
Iowa	147
Kansas	686
Kentucky	34
Louisiana	4,189
Maine	2,560
Maryland	895
Massachusetts	5,250
Michigan	256
Minnesota	151
Mississippi	1,519
Missouri	57
Montana	60
Nebraska	139
Nevada	761
New Hampshire	2,695
New Jersey	1,894
New Mexico	1,528
New York	4,219
North Carolina	49
North Dakota	47
Ohio	36
Oklahoma	5,180
Oregon	0
Pennsylvania	771
Rhode Island	1,800
South Carolina	24
South Dakota	36
Tennessee	20
Texas	4,899
Utah	107
Vermont	105

AVERAGE ANNUAL UTILIZATION OF OIL AND NATURAL GAS FOR ELECTRICITY GENERATION BY STATE—Continued

[BTU's per KWHR sold]

State name	Oil/gas savings Btu/kWh
Virginia	460
Washington	3
West Virginia	126
Wisconsin	72
Wyoming	75

Data are based upon 1987 oil, natural gas and electricity statistics published by DOE's Energy Information Administration.

Example: The proposed cogeneration project is to be located in Massachusetts and is to use distillate oil. It will have a capacity of 50 MW, an average annual heat rate of 7600 BTU/KWHR, and be operated at a capacity factor of 90%. The annual fuel consumption is therefore calculated to be $2,996 \times 10^9$ Btu/yr. (50,000 KW × 7600 BTU/KWHR × .9 × 8760 HR/YR) The oil and gas backed off the grid would be calculated to be $.2070 \times 10^9$ BTU/YR. (50,000 KW × 5250 BTU/KWHR × .9 × 8760 HR/YR) since the proposed unit would consume more oil that would be ''backed off'' the grid, the unit would not be eligible for a permanent exemption based on savings of oil and natural gas.

[54 FR 52895, Dec. 22, 1989]

§ 503.38 Permanent exemption for certain fuel mixtures containing natural gas or petroleum.

(a) *Eligibility*. Section 212(d) of the Act provides for a permanent exemption for certain fuel mixtures. To qualify a petitioner must certify that:

(1) The petitioner proposes to use a mixture of natural gas or petroleum and an alternate fuel as a primary energy source;

(2) The amount of petroleum or natural gas proposed to be used in the mixture will not exceed the minimum percentage of the total annual Btu heat input of the primary energy sources needed to maintain operational reliability of the unit consistent with maintaining a reasonable level of fuel efficiency; and

(3) No alternate power supply exists, as required under § 503.8 of these regulations.

(b) *Evidence required in support of a petition*. The petition must include the following evidence in order to make

the demonstration required by this section:

(1) Duly executed certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section;

(2) Exhibits containing the basis for the certifications required under paragraph (a) of this section (including those factual and analytical materials deemed by the petitioner to be sufficient to support the granting of this exemption);

(3) A description of the fuel mixture, including component fuels and the percentage of each such fuel to be used; and

(4) Environmental impact analysis as required under § 503.13 of these regulations.

(c) *Solar mixtures.* OFE will grant a permanent mixtures exemption for the use of a mixture of solar energy (including wind, tide, and other intermittent sources) and petroleum or natural gas, where:

(1) Solar energy will account for at least 20 percent of the total annual Btu heat input, of the primary energy sources of the unit; and

(2) Petitioner meets the eligibility and evidentiary requirements of paragraphs (a) and (c) of this section.

[46 FR 59903, Dec. 7, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 52896, Dec. 22, 1989]

§§ 503.39–503.44 [Reserved]

PART 504—EXISTING POWERPLANTS

Sec.
504.2 Purpose and scope.
504.3–504.4 [Reserved]
504.5 Prohibitions by order (certifying powerplants under section 301 of FUA, as amended).
504.6 Prohibitions by order (case-by-case).
504.7 Prohibition against excessive use of petroleum or natural gas in mixtures—electing powerplants.
504.8 Prohibitions against excessive use of petroleum or natural gas in mixtures—certifying powerplants.
504.9 Environmental requirements for certifying powerplants.
APPENDIX I TO PART 504—PROCEDURES FOR THE COMPUTATION OF THE REAL COST OF CAPITAL
APPENDIX II TO PART 504—FUEL PRICE COMPUTATION

AUTHORITY: Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. § 7101 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, 92 Stat. 3289 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Energy Security Act, Pub. L. 96–294, 94 Stat. 611 (42 U.S.C. 8701 *et seq.*); E.O. 1209, 42 FR 46267, Sept. 15, 1977.

SOURCE: 45 FR 53692, Aug. 12, 1980, unless otherwise noted.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 1903–0075. See 46 FR 63209, Dec. 31, 1981)

§ 504.2 Purpose and scope.

(a) Sections 504.5, 504.6, and 504.8, set forth the prohibitions that OFP, pursuant to section 301 of the Act, as amended, may impose upon existing powerplants after a review of the certification and prohibition order compliance schedule submitted by the owner or operator of a powerplant. Sections 504.5 and 504.8 are explanatory sections, and § 504.6 provides the informational requirements necessary to support the certification.

(b) Sections 504.6 and 504.7, set forth the prohibitions that OFP may impose upon certain electing powerplants, pursuant to former section 301 (b) and (c) of FUA, where OFP can make the findings as to the unit's technical capability and financial feasibility to use coal or another alternate fuel as a primary energy source. The prohibitions may be made to apply to electing powerplants unless an exemption is granted by OFP under the provisions of the Final Rule for Existing Facilities (10 CFR parts 500, 501 and 504) published at 45 FR 53682, Aug. 12, 1980 and 46 FR 59872, Dec. 7, 1981. Any person who owns, controls, rents or leases an existing electing powerplant may be subject to the prohibitions imposed by and the sanctions provided for in the Act or these regulations, if OFP can make the findings required by former section 301 (b) and (c) of FUA.

(Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, 92 Stat. 3269 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981, Pub. L. 97–35; E.O. 12009, 42 FR 46267, Sept. 15, 1977)

[47 FR 50849, Nov. 10, 1982]

§§ 504.3–504.4 [Reserved]

§ 504.5 Prohibitions by order (certifying powerplants under section 301 of FUA, as amended).

(a) In the case of existing powerplants, OFP may prohibit, in accordance with section 301 of the Act, as amended, the use of petroleum or natural gas as a primary energy source where the owner or operator of the powerplant presents a complete certification concurred in by OFP. The certification, which may be presented at any time, pertains to the unit's technical capability and financial feasibility to use coal or another alternate fuel as a primary energy source in the unit. The informational requirements necessary to support a certification are contained in § 504.6 of these regulations. A prohibition compliance schedule which meets the requirements of § 504.5(d) shall also be submitted.

(b) If OFP concurs with the certification, a prohibition order on the powerplant's use of petroleum or natural gas will be issued following the procedure outlined in § 501.52 of these regulations.

(c) The petitioner may amend its certification at any time prior to the effective date of the prohibitions contained in the final prohibition order in order to take into account changes in relevant facts and circumstances by following the procedure contained in § 501.52(d).

(d) *Prohibition order compliance schedule.* The certification described above, which forms the basis for the issuance of a prohibition order to a powerplant, shall include a prohibition order compliance schedule. The compliance schedule should contain the following:

(1) A schedule of progressive events involved in the conversion project, including construction of any facilities for the production of fuel or fuel handling equipment, and contracts for the purchase of alternate fuels, and estimated date of compliance with the applicable prohibitions of the Act; and

(2) A schedule indicating estimated dates for obtaining necessary federal, state, and local permits and approvals. Any prohibition order issued under the certification provisions of §§ 504.5, 504.6, and 504.8 will be subject to appropriate conditions subsequent so as to delay the effectiveness of the prohibitions contained in the final prohibition order until the above events or permits have occurred or been obtained.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 1903–0077)

(Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*); Energy Supply and Environmental Coordination Act of 1974, Pub. L. 93–319, as amended by Pub. L. 94–163, Pub. L. 95–70, and Pub. L. 95–620 (15 U.S.C. 719 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, as amended by Pub. L. 97–35 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981, Pub. L. 97–35)

[47 FR 17044, Apr. 21, 1982]

§ 504.6 Prohibitions by order (case-by-case).

(a) OFP may prohibit, by order, the use of natural gas or petroleum as a primary energy source in existing powerplants under certain circumstances. In the case of certifying powerplants under section 301 of the Act, as amended, the petitioner must present evidence to support the certification, required by § 504.6 (c), (d), (e), and (f). In the case of electing powerplants, OFP must make the following findings required by § 504.6 (c), (d), (e), and (f), in order to issue a prohibition order to the unit, pursuant to former section 301 (b) or (c):

(1) The unit currently has, or previously had, the technical capability to use an alternate fuel as a primary energy source;

(2) The unit has this technical capability now, or it could have the technical capability without:

(i) A substantial physical modification of the unit; or

(ii) A substantial reduction in the rated capacity of the unit; and

(3) It is financially feasible for the unit to use an alternate fuel as its primary energy source.

(b) In the case of electing powerplants, OFP must make a proposed finding regarding the technical capability of a unit to use alternate fuel as identified in paragraph (a) (1) of this section prior to the date of publication of the notice of the proposed prohibition. OFP will publish this finding in

The FEDERAL REGISTER along with the notice of the proposed prohibition.

(c) *Technical capability.* (1) In the case of electing and certifying powerplants, OFP will consider ''technical capability'' on a case-by-case basis in order to make the required finding. In the case of a certifying powerplant, the powerplant should present information to support the certification relevant to the considerations set forth below. OFP will consider the ability of the unit, from the point of fuel intake to physically sustain combustion of a given fuel and to maintain heat transfer.[2]

(2) OFP considers that a unit ''had'' the technical capability to use an alternate fuel if the unit was once able to burn that fuel (regardless of whether the unit was expressly designed to burn that fuel or whether it ever actually did burn it), but is no longer able to do so at the present due to temporary or permanent alterations to the unit itself.[3]

(3) A unit ''has'' the technical capability to use an alternate fuel if it can burn an alternate fuel, notwithstanding the fact that adjustments must be made to the unit beforehand or that pollution control equipment may be required to meet air quality requirements.[4]

(d) *Substantial physical modification.* In the case of electing and certifying powerplants, OFP will make its determination on whether a physical modification to a unit is ''substantial'' on a case-by-case basis. In the case of certifying powerplants, OFP will consider the factors set forth below for the purpose of concurrence in the certification. OFP will consider physical modifications made to the unit as ''substantial'' where warranted by the magnitude and complexity of the engineering task or where the modification would impact severely upon operations at the site.[5] OFP will not, however, assess physical modification on the basis of cost.

(e) *Substantial reduction in rated capacity.* In the case of electing and certifying powerplants, OFP will make this determination on the basis of the following factors. A certifying powerplant should present information to support its certification regarding these factors in order for OFP to make its review for concurrence.

(1) OFP regards a unit's derating of 25 percent or more, as a result of converting a unit from oil or gas to an alternate fuel, as substantial.

(2) OFP will presume that a derating of less than 10 percent, as a result of converting a unit from oil or gas to an alternate fuel, is not substantial unless

[2] OFP will not ordinarily consider the nature or absence of appurtenances outside the unit. For example, OFP will examine the furnace configuration and ash removal capability but will not normally consider the need to install pollution control equipment as a measure of technical capability. Furthermore, OFP will not normally conclude that the absence of fuel handling equipment, such as conveyor belts, pulverizers, or unloading facilities, bears on the issue of a unit's ''technical capability'' to burn an alternate fuel.

[3] For example, a unit which at one time burned solid coal but which could no longer do so because its coal firing ports and sluicing channels had been cemented over, would be classified as having ''had'' the technical capability to use coal. (The question of whether it again ''could have'' such capability without ''substantial physical modification'' is a separate and additional question.)

[4] A unit designed to burn natural gas shall be presumed to have the technical capability to burn a synthetic fuel such as medium Btu gas from coal (assuming such gas is available unless convincing evidence to the contrary is submitted in rebuttal). Also a unit designed to burn oil may, depending upon the chemical characteristics, be a unit that ''has'' the technical capability to burn liquefied coal. The fact that certain adjustments may be necessary does not render this a ''hypothetical'' as opposed to a ''real'' capability. Even an oil fired unit converting from the use of #2 distillate to #6 residual oil may be required to adjust or replace burner nozzles and add soot blowers.

[5] Generally, modification of a unit to burn coal or an alternate fuel will be considered insubstantial if significant alterations to the boiler, such as a change to the furnace configuration or a complete respacing of the tubes, are not required. Minor alterations such as replacement of burners or additions of soot blowers, and additions or alterations outside the boiler, shall not cause the modification to be substantial.

convincing evidence to the contrary is submitted in rebuttal.[6]

(3) OFP will assess units for which a derating is claimed of 10 percent or more, but less than 25 percent, on a case-by-case.

(4) In assessing whether a unit's derating is not substantial, OFP will consider the impact of a reduction in rated capacity of the unit taking into consideration all necessary appurtenances such as air pollution control equipment required to burn an alternate fuel in compliance with environmental requirements expected to be applicable at the date the prohibitions contained in the final prohibition order become effective. However, the potential order recipient may raise in rebuttal the impact of derating on the site at which the unit is located and on the system as well as on the unit itself, if under paragraph (e)(2), or case-by-case, if under paragraph (e)(3) of this section.

(f) *Financial feasibility*. In the case of certifying and electing powerplants, OFP will make this finding based on the following considerations. A certifying powerplant should present information to support its certification relevant to these considerations in order for OFP to make its review for concurrence. Conversion of a unit to burn coal or an alternate fuel shall be deemed financially feasible if the firm has the actual ability to obtain sufficient capital to finance the conversion, including all necessary land, coal and ash handling equipment, pollution control equipment, and all other necessary expenditures, without violating legal restrictions on its ability to raise debt or equity capital, unreasonably diluting shareholder equity, or unreasonably adversely affecting its credit rating. OFP will consider any economic or financial factors presented by the proposed order recipient in determining the firm's ability or inability to finance the conversion including, but not limited to, the following:

(1) The required coverage ratios on the firm's debt and preferred stock;

(2) The firm's investment program; and

(3) The financial impact of the conversion, including other conversions which are or may be undertaken voluntarily by the proposed order recipient or imposed upon the recipient's system by the Act, and including pending or planned construction or reconstruction of alternate-fuel-fired plants and plants exempt from FUA prohibitions.[7] Where helpful in clarifying the long-term financial feasibility of a conversion, DOE may analyze the economic benefits anticipated from operation of the converted unit or units using coal or other alternate fuel relative to those from continued operation using petroleum or natural gas.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 1903–0077)

(Energy Supply and Environmental Coordination Act of 1974, Pub. L. 93–319, as amended by Pub. L. 94–163, Pub. L. 95–70, and 15 U.S.C. 719 *et seq.;* Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, 92 Stat. 3269 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (Pub. L. 97–35); E.O. 12009, 42 FR 46267, Sept. 15, 1977)

[45 FR 53692, Aug. 12, 1980, as amended at 47 FR 17044, Apr. 21, 1982; 47 FR 50849, Nov. 10, 1982]

§ 504.7 Prohibition against excessive use of petroleum or natural gas in mixtures—electing powerplants.

(a) In the case of electing powerplants, if OFP finds that it is technically and financially feasible for a unit to use a mixture of petroleum or natural gas and an alternate fuel as its primary energy source, OFP may prohibit, by order, the use in that unit of

[6] For example, units that are the subject of a prohibition order will not have installed any operating air pollution control equipment sufficient to burn coal in compliance with applicable environmental equipments. The installation and use of air pollution control equipment alone can, in many cases, produce a derating. Moreover, the shift to coal itself will, because of differences in energy density and fuel flow characteristics, typically involve some derating.

[7] OFP will not require the proposed order recipient to cancel or defer construction or reconstruction of any alternate-fuel-fired facility, or any facility exempt from the prohibitions of the Act, for which a decision to finance such facility has been made by the appropriate company official before the publication of the prohibition order. The proposed order recipient may choose to cancel or defer any such facility.

petroleum or natural gas, or both, in amounts exceeding the minimum amount necessary to maintain reliability of operation consistent with maintaining reasonable fuel efficiency of the mixture.

(b) In making the technical feasibility finding required by former section 301 (b) and (c) of the Act and paragraph (a) of this section, OFP may weigh ''physical modification'' or ''derating of the unit,'' but these considerations, by themselves, will not control the technical feasibility finding. A technical feasibility finding might be made notwithstanding the need for substantial physical modification. The economic consequences of a substantial physical modification are taken into account in determining financial feasibility.

(Energy Supply and Environmental Coordination Act of 1974, Pub. L. 93–319, as amended by Pub. L. 94–163, Pub. L. 95–70, and 15 U.S.C. 719 *et seq.;* Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, 92 Stat. 3269 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (Pub. L. 97–35); E.O. 12009, 42 FR 46267, Sept. 15, 1977)

[47 FR 17045, Apr. 21, 1982, and 47 FR 50850, Nov. 10, 1982]

§ 504.8 Prohibitions against excessive use of petroleum or natural gas in mixtures—certifying powerplants.

(a) In the case of certifying powerplants, OFP may prohibit the use of petroleum or natural gas in such powerplant in amounts exceeding the minimum amount necessary to maintain reliability of operation consistent with maintaining the reasonable fuel efficiency of the mixture. This authority is contained in section 301(c) of the Act, as amended. The owner or operator of the powerplant may certify at any time to OFP that it is technically capable and financially feasible for the unit to use a mixture of petroleum or natural gas and coal or another alternate fuel as a primary energy source. In assessing whether the unit is technically capable of using a mixture of petroleum or natural gas and coal or another alternate fuel as a primary energy source, for purposes of this section, the extent of any physical modification necessary to convert the unit and any concomitant reduction in rated capacity are not relevant factors. So long as a unit as proposed to be modified would be technically capable of using the mixture as a primary energy source under § 504.6(c), this certification requirement shall be deemed met. The criteria for certification of financial feasibility are found at § 504.6(f). In addition, the powerplant's owner or operator must submit a prohibition compliance schedule, which meets the requirements of § 504.5(d).

(b) If OFP concurs with the certification, a prohibition order against the unit's excessive use of petroleum or natural gas in the mixture will be issued following the procedure outlined in § 501.52 of these regulations.

(c) The petitioner may seek to amend its certification in order to take into account changes in relevant facts and circumstances by following the procedure contained in § 501.52(d).

NOTE: The authority of OFP implemented under this section should not be confused with the other two fuel mixture provisions of these regulations. One is the general requirement that petitioners for permanent exemptions demonstrate that the use of a mixture of natural gas or petroleum and an alternate fuel is not economically or technically feasible (See § 504.15). The second is the permanent fuel mixtures exemption itself (See § 504.56).

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 1903–0077)

(Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*); Energy Supply and Environmental Coordination Act of 1974, Pub. L. 93–319, as amended by Pub. L. 94–163, Pub. L. 95–70, and Pub. L. 95–620 (15 U.S.C. 719 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, as amended by Pub. L. 97–35 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981, Pub. L. 97–35)

[47 FR 17045, Apr. 21, 1982]

§ 504.9 Environmental requirements for certifying powerplants.

Under §§ 501.52, 504.5 and 504.6 of these regulations, OFP may prohibit, in accordance with section 301 and section 303 (a) or (b) of FUA, as amended, the use of natural gas or petroleum, or both, as a primary energy source in any certifying powerplant. Under sections 301(c) and 303(a) of FUA, as amended, and §§ 501.52, 504.6, and 504.8 of

these regulations, OFP may prohibit the excessive use of natural gas or petroleum in a mixture with an alternate fuel as a primary energy source in a certifying powerplant.

(a) *NEPA compliance.* Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, where the owner or operator of a powerplant seeks to obtain an OFP prohibition order through the certification procedure, and did not hold either a proposed prohibition order under former section 301 of FUA or pending order under section 2 of ESECA, it will be responsible for the costs of preparing any necessary Environmental Assessment (EA) or Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) arising from OFP's obligation to comply with NEPA. The powerplant owner or operator shall enter into a contract with an independent party selected by OFP, who is qualified to conduct an environmental review and prepare an EA or EIS, as appropriate, and who does not have a financial or other interest in the outcome of the proceedings, under the supervision of OFP. The NEPA process must be completed and approved before OFP will issue a final prohibition order based on the certification.

(b) *Environmental review procedure.* Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, environmental documents, including the EA and EIS, where necessary, will be prepared utilizing the process set forth above. OFP, the powerplant owner or operator and the independent third party shall enter into an agreement for the owner or operator to engage and pay directly for the services of the qualified third party to prepare the necessary documents. The third party will execute an OFP prepared disclosure document stating that he does not have any conflict of interest, financial or otherwise, in the outcome of either the environmental process or the prohibition order proceeding. The agreement shall outline the responsibilities of each party and his relationship to the other two parties regarding the work to be done or supervised. OFP shall approve the information to be developed and supervise the gathering, analysis and presentation of the information. In addition, OFP will have the authority to approve and modify any statement, analysis, and conclusion contained in the third party prepared environmental documents.

(c) *Financial hardship.* Whenever the bona fide estimate of the costs associated with NEPA compliance, if borne by the powerplant owner or operator, would make the conversion financially infeasible, OFP may waive the requirement set forth in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section and perform the necessary environmental review.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 1903–0077)

(Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*); Energy Supply and Environmental Coordination Act of 1974, Pub. L. 93–319, as amended by Pub. L. 94–163, Pub. L. 95–70, and Pub. L. 95–620 (15 U.S.C. 719 *et seq.*); Powerplant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–620, as amended by Pub. L. 97–35 (42 U.S.C. 8301 *et seq.*); Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981, Pub. L. 97–35)

[47 FR 17046, Apr. 21, 1982]

APPENDIX I TO PART 504—PROCEDURES FOR THE COMPUTATION OF THE REAL COST OF CAPITAL

(a) The firm's real after-tax weighted average marginal cost of capital (K) is computed with equation 1.

EQ 1

$$K = W_d \left[\frac{\hat{R}_d (1-t)}{1 - f_d} - INF \right] + W_p \left[\frac{\hat{R}_p}{1-f_p} - INF \right] + W_e \left[\frac{\hat{R}_e}{1-f_e} - INF \right]$$

The terms in equation 1 are defined as follows:

W_d = Fraction of existing capital structure which is debt.

W_p = Fraction of existing capital structure which is preferred equity.

W_e = Fraction of existing capital structure which is common equity and retained earnings.

$\hat{R}_d$ = Predicted nominal cost of long term debt expressed as a fraction.

$\hat{R}_p$ = Predicted nominal cost of preferred stock expressed as a fraction.

$\hat{R}_e$ = Predicted nominal cost of common stock expressed as a fraction.

INF = Percentage change in the GNP implicit price deflator over the past 12 months expressed as a fraction.

f_d = Flotation cost of debt expressed as a fraction.

f_p = Flotation cost of preferred stock expressed as a fraction.

f_e = Flotation cost of common stock expressed as a fraction.

t = Marginal federal income tax rate for the current year.

(b) *Information on parameters used in Equation 1.* (1) The parameters used in equation 1 will be the best practicable estimates. They will be obtained from the firm, accepted rating services (e.g., Standard & Poors, Moody's), government publications, accepted financial publications, annual financial reports and statements of firms, and investment bankers.

(2) The predicted nominal cost of debt ($\hat{R}_d$) may be estimated by determining the current average yield on newly issued bonds—industrial or utility as appropriate—which have the same rating as the firm's most recent debt issue.

(3) The predicted nominal cost of preferred stock ($\hat{R}_p$) may be estimated by determining the current average yield on newly issued preferred stock—industrial or utility as appropriate—which has the same rating as the firm's most recent preferred stock issue.

(4)(A) The predicted nominal cost of common stock ($\hat{R}_e$) is computed with equation 2.

Eq 2 $\hat{R}_e = \hat{R}_f + B \times \bar{R}_m$

where:

$\hat{R}_f$ = The risk free interest rate—the average of the most recent auction rates of U.S. Government 13-week Treasury Bills,

B = The ''beta'' coefficient—the relationship between the excess return on common stock and the excess return on the S&P 500 composite index, and

$\bar{R}_m$ = The mean excess return on the S&P 500 composite index—the mean of the difference between the return on the S&P 500 composite index and the risk free interest rate for the years 1926–1976 as computed by Ibbotson and Sinquefield*(1)*—9.2%

(B) The ''beta'' coefficient is computed with regression analysis techniques. The regression equation is Equation 3.

$$(R_e^t - R_f^t) = A + B(R_m^t - R_f^t) + e^t \qquad \text{Eq. 3}$$

where

$$R_e^t = \frac{PRCC_t - PRCC_{t-1} + (DIVRATE/12)}{PRCC_{t-1}}$$

$R_f t$ = The risk free interest rate in month t—the average of the yields on 13-week treasury bills auctioned in month t.*(2)*

A = A constant which should not be significantly different than zero.

$$R_m^t = \frac{V_{sp,t} - V_{sp,t-1} + D_{sp,t}}{V_{sp,t-1}}, \text{ and}$$

e^t = The error in month t.

$PRCC_t$ = Closing market prices of the firm's common stock at the end of month t fully adjusted for splits and stock dividends.

$DIVRATE_t$ = The sum of the dividends paid in the fiscal year which contain month t.

$V_{sp,t}$ = The market value of ''one share'' of the S&P 500 composite index at the end of month t.

$D_{sp,t}$ = The estimated monthly income received from holding ''one share'' of the S&P 500 in month t.

The regression analysis is done with sixty months of data. The first month (t = 1) is sixty months before the month in which the firm's current fiscal year started. The last month (t = 60) is the last month of the past fiscal year.

(5) Where the parameters specified above are not obtainable, alternate parameters that closely correspond to those above may be used. This may include substituting a bond yield for nominal cost of preferred stock where the former is not available. Where the capital structure does not consist of any debt, preferred equity, or common equity, an alternate methodology to predict the firm's real after-tax marginal cost of capital may be used.

Example of using alternate parameters that closely correspond to those above are:

(A) In the case of industrials, who do not typically issue preferred stock, the predicted nominal cost of preferred stock ($\hat{R}_P$) can be estimated by determining the current average yield on newly issued industrial bonds which have the same rating as the firm's most recent debt issue.

(B) If necessary, the following assumptions can be made to determine the nominal cost of debt or preferred stock and their flotation costs.

(i) Where a company issued privately placed debt that was not rated, the rating, applied to preferred stock could be used to

determine the cost of debt and its flotation cost.

(ii) Where a company issued privately placed preferred stock that was not rated, the rating applied to debt could be used to determine the cost of preferred stock and its flotation costs.

(iii) In the case where all issues were privately placed, the current average yield on all newly issued debt or preferred could be used to determine the cost of debt or preferred respectively, and an average flotation cost, for debt or preferred, could be used.

(C) *Evidence Requirements*. Copies of this calculation with notations as to the source of the data must be submitted.

FOOTNOTES

(1) Ibbotson, R.E. and R.A. Sinquefield, *Stocks, Bonds, Bills, and Inflation,* Charlottesville, Va.: The Financial Analysts Research Foundation, 1977, cited by Ernst & Whinney, *Costs of Capital and Rates of Return for Industrial Firms and Class A&B Electric Utility Firms,* June 1979, p. 3–8.

(2) As an option, R_f t can be developed with the following equation:

$$R_f{}^t = \frac{365D^t}{360 - ND^t} \times \frac{1}{12}$$

where:

D^t = The average annual yield on three month U.S. Treasury bills reported in the *Survey of Current Business* auctioned in month t—which is reported using the bank discount method.

N = Number of days to maturity.

[46 FR 59920, Dec. 7, 1981]

APPENDIX II TO PART 504—FUEL PRICE COMPUTATION

(a) *Introduction*. This appendix provides the equations and parameters needed to specify the price of the delivered fuels to be used in the cost calculations associated with parts 503 and 504 of these regulations. The delivered price of the fuel to be used to calculate delivered fuel expenses must reflect (1) the price of each fuel at the time of the petition, and (2) the effects of future real price increases for each fuel. The delivered price of an alternate fuel used to calculate delivered fuel expenses must reflect the petitioner's delivered price of the alternate fuel and the effects of real increases in the price of that alternate fuel. Paragraphs (b), (c) and (d) below provide the procedure to: (1) Calculate fuel price and inflation indices; (2) account for projected real increases in fuel prices when planning to burn one or more than one fuel; and (3) account for projected real increases in the price of the alternate fuel. Table II–1 of this appendix (See paragraph (b)) contains example fuel price and inflation indices based on the latest data appearing in the Energy Information Administration's (EIA) *Annual Energy Outlook* (AEO).

The fuel price and inflation indices will change yearly with the publication of the *AEO*. Revisions shall become effective after final publication. However, the relevant set of parameters for a specific petition for exemption will be the set in effect at the time the petition is submitted or the set in effect at the time a decision is rendered, whichever is more favorable to the petitioner.

(b) *Computation of Fuel Price and Inflation Indices*. (1) the Petitioner is responsible for computing the annual fuel price and inflation indices by using Equation II–1 and Equation II–2, respectively. The petitioner may compute the fuel price index specified in Equation II–1 or use his own price index. However, if he uses his own price index, the source or the derivation of the index must be fully documented and be contained in the evidential summary.

EQ II–2 is:

$$PX_i = \frac{P_i}{P_o}$$

where:

PXV_i = The fuel price index for each fuel in year i. P_i = Price of fuel in year i.

P_o = Price of fuel in base year.

EQ II–2 is:

$$IX_i = \frac{GX_i}{GX_o}$$

where:

IX_i = The inflation index in year i.

GX_i = The NIPA GNP price deflator for year i.

GX_o = The NIPA GNP price deflator for the base year.

(2) The parameters to be used in EQ II–1 are the Base Case fuel price projections found in EIA's current *AEO*.

(3) When computing annual inflation indices, the petitioner is to use the Base Case National Macroeconomic Indicators (NIPA GNP Price Deflator) contained in EIA's current *AEO*. If necessary, the petitioner must rebase the projection to the same year used for the fuel price projections. For example, in 1989 *AEO* projects the price deflator in 1982 dollars; this must be rebased to the year in which the petition is filed. The methodology used to rebase the inflation indices must follow standard statistical procedures and must be fully documented within the petition. This index will remain frozen at the last year of the *AEO*'s projection for the remainder of the unit'(s) useful life.

(4) Table II–1 is provided as an example of the application of equations II–1 and II–2. This table contains annual fuel price indices

for distillate oil, residual oil, natural gas, and coal. It also contains annual inflation indices. These values were computed from information contained in Table A3 and Table A11 of EIA's *AEO, 1989*.

TABLE II–1: PRICE AND INFLATION INDICES FOR USE IN THE COST CALCULATIONS

Year	Distillate (DPX)	Residual (RPX)	Natural gas (GPX)	Coal (CPX)	Inflation (IX)
1986	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000
1987	0.9810	1.2134	0.9508	0.9231	1.0334
1988	0.9429	0.9407	0.8934	0.8876	1.0658
1989	0.8929	0.9328	0.9057	0.8639	1.1054
1990	0.9905	1.0119	0.9221	0.9112	1.1607
1991	1.0381	1.0751	0.9344	0.9172	1.2204
1992	1.0929	1.1344	1.0205	0.9231	1.2836
1993	1.1595	1.2292	1.1148	0.9349	1.3512
1994	1.2286	1.3241	1.1844	0.9467	1.4214
1995	1.3000	1.4150	1.2705	0.9527	1.4960
1996	1.4000	1.5415	1.4016	0.9586	1.5768
1997	1.4762	1.6403	1.4918	0.9704	1.6585
1998	1.5452	1.7273	1.5615	0.9763	1.7410
1999	1.6143	1.7905	1.6475	0.9882	1.8235
2000	1.6690	1.8340	1.7049	0.9941	1.9025
2001	1.6690	I.8340	1.7049	0.9941	1.9025
2002	1.6690	1.8340	1.7049	0.9941	1.9025
2003	1.6690	1.8340	1.7049	0.9941	1.9025
2004	1.6690	1.8340	1.7049	0.9941	1.9025
2005	1.6690	1.8340	1.7049	0.9941	1.9025
2006	1.6690	1.8340	1.7049	0.9941	1.9025
2007	1.6690	1.8340	1.7049	0.9941	1.9025
2008	1.6690	1.8430	1.7049	0.9941	1.9025
2009	1.6690	1.8340	1.7049	0.9941	1.9025
2010	1.6690	1.8340	1.7049	0.9941	1.9025

(C) *Fuel Price Computation*. (1) The delivered price of the proposed fuel to be burned (FPB_i) must reflect the real escalation rate of the proposed fuel, and must be computed with Equation EQ II–3.

EQ-II-3 is: $FPB_i = MPB\ [PX_i]$

where:

FPB_i = Price of the proposed fuel (distillate oil, residual oil, or natural gas) in year i.
MPB = The current delivered market price of the proposed fuel.
PX_i = The fuel price index value in year i, computed with Equation II–1.

or:

(2) When planning to use more than one fuel in the proposed unit(s), the petitioner must use Equation II–1 and Equation II–3 to calculate the annual fuel price of each fuel to be used. The petitioner then must estimate the proportion of each fuel to be burned annually over the useful life of the unit(s). With these proportions and the respective annual fuel prices for each fuel, the petitioner must compute an annual weighted average fuel price. The methodology used to calculate the weighted average fuel price must follow standard statistical procedures and be fully documented within the petition.

(d) *Fuel Price Computation—Alternate Fuel*. The delivered price of alternate fuel (PFA_i) must reflect the real escalation rate of alternate fuel and must be computed with Equation II–4.
Equation II–4 is:

$PFA_i = APF \times apx_i$

where:

PFA = The price of the alternate fuel in year i.
APF^{-i} = The current market price of the alternate fuel f.o.b. the facility).
APX_i = The alternate fuel price index value for year i, computed with Equation II–1.

In most cases the alternate fuel will be coal. The petitioner must use Equation II–1 (paragraph (b)) to compute the escalation rate (APX_i). If an alternate fuel other than coal is proposed the source or the derivation of the index must be fully documented and be contained in the evidential summary.

[54 FR 52896, Dec. 22, 1989]

PART 508 [RESERVED]

PART 516 [RESERVED]

SUBCHAPTER G—NATURAL GAS (ECONOMIC REGULATORY ADMINISTRATION)

PART 580—CURTAILMENT PRIORITIES FOR ESSENTIAL AGRICULTURAL USES

Sec.
580.01 Purpose.
580.02 Definitions.
580.03 Curtailment priorities.
580.04 Administrative procedures. [Reserved]

AUTHORITY: Secs. 401, 403, Pub. L. 95–621, 92 Stat. 3394–3395, 3396; secs. 301(b), 402(a), Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 578, 594, (42 U.S.C. 7115(b), 7117(a)); E.O. 12009, 42 FR 46267.

SOURCE: 44 FR 15646, Mar. 15, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

§ 580.01 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to implement the authority granted to the Secretary of Energy in section 401 of the Natural Gas Policy Act of 1978, Public Law 95–621, 92 Stat. 3394–3395 (1978).

§ 580.02 Definitions.

(a) Terms defined in section 2 of the Natural Gas Policy Act of 1978 shall have the same meaning, as applicable, for purposes of this part, unless further defined in paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) The following definitions are applicable to this part:

(1) *Commercial establishment* means any establishment, (including institutions and local, state and federal government agencies) engaged primarily in the sale of goods or services, where natural gas is used for purposes other than those involving manufacturing or electric power generation.

(2) *Essential agricultural use* means any use of natural gas:

(i) For agricultural production, natural fiber production, natural fiber processing, food processing, food quality maintenance, irrigation pumping, crop drying; or

(ii) As a process fuel or feedstock in the production of fertilizer, agricultural chemicals, animal feed, or food which the Secretary of Agriculture determines is necessary for full food and fiber production.

(3) *Essential agricultural user* means any person who uses natural gas for an essential agricultural use as defined in paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(4) *Hospital* means a facility whose primary function is delivering medical care to patients who remain at the facility, including nursing and convalescent homes. Outpatient clinics or doctors' offices are not included in this definition.

(5) *High-priority use* means any use of natural gas by a high-priority user as defined in paragraph (a)(6) of this section.

(6) *High-priority user* means, in no specific order, any person who uses natural gas:

(i) In a residence, or

(ii) In a commercial establishment in amounts of less than 50 Mcf on a peak day; or

(iii) In any school or hospital; or

(iv) For minimum plant protection when operations are shut down, for police protection, for fire protection, in a sanitation facility, in a correctional facility, or for emergency situations pursuant to 18 CFR 2.78(a)(4).

(7) *Interstate pipeline* means any person engaged in natural gas transportation subject to the jurisdiction of the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission under the Natural Gas Act.

(8) *Residence* means a dwelling using natural gas predominately for residential purposes such as space heating, air conditioning, hot water heating, cooking, clothes drying, and other residential uses, and includes apartment buildings and other multi-unit residential buildings.

(9) *School* means a facility, the primary function of which is to deliver instruction to regularly enrolled students in attendance at such facility. Facilities used for both educational and non-educational activities are not included under this definition unless the latter are merely incidental to the delivery of instruction.

§ 580.03 Curtailment priorities.

(a) Notwithstanding any provision of law other than section 401(b) of the Natural Gas Policy Act of 1978, or any other rule, regulation, or order of the Department of Energy, the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission or their predecessor agencies, and to the maximum extent practicable, no curtailment plan of an interstate pipeline may provide for curtailment of deliveries of natural gas for any essential agricultural use, unless:

(1) Such curtailment does not reduce the quantity of natural gas delivered for such use below the use requirement certified by the Secretary of Agriculture under section 401(c) of the Natural Gas Policy Act of 1978 in order to meet the requirements of full food and fiber production; or

(2) Such curtailment is necessary in order to meet the requirements of high-priority users; or

(3) The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, in consultation with the Secretary of Agriculture, determines, by rule or order issued pursuant to section 401(b) of the Natural Gas Policy Act of 1978, that use of a fuel (other than natural gas) is economically practicable and that the fuel is reasonably available as an alternative for such essential agricultural use.

(b) Any essential agricultural user who also qualifies as a high-priority user shall be a high-priority user for purposes of paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) The specific relative order of priority for all uses and users of natural gas, including high-priority and essential agricultural uses and users, shall remain as reflected in effective curtailment plans of interstate pipelines filed with the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission to the extent that the relative order of priorities does not conflict with paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) Nothing in this rule shall prohibit the injection of natural gas into storage by interstate pipelines or deliveries to its customers for their injection into storage unless it is demonstrated to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission that these injections or deliveries are not reasonably necessary to meet the requirements of high-priority users or essential agricultural uses.

§ 580.04 Administrative procedures. [Reserved]

PART 590—ADMINISTRATIVE PROCEDURES WITH RESPECT TO THE IMPORT AND EXPORT OF NATURAL GAS

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
590.100 OMB Control Numbers.
590.101 Purpose and scope.
590.102 Definitions.
590.103 General requirements for filing documents with FE.
590.104 Address for filing documents.
590.105 Computation of time.
590.106 Dockets.
590.107 Service.
590.108 Off-the-record communications.
590.109 FE investigations.

Subpart B—Applications for Authorization To Import or Export Natural Gas

590.201 General.
590.202 Contents of applications.
590.203 Deficient applications.
590.204 Amendment or withdrawal of applications.
590.205 Notice of applications.
590.206 Notice of procedures.
590.207 Filing fees.
590.208 Small volume exports.
590.209 Exchanges by displacement.

Subpart C—Procedures

590.301 General
590.302 Motions and answers.
590.303 Interventions and answers.
590.304 Protests and answers.
590.305 Informal discovery.
590.306 Subpoenas.
590.307 Depositions.
590.308 Admissions of facts.
590.309 Settlements.
590.310 Opportunity for additional procedures.
590.311 Conferences.
590.312 Oral presentations.
590.313 Trial-type hearings.
590.314 Presiding officials.
590.315 Witnesses.
590.316 Shortened proceedings.
590.317 Complaints.

Subpart D—Opinions and Orders

590.401 Orders to show cause.
590.402 Conditional orders.
590.403 Emergency interim orders.
590.404 Final opinions and orders.
590.405 Transferability.
590.406 Compliance with orders.

590.407 Reports of changes.

Subpart E—Applications for Rehearing

590.501 Filing.
590.502 Application is not a stay.
590.503 Opinion and order on rehearing.
590.504 Denial by operation of law.
590.505 Answers to applications for rehearing.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 301(b), 402(f), and 644, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 578, 585, and 599 (42 U.S.C. 7151(b), 7172(f), and 7254), Sec. 3, Act of June 21, 1938, c. 556, 52 Stat. 822 (15 U.S.C. 717b); E.O. 12009 (42 FR 46267, September 15, 1977); DOE Delegation Order Nos. 0204–111 and 0204–127 (49 FR 6684, February 22, 1984; 54 FR 11437, March 20, 1989).

SOURCE: 54 FR 53531, Dec. 29, 1989, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 590.100 OMB Control Numbers.

The information collection requirements contained in this part have been approved by the Office of Management and Budget under Control No. 1903–0081.

§ 590.101 Purpose and scope.

The purpose of this part is to establish the rules and procedures required to be followed by persons to obtain authorizations from DOE to import or export natural gas under the Natural Gas Act and by all other persons interested in participating in a natural gas import or export proceeding before the agency. This part establishes the procedural rules necessary to implement the authorities vested in the Secretary of Energy by sections 301(b) and 402(f) of the DOE Act, which have been delegated to the Assistant Secretary.

§ 590.102 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) *Assistant Secretary* means the Assistant Secretary for Fossil Energy or any employee of the DOE who has been delegated final decisional authority.

(b) *Contested proceeding* means a proceeding:

(1) Where a protest or a motion to intervene, or a notice of intervention, in opposition to an application or other requested action has been filed, or

(2) Where a party otherwise notifies the Assistant Secretary and the other parties to a proceeding in writing that it opposes an application or other requested action.

(c) *Decisional employee* means the Assistant Secretary, presiding officials at conferences, oral presentations or trial-type hearings, and any other employee of the DOE, including consultants and contractors, who are, or may reasonably be expected to be, involved in the decision-making process, including advising the Assistant Secretary on the resolution of issues involved in a proceeding. The term includes those employees of the DOE assisting in the conduct of trial-type hearings by performing functions on behalf of the Assistant Secretary or presiding official.

(d) *DOE* means the Department of Energy, of which FE is a part.

(e) *DOE Act* means the Department of Energy Organization Act, Public Law 95–91, 91 Stat. 565 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*).

(f) *FE* means the Office of The Assistant Secretary for Fossil Energy.

(g) *FERC* means the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission.

(h) *Interested person* means a person, other than a decisional employee, whose interest in a proceeding goes beyond the general interest of the public as a whole and includes applicants, intervenors, competitors of applicants, and other individuals and organizations, including non-profit and public interest organizations, and state, local, and other public officials, with a proprietary, financial or other special interest in the outcome of a proceeding. The term does not include other federal agencies or foreign governments and their representatives, unless the agency, foreign government, or representative of a foreign government is a party to the proceeding.

(i) *Natural gas* means natural gas and mixtures of natural gas and synthetic natural gas, regardless of physical form or phase, including liquefied natural gas and gels primarily composed of natural gas.

(j) *NGA* means the Natural Gas Act of June 21, 1938, c. 556, 52 Stat. 821 (15 U.S.C. 717 *et seq.*).

(k) *Off-the-record communication* means a written or oral communication not on the record which is relevant to the merits of a proceeding, and about which the parties have not been given reasonable prior notice of

the nature and purpose of the communication and an opportunity to be present during such communication or, in the case of a written communication, an opportunity to respond to the communication. It does not include communications concerned solely with procedures which are not relevant to the merits of a proceeding. It also does not include general background discussions about an entire industry or natural gas markets or communications of a general nature made in the course of developing agency policy for future general application, even though these discussions may relate to the merits of a particular proceeding.

(l) *Party* means an applicant, any person who has filed a motion for and been granted intervenor status or whose motion to intervene is pending, and any state commission which has intervened by notice pursuant to § 590.303(a).

(m) *Person* means any individual, firm, estate, trust, partnership, association, company, joint-venture, corporation, United States local, state and federal governmental unit or instrumentality thereof, charitable, educational or other institution, and others, including any officer, director, owner, employee, or duly authorized representative of any of the foregoing.

(n) *Presiding official* means any employee of the DOE who has been designated by the Assistant Secretary to conduct any stage of a proceeding, which may include presiding at a conference, oral presentation, or trial-type hearing, and who has been delegated the authority of the Assistant Secretary to make rulings and issue orders in the conduct of such proceeding, other than final opinions and orders, orders to show cause, emergency interim orders, or conditional decisions under subpart D and orders on rehearing under subpart E.

(o) *Proceeding* means the process and activity, and any part thereof, instituted by FE either in response to an application, petition, motion or other filing under this part, or on its own initiative, by which FE develops and considers the relevant facts, policy and applicable law concerning the importation or exportation of natural gas and which may lead to the issuance of an order by the Assistant Secretary under subparts D and E.

(p) *State commission* means the regulatory body of a state or municipality having jurisdiction to regulate rates and charges for the sale of natural gas to consumers within the state or municipality, or having any regulatory jurisdiction over parties involved in the import or export arrangement.

§ 590.103 General requirements for filing documents with FE.

(a) Any document, including but not limited to an application, amendment of an application, request, petition, motion, answer, comment, protest, complaint, and any exhibit submitted in connection with such documents, shall be filed with FE under this part. Such document shall be considered officially filed with FE when it has been received and stamped with the time and date of receipt by the Office of Fuels Programs, FE. Documents transmitted to FE must be addressed as provided in § 590.104. All documents and exhibits become part of the record in the official FE docket file and will not be returned. An original and fifteen (15) copies of all applications, filings and submittals shall be provided to FE. No specific format is required. Applicants required to file quarterly reports as a condition to an authorization need only file an original and four (4) copies.

(b) Upon receipt by FE, each application or other initial request for action shall be assigned a docket number. Any petition, motion, answer, request, comment, protest, complaint or other document filed subsequently in a docketed proceeding with FE shall refer to the assigned docket number. All documents shall be signed either by the person upon whose behalf the document is filed or by an authorized representative. Documents signed by an authorized representative shall contain a certified statement that the representative is a duly authorized representative unless the representative has a certified statement already on file in the FE docket of the proceeding. All documents shall also be verified under oath or affirmation by the person filing, or by an officer or authorized representative of the firm having knowledge of the facts alleged. Each document filed

with FE shall contain a certification that a copy has been served as required by § 590.107 and indicate the date of service. Service of each document must be made not later than the date of the filing of the document.

(c) A person who files an application shall state whether, to the best knowledge of that person, the same or a related matter is being considered by any other part of the DOE, including the FERC, or any other Federal agency or department and, if so, shall identify the matter and the agency or department.

§ 590.104 Address for filing documents.

All documents filed under this part shall be addressed to: Office of Fuels Programs, Fossil Energy, U.S. Department of Energy, Docket Room 3F–056, FE–50, Forrestal Building, 1000 Independence Avenue SW., Washington, DC 20585. All hand delivered documents shall be filed with the Office of Fuels Programs at the above address between the hours of 8 a.m. and 4:30 p.m., Monday through Friday, except Federal holidays.

§ 590.105 Computation of time.

(a) In computing any period of time prescribed or allowed by these regulations, the day of the act or event from which the designated period of time begins to run is not included. The period of time begins to run the next day after the day of the act or event. The last day of the period so computed is included unless it is a Saturday, Sunday, or legal Federal holiday, in which event the period runs until the end of the next day that is neither a Saturday, Sunday, nor a legal Federal holiday, unless otherwise provided by this part or by the terms of an FE order. Documents received after the regular business hours of 8 a.m. to 4:30 p.m. are deemed filed on the next regular business day.

(b) When a document is required to be filed with FE within a prescribed time, an extension of time to file may be granted for good cause shown.

(c) An order is issued and effective when date stamped by the Office of Fuels Programs, FE, after the order has been signed unless another effective date is specified in the order.

§ 590.106 Dockets.

The FE shall maintain a docket file of each proceeding under this part, which shall contain the official record upon which all orders provided for in subparts D and E shall be based. The official record in a particular proceeding shall include the official service list, all documents filed under § 590.103, the official transcripts of any procedures held under subpart C, and opinions and orders issued by FE under subparts D and E, and reports of contract amendments under § 590.407. All dockets shall be available for inspection and copying by the public during regular business hours between 8 a.m. and 4:30 p.m. Dockets are located in the Office of Fuels Programs, FE, Docket Room 3F–056, Forrestal Building, 1000 Independence Avenue SW., Washington, DC 20585.

§ 590.107 Service.

(a) An applicant, any other party to a proceeding, or a person filing a protest shall serve a copy of all documents filed with FE upon all parties unless otherwise provided in this part. The copy of a document served upon parties shall be a true copy of the document filed with FE, but does not have to be a copy stamped with the time and date of receipt by FE. The FE shall maintain an official service list for each proceeding which shall be provided upon request.

(b) When the parties are not known, such as during the initial comment period following publication of the notice of application, service requirements under paragraph (a) of this section may be met by serving a copy of all documents on the applicant and on FE for inclusion in the FE docket in the proceeding.

(c) All documents required to be served under this part may be served by hand, certified mail, registered mail, or regular mail. It shall be the responsibility of the serving party to ensure that service is effected in a timely manner. Service is deemed complete upon delivery or upon mailing, whichever occurs first.

(d) Service upon a person's duly authorized representatives on the official service list shall constitute service upon that person.

(e) All FE orders, notices, or other FE documents shall be served on the parties by FE either by hand, registered mail, certified mail, or regular mail, except as otherwise provided in this part.

§ 590.108 Off-the-record communications.

(a) In any contested proceeding under this part:

(1) No interested person shall make an off-the-record communication or knowingly cause an off-the-record communication to be made to any decisional employee.

(2) No decisional employee shall make an off-the-record communication or knowingly cause an off-the-record communication to be made to any interested person.

(3) A decisional employee who receives, makes, or knowingly causes to be made an oral off-the-record communication prohibited by this section shall prepare a memorandum stating the substance of the communication and any responses made to it.

(4) Within forty-eight (48) hours of the off-the-record communication, a copy of all written off-the-record communications or memoranda prepared in compliance with paragraph (a)(3) of this section shall be delivered by the decisional employee to the Assistant Secretary and to the Deputy Assistant Secretary for Fuels Programs. The materials will then be made available for public inspection by placing them in the docket associated with the proceeding.

(5) Requests by a party for an opportunity to rebut, on the record, any facts or contentions in an off-the-record communication may be filed in writing with the Assistant Secretary. The Assistant Secretary shall grant such requests only for good cause.

(6) Upon being notified of an off-the-record communication made by a party in violation of this section, the Assistant Secretary may, to the extent consistent with the interests of justice and the policies of the NGA and the DOE Act, require the party to show cause why the party's claim or interest in the proceeding should not be dismissed, denied, disregarded, or otherwise adversely affected on account of the violation.

(b) The prohibitions of paragraph (a) of the section shall apply only to contested proceedings and begin at the time either a protest or a motion to intervene or notice of intervention in opposition to the application or other requested action is filed with FE, or a party otherwise specifically notifies the Assistant Secretary and the other parties in writing of its opposition to the application or other requested action, whichever occurs first.

§ 590.109 FE investigations.

The Assistant Secretary or the Assistant Secretary's delegate may investigate any facts, conditions, practices, or other matters within the scope of this part in order to determine whether any person has violated or is about to violate any provision of the NGA or other statute or any rule, regulation, or order within the Assistant Secretary's jurisdiction. In conducting such investigations, the Assistant Secretary or the Assistant Secretary's delegate may, among other things, subpoena witnesses to testify, subpoena or otherwise require the submission of documents, and order testimony to be taken by deposition.

Subpart B—Applications for Authorization To Import or Export Natural Gas

§ 590.201 General.

(a) Any person seeking authorization to import or export natural gas into or from the United States, to amend an existing import or export authorization, or seeking any other requested action, shall file an application with the FE under the provisions of this part.

(b) Applications shall be filed at least ninety (90) days in advance of the proposed import or export or other requested action, unless a later date is permitted for good cause shown.

[54 FR 53531, Dec. 29, 1989; 55 FR 14916, Apr. 19, 1990]

§ 590.202 Contents of applications.

(a) Each application filed under § 590.201 shall contain the exact legal

name of the applicant, the names, titles, and mailing addresses of a maximum of two persons for the official service list, a statement describing the action sought from FE, the justification for such action, including why the proposed action is not inconsistent with the public interest, and the FE docket number, if applicable.

(b) Each application shall include the matters listed below to the extent applicable. All factual matters shall be supported to the extent practicable by the necessary data or documents. Copies of relevant documents filed or intended to be filed with FERC may be submitted to satisfy the requirements of this section. Topics to be addressed or described shall include:

(1) The scope of the project, including the volumes of natural gas involved, expressed in either Mcf or Bcf and their Btu equivalents, the dates of commencement and completion of the proposed import or export, and the facilities to be utilized or constructed;

(2) The source and security of the natural gas supply to be imported or exported, including contract volumes and a description of the gas reserves supporting the project during the term of the requested authorization;

(3) Identification of all the participants in the transaction, including the parent company, if any, and identification of any corporate or other affiliations among the participants;

(4) The terms of the transaction, such as take-or-pay obligations, make-up provisions, and other terms that affect the marketability of the gas;

(5) The provisions of the import arrangement which establish the base price, volume requirements, transportation and other costs, and allow adjustments during the life of the project, and a demonstration as to why the import arrangement is and will remain competitive over the life of the project and is otherwise not inconsistent with the public interest;

(6) For proposed imports, the need for the natural gas by the applicant or applicant's prospective customers, including a description of the persons who are expected to purchase the natural gas; and for proposed exports, the lack of a national or regional need for the gas; and

(7) The potential environmental impact of the project. To the extent possible, the application shall include a listing and description of any environmental assessments or studies being performed on the proposed gas project. The application shall be updated as the status of any environmental assessments changes.

(c) The application shall also have attached a statement, including a signed opinion of legal counsel, showing that a proposed import or export of natural gas is within the corporate powers of the applicant and a copy of all relevant contracts and purchase agreements.

(d) The Assistant Secretary or the Assistant Secretary's delegate may at any time require the applicant and other parties to make supplemental filings of additional information necessary to resolve issues raised by the application.

(e) All information and data filed in support of or against an application will be placed in the official FE docket file of the proceeding and will not be afforded confidential treatment, unless the party shows why the information or data should be exempted from public disclosure and the Assistant Secretary or Assistant Secretary's delegate determines that such information or data shall be afforded confidential treatment. Such determination shall be made in accordance with 10 CFR 1004.11.

[54 FR 53531, Dec. 29, 1989; 55 FR 18227, May 1, 1990]

§ 590.203 Deficient applications.

If an application is incomplete or otherwise deemed deficient, the Assistant Secretary or the Assistant Secretary's delegate may require the applicant to submit additional information or exhibits to remedy the deficiency. If the applicant does not remedy the deficiency within the time specified by the Assistant Secretary or the Assistant Secretary's delegate, the application may be dismissed without prejudice to refiling at another time.

§ 590.204 Amendment or withdrawal of applications.

(a) The applicant may amend or supplement the application at any time

prior to issuance of the Assistant Secretary's final opinion and order resolving the application, and shall amend or supplement the application whenever there are changes in material facts or conditions upon which the proposal is based.

(b) The Assistant Secretary may for good cause shown by motion of a party or upon the Assistant Secretary's own initiative decline to act on, in whole or in part, an amendment or supplement requested by an applicant under paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) After written notice to FE and service upon the parties of that notice an applicant may withdraw an application. Such withdrawal shall be effective thirty (30) days after notice to FE if the Assistant Secretary does not issue an order to the contrary within that time period.

§ 590.205 Notice of applications.

(a) Upon receipt of an application, the FE shall publish a notice of application in the FEDERAL REGISTER. The notice shall summarize the proposal. Except in emergency circumstances, generally the notice shall provide a time limit of not less than thirty (30) days from the notice's date of publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER for persons to file protests, comments, or a motion to intervene or notice of intervention, as applicable. The notice may also request comments on specific issues or matters of fact, law, or policy raised by the application.

(b) The notice of application shall advise the parties of their right to request additional procedures, including the opportunity to file written comments and to request that a conference, oral presentation, or trial-type hearing be convened. Failure to request additional procedures at this time shall be deemed a waiver of any right to additional procedures should the Assistant Secretary decide to grant the application and authorize the import or export by issuing a final opinion and order in accordance with § 590.316.

(c) Where negotiations between the DOE, including FE, and a foreign government have resulted in a formal policy agreement or statement affecting a particular import or export proceeding, FE shall include in the notice of application a description of the terms or policy positions of that agreement or statement to the extent they apply to the proceeding, and invite comment. A formal policy agreement or statement affecting a particular import or export proceeding that is arrived at after publication of the notice of application shall be placed on the record in that proceeding and the parties given an opportunity to comment thereon.

§ 590.206 Notice of procedures.

In all proceedings where, following a notice of application and the time specified in the notice for the filing of responses thereto, the Assistant Secretary determines to have additional procedures, which may consist of the filing of supplemental written comments, written interrogatories or other discovery procedures, a conference, oral presentation, or trial-type hearing, the Assistant Secretary shall provide the parties with notice of the procedures the Assistant Secretary has determined to follow in the proceeding and advise the parties of their right to request any additional procedures in accordance with the provisions of § 590.310. The notice of procedures may identify and request comments on specific issues of fact, law, or policy relevant to the proceeding and may establish a time limit for requesting additional procedures.

§ 590.207 Filing fees.

A non-refundable filing fee of fifty dollars ($50) shall accompany each application filed under § 590.201. Checks shall be made payable to ''Treasury of the United States.''

§ 590.208 Small volume exports.

Any person may export up to 100,000 cubic feet of natural gas (14.73 pounds per square inch at 60 degrees Fahrenheit) or the liquefied or compressed equivalent thereof, in a single shipment for scientific, experimental, or other non-utility gas use without prior authorization of the Assistant Secretary.

§ 590.209 Exchanges by displacement.

Any importer of natural gas may enter into an exchange by displacement agreement without the prior authorization of the Assistant Secretary when the net effect of the exchange is no different than under the importer's existing authorization. An exchange by displacement is an arrangement whereby authorized imported volumes are displaced by other gas for purposes of storage or flexibility. The term of the exchange agreement may not exceed five (5) years, the volumes imported may not exceed the importer's existing import authorization, and no actual natural gas may flow across the United States border under the terms of the exchange agreement. Any importer who enters into an exchange agreement pursuant to this section shall file with FE within fifteen (15) days after the start up of the exchange, a written description of the transaction, the exact volume of natural gas to be displaced, the name of the purchaser, and the import authorization under which the exchange is being carried out.

Subpart C—Procedures

§ 590.301 General.

The procedures of this subpart are applicable to proceedings conducted on all applications or other requested actions filed under this part. The Assistant Secretary may conduct all aspects of the procedures of this subpart or may designate a presiding official pursuant to § 590.314.

§ 590.302 Motions and answers.

(a) Motions for any procedural or interlocutory ruling shall set forth the ruling or relief requested and state the grounds and the statutory or other authority relied upon. All written motions shall comply with the filing requirements of § 590.103. Motions made during conferences, oral presentations or trial-type hearings may be stated orally upon the record, unless the Assistant Secretary or the presiding official determines otherwise.

(b) Any party may file an answer to any written motion within fifteen (15) days after the motion is filed, unless another period of time is established by the Assistant Secretary or the presiding official. Answers shall be in writing and shall detail each material allegation of the motion being answered. Answers shall state clearly and concisely the facts and legal authorities relied upon.

(c) Any motion, except for motions seeking intervention or requesting that a conference, oral presentation or trial-type hearing be held, shall be deemed to have been denied, unless the Assistant Secretary or presiding official acts within thirty (30) days after the motion is filed.

§ 590.303 Interventions and answers.

(a) A state commission may intervene in a proceeding under this part as a matter of right and become a party to the proceeding by filing a notice of intervention no later than the date fixed for filing motions to intervene in the applicable FE notice or order. If the period for filing the notice has expired, a state commission may be permitted to intervene by complying with the filing and other requirements applicable to any other person seeking to become a party to the proceeding as provided in this section.

(b) Any other person who seeks to become a party to a proceeding shall file a motion to intervene, which sets out clearly and concisely the facts upon which the petitioner's claim of interest is based.

(c) A motion to intervene shall state, to the extent known, the position taken by the movant and the factual and legal basis for such positions in order to advise the parties and the Assistant Secretary as to the specific issues of policy, fact, or law to be raised or controverted.

(d) Motions to intervene may be filed at any time following the filing of an application, but no later than the date fixed for filing such motions or notices in the applicable FE notice or order, unless a later date is permitted by the Assistant Secretary for good cause shown and after considering the impact of granting the late motion of the proceeding. Each motion or notice shall list the names, titles, and mailing addresses of a maximum of two persons for the official service list.

(e) Any party may file an answer to a motion to intervene, but such answer shall be made within fifteen (15) days after the motion to intervene was filed, unless a later date is permitted by the Assistant Secretary for good cause shown. Answers shall be in writing. Answers shall detail each material allegation of the motion to intervene being answered and state clearly and concisely the facts and legal authorities relied upon. Failure to answer is deemed a waiver of any objection to the intervention. This paragraph does not prevent the Assistant Secretary from ruling on a motion to intervene and issuing a final opinion and order in accordance with § 590.316 prior to the expiration of the fifteen (15) days in which a party has to answer a motion to intervene.

(f) If an answer in opposition to a motion to intervene is timely filed or if the motion to intervene is not timely filed, then the movant becomes a party only after the motion to intervene is expressly granted.

(g) If no answer in opposition to a motion to intervene is filed within the period of time prescribed in paragraph (e) of this section, the motion to intervene shall be deemed to be granted, unless the Assistant Secretary denies the motion in whole or in part or otherwise limits the intervention prior to the expiration of the time allowed in paragraph (e) for filing an answer to the motion to intervene. Where the motion to intervene is deemed granted, the participation of the intervenor shall be limited to matters affecting asserted rights and interests specifically set forth in the motion to intervene, and the admission of such intervenor to party status shall not be construed as recognition by FE that the intervenor might be aggrieved because of any order issued.

(h) In the event that a motion for late intervention is granted, an intervenor shall accept the record of the proceeding as it was developed prior to the intervention.

§ 590.304 Protests and answers.

(a) Any person objecting to an application filed under § 590.201 of this part or to any action taken by FE under this part may file a protest. No particular form is required. The protest shall identify the person filing the protest, the application or action being objected to, and provide a concise statement of the reasons for the protest.

(b) The filing of a protest, without also filing a motion to intervene or a notice of intervention, shall not make the person filing the protest a party to the proceeding.

(c) A protest shall be made part of the official FE docket file in the proceeding and shall be considered as a statement of position of the person filing the protest, but not as establishing the validity of any assertion upon which the decision would be based.

(d) Protests shall be served on the applicant and all parties by the person filing the protest. If the person filing the protest is unable to provide service on any person identified as a party to the proceeding after a good faith effort, then FE shall effect service. However, when the parties are not known, service requirements may be met by serving a copy on the applicant and on FE as provided in § 590.107(b).

(e) Protests may be filed at any time following the filing of an application, but no later than the date fixed for filing protests in the applicable FE notice or order, unless a later date is permitted by the Assistant Secretary for good cause shown.

(f) Any party may file an answer to a protest but such answer must be filed within fifteen (15) days after the protest was filed, unless a later date is permitted by the Assistant Secretary for good cause shown.

[54 FR 53531, Dec. 29, 1989; 55 FR 14916, Apr. 19, 1990]

§ 590.305 Informal discovery.

The parties to a proceeding may conduct discovery through use of procedures such as written interrogatories or production of documents. In response to a motion by a party, the Assistant Secretary or presiding official may determine the procedures to be utilized for discovery if the parties cannot agree on such procedures.

§ 590.306 Subpoenas.

(a) Subpoenas for the attendance of witnesses at a trial-type hearing or for

the production of documentary evidence may be issued upon the initiative of the Assistant Secretary or presiding official, or upon written motion of a party or oral motion of a party during a conference, oral presentation, or trial-type hearing, if the Assistant Secretary or presiding official determines that the evidence sought is relevant and material.

(b) Motions for the issuance of a subpoena shall specify the relevance, materiality, and scope of the testimony or documentary evidence sought, including, as to documentary evidence, specification to the extent possible of the documents sought and the facts to be proven by them, the issues to which they relate, and why the information or evidence was not obtainable through discovery procedures agreed upon by the parties.

(c) If service of a subpoena is made by a United States Marshal or a Deputy United States Marshal, service shall be evidenced by their return. If made by another person, that person shall affirm that service has occurred and file an affidavit to that effect with the original subpoena. A witness who is subpoenaed shall be entitled to witness fees as provided in § 590.315(c).

§ 590.307 Depositions.

(a) Upon motion filed by a party, the Assistant Secretary or presiding official may authorize the taking of testimony of any witness by deposition. Unless otherwise directed in the authorization issued, a witness being deposed may be examined regarding any matter which is relevant to the issues involved in the pending proceeding.

(b) Parties authorized to take a deposition shall provide written notice to the witness and all other parties at least ten (10) days in advance of the deposition unless such advance notice is waived by mutual agreement of the parties.

(c) The requesting motion and notice shall state the name and mailing address of the witness, delineate the subject matters on which the witness is expected to testify, state the reason why the deposition should be taken, indicate the time and place of the deposition, and provide the name and mailing address of the person taking the deposition.

(d) A witness whose testimony is taken by deposition shall be sworn in or shall affirm concerning the matter about which the witness has been called to testify before any questions are asked or testimony given. A witness deposed shall be entitled to witness fees as provided in § 590.315(c).

(e) The moving party shall file the entire deposition with FE after it has been subscribed and certified. No portion of the deposition shall constitute a part of the record in the proceedings unless received in evidence, in whole or in part, by the Assistant Secretary or presiding official.

§ 590.308 Admissions of facts.

(a) At any time prior to the end of a trial-type hearing, or, if there is no trial-type hearing, prior to the issuance of a final opinion and order under § 590.404, any party, the Assistant Secretary, or the presiding official may serve on any party a written request for admission of the truth of any matters at issue in the proceeding that relate to statements or opinions of fact or of the application of law to fact.

(b) A matter shall be considered admitted and conclusively established for the purposes of any proceeding in which a request for admission is served unless, within fifteen (15) days of such time limit established by the Assistant Secretary or presiding official, the party to whom the request is directed answers or objects to the request. Any answer shall specifically admit or deny the matter, or set forth in detail the reasons why the answering party cannot truthfully admit or deny the matter. An answering party may not give lack of information or knowledge as a reason for failure to admit or deny, unless the answering party states that, after reasonable inquiry, the answering party has been unable to obtain sufficient information to admit or deny. If an objection is made, the answering party shall state the reasons for the objection.

(c) If the Assistant Secretary or presiding official determines that an answer to a request for admission does not comply with the requirements of this section, the Assistant Secretary or

presiding official may order either that the matter is admitted or that an amended answer be served.

(d) A copy of all requests for admission and answers thereto shall be filed with FE in accordance with § 590.103. Copies of any documents referenced in the request shall be served with the request unless they are known to be in the possession of the other parties.

(e) The Assistant Secretary or presiding official may limit the number of requests for admission of facts in order to expedite a proceeding through elimination of duplicative requests.

§ 590.309 Settlements.

The parties may conduct settlement negotiations. If settlement negotiations are conducted during a conference, at the request of one of the parties, the Assistant Secretary or presiding official may order that the discussions be off-the-record with no transcript of such settlement negotiations being prepared for inclusion in the official record of the proceeding. No offer of settlement, comment or discussion by the parties with respect to an offer of settlement shall be subject to discovery or admissible into evidence against any parties who object to its admission.

§ 590.310 Opportunity for additional procedures.

Any party may file a motion requesting additional procedures, including the opportunity to file written comments, request written interrogatories or other discovery procedures, or request that a conference, oral presentation or trial-type hearing be held. The motion shall describe what type of procedure is requested and include the information required by §§ 590.311, 590.312 and 590.313, as appropriate. Failure to request additional procedures within the time specified in the notice of application or in the notice of procedure, if applicable, shall constitute a waiver of that right unless the Assistant Secretary for good cause shown grants additional time for requesting additional procedures. If no time limit is specified in the notice or order, additional procedures may be requested at any time prior to the issuance of a final opinion and order. At any time during a proceeding, the Assistant Secretary or presiding official may on his or her own initiative determine to provide additional procedures.

[54 FR 53531, Dec. 29, 1989; 55 FR 14916, Apr. 19, 1990]

§ 590.311 Conferences.

(a) Upon motion by a party, a conference of the parties may be convened to adjust or settle the proceedings, set schedules, delineate issues, stipulate certain issues of fact or law, set procedures, and consider other relevant matters where it appears that a conference will materially advance the proceeding. The Assistant Secretary or presiding official may delineate the issues which are to be considered and may place appropriate limitations on the number of intervenors who may participate, if two or more intervenors have substantially like interests.

(b) A motion by a party for a conference shall include a specific showing why a conference will materially advance the proceeding.

(c) Conferences shall be recorded, unless otherwise ordered by the Assistant Secretary or presiding official, and the transcript shall be made a part of the official record of the proceeding and available to the public.

§ 590.312 Oral presentations.

(a) Any party may file a motion requesting an opportunity to make an oral presentation of views, arguments, including arguments of counsel, and data on any aspect of the proceeding. The motion shall identify the substantial question of fact, law or policy at issue and demonstrate that it is material and relevant to the merits of the proceeding. The party may submit material supporting the existence of substantial issues. The Assistant Secretary or presiding official ordinarily will grant a party's motion for an oral presentation, if the Assistant Secretary or presiding official determines that a substantial question of fact, law, or policy is at issue in the proceeding and illumination of that question will be aided materially by such an oral presentation.

(b) The Assistant Secretary or presiding official may require parties making oral presentations to file briefs

or other documents prior to the oral presentation. The Assistant Secretary or presiding official also may delineate the issues that are to be considered at the oral presentation and place appropriate limitations on the number of intervenors who may participate if two or more intervenors have substantially like interests.

(c) Oral presentations shall be conducted in an informal manner with the Assistant Secretary or the presiding official and other decisional employees presiding as a panel. The panel may question those parties making an oral presentation. Cross-examination by the parties and other more formal procedures used in trial-type hearings will not be available in oral presentations. The oral presentation may be, but need not be, made by legal counsel.

(d) Oral presentations shall be recorded, and the transcript shall be made part of the official record of the proceeding and available to the public.

§ 590.313 Trial-type hearings.

(a) Any party may file a motion for a trial-type hearing for the purpose of taking evidence on relevant and material issues of fact genuinely in dispute in the proceeding. The motion shall identify the factual issues in dispute and the evidence that will be presented. The party must demonstrate that the issues are genuinely in dispute, relevant and material to the decision and that a trial-type hearing is necessary for a full and true disclosure of the facts. The Assistant Secretary or presiding official shall grant a party's motion for a trial-type hearing, if the Assistant Secretary or presiding official determines that there is a relevant and material factual issue genuinely in dispute and that a trial-type hearing is necessary for a full and true disclosure of the facts.

(b) In trial-type hearings, the parties shall have the right to be represented by counsel, to request discovery, to present the direct and rebuttal testimony of witnesses, to cross-examine witnesses under oath, and to present documentary evidence.

(c) The Assistant Secretary or presiding official upon his or her own initiative or upon the motion of any party may consolidate any proceedings involving common questions of fact in whole or in part for a trial-type hearing. The Assistant Secretary or presiding official may also place appropriate limitations on the number of intervenors who may participate if two or more intervenors have substantially like interests.

(d) The Assistant Secretary or presiding official may make such rulings for trial-type hearings, including delineation of the issues and limitation of cross-examination of a witness, as are necessary to obtain a full and true disclosure of the facts and to limit irrelevant, immaterial, or unduly repetitious evidence.

(e) At trial-type hearings, the Assistant Secretary or presiding official, or any other decisional employee directed by the Assistant Secretary or presiding official, may call witnesses for testimony or presenting exhibits that directly relate to a particular issue of fact to be considered at the hearing. The Assistant Secretary or presiding official, or any other decisional employee directed by the Assistant Secretary or presiding official, may also question witnesses offered by the parties concerning their testimony.

(f) Trial-type hearings shall be recorded, and the transcript shall be made part of the official record of the proceeding and available to the public.

§ 590.314 Presiding officials.

(a) The Assistant Secretary may designate a presiding official to conduct any stage of the proceeding, including officiating at a conference, oral presentation, or trial-type hearing. The presiding official shall have the full authority of the Assistant Secretary during such proceedings.

(b) A presiding official at a conference, oral presentation, or trial-type hearing shall have the authority to regulate the conduct of the proceeding including, but not limited to, determination of the issues to be raised during the course of the conference, oral presentation, or trial-type hearing, administering oaths or affirmations, directing discovery, ruling on objections to the presentation of testimony or exhibits, receiving relevant and material

evidence, requiring the advance submission of written testimony and exhibits, ruling on motions, determining the format, directing that briefs be filed with respect to issues raised or to be raised during the course of the conference, oral presentation or trial-type hearing, questioning witnesses, taking reasonable measures to exclude duplicative material, and placing limitations on the number of witnesses to be called by a party.

§ 590.315 Witnesses.

(a) The Assistant Secretary or presiding official may require that the direct testimony of witnesses in trial-type hearings be submitted in advance of the hearing and be under oath, and in written form.

(b) Witnesses who testify in trial-type hearings shall be under oath or affirmation before being allowed to testify.

(c) Witnesses subpoenaed pursuant to § 590.306 shall be paid the same fees and mileage as paid for like services in the District Courts of the United States.

(d) Witnesses subpoenaed pursuant to § 590.307 shall be paid the same fees and mileage as paid for like services in the District Court of the United States.

[54 FR 53531, Dec. 29, 1989; 55 FR 14916, Apr. 19, 1990]

§ 590.316 Shortened proceedings.

In any proceeding where, in response to a notice of application or notice of procedures, if applicable, no party files a motion requesting additional procedures, including the right to file written comments, or the holding of a conference, oral presentation, or trial-type hearing, or where the Assistant Secretary determines that such requested additional procedures are not required pursuant to §§ 590.310, 590.311, 590.312 and 590.313, the Assistant Secretary may issue a final opinion and order on the basis of the official record, including the application and all other filings. In any proceeding in which the Assistant Secretary intends to deny the application or grant the application with the attachment of material conditions unknown to, or likely to be opposed by, the applicant, solely on the basis of the application and responses to the notice of application or notice of procedures, if applicable, without additional procedures, the Assistant Secretary shall advise the parties in writing generally of the issues of concern to the Assistant Secretary upon which the denial or material conditions would be based and provide them with an opportunity to request additional procedures pursuant to §§ 590.310, 590.311, 590.312 and 590.313.

§ 590.317 Complaints.

(a) Any person may file a complaint objecting to the actions by any other person under any statute, rule, order or authorization applicable to an existing import or export authorization over which FE has jurisdiction. No particular form is required. The complaint must be filed with FE in writing and must contain the name and address of the complainant and the respondent and state the facts forming the basis of the complaint.

(b) A complaint concerning an existing import or export authorization shall be served on all parties to the original import or export authorization proceeding either by the complainant or by FE if the complainant has made a good faith effort but has been unable to effect service.

(c) The Assistant Secretary may issue an order to show cause under § 590.401, or may provide opportunity for additional procedures pursuant to §§ 590.310, 590.311, 590.312, or § 590.313, in order to determine what action should be taken in response to the complaint.

Subpart D—Opinions and Orders

§ 590.401 Orders to show cause.

A proceeding under this part may commence upon the initiative of the Assistant Secretary or in response to an application by any person requesting FE action against any other person alleged to be in contravention or violation of any authorization, statute, rule, order, or law administered by FE applicable to the import or export of natural gas, or for any other alleged wrong involving importation or exportation of natural gas over which FE has jurisdiction. Any show cause order issued shall identify the matters of interest or the matters complained of

that the Assistant Secretary is inquiring about, and shall be deemed to be tentative and for the purpose of framing issues for consideration and decision. The respondent named in the order shall respond orally or in writing, or both, as required by the order. A show cause order is not a final opinion and order.

§ 590.402 Conditional orders.

The Assistant Secretary may issue a conditional order at any time during a proceeding prior to issuance of a final opinion and order. The conditional order shall include the basis for not issuing a final opinion and order at that time and a statement of findings and conclusions. The findings and conclusions shall be based solely on the official record of the proceeding.

§ 590.403 Emergency interim orders.

Where consistent with the public interest, the Assistant Secretary may waive further procedures and issue an emergency interim order authorizing the import or export of natural gas. After issuance of the emergency interim order, the proceeding shall be continued until the record is complete, at which time a final opinion and order shall be issued. The Assistant Secretary may attach necessary or appropriate terms and conditions to the emergency interim order to ensure that the authorized action will be consistent with the public interest.

§ 590.404 Final opinions and orders.

The Assistant Secretary shall issue a final opinion and order and attach such conditions thereto as may be required by the public interest after completion and review of the record. The final opinion and order shall be based solely on the official record of the proceeding and include a statement of findings and conclusions, as well as the reasons or basis for them, and the appropriate order, condition, sanction, relief or denial.

§ 590.405 Transferability.

Authorizations by the Assistant Secretary to import or export natural gas shall not be transferable or assignable, unless specifically authorized by the Assistant Secretary.

§ 590.406 Compliance with orders.

Any person required or authorized to take any action by a final opinion and order of the Assistant Secretary shall file with FE, within thirty (30) days after the requirement or authorization becomes effective, a notice, under oath, that such requirement has been complied with or such authorization accepted or otherwise acted upon, unless otherwise specified in the order.

§ 590.407 Reports of changes.

Any person authorized to import or export natural gas has a continuing obligation to give the Assistant Secretary written notification, as soon as practicable, of any prospective or actual changes to the information submitted during the application process upon which the authorization was based, including, but not limited to, changes to: The parties involved in the import or export arrangement, the terms and conditions of any applicable contracts, the place of entry or exit, the transporters, the volumes accepted or offered, or the import or export price. Any notification filed under this section shall contain the FE docket number(s) to which it relates. Compliance with this section does not relieve an importer or exporter from responsibility to file the appropriate application to amend a previous import or export authorization under this part whenever such changes are contrary to or otherwise not permitted by the existing authorization.

Subpart E—Applications for Rehearing

§ 590.501 Filing.

(a) An application for rehearing of a final opinion and order, conditional order, or emergency interim order may be filed by any party aggrieved by the issuance of such opinion and order within thirty (30) days after issuance. The application shall be served on all parties.

(b) The application shall state concisely the alleged errors in the final opinion and order, conditional order, or emergency interim order and must set forth specifically the ground or grounds upon which the application is

based. If an order is sought to be vacated, reversed, or modified by reason of matters that have arisen since the issuance of the final opinion and order, conditional order, or emergency interim order, the matters relied upon shall be set forth with specificity in the application. The application shall also comply with the filing requirements of § 590.103.

§ 590.502 Application is not a stay.

The filing of an application for rehearing does not operate as a stay of the Assistant Secretary's order, unless specifically ordered by the Assistant Secretary.

§ 590.503 Opinion and order on rehearing.

Upon application for rehearing, the Assistant Secretary may grant or deny rehearing or may abrogate or modify the final opinion and order, conditional order, or emergency interim order with or without further proceedings.

§ 590.504 Denial by operation of law.

Unless the Assistant Secretary acts upon the application for rehearing within thirty (30) days after it is filed, it is deemed to be denied. Such denial shall constitute final agency action for the purpose of judicial review.

§ 590.505 Answers to applications for rehearing.

No answers to applications for rehearing shall be entertained. Prior to the issuance of any final opinion and order on rehearing, however, the Assistant Secretary may afford the parties an opportunity to file briefs or answers and may order that a conference, oral presentation, or trial-type hearing be held on some or all of the issues presented by an application for rehearing.

SUBCHAPTER H—ASSISTANCE REGULATIONS

PART 600—FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE RULES

Subpart A—General

Sec.
600.1 Purpose.
600.2 Applicability.
600.3 Definitions.
600.4 Deviations.
600.5 Selection of award instrument.
600.6 Eligibility.
600.7 Small and disadvantaged and women-owned business participation.
600.8 Funding Opportunity Announcement.
600.9 [Reserved]
600.10 Form and content of applications.
600.11–12 [Reserved]
600.13 Merit review.
600.14 [Reserved]
600.15 Authorized uses of information.
600.16 Legal authority and effect of an award.
600.17 Contents of Award.
600.18 [Reserved]
600.19 Notification to unsuccessful applicants.
600.20 Maximum DOE obligation.
600.21 Access to records.
600.22 Disputes and appeals.
600.23 [Reserved]
600.24 Noncompliance.
600.25 Suspension and termination.
600.26–28 [Reserved]
600.29 Fixed obligation awards.
600.30 Cost sharing.
600.31 Research misconduct.

Subpart B—Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements With Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Nonprofit Organizations

GENERAL

600.100 Purpose.
600.101 Definitions.
600.102 Effect on other issuances.
600.103 Deviations.
600.104 Subawards.

PRE-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

600.110 Purpose.
600.111 Pre-award policies.
600.112 Forms for applying for Federal assistance.
600.113 Debarment and suspension.
600.114 Special award conditions.
600.115 Metric system of measurement.
600.116 Resource Conservation and Recovery Act.
600.117 [Reserved]

POST-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

Financial and Program Management

600.120 Purpose of financial and program management.
600.121 Standards for financial management systems.
600.122 Payment.
600.123 Cost sharing or matching.
600.124 Program income.
600.125 Revision of budget and program plans.
600.126 Non-Federal audits.
600.127 Allowable costs.
600.128 Period of availability of funds.

Property Standards

600.130 Purpose of property standards.
600.131 Insurance coverage.
600.132 Real property.
600.133 Federally-owned and exempt property.
600.134 Equipment.
600.135 Supplies and other expendable property.
600.136 Intangible property.
600.137 Property trust relationship.

Procurement Standards

600.140 Purpose of procurement standards.
600.141 Recipient responsibilities.
600.142 Codes of conduct.
600.143 Competition.
600.144 Procurement procedures.
600.145 Cost and price analysis.
600.146 Procurement records.
600.147 Contract administration.
600.148 Contract provisions.
600.149 Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA).

Reports and Records

600.150 Purpose of reports and records.
600.151 Monitoring and reporting program performance.
600.152 Financial reporting.
600.153 Retention and access requirements for records.

Termination and Enforcement

600.160 Purpose of termination and enforcement.
600.161 Termination.
600.162 Enforcement.

AFTER-THE-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

600.170 Purpose.
600.171 Closeout procedures.
600.172 Subsequent adjustments and continuing responsibilities.

600.173 Collection of amounts due.

ADDITIONAL PROVISIONS

APPENDIX A TO SUBPART B OF PART 600—CONTRACT PROVISIONS

Subpart C—Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments

GENERAL

600.200 Purpose and scope of this subpart.
600.201 Scope of §§ 600.200 through 600.205.
600.202 Definitions.
600.203 Applicability.
600.204 Effect on other issuances.
600.205 Additions and exceptions.

PRE-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

600.210 Forms for applying for grants.
600.211 State plans.
600.212 Special grant or subgrant conditions for ''high- risk'' recipients.

POST-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

Financial Administration

600.220 Standards for financial management systems.
600.221 Payment.
600.222 Allowable costs.
600.223 Period of availability of funds.
600.224 Matching or cost sharing.
600.225 Program income.
600.226 Non-Federal audit.

Changes, Property, and Subawards

600.230 Changes.
600.231 Real property.
600.232 Equipment.
600.233 Supplies.
600.234 Copyrights.
600.235 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.
600.236 Procurement.
600.237 Subgrants.

Reports, Records Retention, and Enforcement

600.240 Monitoring and reporting program performance.
600.241 Financial reporting.
600.242 Retention and access requirements for records.
600.243 Enforcement.
600.244 Termination for convenience.

After-the-Grant Requirements

600.250 Closeout.
600.251 Later disallowances and adjustments.
600.252 Collection of amounts due.

Entitlements [Reserved]

Subpart D—Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements With For-Profit Organizations

GENERAL

600.301 Purpose.
600.302 Definitions.
600.303 Deviations.
600.304 Special award conditions.
600.305 Debarment and suspension.
600.306 Metric system of measurement.

POST-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

Financial and Program Management

600.310 Purpose of financial and program management.
600.311 Standards for financial management systems.
600.312 Payment.
600.313 Cost sharing or matching.
600.314 Program income.
600.315 Revision of budget and program plans.
600.316 Audits.
600.317 Allowable costs.
600.318 Fee and profit.

Property Standards

600.320 Purpose of property standards.
600.321 Real property and equipment.
600.322 Federally owned property.
600.323 Property management system.
600.324 Supplies.
600.325 Intellectual property.

Procurement Standards

600.330 Purpose of procurement standards.
600.331 Requirements.

Reports and Records

600.340 Purpose of reports and records.
600.341 Monitoring and reporting program and financial performance.
600.342 Retention and access requirements for records.

Termination and Enforcement

600.350 Purpose of termination and enforcement.
600.351 Termination.
600.352 Enforcement.
600.353 Disputes and appeals.

AFTER-THE-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

600.360 Purpose.
600.361 Closeout procedures.
600.362 Subsequent adjustments and continuing responsibilities.
600.363 Collection of amounts due.

ADDITIONAL PROVISIONS

600.380 Purpose.

600.381 Special provisions for Small Business Innovation Research Grants.
APPENDIX A TO SUBPART D OF PART 600—PATENT AND DATA PROVISIONS
APPENDIX B TO SUBPART D OF PART 600—CONTRACT PROVISIONS

Subpart E [Reserved]

Subpart F—Eligibility Determination for Certain Financial Assistance Programs—General Statement of Policy

600.500 Purpose and scope.
600.501 Definitions.
600.502 What must DOE determine.
600.503 Determining the economic interest of the United States.
600.504 Information an applicant must submit.
600.505 Other information DOE may consider.
APPENDIX A TO PART 600—GENERALLY APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS
APPENDIX B TO PART 600—AUDIT REPORT DISTRIBUTEES

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.;* 31 U.S.C. 6301–6308; 50 U.S.C. 2401 *et seq.*

Subpart A—General

SOURCE: 61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

§ 600.1 Purpose.

This part implements the Federal Grant and Cooperative Agreement Act, Pub. L. 95–224, as amended by Pub. L. 97–258 (31 U.S.C. 6301–6308), and establishes uniform policies and procedures for the award and administration of DOE grants and cooperative agreements. This subpart (Subpart A) sets forth the general policies and procedures applicable to the award and administration of grants, cooperative agreements, and technology investment agreements. The specific guidance for technology investment agreements is contained in part 603.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 70 FR 69253, Nov. 15, 2005]

§ 600.2 Applicability.

(a) Except as otherwise provided by Federal statute or program rule, this part applies to applications, funding opportunity announcement, and new, continuation, and renewal awards (and any subsequent subawards).

(b) Any new, continuation, or renewal award (and any subsequent subaward) shall comply with any applicable Federal statute, Federal rule, Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular and Governmentwide guidance in effect as of the date of such award.

(c) Financial assistance to foreign entities is governed, to the extent appropriate, by this part and by the administrative requirements and cost principles applicable to their respective recipient type, e.g, governmental, non-profit, commercial.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 74 FR 44275, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.3 Definitions.

Amendment means the written document executed by a DOE Contracting Officer that changes one or more terms or conditions of an existing financial assistance award.

Award means the written document executed by a DOE Contracting Officer, after an application is approved, which contains the terms and conditions for providing financial assistance to the recipient.

Budget period means the interval of time, specified in the award, into which a project is divided for budgeting and funding purposes.

Continuation award means an award for a succeeding or subsequent budget period after the initial budget period of either an approved project period or renewal thereof.

Contract means a written procurement contract executed by a recipient or subrecipient for the acquisition of property or services under a financial assistance award.

Contracting Officer means the DOE official authorized to execute awards on behalf of DOE and who is responsible for the business management and nonprogram aspects of the financial assistance process.

Cost sharing or matching means that portion of project or programs costs not borne by the Federal Government.

DOE Patent Counsel means the Department of Energy Patent Counsel assisting the Contracting Officer in the review and coordination of patents and data related items.

Financial assistance means the transfer of money or property to a recipient

or subrecipient to accomplish a public purpose of support or stimulation authorized by Federal statute. For purposes of this part, financial assistance instruments are grants and cooperative agreements and subawards.

Head of Contracting Activity or HCA means a DOE official with senior management authority for the award and administration of financial assistance instruments within one or more DOE organizational elements.

Merit review means a thorough, consistent, and objective examination of applications based on pre-established criteria by persons who are independent of those submitting the applications and who are knowledgeable in the field of endeavor for which support is requested.

Nonprofit organization means any corporation, trust, foundation, or institution which is entitled to exemption under section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code, or which is not organized for profit and no part of the net earnings of which inure to the benefit of any private shareholder or individual (except that the definition of ''nonprofit organization'' at 48 CFR 27.301 shall apply for patent matters set forth at §§ 600.136 and 600.325).

Program rule means a rule issued by a DOE program office for the award and administration of financial assistance which may describe the program's purpose or objectives, eligibility requirements for applicants, types of program activities or areas to be supported, evaluation and selection process, cost sharing requirements, etc. These rules usually supplement the generic policies and procedures for financial assistance contained in this part.

Project means the set of activities described in an application, State plan, or other document that is approved by DOE for financial assistance (whether such financial assistance represents all or only a portion of the support necessary to carry out those activities.)

Project period means the total period of time indicated in an award during which DOE expects to provide financial assistance. A project period may consist of one or more budget periods and may be extended by DOE.

Recipient means the organization, individual, or other entity that receives an award from DOE and is financially accountable for the use of any DOE funds or property provided for the performance of the project, and is legally responsible for carrying out the terms and conditions of the award.

Renewal award means an award which adds one or more additional budget periods to an existing project period.

Research and development means all research activities, both basic and applied, and all development activities that are supported at universities, colleges, and other non-profit institutions and commercial organizations. ''Research'' is defined as a systematic study directed toward fuller scientific knowledge or understanding of the subject studied. The term research also includes activities involving the training of individuals in research techniques where such activities utilize the same facilities as other research and development activities and where such activities are not included in the instruction function. ''Development'' is the systematic use of knowledge and understanding gained from research directed toward the production of useful materials, devices, systems, or methods, including design and development of prototypes and processes.

Total Project Cost means all allowable costs, as set forth in the applicable Federal cost principles, incurred in accomplishing the objective of the project during the project period, including the value of contributions made by third parties and costs incurred by Federally Funded Research and Development Centers.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 64 FR 56420, Oct. 20, 1999; 68 FR 50650, Aug. 21, 2003; 74 FR 44275, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.4 Deviations.

(a) *General.* (1) A deviation is the use of any policy, procedure, form, standard, term, or condition which varies from a requirement of this part, or the waiver of any such requirement, unless such use or waiver is authorized or precluded by Federal statute. The use of optional or discretionary provisions of this part, including special restrictive conditions used in accordance with §§ 600.114, 600.212, and 600.304 are not deviations. Awards to foreign entities

and the waiver of the cost sharing requirements in § 600.30 are not subject to this section.

(2) A single-case deviation is a deviation which applies to one financial assistance transaction and one applicant, recipient, or subrecipient only.

(3) A class deviation is a deviation which applies to more than one financial assistance transaction, applicant, recipient, or subrecipient.

(b) The DOE officials specified in paragraph (c) of this section may authorize a deviation only upon a written determination that the deviation is—

(1) Necessary to achieve program objectives;

(2) Necessary to conserve public funds;

(3) Otherwise essential to the public interest; or

(4) Necessary to achieve equity.

(c) *Approval procedures.* (1) A deviation request must be in writing and must be submitted to the responsible DOE Contracting Officer. An applicant for a subaward or a subrecipient shall submit any such request through the recipient.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (c)(3) of this section—

(i) A single-case deviation may be authorized by the responsible HCA.

(ii) A class deviation may be authorized by the Director, Procurement and Assistance Management or designee.

(3) Whenever the approval of OMB, other Federal agency, or other DOE office is required to authorize a deviation, the proposed deviation must be submitted to the Director, Procurement and Assistance Management or designee for concurrence prior to submission to the authorizing official.

(d) *Notice.* Whenever a request for a class deviation is approved, DOE shall publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER at least 15 days before the class deviation becomes effective. Whenever a class deviation is contained in a proposed program rule, the preamble to the proposed rule shall describe the purpose and scope of the deviation.

(e) *Subawards.* A recipient may use a deviation in a subaward only with the prior written approval of a DOE Contracting Officer.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 64 FR 56420, Oct. 20, 1999; 68 FR 50650, Aug. 21, 2003; 74 FR 44275, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.5 Selection of award instrument.

(a) If DOE has administrative discretion in the selection of the award instrument, the DOE decision as to whether the relationship is principally one of procurement or financial assistance shall be made pursuant to the Federal Grant and Cooperative Agreement Act as codified at 31 U.S.C. 6301–6306. A grant or cooperative agreement shall be the appropriate instrument, in accordance with this part, when the principal purpose of the relationship is the transfer of money or property to accomplish a public purpose of support or stimulation authorized by Federal statute. In selecting the type of financial assistance instrument, DOE shall limit involvement between itself and the recipient in the performance of a project to the minimum necessary to achieve DOE program objectives.

(b) When it is anticipated that substantial involvement will be necessary between DOE and the recipient during performance of the contemplated activity, the award instrument shall be a cooperative agreement rather than a grant. Every cooperative agreement shall explicitly state the substantial involvement anticipated between DOE and the recipient during the performance of the project. Substantial involvement exists if:

(1) Responsibility for the management, control, or direction of the project is shared by DOE and the recipient; or

(2) Responsibility for the performance of the project is shared by DOE and the recipient.

(c) Providing technical assistance or guidance of a programmatic nature to a recipient does not constitute substantial involvement if:

(1) the recipient is not required to follow such guidance;

(2) the technical assistance or guidance is not expected to result in continuing DOE involvement in the performance of the project; or

(3) The technical assistance or guidance pertains solely to the administrative requirements of the award.

(d) In cooperative agreements, DOE has the right to intervene in the conduct or performance of project activities for programmatic reasons. Intervention includes the interruption or modification of the conduct or performance of project activities. Suspension or termination of the cooperative agreement under §§ 600.162, 600.243 and 600.352 does not constitute intervention in the conduct or performance of project activities.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 74 FR 44275, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.6 Eligibility.

(a) *General*. DOE shall solicit applications for financial assistance in a manner which provides for the maximum amount of competition feasible.

(b) *Restricted eligibility*. If DOE restricts eligibility, an explanation of why the restriction of eligibility is considered necessary shall be included in the funding opportunity announcement, program rule, or published notice.

(1) If the aggregate amount of DOE funds available for award under a funding opportunity announcement or published notice is $1million or more, unless authorized by statute or program rule, such restriction of eligibility shall be:

(i) Supported by a written determination initiated by the program office;

(ii) Concurred in by legal counsel and the Contracting Officer; and

(iii) Approved by an official no less than one level below the responsible program Assistant Secretary, Deputy Administrator, or other official of equivalent authority.

(2) Where the amount of DOE funds is less than $1 million, the cognizant HCA and the Contracting Officer may approve the determination.

(c) *Noncompetitive financial assistance*. DOE may award a grant or cooperative agreement or technology investment agreement on a noncompetitive basis only if the application satisfies one or more of the follow selection criteria:.

(1) The activity to be funded is necessary to the satisfactory completion of, or is a continuation or renewal of, an activity presently being funded by DOE or another Federal agency, and for which competition for support would have a significant adverse effect on continuity or completion of the activity.

(2) The activity is being or would be conducted by the applicant using its own resources or those donated or provided by third parties; however, DOE support of that activity would enhance the public benefits to be derived and DOE knows of no other entity which is conducting or is planning to conduct such an activity.

(3) The applicant is a unit of government and the activity to be supported is related to performance of a governmental function within the subject jurisdiction, thereby precluding DOE provision of support to another entity.

(4) The applicant has exclusive domestic capability to perform the activity successfully, based upon unique equipment, proprietary data, technical expertise, or other such unique qualifications.

(5) The award implements an agreement between the United States Government and a foreign government to fund a foreign applicant.

(6) Time constraints associated with a public health, safety, welfare or national security requirement preclude competition.

(7) The proposed project was submitted as an unsolicited proposal and represents a unique or innovative idea, method, or approach that would not be eligible for financial assistance under a recent, current, or planned funding opportunity announcement, and if, as determined by DOE, a competitive funding opportunity announcement would not be appropriate.

(8) The responsible program Assistant Secretary, Deputy Administrator, or other official of equivalent authority determines that a noncompetitive award is in the public interest. This authority may not be delegated.

(d) *Approval requirements*. (1) Where the amount of DOE funds is $1 million or greater, determinations of noncompetitive awards shall be:

(i) Documented in writing;

(ii) Concurred in by the responsible program technical official and local legal counsel; and

(iii) Approved, prior to award, by the responsible program Assistant Secretary, Deputy Administrator, or official of equivalent authority and the Contracting Officer. The approval authority may be delegated to one organizational level below the Assistant Secretary, Deputy Administrator, or official of equivalent authority.

(2) Where the amount of DOE funds is less than $1 million, determinations of noncompetitive awards shall be:

(i) Documented in writing;

(ii) Concurred in by local legal counsel, unless for a particular award or class of awards of $1 million or less, review is waived by legal counsel; and

(iii) Approved by the cognizant HCA and the Contracting Officer.

[74 FR 44275, Aug. 28, 2009, as amended at 74 FR 48850, Sept. 25, 2009]

§ 600.7 Small and disadvantaged and women-owned business participation.

(a) DOE encourages the participation in financial assistance awards of small businesses, including those owned by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals and women, of historically black colleges, and of colleges and universities with substantial minority enrollments.

(b) For definitions of the terms in paragraph (a) of this section, see the Higher Education Act of 1965, and 15 U.S.C. 644, as amended by the Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act (FASA), and implementing regulations under FASA issued by the Office of Federal Procurement Policy.

(c) When entering into contracts under financial assistance awards, recipients and subrecipients shall comply with the requirements of §§ 600.144, 600.236 and 600.331, as applicable.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 74 FR 44276, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.8 Funding Opportunity Announcement.

(a) *General.* Funding Opportunity Announcements (FOA) include any issuance used to announce funding opportunities that would result in the award of a discretionary grant, cooperative agreement, or technology investment agreement, whether it is called a program announcement, program notice, solicitation, broad agency announcement, research announcement, notice of program interest, or something else.

(1) A Program Assistant Secretary (or official of equivalent authority) may annually issue a program notice describing research areas in which financial assistance is being made available. Such notice shall also state whether the research areas covered by the notice are to be added to those listed in a previously issued program rule. If they are to be included, then applications received as a result of the notice may be treated as having been in response to that previously published program rule. If they are not to be included, then applications received in response to the notice are to be treated as unsolicited applications. FOAs may be issued by a DOE Contracting Officer or program office with prior concurrence of the contracting office.

(2) DOE must post synopses of its FOAs and modifications to the announcements at the Grants.gov Internet site, using the standard data elements/format, except for:

(i) Announcements of funding opportunities for awards less than $25,000 for which 100 percent of eligible applicants live outside of the United States.

(ii) Single source announcements of funding opportunities which are specifically directed to a known recipient.

(b) *Subawards.* In accordance with the provisions of the applicable statute and program rules, if a DOE financial assistance program involves the award of financial assistance by a recipient to a subrecipient, the recipient shall provide sufficient advance notice so that potential subrecipients may prepare timely applications and secure prerequisite reviews and approvals.

(c) *Announcement format.* DOE must use the government-wide standard format to publish program announcements of funding opportunities.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 69 FR 7867, Feb. 20, 2004; 70 FR 69254, Nov. 15, 2005; 74 FR 44276, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.9 [Reserved]

§ 600.10 Form and content of applications.

(a) *General*. Applications shall be required for all financial assistance projects or programs.

(b) *Forms*. Applications shall be on the form specified in a program rule, the program announcement, or these regulations. (See also §§ 600.112 and 600.210.) For unsolicited applications, a guide for preparation and submission is available from U.S. Department of Energy, Federal Energy Technology Center, Attn: Unsolicited Proposal Manager, Post Office Box 10940, Pittsburgh, PA, 15236–0940.

(c) *Contents of an application*. In general, a financial assistance application shall include:

(1) A facesheet containing basic identifying information. The facesheet shall be the Standard Form (SF)424;

(2) A detailed narrative description of the proposed project, including the objectives of the project and the applicant's plan for carrying it out;

(3) A budget with supporting justification; and

(d) *Incomplete applications*. DOE may return an application that:

(1) Is not signed, either in writing or electronically, by an official authorized to bind the applicant; or

(2) Omits any information or documentation required by statute, program rule, or the solicitation, if the nature of the omission precludes review of the application.

(e) *Supplemental information*. During the review of a complete application, DOE may request the submission of additional information only if the information is essential to evaluate the application.

(f) Registration is required in the Central Contractor Registration (CCR) for all applications. Information on registration can be obtained at *http://www.ccr.gov/Grantees.aspx*.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 64 FR 56420, Oct. 20, 1999; 69 FR 7867, Feb. 20, 2004; 74 FR 44276, Aug. 28, 2009]

§§ 600.11–600.12 [Reserved]

§ 600.13 Merit review.

(a) It is the policy of DOE that discretionary financial assistance be awarded through a merit-based selection process. A merit review means a thorough, consistent, and objective examination of applications based on preestablished criteria by persons who are independent of those submitting the applications and who are knowledgeable in the field of endeavor for which support is requested.

(b) Each program office must establish a merit review system covering the financial assistance programs it administers. Merit review of financial assistance applications is intended to be advisory and is not intended to replace the authority of the project/program official with responsibility for deciding whether an award will be made.

[64 FR 56420, Oct. 20, 1999]

§ 600.14 [Reserved]

§ 600.15 Authorized uses of information.

(a) *General*. Information contained in applications shall be used only for evaluation purposes unless such information is generally available to the public or is already the property of the Government. The Trade Secrets Act, 18 U.S.C. 1905, prohibits the unauthorized disclosure by Federal employees of trade secret and confidential business information.

(b) *Treatment of application information*. (1) An application or other document, including any unsolicited information, may include technical data and other data, including trade secrets and commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential, which the applicant does not want disclosed to the public or used by the Government for any purpose other than application evaluation.

(i) To protect such data, the submitter must mark the cover sheet of the application or other document with the following Notice:

Notice of Restriction on Disclosure and Use of Data

Pages [____] of this document may contain trade secrets or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential and is exempt from public disclosure. Such information shall be used or disclosed only for evaluation purposes or in accordance with a financial assistance or loan agreement between the submitter and the Government. The Government may use or disclose any information that is not appropriately marked or otherwise restricted, regardless of source.

(ii)(A) To further protect such data, except as otherwise provided in paragraph (b)(1)(iii) of this section, each page containing trade secrets or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential must be specifically identified and marked with text similar to the following:

May contain trade secrets or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential and exempt from public disclosure.

(B) In addition, each line or paragraph containing trade secrets or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential must be marked with brackets or other clear identification, such as highlighting.

(iii) (A) In the case where a form for data submission is unalterable, such as certain forms submitted through Grants.gov, submitters must include in a cover letter or the project narrative a notice like the following:

Forms [____] *may contain trade secrets or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential and exempt from public disclosure. Such information shall be used or disclosed only for evaluation purposes or in accordance with a financial assistance or loan agreement between the submitter and the Government. The Government may use or disclose any information that is not appropriately marked or otherwise restricted, regardless of source.*

(B) The cover letter or project narrative must also specify the particular information on such forms that the submitter believes contains trade secrets or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential.

(2) Unless DOE specifies otherwise, DOE shall not refuse to consider an application or other document solely on the basis that the application or other document is restrictively marked in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(3) Data (or abstracts of data) specifically marked in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) of this section shall be used by DOE or its designated representatives solely for the purpose of evaluating the proposal. The data so marked shall not be disclosed or used for any other purpose except to the extent provided in any resulting assistance agreement, or to the extent required by law, including the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) (10 CFR Part 1004). The Government shall not be liable for disclosure or use of unmarked data and may use or disclose such data for any purpose.

(4) This process enables DOE to follow the provisions of 10 CFR 1004.11(d) in the event a Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) request is received for the data submitted, such that information not identified as subject to a claim of exemption may be released without obtaining the submitter's views under the process set forth in 10 CFR 1004.11(c)

[76 FR 26581, May 9, 2011]

§ 600.16 Legal authority and effect of an award.

(a) A DOE financial assistance award is valid only if it is in writing and is signed, either in writing or electronically, by a DOE Contracting Officer.

(b) Recipients are free to accept or reject the award. A request to draw down DOE funds constitutes acceptance; however, DOE may require formal acceptance of an award.

(c) DOE funds awarded under a grant, cooperative agreement, or technology investment agreement shall be obligated as of the date the DOE Contracting Officer signs the award; however, the recipient is not authorized to incur costs under an award prior to the beginning date of the budget period shown in the award except as may be authorized in accordance with §§ 600.125(e), 600.230, 600.317(b), or 603.830 of this part. The duration of the DOE financial obligation shall not extend beyond the expiration date of the budget period shown in the award unless authorized by a DOE Contracting Officer by means of a continuation or renewal

award or other extension of the budget period.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 70 FR 69254, Nov. 15, 2005; 74 FR 44276, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.17 Contents of Award.

Each financial assistance award shall be made on a Notice of Financial Assistance Award (NFAA) which contains basic identifying and funding information. The NFAA provides the contents of the award including any special terms and conditions, program regulations, the National Policy Assurances, and any other provisions necessary to establish the respective rights, duties, obligations, and responsibilities of DOE and the recipient, consistent with the requirements of this part.

[74 FR 44276, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.18 [Reserved]

§ 600.19 Notification to unsuccessful applicants.

DOE shall promptly notify in writing each applicant whose application has not been selected for award or whose application cannot be funded because of the unavailability of appropriated funds. If the application was not selected, the written notice shall explain why the application was not selected.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 74 FR 44276, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.20 Maximum DOE obligation.

(a) The maximum DOE obligation to the recipient is—

(1) For monetary awards, the amount shown in the award as the amount of DOE funds obligated, and

(2) Any designated property.

(b) DOE shall not be obligated to make any additional, supplemental, continuation, renewal, or other award for the same or any other purpose.

§ 600.21 Access to records.

(a) In addition to recipient and subrecipient responsibilities relative to access to records specified in §§ 600.153, 600.242 and 600.342, for any negotiated contract or subcontract in excess of $10,000 under a grant or cooperative agreement, DOE, the Comptroller General of the United States, the recipient and the subrecipient (if the contract was awarded under a financial assistance subaward), or any of their authorized representatives shall have the right of access to any books, documents, papers, or other records of the contractor or subcontractor which are pertinent to that contract or subcontract, in order to make audit, examination, excerpts, and copies.

(b) The right of access may be exercised for as long as the applicable records are retained by the recipient, subrecipient, contractor, or subcontractor.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 74 FR 44276, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.22 Disputes and appeals.

(a) *Informal dispute resolution.* Whenever practicable, DOE shall attempt to resolve informally any dispute over the award or administration of financial assistance. Informal resolution, including resolution through an alternative dispute resolution mechanism, shall be preferred over formal procedures, to the extent practicable.

(b) *Alternative dispute resolution (ADR).* Before issuing a final determination in any dispute in which informal resolution has not been achieved, the Contracting Officer shall suggest that the other party consider the use of voluntary consensual methods of dispute resolution, such as mediation. The DOE dispute resolution specialist is available to provide assistance for such disputes, as are trained mediators of other federal agencies. ADR may be used at any stage of a dispute.

(c) *Final determination.* Whenever a dispute is not resolved informally or through an alternative dispute resolution process, DOE shall mail (by certified mail) a brief written determination signed by a Contracting Officer, setting forth DOE's final disposition of such dispute. Such determination shall contain the following information:

(1) A summary of the dispute, including a statement of the issues and of the positions taken by the Department and the party or parties to the dispute; and

(2) The factual, legal and, if appropriate, policy reasons for DOE's disposition of the dispute.

(d) *Right of appeal.* Except as provided in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, the

final determination under paragraph (c) of this section may be appealed to the cognizant Senior Procurement Executive (SPE) for either DOE or the National Nuclear Security Administration (NNSA). The mailing address for the DOE SPE is Office of Procurement and Assistance Management, 1000 Independence Ave., SW, Washington, DC 20585. The mailing address for the NNSA SPE is Office of Acquisition and Supply Management, 1000 Independence Ave., SW., Washington, DC 20585.

(e) *Effect of appeal.* The filing of an appeal with the SPE shall not stay any determination or action taken by DOE which is the subject of the appeal. Consistent with its obligation to protect the interests of the Federal Government, DOE may take such authorized actions as may be necessary to preserve the status quo pending decision by the SPE, or to preserve its ability to provide relief in the event the SPE decides in favor of the appellant.

(f) *Review on appeal.* (1) The SPE shall have no jurisdiction to review

(i) Any preaward dispute (except as provided in paragraph (f)(2)(ii) of this section), including use of any special restrictive condition pursuant to § 600.114, § 600.212, or § 600.304;

(ii) DOE denial of a request for a deviation under § 600.4, § 600.103, § 600.205, or § 600.303 of this part;

(iii) DOE denial of a request for a budget revision or other change in the approved project under § 600.125, § 600.127, § 600.222, § 600.230, § 600.315, or § 600.317 of this part or under another term or condition of the award;

(iv) Any DOE action authorized under § 600.162(a)(1), (2), (3) or (5), § 600.243(a)(1), (a)(3), or § 600.352(a)(1), (2), (3) or (5) for suspensions only; or § 600.162(a)(4), § 600.243(a)(4) or § 600.352(a)(4) for actions disapproving renewal applications or other requests for extension of time or additional funding for the same project when related to recipient noncompliance, or such actions authorized by program rule;

(v) Any DOE decision about an action requiring prior DOE approval under § 600.144, § 600.236, or § 600.331 of this part or under another term or condition of the award;

(2) In addition to any right of appeal established by program rule, or by the terms and conditions (not inconsistent with paragraph (f)(1) of this section) of an award, the Board shall have jurisdiction to review:

(i) A DOE determination that the recipient has failed to comply with the applicable requirements of this part, the program statute or rules, or other terms and conditions of the award;

(ii) A DOE decision not to make a continuation award based on any of the determinations described in paragraph (f)(2)(i) of this section;

(iii) Termination of an award for cause, in whole or in part, by DOE;

(iv) A DOE determination that an award is void or invalid;

(v) The application by DOE of an indirect cost rate; and

(vi) DOE disallowance of costs.

(3) In reviewing disputes authorized under paragraph (f)(2) of this section, the Board shall be bound by the applicable law, statutes, and rules, including the requirements of this part, and by the terms and conditions of the award.

(4) The decision of the Board shall be the final decision of the Department.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 74 FR 44276, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.23 [Reserved]

§ 600.24 Noncompliance.

(a) Except for noncompliance with nondiscrimination requirements under 10 CFR part 1040, whenever DOE determines that a recipient has not complied with the applicable requirements of this part, with the requirements of any applicable program statute or rule, or with any other term or condition of the award, a DOE Contracting Officer shall provide to the recipient (by certified mail, return receipt requested) a written notice setting forth:

(1) The factual and legal bases for the determination of noncompliance;

(2) The corrective actions and the date (not less than 30 days after the date of the notice) by which they must be taken.

(3) Which of the actions authorized under § 600.122(n), § 600.162(a) § 600.243(a), § 600.312(g), or § 600.352(a) of this part DOE may take if the recipient does not

achieve compliance within the time specified in the notice, or does not provide satisfactory assurances that actions have been initiated which will achieve compliance in a timely manner.

(b) DOE may take any of the actions set forth in § 600.122(n), § 600.162(a), §§ 600.243(a), 600.312(g), or 600.352(a) of this part concurrent with the written notice required under paragraph (a) of this section or with less than 30 days written notice to the recipient whenever:

(1) There is evidence the award was obtained by fraud;

(2) The recipient ceases to exist or becomes legally incapable of performing its responsibilities under the financial assistance award; or

(3) There is a serious mismanagement or misuse of financial assistance award funds necessitating immediate action.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 64 FR 56420, Oct. 20, 1999; 74 FR 44277, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.25 Suspension and termination.

(a) *Suspension and termination for cause*. DOE may suspend or terminate an award for cause on the basis of:

(1) A noncompliance determination under § 600.24, § 600.122(n), § 600.162(a), § 600.243(a) or § 600.352(a); or

(2) A suspension or debarment of the awardee under 2 CFR 180 and 901.

(b) *Notification requirements*. Except as provided in § 600.24, § 600.162(a), § 600.243(a), or § 600.352(a) before suspending or terminating an award for cause, DOE shall mail to the awardee (by certified mail, return receipt requested) a separate written notice in addition to that required by § 600.24(a) at least ten days prior to the effective date of the suspension or termination. Such notice shall include, as appropriate:

(1) The factual and legal bases for the suspension or termination;

(2) The effective date or dates of the DOE action;

(3) If the action does not apply to the entire award, a description of the activities affected by the action;

(4) Instructions concerning which costs shall be allowable during the period of suspension, or instructions concerning allowable termination costs, including in either case, instructions concerning any subgrants or contracts;

(5) Instructions concerning required final reports and other closeout actions for terminated awards (see §§ 600.170 through 600.173, §§ 600.250 through 600.252 and §§ 600.350 through 600.353;

(6) A statement of the awardee's right to appeal a termination for cause pursuant to § 600.22; and

(7) The dated signature of a DOE Contracting Officer.

(c) *Suspension*. (1) Unless DOE and the awardee agree otherwise, no period of suspension shall exceed 90 days.

(2) DOE may cancel the suspension at any time, up to and including the date of expiration of the period of suspension, if the awardee takes satisfactory corrective action before the expiration date of the suspension or gives DOE satisfactory evidence that such corrective action will be taken.

(3) If the suspension has not been cancelled by the expiration date of the period of suspension, the awardee shall resume the suspended activities or project unless, prior to the expiration date, DOE notifies the awardee in writing that the period of suspension shall be extended consistent with paragraph (c)(1) of this section or that the award shall be terminated.

(4) As of the effective date of the suspension, DOE shall withhold further payments and shall allow new obligations incurred by the awardee during the period of suspension only if such costs were authorized in the notice of suspension or in a subsequent letter.

(5) If the suspension is cancelled or expires and the award is not terminated, DOE shall reimburse the awardee for any authorized allowable costs incurred during the suspension and, if necessary, may amend the award to extend the period of performance.

(d) *Termination by mutual agreement*. In addition to any situation where a termination for cause pursuant to §§ 600.24, 600.160 through 600.162 §§ 600.243 through 600.244 or §§ 600.350 through 600.353 is appropriate, either DOE or the awardee may initiate a termination of an award (or portion thereof) as described in this paragraph. If the awardee initiates a termination, the awardee must notify DOE in writing and specify the awardee's reasons for

requesting the termination, the proposed effective date of the termination, and, in the case of a partial termination, a description of the activities to be terminated, and an appropriate budget revision. DOE shall terminate an award or portion thereof under this paragraph only if both parties agree to the termination and the conditions under which it shall occur. If DOE determines that the remaining activities under a partially terminated award would not accomplish the purpose for which the award was originally awarded, DOE may terminate the entire award.

(e) *Effect of termination*. The awardee shall incur no new obligations after the effective date of the termination of an award (or portion thereof), and shall cancel as many outstanding obligations as possible. DOE shall allow full credit to the awardee for the DOE share of noncancellable obligations properly incurred by the awardee prior to the effective date of the termination.

(f) *Subgrants*. Awardees shall follow the policies and procedures in this section and in §§ 600.24, 600.160 through 600.162 §§ 600.243 through 600.244 or §§ 600.350 through 600.353 for suspending and terminating subgrants.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 74 FR 44277, Aug. 28, 2009]

§§ 600.26–600.28 [Reserved]

§ 600.29 Fixed obligation awards.

(a) *General*. This section contains provisions applicable to the award of financial assistance instruments on a fixed amount basis. Under a fixed obligation award, funds are issued in support of a project without a requirement for Federal monitoring of actual costs subsequently incurred.

(b) *Provisions applicable to fixed obligation awards*. Financial assistance awards may be made on a fixed obligation basis subject to the following requirements:

(1) Each fixed obligation award may neither exceed $250,000 nor exceed one year in length.

(2) Programs which require mandatory cost sharing are not eligible.

(3) Proposed costs must be analyzed in detail to ensure consistency with applicable cost principles.

(4) Budget categories are not stipulated in making an award. However, budgets are submitted by an applicant and reviewed for purposes of establishing the amount to be awarded.

(5) Payments must be made in the same manner as other financial assistance awards, except that when determined appropriate by the cognizant program official and Contracting Officer a lump sum payment may be made.

(6) Recipients must certify in writing to the Contracting Officer at the end of the project that the activity was completed or the level of effort was expended, however should the activity or effort not be carried out, the recipient would be expected to make appropriate reimbursements.

(7) Periodic reports may be established for each award so long as they are not more frequently than quarterly.

(8) Changes in principal investigator or project leader, scope of effort, or institution, must receive the prior approval of the Department.

[61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 74 FR 44277, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.30 Cost sharing.

In addition to the requirements of § 600.123, § 600.224, or § 600.313, the following requirements apply to research, development, demonstration and commercial application activities projects:

(a) Cost sharing is required for most financial assistance awards for research, development, demonstration and commercial applications activities initiated after the enactment of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 on August 8, 2005. This requirement does not apply to:

(1) An award under the small business innovation research program or the small business technology transfer program; or

(2) A program with cost sharing requirements defined by other than Section 988 of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 including other sections of the 2005 Act and the Energy Policy Act of 1992.

(b) A cost share of at least 20 percent of the cost of the activity is required

for research and development except where:

(1) A research or development activity of a basic or fundamental nature has been excluded by an appropriate officer of the Department, generally an Under Secretary; or

(2) The Secretary has determined it is necessary and appropriate to reduce or eliminate the cost sharing requirement for a research and development activity of an applied nature.

(c) A cost share of at least 50 percent of the cost of a demonstration or commercial application program or activity is required unless the Secretary has determined it is necessary and appropriate to reduce the cost sharing requirements, taking into consideration any technological risk relating to the activity.

(d) Cost share shall be provided by non-Federal funds unless otherwise authorized by statute. In calculating the amount of the non-Federal contribution:

(1) Base the non-Federal contribution on total project costs, including the cost of work where funds are provided directly to a partner, consortium member or subrecipient, such as a Federally Funded Research and Development Center;

(2) Include the following costs as allowable in accordance with the applicable cost principles:

(i) Cash;

(ii) Personnel costs;

(iii) The value of a service, other resource, or third party in-kind contribution determined in accordance with the applicable circular of the Office of Management and Budget;

(iv) Indirect costs or facilities and administrative costs; and/or

(v) Any funds received under the power program of the Tennessee Valley Authority (except to the extent that such funds are made available under an annual appropriation Act);

(3) Exclude the following costs:

(i) Revenues or royalties from the prospective operation of an activity beyond the time considered in the award;

(ii) Proceeds from the prospective sale of an asset of an activity; or

(iii) Other appropriated Federal funds.

(iv) Repayment of the Federal share of a cost-shared activity under Section 988 of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 shall not be a condition of the award.

[74 FR 44277, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.31 Research misconduct.

(a) A recipient is responsible for maintaining the integrity of research of any kind under an award from DOE including the prevention, detection, and remediation of research misconduct, and the conduct of inquiries, investigations, and adjudication of allegations of research misconduct in accordance with the requirements of this section.

(b) For purposes of this section, the following definitions are applicable:

Adjudication means a formal review of a record of investigation of alleged research misconduct to determine whether and what corrective actions and sanctions should be taken.

Fabrication means making up data or results and recording or reporting them.

Falsification means manipulating research materials, equipment, or processes, or changing or omitting data or results such that the research is not accurately represented in the research record.

Finding of Research Misconduct means a determination, based on a preponderance of the evidence, that research misconduct has occurred. Such a finding requires a conclusion that there has been a significant departure from accepted practices of the relevant research community and that it be knowingly, intentionally, or recklessly committed.

Inquiry means information gathering and initial fact-finding to determine whether an allegation or apparent instance of misconduct warrants an investigation.

Investigation means the formal examination and evaluation of the relevant facts.

Plagiarism means the appropriation of another person's ideas, processes, results, or words without giving appropriate credit.

Research means all basic, applied, and demonstration research in all fields of science, medicine, engineering, and

mathematics, including, but not limited to, research in economics, education, linguistics, medicine, psychology, social sciences statistics, and research involving human subjects or animals.

Research misconduct means fabrication, falsification, or plagiarism in proposing, performing, or reviewing research, or in reporting research results, but does not include honest error or differences of opinion.

Research record means the record of all data or results that embody the facts resulting from scientists' inquiries, including, but not limited to, research proposals, laboratory records, both physical and electronic, progress reports, abstracts, theses, oral presentations, internal reports, and journal articles.

(c) Unless otherwise instructed by the Contracting Officer, the recipient must conduct an initial inquiry into any allegation of research misconduct. If the recipient determines that there is sufficient evidence to proceed to an investigation, it must notify the Contracting Officer and, unless otherwise instructed, the recipient must:

(1) Conduct an investigation to develop a complete factual record and an examination of such record leading to either a finding of research misconduct and an identification of appropriate remedies or a determination that no further action is warranted;

(2) Inform the Contracting Officer if an initial inquiry supports an investigation and, if requested by the Contracting Officer thereafter, keep the Contracting Officer informed of the results of the investigation and any subsequent adjudication. When an investigation is complete, the recipient will forward to the Contracting Officer a copy of the evidentiary record, the investigative report, any recommendations made to the recipient's adjudicating official, and the adjudicating official's decision and notification of any corrective action taken or planned, and the subject's written response to the recommendations (if any).

(3) If the investigation leads to a finding of research misconduct, conduct an adjudication by a responsible official who was not involved in the inquiry or investigation and is separated organizationally from the element which conducted the investigation. The adjudication must include a review of the investigative record and, as warranted, a determination of appropriate corrective actions and sanctions.

(d) The Department may elect to act in lieu of the recipient in conducting an inquiry or investigation into an allegation of research misconduct if the Contracting Officer finds that:

(1) The research organization is not prepared to handle the allegation in a manner consistent with this section;

(2) The allegation involves an entity of sufficiently small size that it cannot reasonably conduct the inquiry;

(3) DOE involvement is necessary to ensure the public health, safety, and security, or to prevent harm to the public interest; or,

(4) The allegation involves possible criminal misconduct.

(e) DOE reserves the right to pursue such remedies and other actions as it deems appropriate, consistent with the terms and conditions of the award instrument and applicable laws and regulations. However, the recipient's good faith administration of this section and the effectiveness of its remedial actions and sanctions shall be positive considerations and shall be taken into account as mitigating factors in assessing the need for such actions. If DOE pursues any such action, it will inform the subject of the action of the outcome and any applicable appeal procedures.

(f) In conducting the activities in paragraph (c) of this section, the recipient and the Department, if it elects to conduct the inquiry or investigation, shall adhere to the following guidelines:

(1) *Safeguards for information and subjects of allegations.* The recipient shall provide safeguards to ensure that individuals may bring allegations of research misconduct made in good faith to the attention of the recipient without suffering retribution. Safeguards include: protection against retaliation; fair and objective procedures for examining and resolving allegations; and diligence in protecting positions and reputations. The recipient shall also provide the subjects of allegations confidence that their rights are protected

and that the mere filing of an allegation of research misconduct will not result in an adverse action. Safeguards include timely written notice regarding substantive allegations against them, a description of the allegation and reasonable access to any evidence submitted to support the allegation or developed in response to an allegation and notice of any findings of research misconduct.

(2) *Objectivity and expertise*. The recipient shall select individual(s) to inquire, investigate, and adjudicate allegations of research misconduct who have appropriate expertise and have no unresolved conflict of interest. The individual(s) who conducts an adjudication must not be the same individual(s) who conducted the inquiry or investigation, and must be separate organizationally from the element that conducted the inquiry or investigation.

(3) *Timeliness*. The recipient shall coordinate, inquire, investigate and adjudicate allegations of research misconduct promptly, but thoroughly. Generally, an investigation should be completed within 120 days of initiation, and adjudication should be complete within 60 days of receipt of the record of investigation.

(4) *Confidentiality*. To the extent possible, consistent with fair and thorough processing of allegations of research misconduct and applicable law and regulation, knowledge about the identity of the subjects of allegations and informants should be limited to those with a need to know.

(5) *Remediation and sanction*. If the recipient finds that research misconduct has occurred, it shall assess the seriousness of the misconduct and its impact on the research completed or in process. The recipient must take all necessary corrective actions. Such action may include but are not limited to, correcting the research record and as appropriate imposing restrictions, controls, or other parameters on research in process or to be conducted in the future. The recipient must coordinate remedial actions with the Contracting Officer. The recipient must also consider whether personnel sanctions are appropriate. Any such sanction must be consistent with any applicable personnel laws, policies, and procedures, and must take into account the seriousness of the misconduct and its impact, whether it was done knowingly or intentionally, and whether it was an isolated event or pattern of conduct.

(g) By executing this agreement, the recipient provides its assurance that it has established an administrative process for performing an inquiry, mediating if possible, investigating, and reporting allegations of research misconduct; and that it will comply with its own administrative process and the requirements and definitions of 10 CFR part 733 for performing an inquiry, possible mediation, investigation and reporting of allegations of research misconduct.

(h) The recipient must insert or have inserted the substance of this section, including paragraph (g), in subawards at all tiers that involve research.

[70 FR 37013, June 28, 2005, as amended at 74 FR 44278, Aug. 28, 2009]

Subpart B—Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements With Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Nonprofit Organizations

SOURCE: 59 FR 53266, Oct. 21, 1994, unless otherwise noted.

GENERAL

§ 600.100 Purpose.

This subpart implements OMB Circular A–110 and establishes uniform administrative requirements for grants and agreements awarded to institutions of higher education, hospitals, and other non-profit organizations. It also establishes rules governing subawards to institutions of higher education, hospitals, and non-profit organizations (including grants and cooperative agreements administered by State, local and Indian Tribal governments).

[59 FR 53266, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 68 FR 50650, Aug. 21, 2003]

§ 600.101 Definitions.

Accrued expenditures means the charges incurred by the recipient during a given period requiring the provision of funds for:

(1) Goods and other tangible property received;

(2) Services performed by employees, contractors, subrecipients, and other payees; and,

(3) Other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance is required.

Accrued income means the sum of:

(1) Earnings during a given period from services performed by the recipient, and goods and other tangible property delivered to purchasers, and

(2) Amounts becoming owed to the recipient for which no current services or performance is required by the recipient.

Acquisition cost of equipment means the net invoice price of the equipment, including the cost of modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make the property usable for the purpose for which it was acquired. Other charges, such as the cost of installation, transportation, taxes, duty or protective in-transit insurance, shall be included or excluded from the unit acquisition cost in accordance with the recipient's regular accounting practices.

Advance means a payment made by Treasury check or other appropriate payment mechanism to a recipient upon its request either before outlays are made by the recipient or through the use of predetermined payment schedules.

Award means financial assistance that provides support or stimulation to accomplish a public purpose. Awards include grants and other agreements in the form of money or property in lieu of money, by DOE to an eligible recipient. The term does not include: technical assistance, which provides services instead of money; other assistance in the form of loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies, or insurance; direct payments of any kind to individuals; and, contracts which are required to be entered into and administered under procurement laws and regulations.

Cash contributions means the recipient's cash outlay, including the outlay of money contributed to the recipient by third parties.

Closeout means the process by which DOE determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the award have been completed by the recipient and DOE.

Contract means a procurement contract under an award or subaward, and a procurement subcontract under a recipient's or subrecipient's contract.

Cost sharing or matching means that portion of project or program costs not borne by DOE.

Date of completion means the date on which all work under an award is completed or the date on the award document, or any supplement or amendment thereto, on which DOE sponsorship ends.

Disallowed costs means those charges to an award that the DOE determines to be unallowable, in accordance with the applicable Federal cost principles or other terms and conditions contained in the award.

Equipment means tangible nonexpendable personal property including exempt property charged directly to the award having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of $5000 or more per unit. However, consistent with recipient policy, lower limits may be established.

Excess property means property under the control of any Federal awarding agency that, as determined by the head thereof, is no longer required for its needs or the discharge of its responsibilities.

Exempt property means tangible personal property acquired in whole or in part with Federal funds, where the Federal awarding agency has statutory authority to vest title in the recipient without further obligation to the Federal Government. An example of exempt property authority is contained in the Federal Grant and Cooperative Agreement Act (31 U.S.C. 6306), for property acquired under an award to conduct basic or applied research by a non-profit institution of higher education or non-profit organization whose principal purpose is conducting scientific research.

Federal awarding agency means the Federal agency that provides an award to the recipient.

Federal funds authorized means the total amount of Federal funds obligated by the Federal Government for use by the recipient. This amount may include any authorized carryover of unobligated funds from prior funding periods when permitted by agency regulations or agency implementing instructions.

Federal share of real property, equipment, or supplies means that percentage of the property's acquisition costs and any improvement expenditures paid with Federal funds.

Funding period or budget period means the period of time when DOE funding is available for obligation by the recipient.

Intangible property and debt instruments means, but is not limited to, trademarks, copyrights, patents and patent applications and such property as loans, notes and other debt instruments, lease agreements, stock and other instruments of property ownership, whether considered tangible or intangible.

Obligations means the amounts of orders placed, contracts and grants awarded, services received and similar transactions during a given period that require payment by the recipient during the same or a future period.

Outlays or expenditures means charges made to the project or program. They may be reported on a cash or accrual basis. For reports prepared on a cash basis, outlays are the sum of cash disbursements for direct charges for goods and services, the amount of indirect expense charged, the value of third party in-kind contributions applied and the amount of cash advances and payments made to subrecipients. For reports prepared on an accrual basis, outlays are the sum of cash disbursements for direct charges for goods and services, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the net increase (or decrease) in the amounts owed by the recipient for goods and other property received, for services performed by employees, contractors, subrecipients and other payees and other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance are required.

Personal property means property of any kind except real property. It may be tangible, having physical existence, or intangible, having no physical existence, such as copyrights, patents, or securities.

Prior approval means written approval by a contracting officer evidencing prior consent.

Program income means gross income earned by the recipient that is directly generated by a supported activity or earned as a result of the award (see exclusions in §§ 600.124 (e) and (h)). Program income includes, but is not limited to, income from fees for services performed, the use or rental of real or personal property acquired under federally-funded projects, the sale of commodities or items fabricated under an award, license fees and royalties on patents and copyrights, and interest on loans made with award funds. Interest earned on advances of DOE funds is not program income. Except as otherwise provided in this subpart, program regulations, or the terms and conditions of the award, program income does not include the receipt of principal on loans, rebates, credits, discounts, etc., or interest earned on any of them.

Project costs means all allowable costs, as set forth in the applicable Federal cost principles, incurred by a recipient and the value of the contributions made by third parties in accomplishing the objectives of the award during the project period.

Project period means the period established in the award document during which DOE sponsorship begins and ends.

Property means, unless otherwise stated, real property, equipment, intangible property and debt instruments.

Real property means land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, but excludes movable machinery and equipment.

Recipient means an organization receiving financial assistance directly from DOE to carry out a project or program. The term includes public and private institutions of higher education, public and private hospitals, and other quasi-public and private nonprofit organizations such as, but not limited to, community action agencies,

research institutes, educational associations, and health centers. The term shall include commercial organizations which are recipients, subrecipients, or contractors or subcontractors of recipients or subrecipients. The term does not include government-owned contractor-operated facilities or research centers providing continued support for mission-oriented, large-scale programs that are government-owned or controlled, or are designated as federally-funded research and development centers.

Research and development means all research activities, both basic and applied, and all development activities that are supported at universities, colleges, and other non-profit institutions. ''Research'' is defined as a systematic study directed toward fuller scientific knowledge or understanding of the subject studied. ''Development'' is the systematic use of knowledge and understanding gained from research directed toward the production of useful materials, devices, systems, or methods, including design and development of prototypes and processes. The term research also includes activities involving the training of individuals in research techniques where such activities utilize the same facilities as other research and development activities and where such activities are not included in the instruction function.

Small award means a grant or cooperative agreement not exceeding the small purchase threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403(11) (currently $25,000).

Subaward means an award of financial assistance in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, made under an award by a recipient to an eligible subrecipient or by a subrecipient to a lower tier subrecipient. The term includes financial assistance when provided by any legal agreement, even if the agreement is called a contract, but does not include procurement of goods and services nor does it include any form of assistance which is excluded from the definition of ''award'' above.

Subrecipient means the legal entity to which a subaward is made and which is accountable to the recipient for the use of the funds provided. The term may include foreign or international organizations (such as agencies of the United Nations).

Supplies means all personal property excluding equipment, intangible property, and debt instruments as defined in this section, and inventions of a contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under a funding agreement (''subject inventions''), as defined in 37 CFR part 401, ''Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts, and Cooperative Agreements.''

Suspension means an action by DOE that temporarily withdraws DOE sponsorship under an award, pending corrective action by the recipient or pending a decision to terminate the award by the DOE. Suspension of an award is a separate action from suspension under DOE regulations implementing E.O.'s 12549 and 12689, ''Debarment and Suspension'' (see 10 CFR part 1036).

Termination means the cancellation of DOE sponsorship, in whole or in part, under an agreement at any time prior to the date of completion.

Third party in-kind contributions means the value of non-cash contributions provided by non-Federal third parties. Third party in-kind contributions may be in the form of real property, equipment, supplies and other expendable property, and the value of goods and services directly benefiting and specifically identifiable to the project or program.

Unliquidated obligations, for financial reports prepared on a cash basis, means the amount of obligations incurred by the recipient that have not been paid. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, they represent the amount of obligations incurred by the recipient for which an outlay has not been recorded.

Unobligated balance means the portion of the funds authorized by DOE that has not been obligated by the recipient and is determined by deducting the cumulative obligations from the cumulative funds authorized.

Unrecovered indirect cost means the difference between the amount awarded and the amount which could have been awarded under the recipient's approved negotiated indirect cost rate.

Working capital advance means a procedure whereby funds are advanced to the recipient to cover its estimated disbursement needs for a given initial period.

§ 600.102 Effect on other issuances.

For awards subject to this subpart, all administrative requirements of codified program regulations, program manuals, handbooks and other nonregulatory materials which are inconsistent with the requirements of this subpart shall be superseded, except to the extent they are required by statute, or authorized in accordance with the deviations provision in § 600.4.

§ 600.103 Deviations.

The deviation provisions of § 600.4 apply to this subpart.

§ 600.104 Subawards.

Unless sections of this subpart specifically exclude subrecipients from coverage, all DOE recipients, including State, local and Indian tribal governments, shall apply the provisions of this subpart to subrecipients performing work under awards if such subrecipients are institutions of higher education, hospitals, or other non-profit organizations organizations. Thus, this subpart is applicable to those types of organizations regardless of the type of recipient receiving the primary award. State and local government subrecipients are subject to the provisions of 10 CFR part 600, subpart C, ''Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments.'' For-profit subrecipients are subject to the provisions of 10 CFR part 600, subpart D, Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements with For-Profit Organizations.

[59 FR 53266, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 68 FR 50650, Aug. 21, 2003]

PRE-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

§ 600.110 Purpose.

Sections 600.111 through 600.117 prescribe forms and instructions and other pre-award matters to be used in applying for DOE awards.

§ 600.111 Pre-award policies.

(a) *Use of Grants and Cooperative Agreements, and Contracts.* In each instance, the DOE shall decide on the appropriate award instrument (i.e., grant, cooperative agreement, or contract). The Federal Grant and Cooperative Agreement Act (31 U.S.C. 6301–08) governs the use of grants, cooperative agreements and contracts. A grant or cooperative agreement shall be used only when the principal purpose of a transaction is to accomplish a public purpose of support or stimulation authorized by Federal statute. The statutory criterion for choosing between grants and cooperative agreements is that for the latter, ''substantial involvement is expected between the executive agency and the State, local government, or other recipient when carrying out the activity contemplated in the agreement.'' Contracts shall be used when the principal purpose is acquisition of property or services for the direct benefit or use of the Federal Government.

(b) *Public Notice and Priority Setting.* DOE will, whenever practical, notify the public of its intended funding priorities for discretionary grant programs, unless funding priorities are established by Federal statute.

§ 600.112 Forms for applying for Federal assistance.

(a) *General.* An application for an award shall be on the form or in the format specified in a program rule or in the funding opportunity announcement. When a version of the Standard Form 424 is not used, DOE shall indicate whether the application is subject to review by the State under Executive Order 12372.

(b) *Budgetary information.* DOE may request and the applicant shall submit the minimum budgetary information necessary to evaluate the costs of the proposed project.

(c) DOE may, subsequent to receipt of an application, request additional information from an applicant when necessary for clarification or to make informed preaward determinations.

(d) *Continuation and renewal applications.* DOE may require that an application for a continuation or renewal award be made in the format or on the

forms authorized by paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section.

[74 FR 44278, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.113 Debarment and suspension.

Recipients shall comply with the nonprocurement debarment and suspension common rule implementing E.O.'s 12549 and 12689, ''Debarment and Suspension,'' 2 CFR 180 and 901. This common rule restricts subawards and contracts with certain parties that are debarred, suspended or otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs or activities.

[59 FR 53266, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 74 FR 44278, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.114 Special award conditions.

(a) If an applicant or recipient has a history of poor performance, is not financially stable, has a management system that does not meet the standards prescribed in this subpart, has not conformed to the terms and conditions of a previous award, or is not otherwise responsible, DOE may impose additional requirements as needed, without regard to the deviation provisions of § 600.4. Such applicant or recipient will be notified in writing as to the nature of the additional requirements, the reason why the additional requirements are being imposed, the nature of the corrective action needed, and the time allowed for completing the corrective actions. Reconsideration of the additional requirements may be requested at any time. Any special conditions shall be promptly removed once the conditions that prompted them have been corrected.

(b) A recipient may place a special restrictive condition, as specified in paragraph (a) of this section, in a subaward. In any such case, the recipient must notify DOE in writing within 15 days of the subaward. DOE shall decide whether to notify OMB and other interested parties.

§ 600.115 Metric system of measurement.

The Metric Conversion Act, as amended by the Omnibus Trade and Competitiveness Act (15 U.S.C. 205) declares that the metric system is the preferred measurement system for U.S. trade and commerce. The Act requires each Federal agency to establish a date or dates in consultation with the Secretary of Commerce, when the metric system of measurement will be used in the agency's procurements, grants, and other business-related activities. Metric implementation may take longer where the use of the system is initially impractical or likely to cause significant inefficiencies in the accomplishment of federally-funded activities. DOE will follow the provisions of E.O. 12770, ''Metric Usage in Federal Government Programs.''

§ 600.116 Resource Conservation and Recovery Act.

Under the Act (Pub. L. 94–580 codified at 42 U.S.C. 6962), any State agency or agency of a political subdivision of a State which is using appropriated Federal funds must comply with section 6002. Section 6002 requires that preference be given in procurement programs to the purchase of specific products containing recycled materials identified in guidelines developed by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) (40 CFR parts 247–254). Accordingly, State and local institutions of higher education, hospitals, and nonprofit organizations that receive direct Federal awards or other Federal funds shall give preference in their procurement programs funded with Federal funds to the purchase of recycled products pursuant to the EPA guidelines.

§ 600.117 [Reserved]

POST-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

Financial and Program Management

§ 600.120 Purpose of financial and program management.

Sections 600.121 through 600.128 prescribe standards for financial management systems, methods for making payments and rules for satisfying cost sharing and matching requirements, accounting for program income, budget revision approvals, making audits, determining allowability of cost, and establishing fund availability.

§ 600.121 Standards for financial management systems.

(a) Recipients shall relate financial data to performance data and develop unit cost information whenever practical. For awards that support research, it should be noted that it is generally not appropriate to develop unit cost information.

(b) Except for the provisions of 600.121(f) and 600.181, recipients' financial management systems shall provide for the following:

(1) Accurate, current and complete disclosure of the financial results of each federally-sponsored project or program in accordance with the reporting requirements set forth in § 600.152. If a DOE award requires reporting on an accrual basis from a recipient that maintains its records on other than an accrual basis, the recipient shall not be required to establish an accrual accounting system. These recipients may develop such accrual data for their reports on the basis of an analysis of the documentation on hand.

(2) Records that identify adequately the source and application of funds for federally-sponsored activities. These records shall contain information pertaining to Federal awards, authorizations, obligations, unobligated balances, assets, outlays, income and interest.

(3) Effective control over and accountability for all funds, property and other assets. Recipients shall adequately safeguard all such assets and assure they are used solely for authorized purposes.

(4) Comparison of outlays with budget amounts for each award. Whenever appropriate, financial information should be related to performance and unit cost data. As discussed in paragraph (a) of this section, unit cost data is generally not appropriate for awards that support research.

(5) Written procedures to minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds to the recipient from the U.S. Treasury and the issuance or redemption of checks, warrants or payments by other means for program purposes by the recipient. To the extent that the provisions of the Cash Management Improvement Act (CMIA) (Pub. L. 101–453) govern, payment methods of State agencies, instrumentalities, and fiscal agents shall be consistent with CMIA Treasury-State Agreements or the CMIA default procedures codified at 31 CFR part 205, ''Withdrawal of Cash from the Treasury for Advances under Federal Grant and Other Programs.''

(6) Written procedures for determining the reasonableness, allocability and allowability of costs in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Federal cost principles and the terms and conditions of the award.

(7) Accounting records including cost accounting records that are supported by source documentation.

(c) Where the Federal Government guarantees or insures the repayment of money borrowed by the recipient, the Contracting Officer, at his or her discretion, may require adequate bonding and insurance if the bonding and insurance requirements of the recipient are not deemed adequate to protect the interest of the Federal Government.

(d) The Contracting Officer may require adequate fidelity bond coverage where the recipient lacks sufficient coverage to protect the Federal Government's interest.

(e) Where bonds are required in the situations described in §§ 600.121 (c) and (d), the bonds shall be obtained from companies holding certificates of authority as acceptable sureties, as prescribed in 31 CFR part 223, ''Surety Companies Doing Business with the United States.''

(f) Individuals whose financial management systems do not meet the minimum standards of § 600.121 (b) shall maintain a separate bank account for deposit of award or subaward funds. Disbursements by the recipient or subrecipient from this account shall be supported by source documentation such as canceled checks, paid bills, receipts, payrolls, etc.

§ 600.122 Payment.

(a) Payment methods shall minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds from the United States Treasury and the issuance or redemption of checks, warrants, or payment by other means by the recipients. Payment methods of State agencies or instrumentalities shall be consistent with Treasury-State CMIA agreements or

default procedures codified at 31 CFR part 205.

(b) Recipients will be paid in advance, provided they maintain or demonstrate the willingness to maintain:

(1) Written procedures that minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds and disbursement by the recipient, and

(2) Financial management systems that meet the standards for fund control and accountability as established in § 600.121. Cash advances to a recipient organization shall be limited to the minimum amounts needed and be timed to be in accordance with the actual, immediate cash requirements of the recipient organization in carrying out the purpose of the approved program or project. The timing and amount of cash advances shall be as close as is administratively feasible to the actual disbursements by the recipient organization for direct program or project costs and the proportionate share of any allowable indirect costs.

(c) Whenever possible, advances shall be consolidated to cover anticipated cash needs for all awards made by the DOE to the recipient.

(1) Advance payment mechanisms include, but are not limited to, Treasury check and electronic funds transfer.

(2) Advance payment mechanisms are subject to 31 CFR part 205.

(3) Recipients may submit requests for advances and reimbursements at least monthly when electronic fund transfers are not used.

(d) Requests for Treasury check advance payment shall be submitted on SF–270, ''Request for Advance or Reimbursement,'' or other forms as may be authorized by OMB. This form is not to be used when Treasury check advance payments are made to the recipient automatically through the use of a predetermined payment schedule or if precluded by special DOE instructions for electronic funds transfer.

(e) Reimbursement is the preferred method when the requirements in paragraph (b) of this section cannot be met. DOE may also use this method on any construction agreement, or if the major portion of the construction project is accomplished through private market financing or Federal loans, and the Federal assistance constitutes a minor portion of the project.

(1) When the reimbursement method is used, DOE shall make payment within 30 days after receipt of the billing, unless the billing is improper.

(2) Recipients are authorized to submit requests for reimbursement at least monthly when electronic funds transfers are not used.

(f) If a recipient cannot meet the criteria for advance payments and DOE has determined that reimbursement is not feasible because the recipient lacks sufficient working capital, DOE may provide cash on a working capital advance basis. Under this procedure, DOE advances cash to the recipient to cover its estimated disbursement needs for an initial period generally geared to the recipient's disbursing cycle. Thereafter, DOE reimburses the recipient for its actual cash disbursements. The working capital advance method of payment will not be used for recipients unwilling or unable to provide timely advances to their subrecipient to meet the subrecipient's actual cash disbursements.

(g) To the extent available, recipients shall disburse funds available from repayments to and interest earned on a revolving fund, program income, rebates, refunds, contract settlements, audit recoveries and interest earned on such funds before requesting additional cash payments.

(h) Unless otherwise required by statute, DOE will not withhold payments for proper charges made by recipients at any time during the project period unless paragraph (h)(1) or (h)(2) of this section apply.

(1) A recipient has failed to comply with the project objectives, the terms and conditions of the award, or DOE reporting requirements.

(2) The recipient or subrecipient is delinquent in a debt to the United States. Under such conditions, the Federal awarding agency may, upon reasonable notice, inform the recipient that payments shall not be made for obligations incurred after a specified date until the conditions are corrected or the indebtedness to the Federal Government is liquidated. Before withholding any payment, DOE shall notify the recipient that payments shall not

be made for obligations incurred after a specified date, which shall ordinarily be no sooner than 30 days from the date of the notice, until the recipient corrects the noncompliance or pays the indebtedness to the Federal government.

(i) Standards governing the use of banks and other institutions as depositories of funds advanced under awards are as follows.

(1) Except for situations described in paragraph (i)(2) of this section, DOE shall not require separate depository accounts for funds provided to a recipient or establish any eligibility requirements for depositories for funds provided to a recipient. However, recipients must be able to account for the receipt, obligation and expenditure of funds.

(2) Advances of Federal funds shall be deposited and maintained in insured accounts whenever possible.

(j) Consistent with the national goal of expanding the opportunities for women-owned and minority-owned business enterprises, recipients are encouraged to use women-owned and minority-owned banks (a bank which is owned at least 50 percent by women or minority group members).

(k) Recipients shall maintain advances of Federal funds in interest bearing accounts, unless paragraph (k)(1), (2) or (3) of this section apply.

(1) The recipient receives less than $120,000 in Federal awards per year.

(2) The best reasonably available interest bearing account would not be expected to earn interest in excess of $250 per year on Federal cash balances.

(3) The depository would require an average or minimum balance so high that it would not be feasible within the expected Federal and non-Federal cash resources.

(l) For those entities where CMIA and its implementing regulations do not apply, interest earned on Federal advances deposited in interest bearing accounts shall be remitted annually to the HHS Payment Management System through an electronic medium such as the FEDWIRE Deposit system. Recipients which do not have this capability should use a check. The address is the Department of Health and Human Services, Payment Management System, P.O. Box 6021, Rockville, MD 20852. Interest amounts up to $250 per year may be retained by the recipient for administrative expense. State universities and hospitals shall comply with CMIA, as it pertains to interest. If an entity subject to CMIA uses its own funds to pay pre-award costs for discretionary awards without prior written approval from the Federal awarding agency, it waives its right to recover the interest under CMIA.

(m) Except as noted elsewhere in this subpart, only the following forms shall be authorized for the recipients in requesting advances and reimbursements. Federal agencies shall not require more than an original and two copies of these forms.

(1) SF–270, Request for Advance or Reimbursement. Each Federal awarding agency shall adopt the SF–270 as a standard form for all nonconstruction programs when electronic funds transfer or predetermined advance methods are not used. Federal awarding agencies, however, have the option of using this form for construction programs in lieu of the SF–271, ''Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs.''

(2) SF–271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs. Each Federal awarding agency shall adopt the SF–271 as the standard form to be used for requesting reimbursement for construction programs. However, a Federal awarding agency may substitute the SF–270 when the Federal awarding agency determines that it provides adequate information to meet Federal needs.

(n) The DOE may convert a recipient from advance payment to reimbursement whenever the recipient no longer meets the criteria for advance payment specified in paragraph (b) of this section. Any such conversion may be accomplished only after the DOE has advised the recipient in writing of the reasons for the proposed action and has provided a period of at least 30 days within which the recipient may take corrective action or provide satisfactory assurances of its intention to take such action.

(o) With prior DOE approval and in accordance with written DOE instructions, a recipient may assign to a bank,

trust company or other financing institution, including any Federal lending agency, reimbursement by Treasury check due from DOE under the following conditions:

(1) The award provides for reimbursement totaling $1,000 or more;

(2) The assignment covers all amounts payable under the award that have not already been paid;

(3) Reassignment is prohibited; and

(4) The assignee files a written notice of award payment assignment and a true copy of the instrument of assignment with DOE. Any interest costs resulting from a loan obtained on the basis of an assignment are unallowable charges to DOE award funds or any required cost sharing.

(p) Recipients shall observe the requirements of this section in making or withholding payments to subrecipients except that the forms used by recipients are not required to be used by subrecipients when requesting advances or reimbursement.

§ 600.123 Cost sharing or matching.

(a) All cost sharing or matching contributions, including cash and third party in-kind, shall meet all of the following criteria.

(1) Are verifiable from the recipient's records.

(2) Are not included as contributions for any other federally-assisted project or program.

(3) Are necessary and reasonable for proper and efficient accomplishment of project or program objectives.

(4) Are allowable under the applicable cost principles.

(5) Are not paid by the Federal Government under another award, except where authorized by Federal statute to be used for cost sharing or matching.

(6) Are provided for in the approved budget.

(7) Conform to other provisions of this subpart, as applicable.

(b) Unrecovered indirect costs may be included as part of cost sharing or matching.

(c) Values for recipient contributions of services and property shall be established in accordance with the applicable cost principles. If DOE authorizes recipients to donate buildings or land for construction/facilities acquisition projects or long-term use, the value of the donated property for cost sharing or matching shall be the lesser of either paragraph (c)(1) or (2) of this section.

(1) The certified value of the remaining life of the property recorded in the recipient's accounting records at the time of donation.

(2) The current fair market value. However, when there is sufficient justification, DOE may approve the use of the current fair market value of the donated property, even if it exceeds the certified value at the time of donation to the project.

(d) Volunteer services furnished by professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor may be counted as cost sharing or matching if the service is an integral and necessary part of an approved project or program. Rates for volunteer services shall be consistent with those paid for similar work in the recipient's organization. In those instances in which the required skills are not found in the recipient organization, rates shall be consistent with those paid for similar work in the labor market in which the recipient competes for the kind of services involved. In either case, paid fringe benefits that are reasonable, allowable, and allocable may be included in the valuation.

(e) When an employer other than the recipient furnishes the services of an employee, these services shall be valued at the employee's regular rate of pay (plus an amount of fringe benefits that are reasonable, allowable, and allocable, but exclusive of overhead costs), provided these services are in the same skill for which the employee is normally paid.

(f) Donated supplies may include such items as office supplies, laboratory supplies or workshop and classroom supplies. Value assessed to donated supplies included in the cost sharing or matching share shall be reasonable and shall not exceed the fair market value of the property at the time of the donation.

(g) The method used for determining cost sharing or matching for donated equipment, buildings and land for which title passes to the recipient may differ according to the purpose of the

award, if either paragraph (g)(1) or (2) of this section apply.

(1) If the purpose of the award is to assist the recipient in the acquisition of equipment, buildings or land, the total value of the donated property may be claimed as cost sharing or matching.

(2) If the purpose of the award is to support activities that require the use of equipment, buildings or land, normally only depreciation or use charges for equipment and buildings may be made. However, the full value of equipment or other capital assets and fair rental charges for land may be allowed, provided that DOE has approved the charges.

(h) The value of donated property shall be determined in accordance with the usual accounting policies of the recipient, with the following qualifications.

(1) The value of donated land and buildings shall not exceed its fair market value at the time of donation to the recipient as established by an independent appraiser (e.g., certified real property appraiser or General Services Administration representative) and certified by a responsible official of the recipient.

(2) The value of donated equipment shall not exceed the fair market value of equipment of the same age and condition at the time of donation.

(3) The value of donated space shall not exceed the fair rental value of comparable space as established by an independent appraisal of comparable space and facilities in a privately-owned building in the same locality.

(4) The value of loaned equipment shall not exceed its fair rental value.

(i) The following requirements pertain to the recipient's supporting records for in-kind contributions from third parties.

(1) Volunteer services shall be documented and, to the extent feasible, supported by the same methods used by the recipient for its own employees.

(2) The basis for determining the valuation for personal service, material, equipment, buildings and land shall be documented.

(j) DOE shall specify in the solicitation or in the program rule, if any, any cost sharing requirement. The award document shall be specific as to whether the cost sharing is based on a minimum amount for the recipient or on a percentage of total costs.

(k) If DOE requires that a recipient provide cost sharing which is not required by statute or which exceeds a statutory minimum, DOE shall state in the program rule or solicitation the reasons for requiring such cost sharing, recommended or required levels of cost sharing, and the circumstances under which the requirement for cost sharing may be waived or adjusted during any negotiation.

(l) Whenever DOE negotiates the amount of cost sharing, DOE may take into account such factors as the use of program income (see § 600.124), patent rights, and rights in data. Foregone fee or profit shall not be considered in establishing the extent of cost sharing.

§ 600.124 Program income.

(a) The standards set forth in this section shall be used to account for program income related to projects financed in whole or in part with DOE funds.

(b) Except as provided in paragraph (h) of this section, program income earned during the project period shall be retained by the recipient and, in accordance with program regulations or the terms and conditions of the award, shall be used in one or more of the following ways.

(1) Added to funds committed to the project and used to further eligible project objectives.

(2) Used to finance the non-DOE share of the project.

(3) Deducted from the total project allowable cost in determining the net allowable costs on which the share of costs is based.

(c) When DOE authorizes the disposition of program income as described in paragraphs (b)(1) or (b)(2) of this section, program income in excess of any limits stipulated shall be used in accordance with paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(d) In the event that the program regulations or the terms and conditions of the award do not specify how program income is to be used, paragraph (b)(3) of this section shall apply

automatically to all projects or programs except research. For awards that support research, paragraph (b)(1) of this section shall apply automatically unless the award indicates another alternative in the terms and conditions, the recipient is subject to special award conditions, as indicated in § 600.114, or the recipient is a commercial organization.

(e) Unless program regulations or the terms and conditions of the award provide otherwise, recipients shall have no obligation to the Federal Government regarding program income earned after the end of the project period.

(f) Unless program regulations or the terms and conditions of the award provide otherwise, costs incident to the generation of program income may be deducted from gross income to determine program income, provided these costs have not been charged to the award.

(g) Proceeds from the sale of property shall be handled in accordance with the requirements of the Property Standards (See §§ 600.130 through 600.137).

(h) Unless program regulations or the terms and condition of the award provide otherwise, recipients shall have no obligation to the Federal Government with respect to program income earned from license fees and royalties for copyrighted material, patents, patent applications, trademarks, and inventions produced under an award. However, Patent and Trademark Amendments (35 U.S.C. Chapter 18) apply to inventions made under an experimental, developmental, or research award.

§ 600.125 Revision of budget and program plans.

(a) The budget plan is the financial expression of the project or program as approved during the award process. It includes the sum of the Federal and non-Federal share when there are cost sharing requirements. It shall be related to performance for program evaluation purposes whenever appropriate.

(b) Recipients are required to report deviations from budget and program plans, and request prior approvals for budget and program plan revisions, in accordance with this section.

(c) For nonconstruction awards, recipients shall request prior approvals from the DOE for one or more of the following program or budget related reasons.

(1) Change in the scope or the objective of the project or program (even if there is no associated budget revision requiring prior written approval).

(2) Change in a key person specified in the application or award document.

(3) The absence for more than three months, or a 25 percent reduction in time devoted to the project, by the approved project director or principal investigator.

(4) The need for additional Federal funding.

(5) If required by program regulations, the transfer of amounts budgeted for indirect costs to absorb increases in direct costs, or vice versa.

(6) The inclusion, unless waived by program regulations or the terms and conditions of award, of costs that require prior approval in accordance with OMB Circular A–21, ''Cost Principles for Institutions of Higher Education,'' OMB Circular A–122, ''Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations,'' or 45 CFR part 74 Appendix E, ''Principles for Determining Costs Applicable to Research and Development under Grants and Contracts with Hospitals,'' or 48 CFR part 31, ''Contract Cost Principles and Procedures,'' as applicable.

(7) The transfer of funds allotted for training allowances (direct payment to trainees) to other categories of expense.

(8) Unless described in the application and funded in the approved awards, the subaward, transfer or contracting out of any work under an award. This provision does not apply to the purchase of supplies, material, equipment or general support services.

(d) No other prior approval requirements for specific items may be imposed unless a deviation has been approved in accordance with § 600.4.

(e) Except for requirements listed in paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(4) of this section, program regulations may waive cost-related and administrative prior written approvals required by this subpart and its Appendices. Such waivers may include authorizing recipients to do any one or more of the following.

(1) Incur pre-award costs 90 calendar days prior to award without prior approval or more than 90 calendar days with the prior approval of DOE. All pre-award costs are incurred at the recipient's risk (i.e., DOE is under no obligation to reimburse such costs if for any reason the recipient does not receive an award or if the award is less than anticipated and inadequate to cover such costs).

(2) Initiate a one-time extension of the expiration date of the final budget period of the project of up to 12 months unless one or more of the following conditions apply.

(i) The terms and conditions of award prohibit the extension.

(ii) The extension requires additional Federal funds.

(iii) The extension involves any change in the approved objectives or scope of the project.

(iv) The extension is being exercised merely for the purpose of using unobligated balances. For one-time extensions, the recipient must notify the DOE in writing with the supporting reasons and revised expiration date at least 10 days before the expiration date specified in the award.

(3) Carry forward unobligated balances to subsequent funding periods.

(4) For awards that support research, unless the terms and conditions of award provide otherwise, the prior approval requirements described in paragraph (e) of this section are automatically waived (i.e., recipients need not obtain such prior approvals) unless one of the conditions included in § 600.125(e)(2) applies.

(5) For continuation awards within a multiple year project in support of research, prior to receipt of continuation funding, preaward expenditures by recipients are not subject to the limitation or approval requirements of § 600.125(e)(1). Nevertheless, incurrence by the recipient does not impose any obligation on DOE if a continuation award is not subsequently made, or if an award is made for a lesser amount than the recipient expected.

(f) Program regulations may restrict the transfer of funds among direct cost categories or programs, functions and activities for awards in which DOE's share of the project exceeds $100,000 and the cumulative amount of such transfers exceeds or is expected to exceed 10 percent of the total budget as last approved by DOE. However, no program regulation shall permit a transfer that would cause any Federal appropriation or part thereof to be used for purposes other than those consistent with the original intent of the appropriation.

(g) All other changes to nonconstruction budgets, except for the changes described in paragraph (j) of this section, do not require prior approval.

(h) For construction awards, recipients shall request prior written approval promptly from the Contracting Officer for budget revisions whenever paragraph (h) (1), (2) or (3) of this section apply.

(1) The revision results from changes in the scope or the objective of the project or program.

(2) The need arises for additional Federal funds to complete the project.

(3) A revision is desired which involves specific costs for which prior written approval requirements may be imposed consistent with applicable OMB cost principles listed in § 600.127.

(i) Except in accordance with the deviation procedures in 600.4 or as may be provided for in program regulations, no other prior approval requirements for specific items will be imposed by DOE.

(j) When DOE makes an award that provides support for both construction and nonconstruction work, DOE may require the recipient to request prior approval from DOE before making any fund or budget transfers between the two types of work supported.

(k) For both construction and nonconstruction awards, recipients shall notify DOE in writing promptly whenever the amount of Federal authorized funds is expected to exceed the needs of the recipient for the project period by more than $5000 or five percent of the Federal award, whichever is greater. This notification shall not be required if an application for additional funding is submitted for a continuation award.

(l) Requests for budget revisions may be made by letter.

(m) Within 30 calendar days from the date of receipt of the request for budget revisions, DOE shall review the request and notify the recipient whether

the budget revisions have been approved. If the revision is still under consideration at the end of 30 calendar days, DOE shall inform the recipient in writing of the date when the recipient may expect the decision.

(n) DOE approval or disapproval of a request for a budget or project revision shall be in writing and signed by a DOE Contracting Officer.

(o) A request by a subrecipient for prior approval shall be addressed in writing to the recipient. The recipient shall promptly review such request and shall approve or disapprove the request in writing within 30 days from the date of the recipient's request for the revision. A recipient shall not approve any budget or project revision which is inconsistent with the purpose or terms and conditions of the DOE award. If the revision requested by the subrecipient would result in a change to the recipient's approved budget or approved project which requires DOE prior approval, the recipient shall obtain DOE approval before approving such revision.

§ 600.126 Non-Federal audits.

(a) Recipients and subrecipients that are institutions of higher education or other non-profit organizations (including hospitals) shall be subject to the audit requirements contained in the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507) and revised OMB Circular A–133, ''Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations.''

(b) State and local governments shall be subject to the audit requirements contained in the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507) and revised OMB Circular A–133, ''Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations.''

(c) For-profit organizations that are subrecipients are subject to the audit requirements specified in 10 CFR 600.316.

[59 FR 53266, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 62 FR 45939, 45940, Aug. 29, 1997; 68 FR 50650, Aug. 21, 2003]

§ 600.127 Allowable costs.

(a) *General.* For each kind of recipient, there is a set of Federal principles for determining allowable costs. Allowability of costs shall be determined in accordance with the cost principles applicable to the entity incurring the costs. Thus, allowability of costs incurred by State, local or federally-recognized Indian tribal governments is determined in accordance with the provisions of OMB Circular A–87, ''Cost Principles for State and Local Governments.'' The allowability of costs incurred by non-profit organizations is determined in accordance with the provisions of OMB Circular A–122, ''Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations.'' The allowability of costs incurred by institutions of higher education is determined in accordance with the provisions of OMB Circular A–21, ''Cost Principles for Educational Institutions.'' The allowability of costs incurred by hospitals is determined in accordance with the provisions of Appendix E of 45 CFR part 74, ''Principles for Determining Costs Applicable to Research and Development Under Grants and Contracts with Hospitals.'' The allowability of costs incurred by commercial organizations and those non-profit organizations listed in Attachment C to Circular A–122 is determined in accordance with the provisions of the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) at 48 CFR part 31.

(b) *Indirect costs.* Unless restricted by Federal statute or program rule, DOE shall provide for the reimbursement of appropriate indirect costs.

(1) DOE shall include an amount for indirect costs in an award only if the applicant requests reimbursement of such costs and—

(i) Submits evidence that a cognizant Federal agency has been assigned to establish indirect cost rates for the applicant and indicates or provides evidence that—

(A) A current agreement containing an applicable approved indirect cost rate(s) covering all or part of the budget period for which DOE may provide funding has been established; or

(B) An indirect cost proposal has been submitted to the cognizant agency in order to establish an applicable approved indirect cost rate(s) covering all or part of the budget period for which DOE may provide funding; or

(C) An indirect cost proposal covering all or part of the budget period

and applicable to the activities for which DOE may provide funding will be submitted to the cognizant agency for approval no later than three months after the beginning date of the initial budget period of the DOE award or, for subsequent budget periods, in accordance with any schedule established by the cognizant agency; or

(ii) If not assigned to a cognizant agency, the applicant includes, in the application, data that is current, complete, accurate, and sufficient to allow the Contracting Officer to determine a rate(s) for indirect costs. If the total approved budget will not exceed $100,000 or if the amount requested for indirect costs does not exceed $5,000, DOE may waive the requirement for negotiation of a rate and, in lieu thereof, provide a reasonable allowance for such costs.

(2) Indirect cost proposals shall be prepared and submitted in accordance with the applicable Federal cost principles and instructions from the cognizant agency or from DOE, as appropriate.

(3) If a subaward under an award or subaward provides for the payment of indirect costs, the recipient or subrecipient shall be responsible for negotiating appropriate indirect costs, using the cost principles applicable to the subrecipient or contractor, unless the subrecipient or contractor has negotiated an applicable rate directly with DOE or another Federal department or agency. DOE may review and audit the procedures a recipient or subrecipient uses in conducting indirect cost negotiations.

(c) *Fee or profit.* No increment above cost may be paid to a recipient or subrecipient under a DOE award or subaward. A fee or profit may be paid to a contractor providing goods or services under a contract with a recipient or subrecipient.

[59 FR 53266, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 68 FR 50650, Aug. 21, 2003]

§ 600.128 Period of availability of funds.

Where a funding period is specified, a recipient may charge to the award only allowable costs resulting from obligations incurred during the funding period and any pre-award costs authorized by DOE.

Property Standards

§ 600.130 Purpose of property standards.

Sections 600.131 through 600.137 set forth uniform standards governing management and disposition of property furnished by the Federal Government or whose cost was charged to a project supported by a Federal award. Recipients shall observe these standards under awards and shall not impose additional requirements, unless specifically required by Federal statute or program regulations. The recipient may use its own property management standards and procedures provided it observes the provisions of §§ 600.131 through 600.137.

§ 600.131 Insurance coverage.

Recipients shall, at a minimum, provide the equivalent insurance coverage for real property and equipment acquired with DOE funds as provided to property owned by the recipient. Federally-owned property need not be insured unless required by the terms and conditions of the award.

§ 600.132 Real property.

Unless otherwise provided by statute or program regulations, the requirements concerning the use and disposition of real property acquired in whole or in part under awards are as follows.

(a) Title to real property shall vest in the recipient subject to the condition that the recipient shall use the real property for the authorized purpose of the project as long as it is needed and shall not encumber the property without approval of DOE.

(b) The recipient shall obtain written approval by DOE for the use of real property in other federally-sponsored projects when the recipient determines that the property is no longer needed for the purpose of the original project. Use in other projects shall be limited to those under federally-sponsored projects (i.e., awards) or programs that have purposes consistent with those authorized for support by DOE.

(c) When the real property is no longer needed as provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the recipient shall request disposition instructions from DOE or its successor Federal awarding agency. DOE will give one or more of the following disposition instructions.

(1) The recipient may be permitted to retain title without further obligation to the Federal Government after it compensates the Federal Government for that percentage of the current fair market value of the property attributable to the Federal participation in the project.

(2) The recipient may be directed to sell the property under guidelines provided by DOE and pay the Federal Government for that percentage of the current fair market value of the property attributable to the Federal participation in the project (after deducting actual and reasonable selling and fix-up expenses, if any, from the sales proceeds). When the recipient is authorized or required to sell the property, proper sales procedures shall be established that provide for competition to the extent practicable and result in the highest possible return.

(3) The recipient may be directed to transfer title to the property to the Federal Government or to an eligible third party provided that, in such cases, the recipient shall be entitled to compensation for its attributable percentage of the current fair market value of the property.

§ 600.133 Federally-owned and exempt property.

(a) *Federally-owned property*. (1) Title to federally-owned property remains vested in the Federal Government. Recipients shall submit annually an inventory listing of federally-owned property in their custody to DOE. Upon completion of the award or when the property is no longer needed, the recipient shall report the property to DOE for further Federal agency utilization.

(2) If DOE has no further need for the property, it shall be declared excess and reported to the General Services Administration, unless DOE has statutory authority to dispose of the property by alternative methods (e.g., the authority provided by the Federal Technology Transfer Act (15 U.S.C. 3710 (i)) to donate research equipment to educational and non-profit organizations in accordance with E.O. 12821, ''Improving Mathematics and Science Education in Support of the National Education Goals.'') Appropriate instructions shall be issued to the recipient by DOE.

(b) *Exempt property*. When statutory authority exists, DOE may vest title to property acquired with Federal funds in the recipient without further obligation to the Federal Government and under conditions DOE considers appropriate. For example, under 31 U.S.C. 6306, DOE may so vest title to tangible personal property under a grant or cooperative agreement for basic or applied research in a nonprofit institution of higher education or in a nonprofit organization whose primary purpose is conducting scientific research. Such property is ''exempt property.'' Program regulations or the terms and conditions of award may establish provisions for vesting title to exempt property. Should such conditions not be established and the recipient has no need for the equipment, the recipient shall request disposition instructions from DOE. If DOE does not issue disposition instructions within 120 calendar days of receipt of the request, title to the property shall vest in the recipient without further obligation to the Federal Government. If, at the end of the project, DOE fails to issue disposition instructions within 120 calendar days of the receipt of a final inventory, title to the property shall vest in the recipient without further obligation to the Federal Government.

§ 600.134 Equipment.

(a) Title to equipment acquired by a recipient with Federal funds shall vest in the recipient, subject to conditions of this section.

(b) The recipient shall not use equipment acquired with Federal funds to provide services to non-Federal outside organizations for a fee that is less than private companies charge for equivalent services, unless specifically authorized by Federal statute, for as long as the Federal Government retains an interest in the equipment.

(c) The recipient shall use the equipment in the project or program for which it was acquired as long as needed, whether or not the project or program continues to be supported by Federal funds and shall not encumber the property without approval of DOE. When no longer needed for the original project or program, the recipient shall use the equipment in connection with its other federally-sponsored activities, in the following order of priority:

(1) Activities sponsored by DOE, then

(2) Activities sponsored by other Federal agencies.

(d) During the time that equipment is used on the project or program for which it was acquired, the recipient shall make it available for use on other projects or programs if such other use will not interfere with the work on the project or program for which the equipment was originally acquired. First preference for such other use shall be given to other projects or programs sponsored by DOE that financed the equipment; second preference shall be given to projects or programs sponsored by other Federal awarding agencies. If the equipment is owned by the Federal Government, use on other activities not sponsored by the Federal Government shall be permissible if authorized by DOE. User charges shall be treated as program income.

(e) When acquiring replacement equipment, the recipient may use the equipment to be replaced as trade-in or sell the equipment and use the proceeds to offset the costs of the replacement equipment subject to the approval of DOE.

(f) The recipient's property management standards for equipment acquired with Federal funds and federally-owned equipment shall include all of the following.

(1) Equipment records shall be maintained accurately and shall include the following information.

(i) A description of the equipment.

(ii) Manufacturer's serial number, model number, Federal stock number, national stock number, or other identification number.

(iii) Source of the equipment, including the award number.

(iv) Whether title vests in the recipient or the Federal Government.

(v) Acquisition date (or date received, if the equipment was furnished by the Federal Government) and cost.

(vi) Information from which one can calculate the percentage of Federal participation in the cost of the equipment (not applicable to equipment furnished by the Federal Government).

(vii) Location and condition of the equipment and the date the information was reported.

(viii) Unit acquisition cost.

(ix) Ultimate disposition data, including date of disposal and sales price or the method used to determine current fair market value where a recipient compensates DOE for its share.

(2) Equipment owned by the Federal Government shall be identified to indicate Federal ownership.

(3) A physical inventory of equipment shall be taken and the results reconciled with the equipment records at least once every two years. Any differences between quantities determined by the physical inspection and those shown in the accounting records shall be investigated to determine the causes of the difference. The recipient shall, in connection with the inventory, verify the existence, current utilization, and continued need for the equipment.

(4) A control system shall be in effect to insure adequate safeguards to prevent loss, damage, or theft of the equipment. Any loss, damage, or theft of equipment shall be investigated and fully documented; if the equipment was owned by the Federal Government, the recipient shall promptly notify DOE.

(5) Adequate maintenance procedures shall be implemented to keep the equipment in good condition.

(6) Where the recipient is authorized or required to sell the equipment, proper sales procedures shall be established which provide for competition to the extent practicable and result in the highest possible return.

(g) When the recipient no longer needs the equipment, the equipment may be used for other activities in accordance with the following standards. Equipment with a current per-unit fair market value of less than $5000 may be retained, sold or otherwise disposed of with no further obligation to the awarding agency. For equipment with

a current per unit fair market value of $5000 or more, the recipient may retain the equipment for other uses provided that compensation is made to the original Federal awarding agency or its successor. The amount of compensation shall be computed by applying the percentage of Federal participation in the cost of the original project or program to the current fair market value of the equipment. If the recipient has no need for the equipment, the recipient shall request disposition instructions from DOE. DOE shall determine whether the equipment can be used to meet DOE's requirements. If no requirement exists within DOE, the availability of the equipment shall be reported to the General Services Administration by DOE to determine whether a requirement for the equipment exists in other Federal agencies. DOE will issue instructions to the recipient no later than 120 calendar days after the recipient's request and the following procedures shall govern.

(1) If so instructed or if disposition instructions are not issued within 120 calendar days after the recipient's request, the recipient shall sell the equipment and reimburse DOE an amount computed by applying to the sales proceeds the percentage of Federal participation in the cost of the original project or program. However, the recipient shall be permitted to deduct and retain from the Federal share $500 or ten percent of the proceeds, whichever is less, for the recipient's selling and handling expenses.

(2) If the recipient is instructed to ship the equipment elsewhere, the recipient shall be reimbursed by the Federal Government by an amount which is computed by applying the percentage of the recipient's participation in the cost of the original project or program to the current fair market value of the equipment, plus any reasonable shipping or interim storage costs incurred.

(3) If the recipient is instructed to otherwise dispose of the equipment, the recipient shall be reimbursed by DOE for such costs incurred in its disposition.

(h) DOE reserves the right, at the end of a project, to transfer the title to the Federal Government or to a third party named by DOE when such third party is otherwise eligible under existing statutes. Such transfer shall be subject to the following standards.

(1) The equipment shall be appropriately identified in the award or otherwise made known to the recipient in writing.

(2) DOE shall issue disposition instructions within 120 calendar days after receipt of a final inventory. The final inventory shall list all equipment acquired with award funds and federally-owned equipment. If DOE fails to issue disposition instructions within the 120 calendar day period, the provisions of § 600.134(g)(1) apply.

(3) When DOE exercises its right to take title, the equipment shall be subject to the provisions for federally-owned equipment.

§ 600.135 Supplies and other expendable property.

(a) Title to supplies and other expendable property shall vest in the recipient upon acquisition. If there is a residual inventory of unused supplies exceeding $5000 in total aggregate value upon termination or completion of the project or program and the supplies are not needed for any other federally-sponsored project or program, the recipient shall retain the supplies for use on non-Federal sponsored activities or sell them, but shall, in either case, compensate the Federal Government for its share. The amount of compensation shall be computed in the same manner as for equipment.

(b) The recipient shall not use supplies acquired with Federal funds to provide services to non-Federal outside organizations for a fee that is less than private companies charge for equivalent services, unless specifically authorized by Federal statute as long as the Federal Government retains an interest in the supplies.

§ 600.136 Intangible property.

(a) Recipients may copyright any work that is subject to copyright and was developed, or for which ownership was purchased, under an award. DOE reserves a royalty-free, nonexclusive and irrevocable right to reproduce, publish or otherwise use the work for

Federal purposes and to authorize others to do so.

(b) Recipients are subject to applicable regulations governing patents and inventions, including government-wide regulations issued by the Department of Commerce at 37 CFR part 401, ''Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements.''

(c) The DOE has the right to:

(1) Obtain, reproduce, publish or otherwise use the data first produced under an award; and

(2) Authorize others to receive, reproduce, publish, or otherwise use such data for Federal purposes.

(d)(1) In addition, in response to a Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) request for research data relating to published research findings produced under an award that were used by the Federal Government in developing an agency action that has the force and effect of law, the DOE shall request, and the recipient shall provide, within a reasonable time, the research data so that they can be made available to the public through the procedures established under the FOIA. If the DOE obtains the research data solely in response to a FOIA request, the agency may charge the requester a reasonable fee equaling the full incremental cost of obtaining the research data. This fee should reflect costs incurred by the agency, the recipient, and applicable subrecipients. This fee is in addition to any fees the agency may assess under the FOIA (5 U.S.C. 552(a)(4)(A)).

(2) The following definitions apply for purposes of this paragraph (d):

(i) *Research data* is defined as the recorded factual material commonly accepted in the scientific community as necessary to validate research findings, but not any of the following: preliminary analyses, drafts of scientific papers, plans for future research, peer reviews, or communications with colleagues. This ''recorded'' material excludes physical objects (e.g., laboratory samples). *Research data* also do not include:

(A) Trade secrets, commercial information, materials necessary to be held confidential by a researcher until they are published, or similar information which is protected under law; and

(B) Personnel and medical information and similar information the disclosure of which would constitute a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy, such as information that could be used to identify a particular person in a research study.

(ii) *Published* is defined as either when:

(A) Research findings are published in a peer-reviewed scientific or technical journal; or

(B) A Federal agency publicly and officially cites the research findings in support of an agency action that has the force and effect of law.

(iii) *Used by the Federal Government in developing an agency action that has the force and effect of law* is defined as when an agency publicly and officially cites the research findings in support of an agency action that has the force and effect of law.

(e) Title to intangible property and debt instruments acquired under an award or subaward vests upon acquisition in the recipient. The recipient shall use that property for the originally-authorized purpose, and the recipient shall not encumber the property without approval of DOE. When no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, disposition of the intangible property shall occur in accordance with the provisions of § 600.134(g).

[61 FR 7165, Feb. 26, 1996, as amended at 65 FR 14407, 14408, Mar. 16, 2000; 68 FR 50650, Aug. 21, 2003]

§ 600.137 Property trust relationship.

Real property, equipment, intangible property and debt instruments that are acquired or improved with Federal funds shall be held in trust by the recipient as trustee for the beneficiaries of the project or program under which the property was acquired or improved. Recipients shall record liens or other appropriate notices of record to indicate that personal or real property has been acquired or improved with Federal funds and that use and disposition conditions apply to the property.

Procurement Standards

§ 600.140 Purpose of procurement standards.

Sections 600.141 through 600.148 set forth standards for use by recipients in establishing procedures for the procurement of supplies and other expendable property, equipment, real property and other services with Federal funds. These standards are furnished to ensure that such materials and services are obtained in an effective manner and in compliance with the provisions of applicable Federal statutes and executive orders. No additional procurement standards or requirements shall be imposed by DOE upon recipients, unless specifically required by Federal statute or executive order or in accordance with the deviation procedures of § 600.4.

§ 600.141 Recipient responsibilities.

The standards contained in this section do not relieve the recipient of the contractual responsibilities arising under its contract(s). The recipient is the responsible authority, without recourse to DOE regarding the settlement and satisfaction of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements entered into in support of an award or other agreement. This includes disputes, claims, protests of award, source evaluation or other matters of a contractual nature. Matters concerning violation of statute are to be referred to such Federal, State or local authority as may have proper jurisdiction.

§ 600.142 Codes of conduct.

The recipient shall maintain written standards of conduct governing the performance of its employees engaged in the award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer, or agent shall participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract supported by Federal funds if a real or apparent conflict of interest would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when the employee, officer, or agent, any member of his or her immediate family, his or her partner, or an organization which employs or is about to employ any of the parties indicated herein, has a financial or other interest in the firm selected for an award. The officers, employees, and agents of the recipient shall neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors, or anything of monetary value from contractors, or parties to subagreements. However, recipients may set standards for situations in which the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal value. The standards of conduct shall provide for disciplinary actions to be applied for violations of such standards by officers, employees, or agents of the recipient.

§ 600.143 Competition.

All procurement transactions shall be conducted in a manner to provide, to the maximum extent practical, open and free competition. The recipient shall be alert to organizational conflicts of interest as well as noncompetitive practices among contractors that may restrict or eliminate competition or otherwise restrain trade. In order to ensure objective contractor performance and eliminate unfair competitive advantage, contractors that develop or draft specifications, requirements, statements of work, invitations for bids and/or requests for proposals shall be excluded from competing for such procurements. Awards shall be made to the bidder or offeror whose bid or offer is responsive to the solicitation and is most advantageous to the recipient, price, quality and other factors considered. Solicitations shall clearly set forth all requirements that the bidder or offeror shall fulfill in order for the bid or offer to be evaluated by the recipient. Any and all bids or offers may be rejected when it is in the recipient's interest to do so.

§ 600.144 Procurement procedures.

(a) All recipients shall establish written procurement procedures. These procedures shall provide for, at a minimum, that paragraphs (a)(1), (2) and (3) of this section apply.

(1) Recipients avoid purchasing unnecessary items.

(2) Where appropriate, an analysis is made of lease and purchase alternatives to determine which would be the most economical and practical procurement.

(3) Solicitations for goods and services provide for all of the following.

(i) A clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product or service to be procured. In competitive procurements, such a description shall not contain features which unduly restrict competition.

(ii) Requirements which the bidder/offeror must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(iii) A description, whenever practicable, of technical requirements in terms of functions to be performed or performance required, including the range of acceptable characteristics or minimum acceptable standards.

(iv) The specific features of ''brand name or equal'' descriptions that bidders are required to meet when such items are included in the solicitation.

(v) The acceptance, to the extent practicable and economically feasible, of products and services dimensioned in the metric system of measurement.

(vi) Preference, to the extent practicable and economically feasible, for products and services that conserve natural resources and protect the environment and are energy efficient.

(b) Positive efforts shall be made by recipients to utilize small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises, whenever possible. Recipients of DOE awards shall take all of the following steps to further this goal.

(1) Ensure that small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises are used to the fullest extent practicable.

(2) Make information on forthcoming opportunities available and arrange time frames for purchases and contracts to encourage and facilitate participation by small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises.

(3) Consider in the contract process whether firms competing for larger contracts intend to subcontract with small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises.

(4) Encourage contracting with consortiums of small businesses, minority-owned firms and women's business enterprises when a contract is too large for one of these firms to handle individually.

(5) Use the services and assistance, as appropriate, of such organizations as the Small Business Administration and the Department of Commerce's Minority Business Development Agency in the solicitation and utilization of small businesses, minority-owned firms and women's business enterprises.

(c) The type of procuring instruments used (e.g., fixed price contracts, cost reimbursable contracts, purchase orders, and incentive contracts) shall be determined by the recipient but shall be appropriate for the particular procurement and for promoting the best interest of the program or project involved. The ''cost-plus-a-percentage-of-cost'' or ''percentage of construction cost'' methods of contracting shall not be used.

(d) Contracts shall be made only with responsible contractors who possess the potential ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of the proposed procurement. Consideration shall be given to such matters as contractor integrity, record of past performance, financial and technical resources or accessibility to other necessary resources. In certain circumstances, contracts with certain parties are restricted by DOE's implementation, in 10 CFR part 1036, of E.O.'s 12549 and 12689, ''Debarment and Suspension.''

(e) Recipients shall, on request, make available for DOE, pre-award review and procurement documents, such as request for proposals or invitations for bids, independent cost estimates, etc., when any of the following conditions apply.

(1) A recipient's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in this subpart.

(2) The procurement is expected to exceed the small purchase threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403 (11) (currently $25,000) and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation.

(3) The procurement, which is expected to exceed the small purchase threshold, specifies a ''brand name'' product.

(4) The proposed award over the small purchase threshold is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement.

(5) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the amount of the small purchase threshold.

(f) By agreement of the recipient or subrecipient and the contractor, if consistent with the recipient's or subrecipient's usual business practices and applicable state and local law, any contract to which this section applies may provide for the payment of interest penalties on amounts overdue under such contract except that—

(1) In no case shall any obligation to pay such interest penalties be construed to be an obligation of the Federal government, and

(2) Any payment of such interest penalties may not be made from DOE funds nor be counted toward meeting a cost sharing requirement of a DOE award.

§ 600.145 Cost and price analysis.

Some form of cost or price analysis shall be made and documented in the procurement files in connection with every procurement action. Price analysis may be accomplished in various ways, including the comparison of price quotations submitted, market prices and similar indicia, together with discounts. Cost analysis is the review and evaluation of each element of cost to determine reasonableness, allocability and allowability.

§ 600.146 Procurement records.

Procurement records and files for purchases in excess of the small purchase threshold shall include the following at a minimum:

(a) Basis for contractor selection,

(b) Justification for lack of competition when competitive bids or offers are not obtained, and

(c) Basis for award cost or price.

§ 600.147 Contract administration.

A system for contract administration shall be maintained to ensure contractor conformance with the terms, conditions and specifications of the contract and to ensure adequate and timely follow up of all purchases. Recipients shall evaluate contractor performance and document, as appropriate, whether contractors have met the terms, conditions and specifications of the contract.

§ 600.148 Contract provisions.

The recipient shall include, in addition to provisions to define a sound and complete agreement, the following provisions in all contracts. The following provisions shall also be applied to subcontracts.

(a) Contracts in excess of the small purchase threshold shall contain contractual provisions or conditions that allow for administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances in which a contractor violates or breaches the contract terms, and provide for such remedial actions as may be appropriate.

(b) All contracts in excess of the small purchase threshold shall contain suitable provisions for termination by the recipient, including the manner by which termination shall be effected and the basis for settlement. In addition, such contracts shall describe conditions under which the contract may be terminated for default as well as conditions where the contract may be terminated because of circumstances beyond the control of the contractor.

(c) Except as otherwise required by statute, an award that requires the contracting (or subcontracting) for construction or facility improvements shall provide for the recipient to follow its own requirements relating to bid guarantees, performance bonds, and payment bonds unless the construction contract or subcontract exceeds $100,000. For those contracts or subcontracts exceeding $100,000, DOE may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the recipient, provided the DOE has made a determination that the Federal Government's interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements shall be as follows.

(1) A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price. The ''bid guarantee'' shall consist of a firm commitment such as a

bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder shall, upon acceptance of his bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

(2) A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A ''performance bond'' is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

(3) A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A ''payment bond'' is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by statute of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

(4) Where bonds are required in the situations described herein, the bonds shall be obtained from companies holding certificates of authority as acceptable sureties pursuant to 31 CFR part 223, ''Surety Companies Doing Business with the United States.''

(d) All negotiated contracts (except those for less than the small purchase threshold) awarded by recipients shall include a provision to the effect that the recipient, DOE, the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives, shall have access to any books, documents, papers and records of the contractor which are directly pertinent to a specific program for the purpose of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions.

(e) All contracts, including small purchases, awarded by recipients and their contractors shall contain the procurement provisions of appendix A to this subpart, as applicable.

§ 600.149 Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA).

Recipients' procurements shall comply with applicable requirements of RCRA, as described at § 600.116 of this subpart.

Reports and Records

§ 600.150 Purpose of reports and records.

Sections 600.151 through 600.153 set forth the procedures for monitoring and reporting on the recipient's financial and program performance and the necessary standard reporting forms. They also set forth record retention requirements.

§ 600.151 Monitoring and reporting program performance.

(a) Recipients are responsible for managing and monitoring each project, program, subaward, function or activity supported by the award. Recipients shall monitor subawards to ensure subrecipients have met the audit requirements as delineated in § 600.126.

(b) The terms and conditions of the award will prescribe the frequency with which the performance reports shall be submitted. Except as provided in paragraph (f) of this section, performance reports shall not be required more frequently than quarterly or less frequently than annually. Annual reports shall be due 90 calendar days after the award year; quarterly or semi-annual reports shall be due 30 days after the reporting period. DOE may require annual reports before the anniversary dates of multiple year awards in lieu of these requirements. The final performance reports are due 90 calendar days after the expiration or termination of the award.

(c) If inappropriate, a final technical or performance report shall not be required after completion of the project.

(d) When required, performance reports shall generally contain, for each award, brief information on each of the following.

(1) A comparison of actual accomplishments with the goals and objectives established for the period, the findings of the investigator, or both. Whenever appropriate and the output of programs or projects can be readily quantified, such quantitative data should be related to cost data for computation of unit costs.

(2) Reasons why established goals were not met, if appropriate.

(3) Other pertinent information including, when appropriate, analysis

and explanation of cost overruns or high unit costs.

DOE may specify in the award that the recipient provide this information on the Federal Assistance Program/Project Status Report (DOE F 4600.6), the technical reporting formats, or the Federal Assistance Management Summary Report. DOE may require that the Federal Assistance Management Summary Report be used as a performance report only when such use is authorized by program rule or the need for this form is explained in the solicitation. The requirements of this section concerning reporting frequency and deadlines shall apply to the Federal Assistance Management Summary Report. (See also § 600.112 with regard to use of this form as part of the award application.)

(e) Recipients shall not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of performance reports.

(f) Recipients shall immediately notify DOE of developments that have a significant impact on the award-supported activities. Also, notification shall be given in the case of problems, delays, or adverse conditions which materially impair the ability to meet the objectives of the award. This notification shall include a statement of the action taken or contemplated, and any assistance needed to resolve the situation.

(g) DOE may make site visits, as needed.

(h) DOE shall comply with applicable clearance requirements of 5 CFR part 1320 when requesting performance data from recipients.

(i) Recipients may place performance reporting requirements on subawards consistent with the provisions of this section and shall require interim reporting in accordance with § 600.151(f).

§ 600.152 Financial reporting.

(a) The following forms or such other forms as may be approved by OMB are authorized for obtaining financial information from recipients.

(1) SF–269 or SF–269A, Financial Status Report.

(i) Recipients shall use the SF–269 or SF–269A to report the status of funds for all nonconstruction projects or programs, except that DOE has the option of not requiring the SF–269 or SF–269A when the SF–270, Request for Advance or Reimbursement, or SF–272, Report of Federal Cash Transactions, is determined to provide adequate information to meet DOE needs. However, a final SF–269 or SF–269A shall be required at the completion of the project when the SF–270 is used only for advances.

(ii) The terms and conditions of award shall prescribe whether the report shall be on a cash or accrual basis. DOE may require accrual reporting only if such reporting is required by program statute or rule. If the award requires accrual information and the recipient's accounting records are not normally kept on the accrual basis, the recipient shall not be required to convert its accounting system, but shall develop such accrual information through best estimates based on an analysis of the documentation on hand.

(iii) DOE shall determine the frequency of the Financial Status Report for each project or program, considering the size and complexity of the particular project or program. However, the report shall not be required more frequently than quarterly or less frequently than annually. A final report shall be required at the completion of the agreement.

(iv) DOE shall require recipients to submit the SF–269 or SF–269A (an original and no more than two copies) no later than 30 days after the end of each specified reporting period for quarterly and semi-annual reports, and 90 calendar days for annual and final reports. Extensions of reporting due dates may be approved by the DOE upon request of the recipient.

(2) SF–272, Report of Federal Cash Transactions.

(i) When funds are advanced, each recipient shall submit the SF–272 and, when necessary, its continuation sheet, SF–272a. DOE will use this report to monitor cash advanced to recipients and to obtain disbursement information for each agreement with the recipients.

(ii) Recipients shall forecast Federal cash requirements in the ''Remarks'' section of the report.

(iii) When practical and deemed necessary, DOE may require recipients to report in the ''Remarks'' section the

amount of cash advances received in excess of three days. Recipients shall provide short narrative explanations of actions taken to reduce the excess balances.

(iv) Recipients shall be required to submit not more than the original and two copies of the SF–272 15 calendar days following the end of each quarter. DOE may require a monthly report from those recipients receiving advances totaling $1 million or more per year.

(v) DOE may waive the requirement for submission of the SF–272 for any one of the following reasons:

(A) When monthly advances do not exceed $25,000 per recipient, provided that such advances are monitored through other forms contained in this section;

(B) If, in the contracting officer's opinion, the recipient's accounting controls are adequate to minimize excessive Federal advances; or,

(C) When electronic payment mechanisms provide adequate data.

(b) When DOE needs additional information or more frequent reports, the following shall be observed:

(1) When additional information is needed to comply with legislative requirements, DOE shall issue instructions to require recipients to submit such information under the ''Remarks'' section of the reports.

(2) When DOE determines that a recipient's accounting system does not meet the standards in § 600.121, additional pertinent information to further monitor awards may be obtained upon written notice to the recipient until such time as the system is brought up to standard. DOE, in obtaining this information, shall comply with report clearance requirements of 5 CFR part 1320.

(3) Contracting officers are encouraged to shade out any line item on any report if not necessary.

(4) DOE may accept the identical information from the recipients in machine readable format or computer printouts or electronic outputs in lieu of prescribed formats.

(5) Computer or electronic outputs may be provided to recipients when that expedites or contributes to the accuracy of reporting.

§ 600.153 Retention and access requirements for records.

(a) This section sets forth requirements for record retention and access to records for awards to recipients. DOE shall not impose any other record retention or access requirements upon recipients, unless such requirements are established in program regulations.

(b) Financial records, supporting documents, statistical records, and all other records pertinent to an award shall be retained for a period of three years from the date of submission of the final expenditure report or, for awards that are renewed quarterly or annually, from the date of the submission of the quarterly or annual financial report, as authorized by DOE. The only exceptions are the following:

(1) If any litigation, claim, or audit is started before the expiration of the 3-year period, the records shall be retained until all litigation, claims or audit findings involving the records have been resolved and final action taken.

(2) Records for real property and equipment acquired with Federal funds shall be retained for 3 years after final disposition.

(3) When records are transferred to or maintained by DOE, the 3-year retention requirement is not applicable to the recipient.

(4) Indirect cost rate proposals, cost allocations plans, and related records, for which retention requirements are specified in § 600.153(g).

(c) Copies of original records may be substituted for the original records if authorized by DOE.

(d) DOE shall request transfer of certain records to its custody from recipients when it determines that the records possess long term retention value. However, in order to avoid duplicate recordkeeping, DOE may make arrangements for recipients to retain any records that are continuously needed for joint use.

(e) DOE, the Inspector General, Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives, have the right of timely and unrestricted access to any books, documents, papers, or other records of recipients that are pertinent to the awards, in order to make audits,

examinations, excerpts, transcripts and copies of such documents. This right also includes timely and reasonable access to a recipient's personnel for the purpose of interview and discussion related to such documents. The rights of access in this paragraph are not limited to the required retention period, but shall last as long as records are retained.

(f) Unless required by statute, DOE shall place no restrictions on recipients that limit public access to the records of recipients that are pertinent to an award, except when DOE can demonstrate that such records shall be kept confidential and would have been exempted from disclosure pursuant to the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if the records had belonged to DOE.

(g) Paragraphs (g)(1) and (g)(2) of this section apply to the following types of documents, and their supporting records: indirect cost rate computations or proposals, cost allocation plans, and any similar accounting computations of the rate at which a particular group of costs is chargeable (such as computer usage chargeback rates or composite fringe benefit rates).

(1) *If submitted for negotiation.* If the recipient submits to the Federal agency responsible for negotiating the recipient's indirect cost rate or the subrecipient submits to the recipient the proposal, plan, or other computation to form the basis for negotiation of the rate, then the 3-year retention period for its supporting records starts on the date of such submission.

(2) *If not submitted for negotiation.* If the recipient is not required to submit to the cognizant Federal agency or the subrecipient is not required to submit to the recipient the proposal, plan, or other computation for negotiation purposes, then the 3-year retention period for the proposal, plan, or other computation and its supporting records starts at the end of the fiscal year (or other accounting period) covered by the proposal, plan, or other computation.

(h) If, by the terms and conditions of the award, the recipient or subrecipient—

(1) Is accountable for program income earned or received after the end of the project period or after the termination of an award or subaward, or

(2) If program income earned during the project period is required to be applied to costs incurred after the end of the project period or after termination of an award or subaward, the record retention period shall start on the last day of the recipient's or subrecipient's fiscal year in which such income was earned or received or such costs were incurred. All other program income records shall be retained in accordance with § 600.153(b).

Termination and Enforcement

§ 600.160 Purpose of termination and enforcement.

Sections 600.161 and 600.162 set forth uniform suspension, termination and enforcement procedures.

§ 600.161 Termination.

(a) Awards may be terminated in whole or in part only if paragraph (a)(1), (2) or (3) of this section apply.

(1) By DOE, if a recipient materially fails to comply with the terms and conditions of an award.

(2) By DOE with the consent of the recipient, in which case the two parties shall agree upon the termination conditions, including the effective date and, in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated.

(3) By the recipient upon sending to DOE written notification setting forth the reasons for such termination, the effective date, and, in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. However, if DOE determines in the case of partial termination that the reduced or modified portion of the award will not accomplish the purposes for which the award was made, it may terminate the award in its entirety under either paragraph (a)(1) or (2) of this section.

(b) If costs are allowed under an award, the responsibilities of the recipient referred to in § 600.171(a), including those for property management as applicable, shall be considered in the

termination of the award, and provision shall be made for continuing responsibilities of the recipient after termination, as appropriate.

§ 600.162 Enforcement.

(a) *Remedies for noncompliance.* If a recipient materially fails to comply with the terms and conditions of an award, whether stated in a Federal statute, regulation, assurance, application, or notice of award, DOE may, in addition to imposing any of the special conditions outlined in § 600.114, take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances.

(1) Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the recipient or more severe enforcement action by DOE.

(2) Disallow (that is, deny both use of funds and any applicable matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance.

(3) Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the current award.

(4) Withhold further awards for the project or program.

(5) Take other remedies that may be legally available.

(b) *Hearings and appeals.* In taking an enforcement action, DOE shall provide the recipient an opportunity for hearing, appeal, or other administrative proceeding to which the recipient is entitled under any statute or regulation applicable to the action involved.

(c) *Effects of suspension and termination.* Costs of a recipient resulting from obligations incurred by the recipient during a suspension or after termination of an award are not allowable unless the awarding agency expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or termination or subsequently. Other recipient costs during suspension or after termination which are necessary and not reasonably avoidable are allowable if paragraph (c)(1) and (2) of this section apply.

(1) The costs result from obligations which were properly incurred by the recipient before the effective date of suspension or termination, are not in anticipation of it, and in the case of a termination, are noncancellable.

(2) The costs would be allowable if the award were not suspended or expired normally at the end of the funding period in which the termination takes effect.

(d) *Relationship to debarment and suspension.* The enforcement remedies identified in this section, including suspension and termination, do not preclude a recipient from being subject to debarment and suspension under 10 CFR part 1036.

AFTER-THE-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

§ 600.170 Purpose.

Sections 600.171 through 600.173 contain closeout procedures and other procedures for subsequent disallowances and adjustments.

§ 600.171 Closeout procedures.

(a) Recipients shall submit, within 90 calendar days after the date of completion of the award, all financial, performance, and other reports as required by the terms and conditions of the award. DOE may approve extensions when requested by the recipient.

(b) Unless DOE authorizes an extension, a recipient shall liquidate all obligations incurred under the award not later than 90 calendar days after the funding period or the date of completion as specified in the terms and conditions of the award or in agency implementing instructions.

(c) DOE shall make prompt payments to a recipient for allowable reimbursable costs under the award being closed out.

(d) The recipient shall promptly refund any balances of unobligated cash that DOE has advanced or paid and that is not authorized to be retained by the recipient for use in other projects. OMB Circular A–129 governs unreturned amounts that become delinquent debts.

(e) When authorized by the terms and conditions of the award, DOE shall make a settlement for any upward or downward adjustments to the Federal share of costs after closeout reports are received.

(f) The recipient shall account for any real and personal property acquired with Federal funds or received from the Federal Government in accordance with §§ 600.131 through 600.137.

(g) In the event a final audit has not been performed prior to the closeout of

an award, DOE shall retain the right to recover an appropriate amount after fully considering the recommendations on disallowed costs resulting from the final audit.

§ 600.172 Subsequent adjustments and continuing responsibilities.

(a) The closeout of an award does not affect any of the following.

(1) The right of DOE to disallow costs and recover funds on the basis of a later audit or other review.

(2) The obligation of the recipient to return any funds due as a result of later refunds, corrections, or other transactions.

(3) Audit requirements in § 600.126.

(4) Property management requirements in §§ 600.131 through 600.137.

(5) Records retention as required in § 600.153.

(b) After closeout of an award, a relationship created under an award may be modified or ended in whole or in part with the consent of DOE and the recipient, provided the responsibilities of the recipient referred to in paragraph 600.173(a), including those for property management as applicable, are considered and provisions made for continuing responsibilities of the recipient, as appropriate.

§ 600.173 Collection of amounts due.

(a) Any funds paid to a recipient in excess of the amount to which the recipient is finally determined to be entitled under the terms and conditions of the award constitute a debt to the Federal Government. If not paid within a reasonable period after the demand for payment, DOE may reduce the debt by paragraph (a) (1), (2) or (3) of this section.

(1) Making an administrative offset against other requests for reimbursements.

(2) Withholding advance payments otherwise due to the recipient.

(3) Taking other action permitted by statute.

(b) Except as otherwise provided by law, DOE shall charge interest on an overdue debt in accordance with 4 CFR Chapter II, ''Federal Claims Collection Standards.''

ADDITIONAL PROVISIONS

APPENDIX A TO SUBPART B OF PART 600—CONTRACT PROVISIONS

All contracts, awarded by a recipient including small purchases, shall contain the following provisions as applicable:

1. *Equal Employment Opportunity*—All contracts shall contain a provision requiring compliance with E.O. 11246, ''Equal Employment Opportunity,'' as amended by E.O. 11375, ''Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity,'' and as supplemented by regulations at 41 CFR part 60, ''Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor.''

2. *Copeland ''Anti-Kickback'' Act (18 U.S.C. 874 and 40 U.S.C. 276c)*—All contracts and subgrants in excess of $2000 for construction or repair awarded by recipients and subrecipients shall include a provision for compliance with the Copeland ''Anti-Kickback'' Act (18 U.S.C. 874), as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 3, ''Contractors and Subcontractors on Public Building or Public Work Financed in Whole or in part by Loans or Grants from the United States''). The Act provides that each contractor or subrecipient shall be prohibited from inducing, by any means, any person employed in the construction, completion, or repair of public work, to give up any part of the compensation to which he is otherwise entitled. The recipient shall report all suspected or reported violations to the Federal awarding agency.

3. *Davis-Bacon Act, as amended (40 U.S.C. 276a to a-7)*—When required by Federal program legislation, all construction contracts awarded by the recipients and subrecipients of more than $2000 shall include a provision for compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a to a-7) and as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5, ''Labor Standards Provisions Applicable to Contracts Governing Federally Financed and Assisted Construction''). Under this Act, contractors shall be required to pay wages to laborers and mechanics at a rate not less than the minimum wages specified in a wage determination made by the Secretary of Labor. In addition, contractors shall be required to pay wages not less than once a week. The recipient shall place a copy of the current prevailing wage determination issued by the Department of Labor in each solicitation and the award of a contract shall be conditioned upon the acceptance of the wage determination. The recipient shall report all suspected or reported violations to the Federal awarding agency.

4. *Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327–333)*—Where applicable, all contracts awarded by recipients in excess of

$2000 for construction contracts and in excess of $2500 for other contracts that involve the employment of mechanics or laborers shall include a provision for compliance with sections 102 and 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327–333), as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5). Under section 102 of the Act, each contractor shall be required to compute the wages of every mechanic and laborer on the basis of a standard work week of 40 hours. Work in excess of the standard work week is permissible provided that the worker is compensated at a rate of not less than 1½ times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours in the work week. Section 107 of the Act is applicable to construction work and provides that no laborer or mechanic shall be required to work in surroundings or under working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous. These requirements do not apply to the purchases of supplies or materials or articles ordinarily available on the open market, or contracts for transportation or transmission of intelligence.

5. *Rights to Inventions Made Under a Contract or Agreement*—Contracts or agreements for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work shall provide for the rights of the Federal Government and the recipient in any resulting invention in accordance with 37 CFR part 401, ''Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements,'' and any implementing regulations issued by the awarding agency.

6. *Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq.), as amended*—Contracts and subgrants of amounts in excess of $100,000 shall contain a provision that requires the recipient to agree to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 *et seq.*) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act as amended (33 U.S.C. 1251 *et seq.*). Violations shall be reported to the Federal awarding agency and the Regional Office of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

7. *Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment (31 U.S.C. 1352)*— Contractors who apply or bid for an award of $100,000 or more shall file the required certification. Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier shall also disclose any lobbying with non-Federal funds that takes place in connection with obtaining any Federal award. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the recipient.

8. *Debarment and Suspension (E.O.s 12549 and 12689)*— Contract awards that exceed the small purchase threshold and certain other contract awards shall not be made to parties listed on the nonprocurement portion of the General Services Administration's List of parties Excluded from Federal Procurement or Nonprocurement Programs in accordance with E.O.s 12549 and 12689, ''Debarment and Suspension.'' This list contains the names of parties debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded by agencies, and contractors declared ineligible under statutory or regulatory authority other than E.O. 12549. Contractors with awards that exceed the small purchase threshold shall provide the required certification regarding its exclusion status and that of its principals.

Subpart C—Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments

SOURCE: 53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, unless otherwise noted. Redesignated at 59 FR 53264, Oct. 21, 1994.

GENERAL

§ 600.200 Purpose and scope of this subpart.

This subpart establishes uniform administrative rules for Federal grants and cooperative agreements and subawards to State, local and Indian tribal governments.

§ 600.201 Scope of §§ 600.200 through 600.205.

This section contains general rules pertaining to this part and procedures for control of exceptions from this subpart.

§ 600.202 Definitions.

As used in this part:

Accrued expenditures mean the charges incurred by the grantee during a given period requiring the provision of funds for: (1) Goods and other tangible property received; (2) services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees; and (3) other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no

current services or performance is required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

Accrued income means the sum of: (1) Earnings during a given period from services performed by the grantee and goods and other tangible property delivered to purchasers, and (2) amounts becoming owed to the grantee for which no current services or performance is required by the grantee.

Acquisition cost of an item of purchased equipment means the net invoice unit price of the property including the cost of modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make the property usable for the purpose for which it was acquired. Other charges such as the cost of installation, transportation, taxes, duty or protective in-transit insurance, shall be included or excluded from the unit acquisition cost in accordance with the grantee's regular accounting practices.

Administrative requirements mean those matters common to grants in general, such as financial management, kinds and frequency of reports, and retention of records. These are distinguished from *programmatic* requirements, which concern matters that can be treated only on a program-by-program or grant-by-grant basis, such as kinds of activities that can be supported by grants under a particular program.

Awarding agency means (1) with respect to a grant, the Federal agency, and (2) with respect to a subgrant, the party that awarded the subgrant.

Cash contributions means the grantee's cash outlay, including the outlay of money contributed to the grantee or subgrantee by other public agencies and institutions, and private organizations and individuals. When authorized by Federal legislation, Federal funds received from other assistance agreements may be considered as grantee or subgrantee cash contributions.

Contract means (except as used in the definitions for *grant* and *subgrant* in this section and except where qualified by *Federal*) a procurement contract under a grant or subgrant, and means a procurement subcontract under a contract.

Cost sharing or matching means the value of the third party in-kind contributions and the portion of the costs of a federally assisted project or program not borne by the Federal Government.

Cost-type contract means a contract or subcontract under a grant in which the contractor or subcontractor is paid on the basis of the costs it incurs, with or without a fee.

Equipment means tangible, nonexpendable, personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of $5,000 or more per unit. A grantee may use its own definition of equipment provided that such definition would at least include all equipment defined above.

Expenditure report means: (1) For nonconstruction grants, the SF–269 ''Financial Status Report'' (or other equivalent report); (2) for construction grants, the SF–271 ''Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement'' (or other equivalent report).

Federally recognized Indian tribal government means the governing body or a governmental agency of any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community (including any Native village as defined in section 3 of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, 85 Stat 688) certified by the Secretary of the Interior as eligible for the special programs and services provided by him through the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

Government means a State or local government or a federally recognized Indian tribal government.

Grant means an award of financial assistance, including cooperative agreements, in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, by the Federal Government to an eligible grantee. The term does not include technical assistance which provides services instead of money, or other assistance in the form of revenue sharing, loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies, insurance, or direct appropriations. Also, the term does not include assistance, such as a fellowship or other lump sum award, which the grantee is not required to account for.

Grantee means the government to which a grant is awarded and which is accountable for the use of the funds

provided. The grantee is the entire legal entity even if only a particular component of the entity is designated in the grant award document.

Local government means a county, municipality, city, town, township, local public authority (including any public and Indian housing agency under the United States Housing Act of 1937) school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (whether or not incorporated as a nonprofit corporation under state law), any other regional or interstate government entity, or any agency or instrumentality of a local government.

Obligations means the amounts of orders placed, contracts and subgrants awarded, goods and services received, and similar transactions during a given period that will require payment by the grantee during the same or a future period.

OMB means the United States Office of Management and Budget.

Outlays (expenditures) mean charges made to the project or program. They may be reported on a cash or accrual basis. For reports prepared on a cash basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursement for direct charges for goods and services, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the amount of cash advances and payments made to contractors and subgrantees. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursements, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of inkind contributions applied, and the new increase (or decrease) in the amounts owed by the grantee for goods and other property received, for services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees, and other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance are required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

Percentage of completion method refers to a system under which payments are made for construction work according to the percentage of completion of the work, rather than to the grantee's cost incurred.

Prior approval means documentation evidencing consent prior to incurring specific cost. For the Department of Energy, this must be signed by a Contracting Officer.

Real property means land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, excluding movable machinery and equipment.

Share, when referring to the awarding agency's portion of real property, equipment or supplies, means the same percentage as the awarding agency's portion of the acquiring party's total costs under the grant to which the acquisition costs under the grant to which the acquisition cost of the property was charged. Only costs are to be counted—not the value of third-party in-kind contributions.

State means any of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, any territory or possession of the United States, or any agency or instrumentality of a State exclusive of local governments. The term does not include any public and Indian housing agency under United States Housing Act of 1937.

Subgrant means an award of financial assistance in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, made under a grant by a grantee to an eligible subgrantee. The term includes financial assistance when provided by contractual legal agreement, but does not include procurement purchases, nor does it include any form of assistance which is excluded from the definition of *grant* in this subpart.

Subgrantee means the government or other legal entity to which a subgrant is awarded and which is accountable to the grantee for the use of the funds provided.

Supplies means all tangible personal property other than ''equipment'' as defined in this subpart.

Suspension means depending on the context, either (1) temporary withdrawal of the authority to obligate grant funds pending corrective action by the grantee or subgrantee or a decision to terminate the grant, or (2) an action taken by a suspending official in accordance with agency regulations

implementing E.O. 12549 to immediately exclude a person from participating in grant transactions for a period, pending completion of an investigation and such legal or debarment proceedings as may ensue.

Termination means permanent withdrawal of the authority to obligate previously-awarded grant funds before that authority would otherwise expire. It also means the voluntary relinquishment of that authority by the grantee or subgrantee. *Termination* does not include: (1) Withdrawal of funds awarded on the basis of the grantee's underestimate of the unobligated balance in a prior period; (2) withdrawal of the unobligated balance as of the expiration of a grant; (3) refusal to extend a grant or award additional funds, to make a competing or noncompeting continuation, renewal, extension, or supplemental award; or (4) voiding of a grant upon determination that the award was obtained fraudulently, or was otherwise illegal or invalid from inception.

Terms of a grant or subgrant mean all requirements of the grant or subgrant, whether in statute, regulations, or the award document.

Third party in-kind contributions mean property or services which benefit a federally assisted project or program and which are contributed by non-Federal third parties without charge to the grantee, or a cost-type contractor under the grant agreement.

Unliquidated obligations for reports prepared on a cash basis mean the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee that has not been paid. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, they represent the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee for which an outlay has not been recorded.

Unobligated balance means the portion of the funds authorized by the Federal agency that has not been obligated by the grantee and is determined by deducting the cumulative obligations from the cumulative funds authorized.

[53 FR 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8047, Mar. 11, 1988; 54 FR 23960, June 5, 1989]

§ 600.203 Applicability.

(a) *General*. Sections 600.400 through 600.452 of this subpart apply to all grants and subgrants to governments, except where inconsistent with Federal statutes or with regulations authorized in accordance with the exception provision of § 600.405, or:

(1) Grants and subgrants to State and local institutions of higher education or State and local hospitals.

(2) The block grants authorized by the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (Community Services; Preventive Health and Health Services; Alcohol, Drug Abuse, and Mental Health Services; Maternal and Child Health Services; Social Services; Low-Income Home Energy Assistance; States' Program of Community Development Block Grants for Small Cities; and Elementary and Secondary Education other than programs administered by the Secretary of Education under Title V, Subtitle D, Chapter 2, Section 583—the Secretary's discretionary grant program) and Titles I-III of the Job Training Partnership Act of 1982 and under the Public Health Services Act (Section 1921), Alcohol and Drug Abuse Treatment and Rehabilitation Block Grant and part C of Title V, Mental Health Service for the Homeless Block Grant).

(3) Entitlement grants to carry out the following programs of the Social Security Act:

(i) Aid to Needy Families with Dependent Children (Title IV-A of the Act, not including the Work Incentive Program (WIN) authorized by section 402(a)19(G); HHS grants for WIN are subject to this subpart);

(ii) Child Support Enforcement and Establishment of Paternity (Title IV-D of the Act);

(iii) Foster Care and Adoption Assistance (Title IV-E of the Act);

(iv) Aid to the Aged, Blind, and Disabled (Titles I, X, XIV, and XVI-AABD of the Act); and

(v) Medical Assistance (Medicaid) (Title XIX of the Act) not including the State Medicaid Fraud Control program authorized by section 1903(a)(6)(B).

(4) Entitlement grants under the following programs of The National School Lunch Act:

(i) School Lunch (section 4 of the Act),

(ii) Commodity Assistance (section 6 of the Act),

(iii) Special Meal Assistance (section 11 of the Act),

(iv) Summer Food Service for Children (section 13 of the Act), and

(v) Child Care Food Program (section 17 of the Act).

(5) Entitlement grants under the following programs of The Child Nutrition Act of 1966:

(i) Special Milk (section 3 of the Act), and

(ii) School Breakfast (section 4 of the Act).

(6) Entitlement grants for State Administrative expenses under The Food Stamp Act of 1977 (section 16 of the Act).

(7) A grant for an experimental, pilot, or demonstration project that is also supported by a grant listed in paragraph (a)(3) of this section;

(8) Grant funds awarded under subsection 412(e) of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1522(e)) and subsection 501(a) of the Refugee Education Assistance Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96–422, 94 Stat. 1809), for cash assistance, medical assistance, and supplemental security income benefits to refugees and entrants and the administrative costs of providing the assistance and benefits;

(9) Grants to local education agencies under 20 U.S.C. 236 through 241–1(a), and 242 through 244 (portions of the Impact Aid program), except for 20 U.S.C. 238(d)(2)(c) and 240(f) (Entitlement Increase for Handicapped Children); and

(10) Payments under the Veterans Administration's State Home Per Diem Program (38 U.S.C. 641(a)).

(b) *Entitlement programs.* Entitlement programs enumerated above in § 600.403(a) (3) through (8) are subject to subpart E.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 54 FR 23960, June 5, 1989]

§ 600.204 Effect on other issuances.

All other grants administration provisions of codified program regulations, program manuals, handbooks and other nonregulatory materials which are inconsistent with this subpart are superseded, except to the extent they are required by statute, or authorized in accordance with the exception provision in § 600.205.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988. Redesignated at 59 FR 53264, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 7165, Feb. 26, 1996]

§ 600.205 Additions and exceptions.

(a) For classes of grants and grantees subject to this subpart, Federal agencies may not impose additional administrative requirements except in codified regulations published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(b) Exceptions for classes of grants or grantees may be authorized only by OMB.

(c) Exceptions on a case-by-case basis and for subgrantees may be authorized by the affected Federal agencies.

(d) The DOE procedural requirements for requesting additions and exceptions are specified in § 600.4.

[53 FR 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8047, Mar. 11, 1988]

PRE-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

§ 600.210 Forms for applying for grants.

(a) *Scope.* (1) This section prescribes forms and instructions to be used by governmental organizations (except hospitals and institutions of higher education operated by a government) in applying for grants. This section is not applicable, however, to formula grant programs which do not require applicants to apply for funds on a project basis.

(2) This section applies only to applications to Federal agencies for grants, and is not required to be applied by grantees in dealing with applicants for subgrants. However, grantees are encouraged to avoid more detailed or burdensome application requirements for subgrants.

(b) *Authorized forms and instructions for governmental organizations.* (1) In applying for grants, applicants shall only use standard application forms or those prescribed by the granting agency with the approval of OMB under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980.

(2) Applicants are not required to submit more than the original and two copies of preapplications or applications.

(3) Applicants must follow all applicable instructions that bear OMB clearance numbers. Federal agencies may specify and describe the programs, functions, or activities that will be used to plan, budget, and evaluate the work under a grant. Other supplementary instructions may be issued only with the approval of OMB to the extent required under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980. For any standard form, except the SF–424 facesheet, Federal agencies may shade out or instruct the applicant to disregard any line item that is not needed.

(4) When a grantee applies for additional funding (such as a continuation or supplemental award) or amends a previously submitted application, only the affected pages need be submitted. Previously submitted pages with information that is still current need not be resubmitted.

§ 600.211 State plans.

(a) *Scope*. The statutes for some programs require States to submit plans before receiving grants. Under regulations implementing Executive Order 12372, ''Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs,'' States are allowed to simplify, consolidate and substitute plans. This section contains additional provisions for plans that are subject to regulations implementing the Executive order.

(b) *Requirements*. A State need meet only Federal administrative or programmatic requirements for a plan that are in statutes or codified regulations.

(c) *Assurances*. In each plan the State will include an assurance that the State shall comply with all applicable Federal statutes and regulations in effect with respect to the periods for which it receives grant funding. For this assurance and other assurances required in the plan, the State may:

(1) Cite by number the statutory or regulatory provisions requiring the assurances and affirm that it gives the assurances required by those provisions,

(2) Repeat the assurance language in the statutes or regulations, or

(3) Develop its own language to the extent permitted by law.

(d) *Amendments*. A State will amend a plan whenever necessary to reflect: (1) New or revised Federal statutes or regulations or (2) a material change in any State law, organization, policy, or State agency operation. The State will obtain approval for the amendment and its effective date but need submit for approval only the amended portions of the plan.

§ 600.212 Special grant or subgrant conditions for "high-risk" recipients.

(a) A grantee or subgrantee may be considered ''high risk'' if an awarding agency determines that a grantee or subgrantee:

(1) Has a history of unsatisfactory performance, or

(2) Is not financially stable, or

(3) Has a management system which does not meet the management standards set forth in this subpart, or

(4) Has not conformed to terms and conditions of previous awards, or

(5) Is otherwise not responsible; and if the awarding agency determines that an award will be made, special conditions and/or restrictions shall correspond to the high risk condition and shall be included in the award.

(b) Special conditions or restrictions may include:

(1) Payment on a reimbursement basis;

(2) Withholding authority to proceed to the next phase until receipt of evidence of acceptable performance within a given funding period;

(3) Requiring additional, more detailed financial reports;

(4) Additional project monitoring;

(5) Requiring the grantee or subgrantee to obtain technical or management assistance; or

(6) Establishing additional prior approvals.

(c) If an awarding agency decides to impose such conditions, the awarding official will notify the grantee or subgrantee as early as possible, in writing, of:

(1) The nature of the special conditions/restrictions;

(2) The reason(s) for imposing them;

(3) The corrective actions which must be taken before they will be removed

and the time allowed for completing the corrective actions and

(4) The method of requesting reconsideration of the conditions/restrictions imposed.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 59 FR 53265, Oct. 21, 1994]

POST-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

Financial Administration

§ 600.220 Standards for financial management systems.

(a) A State must expend and account for grant funds in accordance with State laws and procedures for expending and accounting for its own funds. Fiscal control and accounting procedures of the State, as well as its subgrantees and cost-type contractors, must be sufficient to—

(1) Permit preparation of reports required by this part and the statutes authorizing the grant, and

(2) Permit the tracing of funds to a level of expenditures adequate to establish that such funds have not been used in violation of the restrictions and prohibitions of applicable statutes.

(b) The financial management systems of other grantees and subgrantees must meet the following standards:

(1) *Financial reporting*. Accurate, current, and complete disclosure of the financial results of financially assisted activities must be made in accordance with the financial reporting requirements of the grant or subgrant.

(2) *Accounting records*. Grantees and subgrantees must maintain records which adequately identify the source and application of funds provided for financially-assisted activities. These records must contain information pertaining to grant or subgrant awards and authorizations, obligations, unobligated balances, assets, liabilities, outlays or expenditures, and income.

(3) *Internal control*. Effective control and accountability must be maintained for all grant and subgrant cash, real and personal property, and other assets. Grantees and subgrantees must adequately safeguard all such property and must assure that it is used solely for authorized purposes.

(4) *Budget control*. Actual expenditures or outlays must be compared with budgeted amounts for each grant or subgrant. Financial information must be related to performance or productivity data, including the development of unit cost information whenever appropriate or specifically required in the grant or subgrant agreement. If unit cost data are required, estimates based on available documentation will be accepted whenever possible.

(5) *Allowable cost*. Applicable OMB cost principles, agency program regulations, and the terms of grant and subgrant agreements will be followed in determining the reasonableness, allowability, and allocability of costs.

(6) *Source documentation*. Accounting records must be supported by such source documentation as cancelled checks, paid bills, payrolls, time and attendance records, contract and subgrant award documents, etc.

(7) *Cash management*. Procedures for minimizing the time elapsing between the transfer of funds from the U.S. Treasury and disbursement by grantees and subgrantees must be followed whenever advance payment procedures are used. Grantees must establish reasonable procedures to ensure the receipt of reports on subgrantees' cash balances and cash disbursements in sufficient time to enable them to prepare complete and accurate cash transactions reports to the awarding agency. When advances are made by letter-of-credit or electronic transfer of funds methods, the grantee must make drawdowns as close as possible to the time of making disbursements. Grantees must monitor cash drawdowns by their subgrantees to assure that they conform substantially to the same standards of timing and amount as apply to advances to the grantees.

(c) An awarding agency may review the adequacy of the financial management system of any applicant for financial assistance as part of a preaward review or at any time subsequent to award.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 57 FR 5, Jan. 2, 1992]

§ 600.221 Payment.

(a) *Scope*. This section prescribes the basic standard and the methods under

which a Federal agency will make payments to grantees, and grantees will make payments to subgrantees and contractors.

(b) *Basic standard.* Methods and procedures for payment shall minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds and disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee, in accordance with Treasury regulations at 31 CFR part 205.

(c) *Advances.* Grantees and subgrantees shall be paid in advance, provided they maintain or demonstrate the willingness and ability to maintain procedures to minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of the funds and their disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee.

(d) *Reimbursement.* Reimbursement shall be the preferred method when the requirements in paragraph (c) of this section are not met. Grantees and subgrantees may also be paid by reimbursement for any construction grant. Except as otherwise specified in regulation, Federal agencies shall not use the percentage of completion method to pay construction grants. The grantee or subgrantee may use that method to pay its construction contractor, and if it does, the awarding agency's payments to the grantee or subgrantee will be based on the grantee's or subgrantee's actual rate of disbursement.

(e) *Working capital advances.* If a grantee cannot meet the criteria for advance payments described in paragraph (c) of this section, and the Federal agency has determined that reimbursement is not feasible because the grantee lacks sufficient working capital, the awarding agency may provide cash or a working capital advance basis. Under this procedure the awarding agency shall advance cash to the grantee to cover its estimated disbursement needs for an initial period generally geared to the grantee's disbursing cycle. Thereafter, the awarding agency shall reimburse the grantee for its actual cash disbursements. The working capital advance method of payment shall not be used by grantees or subgrantees if the reason for using such method is the unwillingness or inability of the grantee to provide timely advances to the subgrantee to meet the subgrantee's actual cash disbursements.

(f) *Effect of program income, refunds, and audit recoveries on payment.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees shall disburse repayments to and interest earned on a revolving fund before requesting additional cash payments for the same activity.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, grantees and subgrantees shall disburse program income, rebates, refunds, contract settlements, audit recoveries and interest earned on such funds before requesting additional cash payments.

(g) *Withholding payments.* (1) Unless otherwise required by Federal statute, awarding agencies shall not withhold payments for proper charges incurred by grantees or subgrantees unless—

(i) The grantee or subgrantee has failed to comply with grant award conditions or

(ii) The grantee or subgrantee is indebted to the United States.

(2) Cash withheld for failure to comply with grant award condition, but without suspension of the grant, shall be released to the grantee upon subsequent compliance. When a grant is suspended, payment adjustments will be made in accordance with § 600.243(c).

(3) A Federal agency shall not make payment to grantees for amounts that are withheld by grantees or subgrantees from payment to contractors to assure satisfactory completion of work. Payments shall be made by the Federal agency when the grantees or subgrantees actually disburse the withheld funds to the contractors or to escrow accounts established to assure satisfactory completion of work.

(h) *Cash depositories.* (1) Consistent with the national goal of expanding the opportunities for minority business enterprises, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use minority banks (a bank which is owned at least 50 percent by minority group members). A list of minority owned banks can be obtained from the Minority Business Development Agency, Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.

(2) A grantee or subgrantee shall maintain a separate bank account only when required by Federal-State agreement.

(i) *Interest earned on advances*. Unless there are statutory provisions to the contrary, grantees and subgrantees shall promptly, but at least quarterly, remit to the Federal agency interest earned on advances. The grantee or subgrantee may keep interest amounts up to $100 per year for administrative expenses.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 57 FR 5, Jan. 2, 1992; 61 FR 7165, Feb. 26, 1996]

§ 600.222 Allowable costs.

(a) *Limitation on use of funds*. Grant funds may be used only for:

(1) The allowable costs of the grantees, subgrantees and cost-type contractors, including allowable costs in the form of payments to fixed-price contractors; and

(2) Reasonable fees or profit to cost-type contractors but not any fee or profit (or other increment above allowable costs) to the grantee or subgrantee.

(b) *Applicable cost principles*. For each kind of organization, there is a set of Federal principles for determining allowable costs. Allowable costs will be determined in accordance with the cost principles applicable to the organization incurring the costs. The following chart lists the kinds of organizations and the applicable cost principles.

For the costs of a—	Use the principles in—
State, local or Indian tribal government.	OMB Circular A–87.
Private nonprofit organization other than an (1) institution of higher education, (2) hospital, or (3) organization named in OMB Circular A–122 as not subject to that circular.	OMB Circular A–122.
Educational institutions.	OMB Circular A–21.
For-profit organization other than a hospital and an organization named in OBM Circular A–122 as not subject to that circular.	48 CFR part 31. Contract Cost Principles and Procedures, or uniform cost accounting standards that comply with cost principles acceptable to the Federal agency.
For-profit organization other than a hospital and an organization named in OMB Circular A–122 as not subject to that circular..	48 CFR 931.2
Hospitals	45 CFR part 74, Appendix E

[53 FR 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8047, Mar. 11, 1988]

§ 600.223 Period of availability of funds.

(a) *General*. Where a funding period is specified, a grantee may charge to the award only costs resulting from obligations of the funding period unless carryover of unobligated balances is permitted, in which case the carryover balances may be charged for costs resulting from obligations of the subsequent funding period.

(b) *Liquidation of obligations*. A grantee must liquidate all obligations incurred under the award not later than 90 days after the end of the funding period (or as specified in a program regulation) to coincide with the submission of the annual Financial Status Report (SF–269). The Federal agency may extend this deadline at the request of the grantee.

§ 600.224 Matching or cost sharing.

(a) *Basic rule: Costs and contributions acceptable*. With the qualifications and exceptions listed in paragraph (b) of this section, a matching or cost sharing requirement may be satisfied by either or both of the following:

(1) Allowable costs incurred by the grantee, subgrantee or a cost-type contractor under the assistance agreement. This includes allowable costs borne by non-Federal grants or by others cash donations from non-Federal third parties.

(2) The value of third party in-kind contributions applicable to the period to which the cost sharing or matching requirements applies.

(b) *Qualifications and exceptions*—(1) *Costs borne by other Federal grant agreements*. Except as provided by Federal statute, a cost sharing or matching requirement may not be met by costs borne by another Federal grant. This prohibition does not apply to income earned by a grantee or subgrantee from a contract awarded under another Federal grant.

(2) *General revenue sharing*. For the purpose of this section, general revenue sharing funds distributed under 31 U.S.C. 6702 are not considered Federal grant funds.

(3) *Cost or contributions counted towards other Federal costs-sharing requirements*. Neither costs nor the values of third party in-kind contributions may

count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of a grant agreement if they have been or will be counted towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of another Federal grant agreement, a Federal procurement contract, or any other award of Federal funds.

(4) *Costs financed by program income.* Costs financed by program income, as defined in § 600.425, shall not count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement unless they are expressly permitted in the terms of the assistance agreement. (This use of general program income is described in § 600.225(g).)

(5) *Services or property financed by income earned by contractors.* Contractors under a grant may earn income from the activities carried out under the contract in addition to the amounts earned from the party awarding the contract. No costs of services or property supported by this income may count toward satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement unless other provisions of the grant agreement expressly permit this kind of income to be used to meet the requirement.

(6) *Records.* Costs and third party in-kind contributions counting towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement must be verifiable from the records of grantees and subgrantee or cost-type contractors. These records must show how the value placed on third party in-kind contributions was derived. To the extent feasible, volunteer services will be supported by the same methods that the organization uses to support the allocability of regular personnel costs.

(7) *Special standards for third party in-kind contributions.* (i) Third party in-kind contributions count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only where, if the party receiving the contributions were to pay for them, the payments would be allowable costs.

(ii) Some third party in-kind contributions are goods and services that, if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor receiving the contribution had to pay for them, the payments would have been an indirect costs. Cost sharing or matching credit for such contributions shall be given only if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor has established, along with its regular indirect cost rate, a special rate for allocating to individual projects or programs the value of the contributions.

(iii) A third party in-kind contribution to a fixed-price contract may count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only if it results in:

(A) An increase in the services or property provided under the contract (without additional cost to the grantee or subgrantee) or

(B) A cost savings to the grantee or subgrantee.

(iv) The values placed on third party in-kind contributions for cost sharing or matching purposes will conform to the rules in the succeeding sections of this subpart. If a third party in-kind contribution is a type not treated in those sections, the value placed upon it shall be fair and reasonable.

(c) *Valuation of donated services*—(1) *Volunteer services.* Unpaid services provided to a grantee or subgrantee by individuals will be valued at rates consistent with those ordinarily paid for similar work in the grantee's or subgrantee's organization. If the grantee or subgrantee does not have employees performing similar work, the rates will be consistent with those ordinarily paid by other employers for similar work in the same labor market. In either case, a reasonable amount for fringe benefits may be included in the valuation.

(2) *Employees of other organizations.* When an employer other than a grantee, subgrantee, or cost-type contractor furnishes free of charge the services of an employee in the employee's normal line of work, the services will be valued at the employee's regular rate of pay exclusive of the employee's fringe benefits and overhead costs. If the services are in a different line of work, paragraph (c)(1) of this section applies.

(d) *Valuation of third party donated supplies and loaned equipment or space.* (1) If a third party donates supplies, the contribution will be valued at the market value of the supplies at the time of donation.

(2) If a third party donates the use of equipment or space in a building but retains title, the contribution will be

valued at the fair rental rate of the equipment or space.

(e) *Valuation of third party donated equipment, buildings, and land.* If a third party donates equipment, buildings, or land, and title passes to a grantee or subgrantee, the treatment of the donated property will depend upon the purpose of the grant or subgrant, as follows:

(1) *Awards for capital expenditures.* If the purpose of the grant or subgrant is to assist the grantee or subgrantee in the acquisition of property, the market value of that property at the time of donation may be counted as cost sharing or matching,

(2) *Other awards.* If assisting in the acquisition of property is not the purpose of the grant or subgrant, paragraphs (e)(2) (i) and (ii) of this section apply:

(i) If approval is obtained from the awarding agency, the market value at the time of donation of the donated equipment or buildings and the fair rental rate of the donated land may be counted as cost sharing or matching. In the case of a subgrant, the terms of the grant agreement may require that the approval be obtained from the Federal agency as well as the grantee. In all cases, the approval may be given only if a purchase of the equipment or rental of the land would be approved as an allowable direct cost. If any part of the donated property was acquired with Federal funds, only the non-federal share of the property may be counted as cost-sharing or matching.

(ii) If approval is not obtained under paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section, no amount may be counted for donated land, and only depreciation or use allowances may be counted for donated equipment and buildings. The depreciation or use allowances for this property are not treated as third party in-kind contributions. Instead, they are treated as costs incurred by the grantee or subgrantee. They are computed and allocated (usually as indirect costs) in accordance with the cost principles specified in § 600.222, in the same way as depreciation or use allowances for purchased equipment and buildings. The amount of depreciation or use allowances for donated equipment and buildings is based on the property's market value at the time it was donated.

(f) *Valuation of grantee or subgrantee donated real property for construction/acquisition.* If a grantee or subgrantee donates real property for a construction or facilities acquisition project, the current market value of that property may be counted as cost sharing or matching. If any part of the donated property was acquired with Federal funds, only the non-federal share of the property may be counted as cost sharing or matching.

(g) *Appraisal of real property.* In some cases under paragraphs (d), (e) and (f) of this section, it will be necessary to establish the market value of land or a building or the fair rental rate of land or of space in a building. In these cases, the Federal agency may require the market value or fair rental value be set by an independent appraiser, and that the value or rate be certified by the grantee. This requirement will also be imposed by the grantee on subgrantees.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 57 FR 5, Jan. 2, 1992; 61 FR 7165, Feb. 26, 1996]

§ 600.225 Program income.

(a) *General.* Grantees are encouraged to earn income to defray program costs. Program income includes income from fees for services performed, from the use or rental of real or personal property acquired with grant funds, from the sale of commodities or items fabricated under a grant agreement, and from payments of principal and interest on loans made with grant funds. Except as otherwise provided in regulations of the Federal agency, program income does not include interest on grant funds, rebates, credits, discounts, refunds, etc. and interest earned on any of them.

(b) *Definition of program income.* Program income means gross income received by the grantee or subgrantee directly generated by a grant supported activity, or earned only as a result of the grant agreement during the grant period. ''During the grant period'' is the time between the effective date of the award and the ending date of the award reflected in the final financial report.

(c) *Cost of generating program income.* If authorized by Federal regulations or

the grant agreement, costs incident to the generation of program income may be deducted from gross income to determine program income.

(d) *Governmental revenues.* Taxes, special assessments, levies, fines, and other such revenues raised by a grantee or subgrantee are not program income unless the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement or Federal agency regulations as program income.

(e) *Royalties.* Income from royalties and license fees for copyrighted material, patents, and inventions developed by a grantee or subgrantee is program income only if the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement or Federal agency regulations as program income. (See § 600.234.)

(f) *Property.* Proceeds from the sale of real property or equipment will be handled in accordance with the requirements of §§ 600.231 and 600.232.

(g) *Use of program income.* Program income shall be deducted from outlays which may be both Federal and non-Federal as described below, unless the Federal agency regulations or the grant agreement specify another alternative (or a combination of the alternatives). In specifying alternatives, the Federal agency may distinguish between income earned by the grantee and income earned by subgrantees and between the sources, kinds, or amounts of income. When Federal agencies authorize the alternatives in paragraphs (g) (2) and (3) of this section, program income in excess of any limits stipulated shall also be deducted from outlays.

(1) *Deduction.* Ordinarily program income shall be deducted from total allowable costs to determine the net allowable costs. Program income shall be used for current costs unless the Federal agency authorizes otherwise. Program income which the grantee did not anticipate at the time of the award shall be used to reduce the Federal agency and grantee contributions rather than to increase the funds committed to the project.

(2) *Addition.* When authorized, program income may be added to the funds committed to the grant agreement by the Federal agency and the grantee. The program income shall be used for the purposes and under the conditions of the grant agreement.

(3) *Cost sharing or matching.* When authorized, program income may be used to meet the cost sharing or matching requirement of the grant agreement. The amount of the Federal grant award remains the same.

(h) *Income after the award period.* There are no Federal requirements governing the disposition of program income earned after the end of the award period (i.e., until the ending date of the final financial report, see paragraph (a) of this section), unless the terms of the agreement or the Federal agency regulations provide otherwise.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988. Redesignated at 59 FR 53264, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 7165, 7166, Feb. 26, 1996]

§ 600.226 Non-Federal audit.

(a) *Basic rule.* Grantees and subgrantees are responsible for obtaining audits in accordance with the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507) and revised OMB Circular A–133, ''Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations.'' The audits shall be made by an independent auditor in accordance with generally accepted government auditing standards covering financial audits.

(b) *Subgrantees.* State or local governments, as those terms are defined for purposes of the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, that provide Federal awards to a subgrantee, which expends $300,000 or more (or other amount as specified by OMB) in Federal awards in a fiscal year, shall:

(1) Determine whether State or local subgrantees have met the audit requirements of the Act and whether subgrantees covered by OMB Circular A–110, ''Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations,'' have met the audit requirements of the Act. Commercial contractors (private for-profit and private and governmental organizations) providing goods and services to State and local governments are not required to have a single audit performed. State and local governments should use their own procedures to ensure that the contractor

has complied with laws and regulations affecting the expenditure of Federal funds;

(2) Determine whether the subgrantee spent Federal assistance funds provided in accordance with applicable laws and regulations. This may be accomplished by reviewing an audit of the subgrantee made in accordance with the Act, Circular A–110, or through other means (e.g., program reviews) if the subgrantee has not had such an audit;

(3) Ensure that appropriate corrective action is taken within six months after receipt of the audit report in instance of noncompliance with Federal laws and regulations;

(4) Consider whether subgrantee audits necessitate adjustment of the grantee's own records; and

(5) Require each subgrantee to permit independent auditors to have access to the records and financial statements.

(c) *Auditor selection*. In arranging for audit services, § 600.236 shall be followed.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988. Redesignated at 59 FR 53264, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996; 62 FR 45939, 45940, Aug. 29, 1997]

Changes, Property, and Subawards

§ 600.230 Changes.

(a) *General*. Grantees and subgrantees are permitted to rebudget within the approved direct cost budget to meet unanticipated requirements and may make limited program changes to the approved project. However, unless waived by the awarding agency, certain types of post-award changes in budgets and projects shall require the prior written approval of the awarding agency.

(b) *Relation to cost principles*. The applicable cost principles (see § 600.222) contain requirements for prior approval of certain types of costs. Except where waived, those requirements apply to all grants and subgrants even if paragraphs (c) through (f) of this section do not.

(c) *Budget changes*—(1) *Nonconstruction projects*. Except as stated in other regulations or an award document, grantees or subgrantees shall obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following changes is anticipated under a nonconstruction award:

(i) Any revision which would result in the need for additional funding.

(ii) Unless waived by the awarding agency, cumulative transfers among direct cost categories, or, if applicable, among separately budgeted programs, projects, functions, or activities which exceed or are expected to exceed ten percent of the current total approved budget, whenever the awarding agency's share exceeds $100,000.

(iii) Transfer of funds allotted for training allowances (i.e., from direct payments to trainees to other expense categories).

(2) *Construction projects*. Grantees and subgrantees shall obtain prior written approval for any budget revision which would result in the need for additional funds.

(3) *Combined construction and nonconstruction projects*. When a grant or subgrant provides funding for both construction and nonconstruction activities, the grantee or subgrantee must obtain prior written approval from the awarding agency before making any fund or budget transfer from nonconstruction to construction or vice versa.

(d) *Programmatic changes*. Grantees or subgrantees must obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following actions is anticipated:

(1) Any revision of the scope or objectives of the project (regardless of whether there is an associated budget revision requiring prior approval).

(2) Need to extend the period of availability of funds.

(3) Changes in key persons in cases where specified in an application or a grant award. In research projects, a change in the project director or principal investigator shall always require approval unless waived by the awarding agency.

(4) Under nonconstruction projects, contracting out, subgranting (if authorized by law) or otherwise obtaining the services of a third party to perform activities which are central to the purposes of the award. This approval requirement is in addition to the approval requirements of § 600.236 but

does not apply to the procurement of equipment, supplies, and general support services.

(e) *Additional prior approval requirements*. The awarding agency may not require prior approval for any budget revision which is not described in paragraph (c) of this section.

(f) *Requesting prior approval*. (1) A request for prior approval of any budget revision will be in the same budget formal the grantee used in its application and shall be accompanied by a narrative justification for the proposed revision.

(2) A request for a prior approval under the applicable Federal cost principles (see § 600.222) may be made by letter.

(3) A request by a subgrantee for prior approval will be addressed in writing to the grantee. The grantee will promptly review such request and shall approve or disapprove the request in writing. A grantee will not approve any budget or project revision which is inconsistent with the purpose or terms and conditions of the Federal grant to the grantee. If the revision, requested by the subgrantee would result in a change to the grantee's approved project which requires Federal prior approval, the grantee will obtain the Federal agency's approval before approving the subgrantee's request.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988. Redesignated at 59 FR 53264, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996]

§ 600.231 Real property.

(a) *Title*. Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to real property acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *Use*. Except as otherwise provided by Federal statutes, real property will be used for the originally authorized purposes as long as needed for that purposes, and the grantee or subgrantee shall not dispose of or encumber its title or other interests.

(c) *Disposition*. When real property is no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, the grantee or subgrantee will request disposition instructions from the awarding agency. The instructions will provide for one of the following alternatives:

(1) *Retention of title*. Retain title after compensating the awarding agency. The amount paid to the awarding agency will be computed by applying the awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the fair market value of the property. However, in those situations where a grantee or subgrantee is disposing of real property acquired with grant funds and acquiring replacement real property under the same program, the net proceeds from the disposition may be used as an offset to the cost of the replacement property.

(2) *Sale of property*. Sell the property and compensate the awarding agency. The amount due to the awarding agency will be calculated by applying the awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the proceeds of the sale after deduction of any actual and reasonable selling and fixing-up expenses. If the grant is still active, the net proceeds from sale may be offset against the original cost of the property. When a grantee or subgrantee is directed to sell property, sales procedures shall be followed that provide for competition to the extent practicable and result in the highest possible return.

(3) *Transfer of title*. Transfer title to the awarding agency or to a third-party designated/approved by the awarding agency. The grantee or subgrantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the grantee or subgrantee's percentage of participation in the purchase of the real property to the current fair market value of the property.

§ 600.232 Equipment.

(a) *Title*. Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to equipment acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *States*. A State will use, manage, and dispose of equipment acquired under a grant by the State in accordance with State laws and procedures. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (c) through (e) of this section.

(c) *Use*. (1) Equipment shall be used by the grantee or subgrantee in the program or project for which it was acquired as long as needed, whether or not the project or program continues to be supported by Federal funds. When no longer needed for the original program or project, the equipment may be used in other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal agency.

(2) The grantee or subgrantee shall also make equipment available for use on other projects or programs currently or previously supported by the Federal Government, providing such use will not interfere with the work on the projects or program for which it was originally acquired. First preference for other use shall be given to other programs or projects supported by the awarding agency. User fees should be considered if appropriate.

(3) Notwithstanding the encouragement in § 600.225(a) to earn program income, the grantee or subgrantee must not use equipment acquired with grant funds to provide services for a fee to compete unfairly with private companies that provide equivalent services, unless specifically permitted or contemplated by Federal statute.

(4) When acquiring replacement equipment, the grantee or subgrantee may use the equipment to be replaced as a trade-in or sell the property and use the proceeds to offset the cost of the replacement property, subject to the approval of the awarding agency.

(d) *Management requirements*. Procedures for managing equipment (including replacement equipment), whether acquired in whole or in part with grant funds, until disposition takes place will, as a minimum, meet the following requirements:

(1) Property records must be maintained that include a description of the property, a serial number or other identification number, the source of property, who holds title, the acquisition date, and cost of the property, percentage of Federal participation in the cost of the property, the location, use and condition of the property, and any ultimate disposition data including the date of disposal and sale price of the property.

(2) A physical inventory of the property must be taken and the results reconciled with the property records at least once every two years.

(3) A control system must be developed to ensure adequate safeguards to prevent loss, damage, or theft of the property. Any loss, damage, or theft shall be investigated.

(4) Adequate maintenance procedures must be developed to keep the property in good condition.

(5) If the grantee or subgrantee is authorized or required to sell the property, proper sales procedures must be established to ensure the highest possible return.

(e) *Disposition*. When original or replacement equipment acquired under a grant or subgrant is no longer needed for the original project or program or for other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal agency, disposition of the equipment will be made as follows:

(1) Items of equipment with a current per-unit fair market value of less than $5,000 may be retained, sold or otherwise disposed of with no further obligation to the awarding agency.

(2) Items of equipment with a current per unit fair market value in excess of $5,000 may be retained or sold and the awarding agency shall have a right to an amount calculated by multiplying the current market value or proceeds from sale by the awarding agency's share of the equipment.

(3) In cases where a grantee or subgrantee fails to take appropriate disposition actions, the awarding agency may direct the grantee or subgrantee to take excess and disposition actions.

(f) *Federal equipment*. In the event a grantee or subgrantee is provided federally-owned equipment:

(1) Title will remain vested in the Federal Government.

(2) Grantees or subgrantees will manage the equipment in accordance with Federal agency rules and procedures, and submit an annual inventory listing.

(3) When the equipment is no longer needed, the grantee or subgrantee will request disposition instructions from the Federal agency.

(g) *Right to transfer title*. The Federal awarding agency may reserve the right

to transfer title to the Federal Government or a third party named by the awarding agency when such a third party is otherwise eligible under existing statutes. Such transfers shall be subject to the following standards:

(1) The property shall be identified in the grant or otherwise made known to the grantee in writing.

(2) The Federal awarding agency shall issue disposition instructions within 120 calendar days after the end of the Federal support of the project for which it was acquired. If the Federal awarding agency fails to issue disposition instructions within the 120 calendar-day period the grantee shall follow § 600.232(e).

(3) When title to equipment is transferred, the grantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the percentage of participation in the purchase to the current fair market value of the property.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988. Redesignated at 59 FR 53264, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996]

§ 600.233 Supplies.

(a) *Title.* Title to supplies acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest, upon acquisition, in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *Disposition.* If there is a residual inventory of unused supplies exceeding $5,000 in total aggregate fair market value upon termination or completion of the award, and if the supplies are not needed for any other federally sponsored programs or projects, the grantee or subgrantee shall compensate the awarding agency for its share.

§ 600.234 Copyrights.

The Federal awarding agency reserves a royalty-free, nonexclusive, and irrevocable license to reproduce, publish or otherwise use, and to authorize others to use, for Federal Government purposes:

(a) The copyright in any work developed under a grant, subgrant, or contract under a grant or subgrant; and

(b) Any rights of copyright to which a grantee, subgrantee or a contractor purchases ownership with grant support.

§ 600.235 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.

Grantees and subgrantees must not make any award or permit any award (subgrant or contract) at any tier to any party which is debarred or suspended or is otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs under Executive Order 12549, ''Debarment and Suspension.''

§ 600.236 Procurement.

(a) *States.* When procuring property and services under a grant, a State will follow the same policies and procedures it uses for procurements from its non-Federal funds. The State will ensure that every purchase order or other contract includes any clauses required by Federal statutes and executive orders and their implementing regulations. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (b) through (i) in this section.

(b) *Procurement standards.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees will use their own procurement procedures which reflect applicable State and local laws and regulations, provided that the procurements conform to applicable Federal law and the standards identified in this section.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a contract administration system which ensures that contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.

(3) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a written code of standards of conduct governing the performance of their employees engaged in the award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer or agent of the grantee or subgrantee shall participate in selection, or in the award or administration of a contract supported by Federal funds if a conflict of interest, real or apparent, would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when:

(i) The employee, officer or agent,

(ii) Any member of his immediate family,

(iii) His or her partner, or

(iv) An organization which employs, or is about to employ, any of the above, has a financial or other interest in the firm selected for award. The

grantee's or subgrantee's officers, employees or agents will neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors or anything of monetary value from contractors, potential contractors, or parties to subagreements. Grantee and subgrantees may set minimum rules where the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal intrinsic value. To the extent permitted by State or local law or regulations, such standards or conduct will provide for penalties, sanctions, or other disciplinary actions for violations of such standards by the grantee's and subgrantee's officers, employees, or agents, or by contractors or their agents. The awarding agency may in regulation provide additional prohibitions relative to real, apparent, or potential conflicts of interest.

(4) Grantee and subgrantee procedures will provide for a review of proposed procurements to avoid purchase of unnecessary or duplicative items. Consideration should be given to consolidating or breaking out procurements to obtain a more economical purchase. Where appropriate, an analysis will be made of lease versus purchase alternatives, and any other appropriate analysis to determine the most economical approach.

(5) To foster greater economy and efficiency, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to enter into State and local intergovernmental agreements for procurement or use of common goods and services.

(6) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use Federal excess and surplus property in lieu of purchasing new equipment and property whenever such use is feasible and reduces project costs.

(7) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use value engineering clauses in contracts for construction projects of sufficient size to offer reasonable opportunities for cost reductions. Value engineering is a systematic and creative anaylsis of each contract item or task to ensure that its essential function is provided at the overall lower cost.

(8) Grantees and subgrantees will make awards only to responsible contractors possessing the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement. Consideration will be given to such matters as contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources.

(9) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain records sufficient to detail the significant history of a procurement. These records will include, but are not necessarily limited to the following: rationale for the method of procurement, selection of contract type, contractor selection or rejection, and the basis for the contract price.

(10) Grantees and subgrantees will use time and material type contracts only—

(i) After a determination that no other contract is suitable, and

(ii) If the contract includes a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its own risk.

(11) Grantees and subgrantees alone will be responsible, in accordance with good administrative practice and sound business judgment, for the settlement of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements. These issues include, but are not limited to source evaluation, protests, disputes, and claims. These standards do not relieve the grantee or subgrantee of any contractual responsibilities under its contracts. Federal agencies will not substitute their judgment for that of the grantee or subgrantee unless the matter is primarily a Federal concern. Violations of law will be referred to the local, State, or Federal authority having proper jurisdiction.

(12) Grantees and subgrantees will have protest procedures to handle and resolve disputes relating to their procurements and shall in all instances disclose information regarding the protest to the awarding agency. A protestor must exhaust all administrative remedies with the grantee and subgrantee before pursuing a protest with the Federal agency. Reviews of protests by the Federal agency will be limited to:

(i) Violations of Federal law or regulations and the standards of this section (violations of State or local law will be under the jurisdiction of State or local authorities) and

(ii) Violations of the grantee's or subgrantee's protest procedures for failure to review a complaint or protest. Protests received by the Federal agency other than those specified above will be referred to the grantee or subgrantee.

(c) *Competition*. (1) All procurement transactions will be conducted in a manner providing full and open competition consistent with the standards of § 600.236. Some of the situations considered to be restrictive of competition include but are not limited to:

(i) Placing unreasonable requirements on firms in order for them to qualify to do business,

(ii) Requiring unnecessary experience and excessive bonding,

(iii) Noncompetitive pricing practices between firms or between affiliated companies,

(iv) Noncompetitive awards to consultants that are on retainer contracts,

(v) Organizational conflicts of interest,

(vi) Specifying only a ''brand name'' product instead of allowing ''an equal'' product to be offered and describing the performance of other relevant requirements of the procurement, and

(vii) Any arbitrary action in the procurement process.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will conduct procurements in a manner that prohibits the use of statutorily or administratively imposed in-State or local geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals, except in those cases where applicable Federal statutes expressly mandate or encourage geographic preference. Nothing in this section preempts State licensing laws. When contracting for architectural and engineering (A/E) services, geographic location may be a selection criteria provided its application leaves an appropriate number of qualified firms, given the nature and size of the project, to compete for the contract.

(3) Grantees will have written selection procedures for procurement transactions. These procedures will ensure that all solicitations:

(i) Incorporate a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product, or service to be procured. Such description shall not, in competitive procurements, contain features which unduly restrict competition. The description may include a statement of the qualitative nature of the material, product or service to be procured, and when necessary, shall set forth those minimum essential characteristics and standards to which it must conform if it is to satisfy its intended use. Detailed product specifications should be avoided if at all possible. When it is impractical or uneconomical to make a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements, a ''brand name or equal'' description may be used as a means to define the performance or other salient requirements of a procurement. The specific features of the named brand which must be met by offerors shall be clearly stated; and

(ii) Identify all requirements which the offerors must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(4) Grantees and subgrantees will ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum open and free competition. Also, grantees and subgrantees will not preclude potential bidders from qualifying during the solicitation period.

(d) *Methods of procurement to be followed*. (1) Procurement by *small purchase procedures*. Small purchase procedures are those relatively simple and informal procurement methods for securing services, supplies, or other property that do not cost more than the simplified acquisition threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403(11) (currently set at $100,000). If small purchase procedures are used, price or rate quotations shall be obtained from an adequate number of qualified sources.

(2) Procurement by *sealed bids* (formal advertising). Bids are publicly solicited and a firm-fixed-price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is the lowest in price. The sealed bid method is the preferred method for procuring construction, if the conditions in § 600.236(d)(2)(i) apply.

(i) In order for sealed bidding to be feasible, the following conditions should be present:

(A) A complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description is available;

(B) Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively and for the business; and

(C) The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection of the successful bidder can be made principally on the basis of price.

(ii) If sealed bids are used, the following requirements apply:

(A) The invitation for bids will be publicly advertised and bids shall be solicited from an adequate number of known suppliers, providing them sufficient time prior to the date set for opening the bids;

(B) The invitation for bids, which will include any specifications and pertinent attachments, shall define the items or services in order for the bidder to properly respond;

(C) All bids will be publicly opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids;

(D) A firm fixed-price contract award will be made in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Where specified in bidding documents, factors such as discounts, transportation cost, and life cycle costs shall be considered in determining which bid is lowest. Payment discounts will only be used to determine the low bid when prior experience indicates that such discounts are usually taken advantage of; and

(E) Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound documented reason.

(3) Procurement by *competitive proposals*. The technique of competitive proposals is normally conducted with more than one source submitting an offer, and either a fixed-price or cost-reimbursement type contract is awarded. It is generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use of sealed bids. If this method is used, the following requirements apply:

(i) Requests for proposals will be publicized and identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance. Any response to publicized requests for proposals shall be honored to the maximum extent practical;

(ii) Proposals will be solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources;

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees will have a method for conducting technical evaluations of the proposals received and for selecting awardees;

(iv) Awards will be made to the responsible firm whose proposal is most advantageous to the program, with price and other factors considered; and

(v) Grantees and subgrantees may use competitive proposal procedures for qualifications-based procurement of architectural/engineering (A/E) professional services whereby competitors' qualifications are evaluated and the most qualified competitor is selected, subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The method, where price is not used as a selection factor, can only be used in procurement of A/E professional services. It cannot be used to purchase other types of services though A/E firms are a potential source to perform the proposed effort.

(4) Procurement by *noncompetitive proposals* is procurement through solicitation of a proposal from only one source, or after solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(i) Procurement by noncompetitive proposals may be used only when the award of a contract is infeasible under small purchase procedures, sealed bids or competitive proposals and one of the following circumstances applies:

(A) The item is available only from a single source;

(B) The public exigency or emergency for the requirement will not permit a delay resulting from competitive solicitation;

(C) The awarding agency authorizes noncompetitive proposals; or

(D) After solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(ii) Cost analysis, i.e., verifying the proposed cost data, the projections of the data, and the evaluation of the specific elements of costs and profits, is required.

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees may be required to submit the proposed procurement to the awarding agency for

pre-award review in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section.

(e) *Contracting with small and minority firms, women's business enterprise and labor surplus area firms.* (1) The grantee and subgrantee will take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority firms, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible.

(2) Affirmative steps shall include:

(i) Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;

(ii) Assuring that small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;

(iii) Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;

(iv) Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;

(v) Using the services and assistance of the Small Business Administration, and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and

(vi) Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in paragraphs (e)(2) (i) through (v) of this section.

(f) *Contract cost and price.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees must perform a cost or price analysis in connection with every procurement action including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis is dependent on the facts surrounding the particular procurement situation, but as a starting point, grantees must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals. A cost analysis must be performed when the offeror is required to submit the elements of his estimated cost, e.g., under professional, consulting, and architectural engineering services contracts. A cost analysis will be necessary when adequate price competition is lacking, and for sole source procurements, including contract modifications or change orders, unless price resonableness can be established on the basis of a catalog or market price of a commercial product sold in substantial quantities to the general public or based on prices set by law or regulation. A price analysis will be used in all other instances to determine the reasonableness of the proposed contract price.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will negotiate profit as a separate element of the price for each contract in which there is no price competition and in all cases where cost analysis is performed. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, consideration will be given to the complexity of the work to be performed, the risk borne by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of its record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.

(3) Costs or prices based on estimated costs for contracts under grants will be allowable only to the extent that costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices are consistent with Federal cost principles (see § 600.422). Grantees may reference their own cost principles that comply with the applicable Federal cost principles.

(4) The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting shall not be used.

(g) *Awarding agency review.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees must make available, upon request of the awarding agency, technical specifications on proposed procurements where the awarding agency believes such review is needed to ensure that the item and/or service specified is the one being proposed for purchase. This review generally will take place prior to the time the specification is incorporated into a solicitation document. However, if the grantee or subgrantee desires to have the review accomplished after a solicitation has been developed, the awarding agency may still review the specifications, with such review usually limited to the technical aspects of the proposed purchase.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees must on request make available for awarding agency pre-award review procurement

documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, independent cost estimates, etc. when:

(i) A grantee's or subgrantee's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in this section; or

(ii) The procurement is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation; or

(iii) The procurement, which is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold, specifies a ''brand name'' product; or

(iv) The proposed award is more than the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement; or

(v) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the simplified acquisition threshold.

(3) A grantee or subgrantee will be exempt from the pre-award review in paragraph (g)(2) of this section if the awarding agency determines that its procurement systems comply with the standards of this section.

(i) A grantee or subgrantee may request that its procurement system be reviewed by the awarding agency to determine whether its system meets these standards in order for its system to be certified. Generally, these reviews shall occur where there is a continuous high-dollar funding, and third-party contracts are awarded on a regular basis.

(ii) A grantee or subgrantee may self-certify its procurement system. Such self-certification shall not limit the awarding agency's right to survey the system. Under a self-certification procedure, awarding agencies may wish to rely on written assurances from the grantee or subgrantee that it is complying with these standards. A grantee or subgrantee will cite specific procedures, regulations, standards, etc., as being in compliance with these requirements and have its system available for review.

(h) *Bonding requirements.* For construction or facility improvement contracts or subcontracts exceeding the simplified acquisition threshold, the awarding agency may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the grantee or subgrantee provided the awarding agency has made a determination that the awarding agency's interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements shall be as follows:

(1) *A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price.* The ''bid guarantee'' shall consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of his bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

(2) *A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price.* A ''performance bond'' is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

(3) *A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price.* A ''payment bond'' is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by law of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

(i) *Contract provisions.* A grantee's and subgrantee's contracts must contain provisions in paragraph (i) of this section. Federal agencies are permitted to require changes, remedies, changed conditions, access and records retention, suspension of work, and other clauses approved by the Office of Federal Procurement Policy.

(1) Administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate. (Contracts more than the simplified acquisition threshold)

(2) Termination for cause and for convenience by the grantee or subgrantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement. (All contracts in excess of $10,000)

(3) Compliance with Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, entitled ''Equal Employment Opportunity,'' as amended by Executive Order 11375 of October 13, 1967, and as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (41 CFR chapter 60). (All construction contracts awarded in excess of $10,000 by grantees and their contractors or subgrantees)

(4) Compliance with the Copeland ''Anti-Kickback'' Act (18 U.S.C. 874) as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 3). (All contracts and subgrants for construction or repair)

(5) Compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a to 276a–7) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5). (Construction contracts in excess of $2000 awarded by grantees and subgrantees when required by Federal grant program legislation)

(6) Compliance with Sections 103 and 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327–330) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5). (Construction contracts awarded by grantees and subgrantees in excess of $2000, and in excess of $2500 for other contracts which involve the employment of mechanics or laborers)

(7) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to reporting.

(8) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to patent rights with respect to any discovery or invention which arises or is developed in the course of or under such contract.

(9) Awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to copyrights and rights in data.

(10) Access by the grantee, the subgrantee, the Federal grantor agency, the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives to any books, documents, papers, and records of the contractor which are directly pertinent to that specific contract for the purpose of making audit, examination, excerpts, and transcriptions.

(11) Retention of all required records for three years after grantees or subgrantees make final payments and all other pending matters are closed.

(12) Compliance with all applicable standards, orders, or requirements issued under section 306 of the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 1857(h)), section 508 of the Clean Water Act (33 U.S.C. 1368), Executive Order 11738, and Environmental Protection Agency regulations (40 CFR part 15). (Contracts, subcontracts, and subgrants of amounts in excess of $100,000).

(13) Mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (Pub. L. 94–163, 89 Stat. 871).

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 60 FR 19639, 19641, Apr. 19, 1995; 61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996]

§ 600.237 Subgrants.

(a) *States.* States shall follow state law and procedures when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. States shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations;

(2) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statute and regulation;

(3) Ensure that a provision for compliance with § 600.242 is placed in every cost reimbursement subgrant; and

(4) Conform any advances of grant funds to subgrantees substantially to the same standards of timing and amount that apply to cash advances by Federal agencies.

(b) *All other grantees.* All other grantees shall follow the provisions of this subpart which are applicable to awarding agencies when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. Grantees shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes a provision for compliance with this subpart;

(2) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations; and

(3) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statutes and regulations.

(c) *Exceptions*. By their own terms, certain provisions of this subpart do not apply to the award and administration of subgrants:

(1) Section 600.210;

(2) Section 600.211;

(3) The letter-of-credit procedures specified in Treasury Regulations at 31 CFR part 205, cited in § 600.221; and

(4) Section 600.250.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988. Redesignated at 59 FR 53264, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996]

Reports, Records Retention, and Enforcement

§ 600.240 Monitoring and reporting program performance.

(a) *Monitoring by grantees*. Grantees are responsible for managing the day-to-day operations of grant and subgrant supported activities. Grantees must monitor grant and subgrant supported activities to assure compliance with applicable Federal requirements and that performance goals are being achieved. Grantee monitoring must cover each program, function or activity.

(b) *Nonconstruction performance reports*. The Federal agency may, if it decides that performance information available from subsequent applications contains sufficient information to meet its programmatic needs, require the grantee to submit a performance report only upon expiration or termination of grant support. Unless waived by the Federal agency this report will be due on the same date as the final Financial Status Report.

(1) Grantees shall submit annual performance reports unless the awarding agency requires quarterly or semi-annual reports. However, performance reports will not be required more frequently than quarterly. Annual reports shall be due 90 days after the grant year, quarterly or semi-annual reports shall be due 30 days after the reporting period. The final performance report will be due 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant support. If a justified request is submitted by a grantee, the Federal agency may extend the due date for any performance report. Additionally, requirements for unnecessary performance reports may be waived by the Federal agency.

(2) Performance reports will contain, for each grant, brief information on the following:

(i) A comparison of actual accomplishments to the objectives established for the period. Where the output of the project can be quantified, a computation of the cost per unit of output may be required if that information will be useful.

(ii) The reasons for slippage if established objectives were not met.

(iii) Additional pertinent information including, when appropriate, analysis and explanation of cost overruns or high unit costs.

(3) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of performance reports.

(4) Grantees will adhere to the standards in this section in prescribing performance reporting requirements for subgrantees.

(c) *Construction performance reports*. For the most part, on-site technical inspections and certified percentage-of-completion data are relied on heavily by Federal agencies to monitor progress under construction grants and subgrants. The Federal agency will require additional formal performance reports only when considered necessary, and never more frequently than quarterly.

(d) *Significant developments*. Events may occur between the scheduled performance reporting dates which have significant impact upon the grant or subgrant supported activity. In such cases, the grantee must inform the Federal agency as soon as the following types of conditions become known:

(1) Problems, delays, or adverse conditions which will materially impair the ability to meet the objective of the award. This disclosure must include a statement of the action taken, or contemplated, and any assistance needed to resolve the situation.

(2) Favorable developments which enable meeting time schedules and objectives sooner or at less cost than anticipated or producing more beneficial results than originally planned.

(e) Federal agencies may make site visits as warranted by program needs.

(f) *Waivers, extensions.* (1) Federal agencies may waive any performance report required by this part if not needed.

(2) The grantee may waive any performance report from a subgrantee when not needed. The grantee may extend the due date for any performance report from a subgrantee if the grantee will still be able to meet its performance reporting obligations to the Federal agency.

§ 600.241 Financial reporting.

(a) *General.* (1) Except as provided in paragraphs (a) (2) and (5) of this section, grantees will use only the forms specified in paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section, and such supplementary or other forms as may from time to time be authorized by OMB, for:

(i) Submitting financial reports to Federal agencies, or

(ii) Requesting advances or reimbursements when letters of credit are not used.

(2) Grantees need not apply the forms prescribed in this section in dealing with their subgrantees. However, grantees shall not impose more burdensome requirements on subgrantees.

(3) Grantees shall follow all applicable standard and supplemental Federal agency instructions approved by OMB to the extent required under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980 for use in connection with forms specified in paragraphs (b) through (e) of this section. Federal agencies may issue substantive supplementary instructions only with the approval of OMB. Federal agencies may shade out or instruct the grantee to disregard any line item that the Federal agency finds unnecessary for its decisionmaking purposes.

(4) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of forms required under this subpart.

(5) Federal agencies may provide computer outputs to grantees to expedite or contribute to the accuracy of reporting. Federal agencies may accept the required information from grantees in machine usable format or computer printouts instead of prescribed forms.

(6) Federal agencies may waive any report required by this section if not needed.

(7) Federal agencies may extend the due date of any financial report upon receiving a justified request from a grantee.

(b) *Financial Status Report*—(1) *Form.* Grantees will use Standard Form 269 or 269A, Financial Status Report, to report the status of funds for all nonconstruction grants and for construction grants when required in accordance with § 600.241(e)(2)(iii).

(2) *Accounting basis.* Each grantee will report program outlays and program income on a cash or accrual basis as prescribed by the awarding agency. If the Federal agency requires accrual information and the grantee's accounting records are not normally kept on the accrual basis, the grantee shall not be required to convert its accounting system but shall develop such accrual information through and analysis of the documentation on hand.

(3) *Frequency.* The Federal agency may prescribe the frequency of the report for each project or program. However, the report will not be required more frequently than quarterly. If the Federal agency does not specify the frequency of the report, it will be submitted annually. A final report will be required upon expiration or termination of grant support.

(4) *Due date.* When reports are required on a quarterly or semiannual basis, they will be due 30 days after the reporting period. When required on an annual basis, they will be due 90 days after the grant year. Final reports will be due 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant support.

(c) *Federal Cash Transactions Report*—(1) *Form.* (i) For grants paid by letter or credit, Treasury check advances or electronic transfer of funds, the grantee will submit the Standard Form 272, Federal Cash Transactions Report, and when necessary, its continuation sheet, Standard Form 272a, unless the terms of the award exempt the grantee from this requirement.

(ii) These reports will be used by the Federal agency to monitor cash advanced to grantees and to obtain disbursement or outlay information for each grant from grantees. The format of the report may be adapted as appropriate when reporting is to be accomplished with the assistance of automatic data processing equipment provided that the information to be submitted is not changed in substance.

(2) *Forecasts of Federal cash requirements.* Forecasts of Federal cash requirements may be required in the ''Remarks'' section of the report.

(3) *Cash in hands of subgrantees.* When considered necessary and feasible by the Federal agency, grantees may be required to report the amount of cash advances in excess of three days' needs in the hands of their subgrantees or contractors and to provide short narrative explanations of actions taken by the grantee to reduce the excess balances.

(4) *Frequency and due date.* Grantees must submit the report no later than 15 working days following the end of each quarter. However, where an advance either by letter of credit or electronic transfer of funds is authorized at an annualized rate of one million dollars or more, the Federal agency may require the report to be submitted within 15 working days following the end of each month.

(d) *Request for advance or reimbursement*—(1) *Advance payments.* Requests for Treasury check advance payments will be submitted on Standard Form 270, Request for Advance or Reimbursement. (This form will not be used for drawdowns under a letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or when Treasury check advance payments are made to the grantee automatically on a predetermined basis.)

(2) *Reimbursements.* Requests for reimbursement under nonconstruction grants will also be submitted on Standard Form 270. (For reimbursement requests under construction grants, see paragraph (e)(1) of this section.)

(3) The frequency for submitting payment requests is treated in § 600.441(b)(3).

(e) *Outlay report and request for reimbursement for construction programs*—(1) *Grants that support construction activities paid by reimbursement method.* (i) Requests for reimbursement under construction grants will be submitted on Standard Form 271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs. Federal agencies may, however, prescribe the Request for Advance or Reimbursement form, specified in § 600.241(d), instead of this form.

(ii) The frequency for submitting reimbursement requests is treated in § 600.241(b)(3).

(2) *Grants that support construction activities paid by letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or Treasury check advance.* (i) When a construction grant is paid by letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or Treasury check advances, the grantee will report its outlays to the Federal agency using Standard Form 271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs. The Federal agency will provide any necessary special instruction. However, frequency and due date shall be governed by § 600.241(b) (3) and (4).

(ii) When a construction grant is paid by Treasury check advances based on periodic requests from the grantee, the advances will be requested on the form specified in § 600.241(d).

(iii) The Federal agency may substitute the Financial Status Report specified in § 600.241(b) for the Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs.

(3) *Accounting basis.* The accounting basis for the Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs shall be governed by § 600.241(b)(2).

[53 FR 8045, 8047, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 59 FR 53266, Oct. 21, 1994; 61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996]

§ 600.242 Retention and access requirements for records.

(a) *Applicability.* (1) This section applies to all financial and programmatic records, supporting documents, statistical records, and other records of grantees or subgrantees which are:

(i) Required to be maintained by the terms of this subpart, program regulations or the grant agreement, or

(ii) Otherwise reasonably considered as pertinent to program regulations or the grant agreement.

(2) This section does not apply to records maintained by contractors or subcontractors. For a requirement to place a provision concerning records in certain kinds of contracts, see § 600.436(i)(10).

(b) *Length of retention period.* (1) Except as otherwise provided, records must be retained for three years from the starting date specified in paragraph (c) of this section.

(2) If any litigation, claim, negotiation, audit or other action involving the records has been started before the expiration of the 3-year period, the records must be retained until completion of the action and resolution of all issues which arise from it, or until the end of the regular 3-year period, whichever is later.

(3) To avoid duplicate recordkeeping, awarding agencies may make special arrangements with grantees and subgrantees to retain any records which are continuously needed for joint use. The awarding agency will request transfer of records to its custody when it determines that the records possess long-term retention value. When the records are transferred to or maintained by the Federal agency, the 3-year retention requirement is not applicable to the grantee or subgrantee.

(c) *Starting date of retention period* (1) *General.* When grant support is continued or renewed at annual or other intervals, the retention period for the records of each funding period starts on the day the grantee or subgrantee submits to the awarding agency its single or last expenditure report for that period. However, if grant support is continued or renewed quarterly, the retention period for each year's records starts on the day the grantee submits its expenditure report for the last quarter of the Federal fiscal year. In all other cases, the retention period starts on the day the grantee submits its final expenditure report. If an expenditure report has been waived, the retention period starts on the day the report would have been due.

(2) *Real property and equipment records.* The retention period for real property and equipment records starts from the date of the disposition or replacement or transfer at the direction of the awarding agency.

(3) *Records for income transactions after grant or subgrant support.* In some cases grantees must report income after the period of grant support. Where there is such a requirement, the retention period for the records pertaining to the earning of the income starts from the end of the grantee's fiscal year in which the income is earned.

(4) *Indirect cost rate proposals, cost allocations plans, etc.* This paragraph applies to the following types of documents, and their supporting records: indirect cost rate computations or proposals, cost allocation plans, and any similar accounting computations of the rate at which a particular group of costs is chargeable (such as computer usage chargeback rates or composite fringe benefit rates).

(i) *If submitted for negotiation.* If the proposal, plan, or other computation is required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the grantee) to form the basis for negotiation of the rate, then the 3-year retention period for its supporting records starts from the date of such submission.

(ii) *If not submitted for negotiation.* If the proposal, plan, or other computation is not required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the grantee) for negotiation purposes, then the 3-year retention period for the proposal plan, or computation and its supporting records starts from end of the fiscal year (or other accounting period) covered by the proposal, plan, or other computation.

(d) *Substitution of microfilm.* Copies made by microfilming, photocopying, or similar methods may be substituted for the original records.

(e) *Access to records*—(1) *Records of grantees and subgrantees.* The awarding agency and the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their authorized representatives, shall have the right of access to any pertinent books, documents, papers, or other records of grantees and subgrantees which are pertinent to the grant, in order to make audits, examinations, excerpts, and transcripts.

(2) *Expiration of right of access.* The rights of access in this section must

not be limited to the required retention period but shall last as long as the records are retained.

(f) *Restrictions on public access.* The Federal Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) does not apply to records unless required by Federal, State, or local law, grantees and subgrantees are not required to permit public access to their records.

§ 600.243 Enforcement.

(a) *Remedies for noncompliance.* If a grantee or subgrantee materially fails to comply with any term of an award, whether stated in a Federal statute or regulation, an assurance, in a State plan or application, a notice of award, or elsewhere, the awarding agency may take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances:

(1) Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the grantee or subgrantee or more severe enforcement action by the awarding agency,

(2) Disallow (that is, deny both use of funds and matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance,

(3) Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the current award for the grantee's or subgrantee's program,

(4) Withhold further awards for the program, or

(5) Take other remedies that may be legally available.

(b) *Hearings, appeals.* In taking an enforcement action, the awarding agency will provide the grantee or subgrantee an opportunity for such hearing, appeal, or other administrative proceeding to which the grantee or subgrantee is entitled under any statute or regulation applicable to the action involved.

(c) *Effects of suspension and termination.* Costs of grantee or subgrantee resulting from obligations incurred by the grantee or subgrantee during a suspension or after termination of an award are not allowable unless the awarding agency expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or termination or subsequently. Other grantee or subgrantee costs during suspension or after termination which are necessary and not reasonably avoidable are allowable if:

(1) The costs result from obligations which were properly incurred by the grantee or subgrantee before the effective date of suspension or termination, are not in anticipation of it, and, in the case of a termination, are noncancellable, and,

(2) The costs would be allowable if the award were not suspended or expired normally at the end of the funding period in which the termination takes effect.

(d) *Relationship to debarment and suspension.* The enforcement remedies identified in this section, including suspension and termination, do not preclude grantee or subgrantee from being subject to ''Debarment and Suspension'' under E.O. 12549 (see § 600.235).

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988. Redesignated at 59 FR 53264, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996]

§ 600.244 Termination for convenience.

Except as provided in § 600.443 awards may be terminated in whole or in part only as follows:

(a) By the awarding agency with the consent of the grantee or subgrantee in which case the two parties shall agree upon the termination conditions, including the effective date and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated, or

(b) By the grantee or subgrantee upon written notification to the awarding agency, setting forth the reasons for such termination, the effective date, and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. However, if, in the case of a partial termination, the awarding agency determines that the remaining portion of the award will not accomplish the purposes for which the award was made, the awarding agency may terminate the award in its entirety under either § 600.243 or paragraph (a) of this section.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988. Redesignated at 59 FR 53264, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996]

After-the-Grant Requirements

§ 600.250 Closeout.

(a) *General*. The Federal agency will close out the award when it determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the grant has been completed.

(b) *Reports*. Within 90 days after the expiration or termination of the grant, the grantee must submit all financial, performance, and other reports required as a condition of the grant. Upon request by the grantee, Federal agencies may extend this timeframe. These may include but are not limited to:

(1) *Final performance or progress report*.

(2) *Financial Status Report (SF 269) or Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs (SF–271) (as applicable)*.

(3) *Final request for payment (SF–270) (if applicable)*.

(4) *Invention disclosure (if applicable)*.

(5) *Federally-owned property report:*

In accordance with § 600.232(f), a grantee must submit an inventory of all federally owned property (as distinct from property acquired with grant funds) for which it is accountable and request disposition instructions from the Federal agency of property no longer needed.

(c) *Cost adjustment*. The Federal agency will, within 90 days after receipt of reports in paragraph (b) of this section, make upward or downward adjustments to the allowable costs.

(d) *Cash adjustments*. (1) The Federal agency will make prompt payment to the grantee for allowable reimbursable costs.

(2) The grantee must immediately refund to the Federal agency any balance of unobligated (unencumbered) cash advanced that is not authorized to be retained for use on other grants.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988. Redesignated at 59 FR 53264, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996]

§ 600.251 Later disallowances and adjustments.

The closeout of a grant does not affect:

(a) The Federal agency's right to disallow costs and recover funds on the basis of a later audit or other review;

(b) The grantee's obligation to return any funds due as a result of later refunds, corrections, or other transactions;

(c) Records retention as required in § 600.242;

(d) Property management requirements in §§ 600.231 and 600.232; and

(e) Audit requirements in § 600.226.

[53 FR 8045, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988. Redesignated at 59 FR 53264, Oct. 21, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 7166, Feb. 26, 1996]

§ 600.252 Collection of amounts due.

(a) Any funds paid to a grantee in excess of the amount to which the grantee is finally determined to be entitled under the terms of the award constitute a debt to the Federal Government. If not paid within a reasonable period after demand, the Federal agency may reduce the debt by:

(1) Making an adminstrative offset against other requests for reimbursements,

(2) Withholding advance payments otherwise due to the grantee, or

(3) Other action permitted by law.

(b) Except where otherwise provided by statutes or regulations, the Federal agency will charge interest on an overdue debt in accordance with the Federal Claims Collection Standards (4 CFR Ch. II). The date from which interest is computed is not extended by litigation or the filing of any form of appeal.

Entitlements [Reserved]

Subpart D—Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements With For-Profit Organizations

SOURCE: 68 FR 50650, Aug. 21, 2003, unless otherwise noted.

GENERAL

§ 600.301 Purpose.

(a) This subpart prescribes administrative requirements for awards to for-profit organizations.

(b) Applicability to prime awards and subawards is as follows:

(1) *Prime awards:* DOE contracting officers must apply the provisions of this

part to awards to for-profit organizations. Contracting officers must not impose requirements that are in addition to, or inconsistent with, the requirements provided in this part, except:

(i) In accordance with the deviation procedures or special award conditions in § 600.303 or § 600.304, respectively; or

(ii) As required by Federal statute, Executive order, or Federal regulation implementing a statute or Executive order.

(2) *Subawards.* (i) Any legal entity (including any State, local government, university or other nonprofit organization, as well as any for-profit entity) that receives an award from DOE must apply the provisions of this part to subawards with for-profit organizations.

(ii) For-profit organizations that receive prime awards covered by this part must apply to each subaward the administrative requirements that are applicable to the particular type of subrecipient (*e.g.*, 10 CFR part 600, subpart B, contains requirements for institutions of higher education, hospitals, or other nonprofit organizations and 10 CFR part 600, subpart C, specifies requirements for subrecipients that are States or local governments).

§ 600.302 Definitions.

In addition to the definitions used in subpart A of this part, the following are definitions of terms as used in this subpart:

Advance means a payment made by Treasury check or other appropriate payment mechanism to a recipient upon its request either before outlays are made by the recipient or through the use of predetermined payment schedules.

Applied research means efforts that seek to determine and exploit the potential of scientific discoveries or improvements in technology, and is directed toward the development of new materials, devices, methods, and processes.

Basic research means efforts directed solely toward increasing knowledge or understanding in science and engineering.

Cash contributions means the recipient's cash outlay, including the outlay of money contributed to the recipient by third parties.

Closeout means the process by which DOE determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the award have been completed by the recipient and DOE.

Cost sharing or matching means that portion of project or program costs not borne by the Federal Government.

Demonstration means a project designed to determine the technical feasibility and economic potential of a technology on either a pilot plant or a prototype scale.

Development means efforts to create or advance new technology or demonstrate the viability of applying existing technology to new products and processes.

Disallowed costs means those charges to an award that the DOE contracting officer determines to be unallowable, in accordance with the applicable Federal cost principles or other terms and conditions contained in the award.

DOE means the Department of Energy, including the National Nuclear Security Administration (NNSA).

Equipment means tangible, nonexpendable personal property charged directly to the award having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of $5,000 or more per unit.

Excess property means property under the control of any DOE Headquarters or field office that, as determined by the head thereof, is no longer required for its needs or the discharge of its responsibilities.

Federal funds authorized: means the total amount of Federal funds obligated by the Federal Government for use by the recipient. This amount may include any authorized carryover of unobligated funds from prior funding periods.

Federally owned property means property in the possession of, or directly acquired by, the Government and subsequently made available to the recipient.

Funding period means the period of time when Federal funding is available for obligation by the recipient.

Incremental funding means a method of funding a grant or cooperative

agreement where the funds initially obligated to the award are less than the total amount of the award, and DOE anticipates making additional obligations of funds when appropriated funds become available.

Obligations means the amount of orders placed, contracts and grants awarded, services received and similar transactions during a given period that require payment by the recipient during the same or a future period.

Outlays or expenditures means charges made to the project or program. They may be reported on cash or accrual basis. For reports prepared on a cash basis, outlays are the sum of cash disbursements for direct charges for goods and services, the amount of indirect expense charged, the value of third party in-kind contributions applied, and the amount of cash advances and payments made to subrecipients. For reports prepared on an accrual basis, outlays are the sum of cash disbursements for direct charges for goods and services, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the net increase (or decrease) in the amounts owed by the recipient for goods and other property received, for services performed by employees, contractors, subrecipients and other payees, and for other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance are required.

Personal property means property of any kind except real property. It may be:

(1) Tangible, having physical existence (*i.e.*, equipment and supplies); or

(2) Intangible, having no physical existence, such as patents, copyrights, data, and software.

Prior approval means written or electronic approval by an authorized official evidencing prior consent.

Program income means gross income earned by the recipient that is directly generated by a supported activity or earned as a result of the award. Program income includes, but is not limited to, income from fees for services performed, the use or rental of real or personal property acquired under federally-funded projects, the sale of commodities or items fabricated under an award, license fees and royalties on patents and copyrights, and interest on loans made with award funds. Interest earned on advances of Federal funds is not program income. Except as otherwise provided in program regulations or the terms and conditions of the award, program income does not include the receipt of principal on loans, rebates, credits, discounts, etc., or interest earned on any of them.

Project costs means all allowable costs, as set forth in the applicable Federal cost principles, incurred by a recipient and the value of the contributions made by third parties in accomplishing the objectives of the award during the project period.

Property means real property and personal property (equipment, supplies, and intellectual property), unless otherwise stated.

Real property means land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, but excludes movable machinery and equipment.

Small award means an award not exceeding the simplified acquisition threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403(11) (currently $100,000).

Small business concern means a small business as defined at section 2 of Pub. L. 85–536 (16 U.S.C. 632) and the implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. The criteria and size standards for small business concerns are contained in 13 CFR part 121.

Subaward means financial assistance in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, provided under an award by a recipient to an eligible subrecipient or by a subrecipient to a lower tier subrecipient. The term includes financial assistance when provided by any legal agreement, even if the agreement is called a contract, but the term does not include procurement of goods and services or any form of assistance which is not included in the definition of ''award'' in this part.

Subrecipient means the legal entity to which a subaward is made and which is accountable to the recipient for the use of the funds or property provided.

Supplies means tangible, expendable personal property that is charged directly to the award and that has a useful life of less than one year or an acquisition cost of less than $5,000 per unit.

Suspension means an action by DOE that temporarily withdraws Federal sponsorship under an award, pending corrective action by the recipient or pending a decision to terminate the award by DOE. Suspension of an award is a separate action from suspension of a recipient under 10 CFR part 1036.

Termination means the cancellation of an award, in whole or in part, under an agreement at any time prior to either:

(1) The date on which all work under an award is completed; or

(2) The date on which Federal sponsorship ends, as provided in the award document or any supplement or amendment thereto.

Third party in-kind contributions means the value of non-cash contributions provided by non-Federal third parties. Third party in-kind contributions may be in the form of real property, equipment, supplies and other expendable property, and the value of goods and services directly benefiting and specifically identifiable to the project or program.

Unobligated balance means the portion of the funds authorized by DOE that has not been obligated by the recipient and is determined by deducting the cumulative obligations from the cumulative funds authorized.

§ 600.303 Deviations.

(a) *Individual deviations.* Individual deviations affecting only one award are subject to the procedures stated in 10 CFR 600.4

(b) *Class deviations.* Class deviations affecting more than one financial assistance transaction are subject to the procedures states in 10 CFR 600.4.

§ 600.304 Special award conditions.

(a) Contracting officers may impose additional requirements as needed, over and above those provided in this subpart, if an applicant or recipient:

(1) Has a history of poor performance;

(2) Is not financially stable;

(3) Has a management system that does not meet the standards prescribed in this subpart;

(4) Has not conformed to the terms and conditions of a previous award; or

(5) Is not otherwise responsible.

(b) Before imposing additional requirements, DOE must notify the applicant or recipient in writing as to:

(1) The nature of the additional requirements;

(2) The reason why the additional requirements are being imposed;

(3) The nature of the corrective action needed;

(4) The time allowed for completing the corrective actions; and

(5) The method for requesting reconsideration of the additional requirements imposed.

(c) The contracting officer must remove any special conditions if the circumstances that prompted them have been corrected.

§ 600.305 Debarment and suspension.

Recipients must comply with the nonprocurement debarment and suspension common rule implemented in 2 CFR 180 and 901. This common rule restricts subawards and contracts with certain parties that are debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs or activities.

[68 FR 50650, Aug. 21, 2003, as amended at 74 FR 44278, Aug. 28, 2009]

§ 600.306 Metric system of measurement.

(a) The Metric Conversion Act of 1975, as amended by the Omnibus Trade and Competitiveness Act of 1988 (15 U.S.C. 205) and implemented by Executive Order 12770, states that:

(1) The metric system is the preferred measurement system for U.S. trade and commerce.

(2) The metric system of measurement will be used, to the extent economically feasible, in Federal agencies' procurements, grants, and other business-related activities.

(3) Metric implementation is not required if such use is likely to cause significant inefficiencies or loss of markets to United States firms.

(b) Recipients are encouraged to use the metric system to the maximum extent practicable in measurement-sensitive activities and in measurement-sensitive outputs resulting from DOE funded programs.

POST-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

Financial and Program Management

§ 600.310 Purpose of financial and program management.

Sections 600.311 through 600.318 prescribe standards for financial management systems; methods for making payments; and rules for cost sharing and matching, program income, revisions to budgets and program plans, audits, allowable costs, and fee and profit.

§ 600.311 Standards for financial management systems.

(a) Recipients are encouraged to use existing financial management systems to the extent that the systems comply with Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) and the minimum standards in this section. At a minimum, a recipient's financial management system must provide:

(1) Effective control of all funds. Control systems must be adequate to ensure that costs charged to Federal funds and those counted as the recipient's cost share or match are consistent with requirements for cost reasonableness, allowability, and allocability in the applicable cost principles (*see* § 600.317) and in the terms and conditions of the award.

(2) Accurate, current and complete records that document, for each project funded wholly or in part with Federal funds, the source and application of the Federal funds and the recipient's required cost share or match. These records must:

(i) Contain information about receipts, authorizations, assets, expenditures, program income, and interest.

(ii) Be adequate to make comparisons of outlays with amounts budgeted for each award (as required for programmatic and financial reporting under § 600.341). Where appropriate, financial information should be related to performance and unit cost data.

(3) To the extent that advance payments are authorized under § 600.312, procedures that minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds to the recipient from the Government and the recipient's disbursement of the funds for program purposes.

(4) A system to support charges to Federal awards for salaries and wages, whether treated as direct or indirect costs. If employees work on multiple activities or cost objectives, a distribution of their salaries and wages must be supported by personnel activity reports which:

(i) Reflect an after the fact distribution of the actual activity of each employee.

(ii) Account for the total activity for which each employee is compensated.

(iii) Are prepared at least monthly, and coincide with one or more pay periods.

(b) If the Federal Government guarantees or insures the repayment of money borrowed by the recipient, DOE, at its discretion, may require adequate bonding and insurance if the bonding and insurance requirements of the recipient are not deemed adequate to protect the interest of the Federal Government.

(c) DOE may require adequate fidelity bond coverage if the recipient lacks sufficient coverage to protect the Federal Government's interest.

(d) If bonds are required in the situations described in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, the bonds must be obtained from companies holding certificates of authority as acceptable sureties, as prescribed in 31 CFR part 223, ''Surety Companies Doing Business with the United States.''

§ 600.312 Payment.

(a) *Methods available.* Payment methods for awards with for-profit organizations are:

(1) *Reimbursement.* Under this method, the recipient requests reimbursement for costs incurred during a particular time period. In cases where the recipient submits requests for payment to the contracting officer, the DOE payment office reimburses the recipient by electronic funds transfer after approval of the request by the designated contracting officer.

(2) *Advance payments.* Under this method, DOE makes a payment to a recipient based upon projections of the recipient's cash needs. The payment generally is made upon the recipient's request, although predetermined payment schedules may be used when the

timing of the recipient's needs to disburse funds can be predicted in advance with sufficient accuracy to ensure compliance with paragraph (b)(2)(iii) of this section.

(b) *Selecting a method.* (1) The preferred payment method is the reimbursement method, as described in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(2) Advance payments, as described in paragraph (a)(2) of this section, may be used in exceptional circumstances, subject to the following conditions:

(i) The contracting officer, in consultation with the program official, determines in writing that advance payments are necessary or will materially contribute to the probability of success of the project contemplated under the award (*e.g.,* as startup funds for a project performed by a newly formed company).

(ii) Cash advances must be limited to the minimum amounts needed to carry out the program.

(iii) Recipients and DOE must maintain procedures to ensure that the timing of cash advances is as close as is administratively feasible to the recipients' disbursements of the funds for program purposes, including direct program or project costs and the proportionate share of any allowable indirect costs.

(iv) Recipients must maintain advance payments of Federal funds in interest-bearing accounts, and remit annually the interest earned to the contracting officer for return to the Department of Treasury's miscellaneous receipts account, unless one of the following applies:

(A) The recipient receives less than $120,000 in Federal awards per year.

(B) The best reasonably available interest bearing account would not be expected to earn interest in excess of $250 per year on Federal cash balances.

(C) The depository would require an average or minimum balance so high that establishing an interest bearing account would not be feasible, given the expected Federal and non-Federal cash resources.

(c) *Frequency of payments.* For either reimbursements or advance payments, recipients may submit requests for payment monthly, or more often if authorized by the contracting officer.

(d) *Forms for requesting payment.* DOE may authorize recipients to use the SF–270, ''Request for Advance or Reimbursement;'' the SF–271, ''Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs;'' or prescribe other forms or formats as necessary.

(e) *Timeliness of payments.* Payments normally will be made within 30 calendar days of the receipt of a recipient's request for reimbursement or advance by the office designated to receive the request, unless the billing is improper.

(f) *Precedence of other available funds.* Recipients must disburse funds available from program income, rebates, refunds, contract settlements, audit recoveries, credits, discounts, and interest earned on such funds before requesting additional cash payments.

(g) *Withholding of payments.* Unless otherwise required by statute, contracting officers may not withhold payments for proper charges made by recipients during the project period for reasons other than the following:

(1) A recipient failed to comply with project objectives, the terms and conditions of the award, or Federal reporting requirements, in which case the contracting officer may suspend payments in accordance with § 600.352.

(2) The recipient is delinquent on a debt to the United States (*see* definitions of ''debt'' and ''delinquent debt'' in 32 CFR 22.105). In that case, the contracting officer may, upon reasonable notice, withhold payments to the recipient until the debt owed is resolved.

§ 600.313 Cost sharing or matching.

(a) *Acceptable contributions.* All contributions, including cash contributions and third party in-kind contributions, must be accepted as part of the recipient's cost sharing or matching if such contributions meet all of the following criteria:

(1) They are verifiable from the recipient's records.

(2) They are not included as contributions for any other federally-assisted project or program.

(3) They are necessary and reasonable for proper and efficient accomplishment of project or program objectives.

(4) They are allowable under § 600.317.

(5) They are not paid by the Federal Government under another award unless authorized by Federal statute to be used for cost sharing or matching.

(6) They are provided for in the approved budget.

(7) They conform to other provisions of this part, as applicable.

(b) *Valuing and documenting contributions*—(1) *Valuing recipient's property or services of recipient's employees.* Values are established in accordance with the applicable cost principles in § 600.317, which means that amounts chargeable to the project are determined on the basis of costs incurred. For real property or equipment used on the project, the cost principles authorize depreciation or use charges. The full value of the item may be applied when the item will be consumed in the performance of the award or fully depreciated by the end of the award. In cases where the full value of a donated capital asset is to be applied as cost sharing or matching, that full value must be the lesser or the following:

(i) The certified value of the remaining life of the property recorded in the recipient's accounting records at the time of donation; or

(ii) The current fair market value. If there is sufficient justification, the contracting officer may approve the use of the current fair market value of the donated property, even if it exceeds the certified value at the time of donation to the project. The contracting officer may accept the use of any reasonable basis for determining the fair market value of the property.

(2) *Valuing services of others' employees.* If an employer other than the recipient furnishes the services of an employee, those services are valued at the employee's regular rate of pay plus an amount of fringe benefits and overhead (at an overhead rate appropriate for the location where the services are performed), provided these services are in the same skill for which the employee is normally paid.

(3) *Valuing volunteer services.* Volunteer services furnished by professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor may be counted as cost sharing or matching if the service is an integral and necessary part of an approved project or program. Rates for volunteer services must be consistent with those paid for similar work in the recipient's organization. In those markets in which the required skills are not found in the recipient organization, rates must be consistent with those paid for similar work in the labor market in which the recipient competes for the kind of services involved. In either case, paid fringe benefits that are reasonable, allowable, and allocable may be included in the valuation.

(4) *Valuing property donated by third parties.* (i) Donated supplies may include such items as office supplies or laboratory supplies. Value assessed to donated supplies included in the cost sharing or matching share must be reasonable and must not exceed the fair market value of the property at the time of the donation.

(ii) Normally only depreciation or use charges for equipment and buildings may be applied. However, the fair rental charges for land and the full value of equipment or other capital assets may be allowed, when they will be consumed in the performance of the award or fully depreciated by the end of the award, provided that the contracting officer has approved the charges. When use charges are applied, values must be determined in accordance with the usual accounting policies of the recipient, with the following qualifications:

(A) The value of donated space must not exceed the fair rental value of comparable space as established by an independent appraisal of comparable space and facilities in a privately-owned building in the same locality.

(B) The value of loaned equipment must not exceed its fair rental value.

(5) *Documentation.* The following requirements pertain to the recipient's supporting records for in-kind contributions from third parties:

(i) Volunteer services must be documented and, to the extent feasible, supported by the same methods used by the recipient for its own employees.

(ii) The basis for determining the valuation for personal services and property must be documented.

§ 600.314 Program income.

(a) DOE must apply the standards in this section to the disposition of program income from projects financed in whole or in part with Federal funds.

(b) Unless program regulations or the terms and conditions of the award provide otherwise, recipients, without any further accounting to DOE, may retain program income earned:

(1) From license fees and royalties for copyrighted material, patents, patent applications, trademarks, and inventions produced under an award.

(2) After the end of the project period.

(c) Unless program regulations or the terms and conditions of the award provide otherwise, costs incident to the generation of program income for which there is some obligation to the Government may be deducted from gross income to determine program income, provided these costs have not been charged to the award.

(d) Other than any program income excluded pursuant to paragraph (b) and (c) of this section, program income earned during the project period must be retained by the recipient and used in one or more of the following ways, as specified in program regulations or the terms and conditions of the award:

(1) Added to funds committed to the project by DOE and recipient and used to further eligible project or program objectives.

(2) Used to finance the non-Federal share of the project or program.

(3) Deducted from the total project or program allowable cost in determining the net allowable costs on which the Federal share of costs is based.

(e) If the program regulation or terms and conditions of an award authorize the disposition of program income as described in paragraph (d)(1) or (d)(2) of this section, and stipulate a limit on the amounts that may be used in those ways, program income in excess of the stipulated limits must be used in accordance with paragraph (d)(3) of this section.

(f) In the event that the program regulation or terms and conditions of the award do not specify how program income is to be used, paragraph (d)(3) of this section applies automatically to all projects or programs except research. For awards that support basic or applied research, paragraph (d)(1) of this section applies automatically unless the terms and conditions specify another alternative or the recipient is subject to special award conditions, as indicated in § 600.304.

(g) Proceeds from the sale of property that is acquired, rather than fabricated, under an award are not program income and must be handled in accordance with the requirements of §§ 600.320 through 600.325 of this part.

§ 600.315 Revision of budget and program plans.

(a) The budget plan is the financial expression of the project or program as approved during the award process. It includes the sum of the Federal and non-Federal shares when there are cost sharing requirements. The budget plan must be related to performance for program evaluation purposes, whenever appropriate.

(b) The recipient must obtain the contracting officer's prior approval if a revision is necessary for either of the following two reasons:

(1) A change in the scope or the objective of the project or program (even if there is no associated budget revision requiring prior written approval).

(2) A need for additional Federal funding.

(c) The recipient must obtain the contracting officer's prior approval if a revision is necessary for any of the following six reasons, unless the requirement for prior approval is specifically waived in the program regulation or terms and conditions of the award:

(1) A change in the approved project director, principal investigator, or other key person specified in the application or award document.

(2) The absence for more than three months, or a 25 percent reduction in time devoted to the project, by the approved project director or principal investigator.

(3) The inclusion of any additional costs that require prior approval in accordance with the applicable costs principles for Federal funds and the requirements applicable to the recipient's cost share or match, as provided in § 600.313 and § 600.317, respectively.

(4) The inclusion of pre-award costs for periods greater than the 90 calendar days immediately preceding the effective date of the award.

(5) A ''no-cost'' extension of the project period.

(6) Any subaward, transfer, or contracting out of substantive program performance under an award, unless described in the application and funded in the approved awards.

(d) If specifically required in the program regulation or the terms and conditions of the award, the recipient must obtain the contracting officer's prior approval for the following revisions:

(1) The transfer of funds among direct cost categories, functions, and activities for awards in which the Federal share of the project exceeds $100,000 and the cumulative amount of such transfers exceeds or is expected to exceed 10 percent of the total budget as last approved by DOE.

(2) For awards that provide support for both construction and nonconstruction work, any fund or budget transfers between the two types of work supported.

(e) Within 30 calendar days from the date of receipt of the recipient's request for budget revisions, the contracting officer must review the request and notify the recipient whether the budget revisions have been approved. If the revision is still under consideration at the end of 30 calendar days, the contracting officer must inform the recipient in writing of the date when the recipient may expect the decision.

§ 600.316 Audits.

(a) Any recipient that expends $500,000 or more in a year under Federal awards must have an audit made for that year by an independent auditor, in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section. If a recipient is currently performing under a Federal award that requires an audit by its Federal cognizant agency, that auditor must perform the independent audit. The audit generally should be made a part of the regularly scheduled, annual audit of the recipient's financial statements. However, it may be more economical in some cases to have Federal awards separately audited, and a recipient may elect to do so, unless that option is precluded by award terms and conditions or by Federal laws or regulations applicable to the program(s) under which the awards were made.

(b) The auditor must determine and report on whether:

(1) The recipient has an internal control structure that provides reasonable assurance that it is managing Federal awards in compliance with Federal laws and regulations and the terms and conditions of the awards.

(2) Based on a sampling of Federal award expenditures, the recipient has complied with laws, regulations, and award terms that may have a direct and material effect on Federal awards.

(c) The recipient must make the auditor's report available to the DOE contracting officers whose awards are affected.

(d) Before requesting an audit in addition to the independent audit, the contracting officer must:

(1) Consider whether the independent audit satisfies his or her requirements;

(2) Limit the scope of such additional audit to areas not adequately addressed by the independent audit; and

(3) If DOE is not the Federal agency with the predominant fiscal interest in the recipient, coordinate with the agency that has the predominant fiscal interest.

(e) The recipient and its Federal cognizant agency for audit should develop a coordinated audit approach to minimize duplication of audit work.

(f) Audit costs (including a reasonable allocation of the costs of the audit of the recipient's financial statement, based on the relative benefit to the Government and the recipient) are allowable costs of DOE awards.

§ 600.317 Allowable costs.

(a) DOE determines allowability of costs in accordance with the cost principles applicable to the type of entity incurring the cost as follows:

(1) *For-profit organizations.* Allowability of costs incurred by for-profit organizations and those nonprofit organizations listed in Attachment C to OMB Circular A–122 is determined in accordance with the for-profit costs

principles in 48 CFR part 31 in the Federal Acquisition Regulation, except that patent prosecution costs are not allowable unless specifically authorized in the award document.

(2) *Other types of organizations.* Allowability of costs incurred by other types of organizations that may be subrecipients under a prime award to a for-profit organization is determined as follows:

(i) *Institutions of higher education.* Allowability is determined in accordance with OMB Circular A–21, ''Cost Principles for Educational Institutions.''

(ii) *Other nonprofit organizations.* Allowability is determined in accordance with OMB Circular A–122, ''Cost Principles for Nonprofit Organizations.''

(iii) *Hospitals.* Allowability is determined in accordance with the provisions of 45 CFR part 74, Appendix E, ''Principles for Determining Costs Applicable to Research and Development Under Grants and Contracts with Hospitals.''

(iv) *Governmental organizations.* Allowability for State, local, or federally recognized Indian tribal government is determined in accordance with OMB Circular A–87, ''Cost Principles for State and Local Governments.''

(b) *Pre-award costs.* If a recipient incurs pre-award costs without the prior approval of the contracting officer, DOE may pay those costs incurred within the ninety calendar day period immediately preceding the effective date of the award, if such costs are:

(1) Necessary for the effective and economical conduct of the project;

(2) Otherwise allowable in accordance with the applicable cost principles; and

(3) Less than the total value of the award.

§ 600.318 Fee and profit.

(a) Grants and cooperative agreements may not provide for the payment of fee or profit to recipients or subrecipients, except for awards made pursuant to the Small Business Innovation Research or Small Business Technology Transfer Research programs.

(b) A recipient or subrecipient may pay a fee or profit to a contractor providing goods or services under a contract.

Property Standards

§ 600.320 Purpose of property standards.

Sections 600.321 through 600.325 set forth uniform standards for management, use, and disposition of property. DOE encourages recipients to use existing property-management systems to the extent that the systems meet these minimum requirements.

§ 600.321 Real property and equipment.

(a) *Prior approvals for acquisition with Federal funds.* Recipients may purchase real property or equipment in whole or in part with Federal funds under an award only with the prior approval of the contracting officer.

(b) *Title.* Unless a statute specifically authorizes and the award specifies that title to property vests unconditionally in the recipient, title to real property or equipment vests in the recipient subject to the conditions that the recipient:

(1) Use the real property or equipment for the authorized purposes of the project until funding for the project ceases, or until the property is no longer needed for the purposes of the project;

(2) Not encumber the property without approval of the contracting officer; and

(3) Use and dispose of the property in accordance with paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section.

(c) *Federal interest in real property or equipment offered as cost-share.* A recipient may offer the full value of real property or equipment that is purchased with recipient's funds or that is donated by a third party to meet a portion of any required cost sharing or matching, subject to the requirements in § 600.313. If a resulting award includes such property as a portion of the recipient's cost share, the Government has a financial interest in the property, (*i.e.,* a share of the property value equal to the Federal participation in the project). The property is considered as if it had been acquired in part with Federal funds, and is subject to the provisions of paragraphs (b)(1), (b)(2), and (b)(3) of this section and to the provisions of § 600.323.

(d) *Insurance*. Recipients must, at a minimum, provide the equivalent insurance coverage for real property and equipment acquired with DOE funds as provided to property owned by the recipient.

(e) *Use*. If real property or equipment is acquired in whole or in part with Federal funds under an award and the award does not specify that title vests unconditionally in the recipient, the real property or equipment is subject to the following:

(1) During the time that the real property or equipment is used on the project or program for which it was acquired, the recipient must make it available for use on other projects or programs, if such other use does not interfere with the work on the project or program for which the real property or equipment was originally acquired. Use of the real property or equipment on other projects is subject to the following order of priority:

(i) Activities sponsored by DOE grants, cooperative agreements, or other assistance awards;

(ii) Activities sponsored by other Federal agencies' grants, cooperative agreements, or other assistance awards;

(iii) Activities under Federal procurement contracts or activities not sponsored by any Federal agency. If so used, use charges must be assessed to those activities. For real property or equipment, the use charges must be at rates equivalent to those for which comparable real property or equipment may be leased.

(2) After Federal funding for the project ceases or if the real property or equipment is no longer needed for the purposes of the project, the recipient may use the real property or equipment for other projects, insofar as:

(i) There are Federally sponsored projects for which the real property or equipment may be used. If the only use for the real property or equipment is for projects that have no Federal sponsorship, the receipt must proceed with disposition of the real property or equipment, in accordance with paragraph (f) of this section.

(ii) The recipient obtains written approval from the contracting officer to do so. The contracting officer must ensure that there is a formal change of accountability for the real property or equipment to a currently funded, Federal award.

(iii) The recipient's use of the real property or equipment for other projects is in the same order of priority as described in paragraph (e)(1) of this section.

(f) *Disposition*. (1) If an item of real property or equipment is no longer needed for Federally sponsored projects, the recipient has the following options:

(i) If the property is equipment with a current per unit fair market value of less than $5,000, it may be retained, sold, or otherwise disposed of with no further obligation to DOE.

(ii) If the property that is no longer needed is equipment (rather than real property), the recipient may wish to replace it with an item that is needed currently for the project by trading in or selling to offset the costs of the replacement equipment, subject to the approval of the contracting officer.

(iii) The recipient may elect to retain title, without further obligation to the Federal Government, by compensating the Federal Government for that percentage of the current fair market value of the real property or equipment that is attributable to the Federal participation in the project.

(iv) If the recipient does not elect to retain title to real property or equipment or does not request approval to use equipment as trade-in or offset for replacement equipment, the recipient must request disposition instructions from the responsible agency.

(2) If a recipient requests disposition instructions, the contracting officer must:

(i) For equipment (but not real property), consult with the DOE Project Director to determine whether the condition and nature of the equipment warrant excess screening within DOE. If screening is warranted, the equipment will be made available for reutilization within DOE through the Energy Asset Disposal System (EADS). If no DOE requirement is identified within a 30-day period, EADS automatically reports the availability of the equipment to the General Services Administration, to determine whether a requirement

for the equipment exists in other Federal agencies.

(ii) For either real property or equipment, issue instructions to the recipient for disposition of the property no later than 120 calendar days after the recipient's request. The contracting officer's options for disposition are to direct the recipient to:

(A) Transfer title to the real property or equipment to the Federal Government or to an eligible third party provided that, in such cases, the recipient is entitled to compensation for its attributable percentage of the current fair market value of the real property or equipment, plus any reasonable shipping or interim storage costs incurred.

(B) Sell the real property or equipment and pay the Federal Government for that percentage of the current fair market value of the property that is attributable to the Federal participation in the project (after deducting actual and reasonable selling and fix-up expenses, if any, from the sale proceeds). If the recipient is authorized or required to sell the real property or equipment, the recipient must use competitive procedures that result in the highest practicable return.

(3) If the responsible agency fails to issue disposition instructions within 120 calendar days of the recipient's request, the recipient must dispose of the real property or equipment through the option described in paragraph (f)(2)(ii)(B) of this section.

§ 600.322 Federally owned property.

(a) *Annual inventory*. The recipient must submit annually to the contracting officer an inventory listing of all Federally owned property in its custody, i.e., property furnished by the Federal Government, rather than acquired by the recipient with Federal funds under the award.

(b) *Insurance*. The recipient may not insure Federally owned property unless required by the terms and conditions of the award.

(c) *Use on other activities*. (1) Use of federally owned property on other activities is permissible, if authorized by the contracting officer responsible for administering the award to which the property currently is charged.

(2) Use on other activities must be in the following order of priority:

(i) Activities sponsored by DOE grants, cooperative agreements, or other assistance awards;

(ii) Activities sponsored by other Federal agencies' grants, cooperative agreements, or other assistance awards;

(iii) Activities under Federal procurement contracts or activities not sponsored by any Federal agency. If so used, use charges must be assessed to those activities. For real property or equipment, the use charges must be at rates equivalent to those for which comparable real property or equipment may be leased.

(d) *Disposition or property*. Upon completion of the award, the recipient must submit to the contracting officer a final inventory of Federal owned property. DOE may:

(1) Use the property to meet another Federal Government need (*e.g.*, by transferring accountability for the property to another Federal award to the same recipient, or by directing the recipient to transfer the property to a Federal agency that needs the property or to another recipient with a currently funded award).

(2) Declare the property to be excess property and either:

(i) Report the property to the General Services Administration through EADS, in accordance with the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 (40 U.S.C. 483(b)(2)), as implemented by General Services Administration regulations at 41 CFR 101–47.202; or

(ii) Dispose of the property by alternative methods, if there is authority under law, such as 15 U.S.C. 3710(i).

§ 600.323 Property management system.

The recipient's property management system must include the following:

(a) Property records must be maintained, to include the following information for property that is Federally owned, equipment that is acquired in whole or in part with Federal funds, or property or equipment that is used as cost sharing or matching:

(1) A description of the property.

(2) Manufacturer's serial number, model number, Federal stock number, national stock number, or any other identification number.

(3) Source of the property, including the award number.

(4) Whether title vests in the recipient or the Federal Government.

(5) Acquisition date (or date received, if the property was furnished by the Federal Government) and cost.

(6) Information from which one can calculate the percentage of Federal participation in the cost of the property (not applicable to property furnished by the Federal Government).

(7) The location and condition of the property and the date the information was reported.

(8) Ultimate disposition data, including data of disposal and sales price or the method used to determine current fair market value where a recipient compensates the Federal Government for its share.

(b) Federal owned equipment must be marked to indicate Federal ownership.

(c) A physical inventory must be taken and the results reconciled with the property records at least once every two years. Any differences between quantities determined by the physical inspection and those shown in the accounting records must be investigated to determine the causes of the difference. The recipient must, in connection with the inventory, verify the existence, current utilization, and continued need for the property.

(d) A control system must be in effect to insure adequate safeguards to prevent loss, damage, or theft of the property. Any loss, damage, or theft of property must be investigated and fully documented. If the property is owned by the Federal Government, the recipient must promptly notify the Federal agency responsible for administering the property.

(e) Adequate maintenance procedures must be implemented to keep the property in good condition.

§ 600.324 Supplies.

(a) Title vests in the recipient upon acquisition of supplies acquired with Federal funds under an award.

(b) Upon termination or completion of the project or program, the recipient may retain any unused supplies. If the inventory of unused supplies exceeds $5,000 in total aggregate value and the items are not needed for any other Federally sponsored project or program, the recipient may retain the items for use on non-Federal sponsored activities or sell them, but must, in either case, compensate the Federal Government for its share.

§ 600.325 Intellectual property.

(a) *Scope*. This section sets forth the policies with regard to disposition of rights to data and to inventions conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of, or under, a grant or cooperative agreement with DOE.

(b) *Patents right—small business concerns*. In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202, if the recipient is a small business concern and receives a grant, cooperative agreement, subaward, or contract for research, developmental, or demonstration activities, then, unless there are ''exceptional circumstances'' as described in 35 U.S.C. 202(e), the award must contain the standard clause in appendix A to this subpart, entitled ''Patents Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit Organizations'' which provides to the recipient the right to elect ownership of inventions made under the award.

(c) *Patent rights—other than small business concerns, e.g., large businesses*—(1) *No Patent Waiver*. Except as provided by paragraph (c)(2) of this section, if the recipient is a for-profit organization other than a small business concern, as defined in 35 U.S.C. 201(h) and receives an award or a subaward for research, development, and demonstration activities, then, pursuant to statute, the award must contain the standard clause in appendix A to this subpart, entitled ''Patent Rights (Large Business Firms)—No Waiver'' which provides that DOE owns the patent rights to inventions made under the award.

(2) *Patent Waiver Granted*. Paragraph (c)(1) of this section does not apply if:

(i) DOE grants a class waiver for a particular program under 10 CFR part 784;

(ii) The applicant requests and receives an advance patent waiver under 10 CFR part 784; or

(iii) A subaward is covered by a waiver granted under the prime award.

(3) *Special Provision*. Normally, an award will not include a background patent and data provision. However, under special circumstances, in order to provide heightened assurance of commercialization, a provision providing for a right to require licensing of third parties to background inventions, limited rights data and/or restricted computer software, may be included. Inclusion of a background patent and/or a data provision to assure commercialization will be done only with the written concurrence of the DOE program official setting forth the need for such assurance. An award may include the right to license the Government and third party contractors for special Government purposes when future availability of the technology would also benefit the government, *e.g.*, clean-up of DOE facilities. The scope of any such background patent and/or data licensing provision is subject to negotiation.

(d) *Rights in data—general rule*. (1) Subject to paragraphs (d)(2) and (3) of this section, and except as otherwise provided by paragraphs (e) and (f) of this section or other law, any award under this subpart must contain the standard clause in appendix A to this subpart, entitled ''Rights in Data—General''.

(2) Normally, an award will not require the delivery of limited rights data or restricted computer software. However, if the contracting officer, in consultation with DOE patent counsel and the DOE program official, determines that delivery of limited rights data or restricted computer software is necessary, the contracting officer, after negotiation with the applicant, may insert in the award the standard clause as modified by Alternates I and/or II set forth in appendix A to this subpart.

(3) If software is specified for delivery to DOE, or if other special circumstances exist, *e.g.*, DOE specifying ''open-source'' treatment of software, then the contracting officer, after negotiation with the recipient, may include in the award special provisions requiring the recipient to obtain written approval of the contracting officer prior to asserting copyright in the software, modifying the retained Government license, and/or otherwise altering the copyright provisions.

(e) *Rights in data—programs covered under special protected data statutes*. (1) If a statute, other than those providing for the Small Business Innovation Research (SBIR) and Small Business Technology Transfer Research (STTR) programs, provides for a period of time, typically up to five years, during which data produced under an award for research, development, and demonstration may be protected from public disclosure, then the contracting officer must insert in the award the standard clause in appendix A to this subpart entitled ''Rights in Data—Programs Covered Under Special Protected Data Statutes'' or, as determined in consultation with DOE patent counsel and the DOE program official, a modified version of such clause which may identify data or categories of data that the recipient must make available to the public.

(2) An award under paragraph (e)(1) of this section is subject to the provisions of paragraphs (d)(2) and (3) of this section.

(f) *Rights in data—SBIR/STTR programs*. (1) If an applicant receives an award under the SBIR or STTR program, then the contracting officer must insert in the award the standard data clause in the General Terms and Conditions for SBIR Grants, entitled ''Rights in Data—SBIR Program''.

(2) The data rights provisions for SBIR/STTR grants are contained in the award terms and conditions for SBIR grants located at *http://e-center.doe.gov* on the Professionals Homepage under Financial Assistance, Regulations and Guidance.

(g) *Authorization and consent*. (1) Work performed by a recipient under a grant is not subject to authorization and consent to the use of a patented invention, and the Government assumes no liability for patent infringement by the recipient under 28 U.S.C. 1498.

(2) Work performed by a recipient under a cooperative agreement is subject to authorization and consent to

the use of a patented invention consistent with the principles set forth in 48 CFR 27.201–1.

(3) The contracting officer, in consultation with patent counsel, may also include clauses in the cooperative agreement addressing other patent matters related to authorization and consent, such as patent indemnification of the Government by recipient and notice and assistance regarding patent and copyright infringement. The policies and clauses for these other patent matters will be the same or consistent with those in 48 CFR part 927.

Procurement Standards

§ 600.330 Purpose of procurement standards.

Section 600.331 sets forth requirements necessary to ensure:

(a) Recipients' procurements that use Federal funds comply with applicable Federal statutes, regulations, and executive orders.

(b) Proper stewardship of Federal funds used in recipients' procurements.

§ 600.331 Requirements.

The following requirements pertain to recipients' procurements funded in whole or in part with Federal funds or with recipients' cost-share or match:

(a) *Reasonable cost.* Recipients' procurement procedures must use best commercial practices to ensure reasonable cost for procured goods and services. Recipients are encouraged to buy commercial items, if practicable.

(b) *Pre-award review of certain procurements.* If the contracting officer determines that there is a compelling need to perform a pre-award review of a specific transaction and the terms of the award identify the specific transaction and provide for such a review, then the recipient must obtain the contracting officer's approval prior to awarding the transaction and must provide the contracting officer the following documents to review:

(1) Request for proposals or invitation to bid, if any;

(2) Cost estimate;

(3) Proposal/bid;

(4) Proposed award document; and

(5) Summary of negotiations or justification for award.

(c) *Contract provisions.* (1) Contracts in excess of the simplified acquisition threshold must contain contractual provisions or conditions that allow for administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances in which a contractor violates or breaches the contract terms, and provide for such remedial actions as may be appropriate.

(2) All contracts in excess of the simplified acquisition threshold must contain suitable provisions for termination for default by the recipient and for termination due to circumstances beyond the control of the contractor.

(3) All negotiated contracts in excess of the simplified acquisition threshold must include a provision permitting access of DOE, the Inspector General, the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives, to any books, documents, papers, and records of the contractor that are directly pertinent to a specific programs, for the purpose of making audits, examinations, excerpts, transcriptions, and copies of such documents.

(4) All contracts, including those for amounts less than the simplified acquisition threshold, awarded by recipients and their contractors must contain the procurement provisions of Appendix B to this subpart, as applicable.

(d) *Recipient responsibilities.* The recipient is the responsible authority, without recourse to DOE, regarding the settlement and satisfaction of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements entered into in support of an award. This includes disputes, claims, protests of award, source evaluation or other matters of a contractual nature. The recipient should refer matters concerning violations of statutes to such Federal, State or local authority as may have proper jurisdiction.

Reports and Records

§ 600.340 Purpose of reports and records.

Sections 600.341 and 600.342 prescribe requirements for monitoring and reporting financial and program performance and for records retention.

§ 600.341 Monitoring and reporting program and financial performance.

(a) The terms and conditions of the award prescribe the reporting requirements, the frequency, and the due dates for reports. At a minimum, requirements must include:

(1) Periodic progress reports (at least annually, but no more frequently than quarterly) addressing both program status and business status, as follows:

(i) The program portions of the reports must address progress toward achieving program performance goals and milestones, including current issues, problems, or developments.

(ii) The business portions of the reports must provide summarized details on the status of resources (Federal funds and non-Federal cost sharing or matching), including an accounting of expenditures for the period covered by the report. The report should compare the resource status with any payment and expenditure schedules or plans provided in the original award, explain any major deviations from those schedules, and discuss actions that will be taken to address the deviations.

(2) A final technical report if the award is for research and development.

(b) If the contracting officer previously authorized advance payments, pursuant to § 600.312(a)(2), he/she should consult with the DOE project director and consider whether program progress reported in the periodic progress report, in relation to reported expenditures, is sufficient to justify continued authorization of advance payments.

§ 600.342 Retention and access requirements for records.

(a) This section sets forth requirements for records retention and access to records for awards to recipients and subrecipients.

(b) Financial records, supporting documents, statistical records, and all other records pertinent to an award must be retained for a period of three years from the date of submission of the final expenditure report. The only exceptions are the following.

(1) If any litigation, claim, or audit is started before the expiration of the 3-year period, the records must be retained until all litigation, claims, or audit findings involving the records have been resolved and final action taken.

(2) Records for real property and equipment acquired with Federal funds must be retained for 3 years after final disposition.

(3) If records are transferred to or maintained by DOE, the 3-year retention requirement is not applicable to the recipient.

(4) Indirect cost rate proposals, cost allocation plans, and related records must be retained in accordance with the requirements specified in paragraph (g) of this section.

(c) Copies of original records may be substituted for the original records if authorized by the contracting officer.

(d) The contracting officer may request that recipients transfer certain records to DOE custody if he or she determines that the records possess long term retention value. However, in order to avoid duplicate recordkeeping, a contracting officer may make arrangements for recipients to retain any records that are continuously needed for joint use.

(e) DOE, the Inspector General, Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives, have the right of timely and unrestricted access to any books, documents, papers, or other records of recipients that are pertinent to the awards, in order to make audits, examinations, excerpts, transcripts and copies of such documents. This right also includes timely and reasonable access to a recipient's personnel for the purpose of interview and discussion related to such documents. The rights of access in this paragraph are not limited to the required retention period, but must last as long as records are retained.

(f) Unless required by statute, DOE must not place restrictions on recipients that limit public access to the records of recipients that are pertinent to an award, except when DOE can demonstrate that such records would be kept confidential and would be exempt from disclosure pursuant to the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if the records belonged to DOE.

(g) Indirect cost proposals, cost allocation plans, and other cost accounting

documents (such as documents related to computer usage chargeback rates), along with their supporting records, must be retained for a 3-year period, as follows:

(1) If the recipient or the subrecipient is required to submit an indirect-cost proposal, cost allocation plan, or other computation to the cognizant Federal agency for purposes of negotiating an indirect cost rate or other rates, the 3-year retention period starts on the date of the submission.

(2) If the recipient or the subrecipient is not required to submit the documents or supporting records for negotiating an indirect cost rate or other rates, the 3-year retention period for the documents and records starts at the end of the fiscal year (or other accounting period) covered by the proposal, plan, or other computation.

(h) If the information described in this section is maintained on a computer, recipients must retain the computer data on a reliable medium for the time periods prescribed. Recipients may transfer computer data in machine readable form from one reliable computer medium to another. Recipients' computer data retention and transfer procedures must maintain the integrity, reliability, and security of the original computer data. Recipients must also maintain an audit trail describing the data transfer. For the record retention time periods prescribed in this section, recipients must not destroy, discard, delete, or write over such computer data.

Termination and Enforcement

§ 600.350 Purpose of termination and enforcement.

Sections 600.351 through 600.353 set forth uniform procedures for suspension, termination, enforcement, and disputes.

§ 600.351 Termination.

(a) Awards may be terminated in whole or in part only in accordance with one of the following:

(1) By the contracting officer, if a recipient materially fails to comply with the terms and conditions of an award.

(2) By the contracting officer with the consent of the recipient, in which case the two parties must agree upon the termination conditions, including the effective date and, in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated.

(3) By the recipient upon sending to the contracting officer written notification setting forth the reasons for such termination, the effective date, and, in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. The recipient must provide such notice at least 30 calendar days prior to the effective date of the termination. However, if the contracting officer determines in the case of partial termination that the reduced or modified portion of the award will not accomplish the purposes for which the award was made, he or she may terminate the award in its entirety.

(b) If the recipient incurred allowable costs prior to the termination, the responsibilities of the recipient referred to in § 600.361(b), including those related to property, apply to the termination of the award, and provision must be made for continuing responsibilities of the recipient after termination, as appropriate.

§ 600.352 Enforcement.

(a) *Remedies for noncompliance.* If a recipient materially fails to comply with the terms and conditions of an award, whether stated in a Federal statute, regulation, assurance, application, or notice of award, the contracting officer may, in addition to imposing any of the special conditions outlined in § 600.304, take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate:

(1) Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the recipient or more severe enforcement action by the contracting officer.

(2) Disallow (that is, deny both the use of funds and any applicable matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance.

(3) Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the current award.

(4) Withhold further awards for the project or program.

(5) Apply other remedies that may be legally available.

(b) *Hearings and appeals*. In taking an enforcement action, DOE must provide the recipient an opportunity for hearing, appeal, or other administrative proceeding to which the recipient is entitled under any statute or regulation applicable to the action involved.

(c) *Effects of suspension and termination*. Costs resulting from obligations incurred by the recipient during a suspension or after termination of an award are not allowable, unless the contracting officer expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or termination or subsequently authorizes such costs. Other recipient costs during suspension or after termination, which are necessary and not reasonably avoidable, are allowable if the costs:

(1) Result from obligations which were properly incurred by the recipient before the effective date of suspension or termination, are not in anticipation of it, and in the case of a termination, are noncancellable; and

(2) Would be allowable if the award expired normally at the end of the funding period.

(d) *Relationship to debarment and suspension*. The enforcement remedies identified in this section, including suspension and termination, do not preclude a recipient from being subject to debarment and suspension under 10 CFR part 1036.

§ 600.353 Disputes and appeals.

Consistent with 10 CFR 600.22 and part 1024, recipients have the right to appeal certain decisions by contracting officers.

AFTER-THE-AWARD REQUIREMENTS

§ 600.360 Purpose.

Sections 600.361 through 600.363 contain procedures for closeout and for subsequent disallowances and adjustments.

§ 600.361 Closeout procedures.

(a) Recipients must submit, within 90 calendar days after the date of completion of the award, all reports required by the terms and conditions of the award. DOE may approve extensions when requested by the recipient.

(b) The following provisions must apply to the closeout:

(1) Unless DOE authorizes an extension, a recipient must liquidate all obligations incurred under the award not later than 90 calendar days after the funding period or the date of completion of the award as specified in the terms and conditions of the award or in agency implementing instructions.

(2) DOE must make prompt, final payments to a recipient for allowable reimbursable costs under the award being closed out.

(3) The recipient must promptly refund any unobligated balances of cash that DOE has advanced or paid and that are not authorized to be retained by the recipient for use in other projects. OMB Circular A–129 governs unreturned amounts that become delinquent debts.

(4) When authorized by the terms and conditions of the award, the contracting officer must make a settlement for any upward or downward adjustments to the Federal share of costs after closeout reports are received.

(5) The recipient must account for any real property and equipment acquired with Federal funds or received from the Federal Government in accordance with §§ 600.321 through 600.325.

(6) If a final audit is required and has not been performed prior to the closeout of an award, DOE retains the right to recover an appropriate amount after fully considering the recommendations on disallowed costs resulting from the final audit.

§ 600.362 Subsequent adjustments and continuing responsibilities.

(a) The closeout of an award does not affect any of the following:

(1) The right of DOE to disallow costs and recover funds on the basis of a later audit or other review.

(2) The obligation of the recipient to return any funds due as a result of later refunds, corrections, or other transactions.

(3) Audit requirements in § 600.316.

(4) Property management requirements in §§ 600.321 through 600.325.

(5) Records retention requirements in § 600.342.

(b) After closeout of an award, the continuing responsibilities under an award may be modified or ended in whole or in part with the consent of

the contracting officer and the recipient, provided property management requirements are considered and provisions made for the continuing responsibilities of the recipient, as appropriate.

§ 600.363 Collection of amounts due.

(a) Any funds paid to a recipient in excess of the amount to which the recipient is finally determined to be entitled under the terms and conditions of the award constitute a debt to the Federal Government. If not paid within 30 days after the demand for payment, DOE may reduce the debt in accordance with the procedures and techniques described in 10 CFR part 1015 and OMB Circular A–129, including:

(1) Making an administrative offset against other requests for reimbursements.

(2) Withholding advance payments otherwise due to the recipient.

(3) Taking other action permitted by statute or regulation.

(b) Except as otherwise provided by law, DOE may charge interest and administrative fees on an overdue debt in accordance with 31 CFR Chapter IX, parts 900–904, ''Federal Claims Collection Standards.''

ADDITIONAL PROVISIONS

§ 600.380 Purpose.

The purpose of ''Additional Provisions'' is to provide alternative requirements for recipients otherwise covered by this subpart D, when they are performing under Small Business Innovation Research grants.

§ 600.381 Special provisions for Small Business Innovation Research Grants.

(a) *General*. This section contains provisions applicable to the Small Business Innovation Reserach (SBIR) Program.

(b) *Provisions Applicable to Phase I SBIR Awards:* Phase I SBIR awards may be made on a fixed obligation basis, subject to the following requirements.

(1) While proposed costs must be analyzed in detail to ensure consistency with applicable cost principles, incurred costs are not subject to review under the standards of cost allowability.

(2) Although detailed budgets are submitted by a recipient and reviewed by DOE for purposes of establishing the amount to be awarded, budget categories are not stipulated in making an award;

(3) Prior approval from the DOE for rebudgeting among categories by the recipient is not required. Prior approval from DOE is required for any variation from the requirement that no more than one-third of Phase I work can be done by subcontractors or consortium partners;

(4) Pre-award expenditure approval is not required;

(5) Payments are to be made in the same manner as other financial assistance (*see* § 600.312), except that, when determined appropriate by the cognizant program official and contracting officer, a lump sum payment may be made. If a lump sum payment is made, the award must contain a condition that requires the recipient to return to DOE amounts remaining unexpended at the end of the project if those amounts exceed $500;

(6) Recipients will certify in writing to the Contracting Officer at the end of the project that the activity was completed or the level of effort was expended. Should the activity or effort not be carried out, the recipeint would be expected to make appropriate reimbursements;

(7) Requirements for periodic reports may be established for each award so long as they are consistent with § 600.341;

(8) Changes in principal investigator or project leader, scope of effort, or institution, require the prior approval of DOE.

(c) *Provision Applicable to Phase II SBIR Awards*. Phase II SBIR awards may be made for a single budget period of 24 months.

(d) *Provisions Applicable to Phase I and Phase II SBIR Awards*. (1) The prior approval of the cognizant DOE Contracting Officer is required before the final budget period of the project period may be extended without additional funds.

(2) A fee or profit may be paid to SBIR recipients.

APPENDIX A TO SUBPART D OF PART 600—PATENT AND DATA PROVISIONS

1. Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit Organizations)
2. Patent Rights (Large Business Firms)—No Waiver
3. Rights in Data—General
4. Rights in Data—Programs Covered Under Special Protected Data Statutes

PATENT RIGHTS (SMALL BUSINESS FIRMS AND NONPROFIT ORGANIZATIONS)

(a) Definitions

Invention means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protected under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 *et seq.*).

Made when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

Nonprofit organization means a university or other institution of higher education or an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. 501(c)) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 501(a)) or any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a State nonprofit organization statute.

Practical application means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are to the extent permitted by law or Government regulations available to the public on reasonable terms.

Small business firm means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Public Law 85–536 (16 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this clause, the size standards for small business concerns involved in Government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.3 through 121.8 and 13 CFR 121.3 through 121.12, respectively, will be used.

Subject invention means any invention of the Recipient conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under this award, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d) must also occur during the period of award performance.

(b) Allocation of Principal Rights

The Recipient may retain the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world to each subject invention subject to the provisions of this Patent Rights clause and 35 U.S.C. 203. With respect to any subject invention in which the Recipient retains title, the Federal Government shall have a non-exclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the U.S. the subject invention throughout the world.

(c) Invention Disclosure, Election of Title and Filing of Patent Applications by Recipient

(1) The Recipient will disclose each subject invention to DOE within two months after the inventor discloses it in writing to Recipient personnel responsible for the administration of patent matters. The disclosure to DOE shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the award under which the invention was made and the inventor(s). It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding to the extent known at the time of disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and the physical, chemical, biological or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to DOE, the Recipient will promptly notify DOE of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the Recipient.

(2) The Recipient will elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any such invention by notifying DOE within two years of disclosure to DOE. However, in any case where publication, on sale, or public use has initiated the one-year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can still be obtained in the U.S., the period for election of title may be shortened by the agency to a date that is no more than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period.

(3) The Recipient will file its initial patent application on an invention to which it elects to retain title within one year after election of title or, if earlier, prior to the end of any statutory period wherein valid patent protection can be obtained in the U.S. after a publication, on sale, or public use. The Recipient will file patent applications in additional countries or international patent offices within either ten months of the corresponding initial patent application, or six months from the date when permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications when such filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order.

(4) Requests for extension of the time for disclosure to DOE, election, and filing under

subparagraphs (c)(1), (2), and (3) of this clause may, at the discretion of DOE, be granted.

(d) Conditions When the Government May Obtain Title

The Recipient will convey to DOE, upon written request, title to any subject invention:

(1) If the Recipient fails to disclose or elect the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this patent rights clause, or elects not to retain title; provided that DOE may only request title within 60 days after learning of the failure of the Recipient to disclose or elect within the specified times;

(2) In those countries in which the Recipient fails to file patent applications within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause; provided, however, that if the Recipient has filed a patent application in a country after the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause, but prior to its receipt of the written request of DOE, the Recipient shall continue to retain title in that country; or

(3) In any country in which the Recipient decides not to continue the prosecution of any application for, to pay the maintenance fees on, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on, a patent on a subject invention.

(e) Minimum Rights to Recipient and Protection of the Recipient Right To File

(1) The Recipient will retain a non-exclusive royalty-free license throughout the world in each subject invention to which the Government obtains title, except if the Recipient fails to disclose the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause. The Recipient's license extends to its domestic subsidiaries and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the Recipient is a party and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope of the extent the Recipient was legally obligated to do so at the time the award was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of DOE except when transferred to the successor of that part of the Recipient's business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The Recipient's domestic license may be revoked or modified by DOE to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions at 37 CFR part 404 and the agency's licensing regulation, if any. This license will not be revoked in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the Recipient has achieved practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. The license in any foreign country may be revoked or modified at discretion of the funding Federal agency to the extent the Recipient, its licensees, or its domestic subsidiaries or affiliates have failed to achieve practical application in that foreign country.

(3) Before revocation or modification of the license, the funding Federal agency will furnish the Recipient a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the Recipient will be allowed thirty days (or such other time as may be authorized by DOE for good cause shown by the Recipient) after the notice to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The Recipient has the right to appeal, in accordance with applicable regulations in 37 CFR part 404 and the agency's licensing regulations, if any, concerning the licensing of Government-owned inventions, any decision concerning the revocation or modification of its license.

(f) Recipient Action To Protect Government's Interest

(1) The Recipient agrees to execute or to have executed and promptly deliver to DOE all instruments necessary to:

(i) Establish or confirm the rights the Government has throughout the world in those subject inventions for which the Recipient retains title; and

(ii) Convey title to DOE when requested under paragraph (d) of this Patent Rights clause, and to enable the government to obtain patent protection throughout the world in that subject invention.

(2) The Recipient agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and non-technical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the Recipient each subject invention made under this award in order that the Recipient can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the Government's rights in the subject inventions. The disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information requested by paragraph (c)(1) of this Patent Rights clause. The Recipient shall instruct such employees through the employee agreements or other suitable educational programs on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

(3) The Recipient will notify DOE of any decision not to continue prosecution of a patent application, pay maintenance fees, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on a patent, in any country, not less

than 30 days before the expiration of the response period required by the relevant patent office.

(4) The Recipient agrees to include, within the specification of any U.S. patent application and any patent issuing thereon covering a subject invention, the following statement: ''This invention was made with Government support under (identify the award) awarded by (identify DOE). The Government has certain rights in this invention.''

(g) Subaward/Contract

(1) The Recipient will include this Patent Rights clause, suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work to be performed by a small business firm or nonprofit organization. The subrecipient/contractor will retain all rights provided for the Recipient in this Patent Rights clause, and the Recipient will not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subcontract, obtain rights in the subcontractors' subject inventions.

(2) The Recipient will include in all other subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work, the patent rights clause required by 10 CFR 600.325(c).

(3) In the case of subawards/contracts at any tier, DOE, the Recipient, and the subrecipient/contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subrecipient/contractor and DOE with respect to those matters covered by the clause.

(h) Reporting on Utilization of Subject Inventions

The Recipient agrees to submit on request periodic reports no more frequently than annually on the utilization of a subject invention or on efforts at obtaining such utilization that are being made by the Recipient or its licensees or assignees. Such reports shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commercial sale or use, gross royalties received by the Recipient and such other data and information as DOE may reasonably specify. The Recipient also agrees to provide additional reports in connection with any march-in proceeding undertaken by DOE in accordance with paragraph (j) of this Patent Rights clause. As required by 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), DOE agrees it will not disclose such information to persons outside the Government without the permission of the Recipient.

(i) Preference for United States Industry.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this Patent Rights clause, the Recipient agrees that neither it nor any assignee will grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the U.S. unless such person agrees that any products embodying the subject invention or produced through the use of the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the U.S. However, in individual cases, the requirement for such an agreement may be waived by DOE upon a showing by the Recipient or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to manufacture substantially in the U.S. or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially feasible.

(j) March-in-Rights

The Recipient agrees that with respect to any subject invention in which it has acquired title, DOE has the right in accordance with procedures at 37 CFR 401.6 and any supplemental regulations of the Agency to require the Recipient, an assignee or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a non-exclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant or applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances and if the Recipient, assignee, or exclusive licensee refuses such a request, DOE has the right to grant such a license itself if DOE determines that:

(1) Such action is necessary because the Recipient or assignee has not taken or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use;

(2) Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs which are not reasonably satisfied by the Recipient, assignee, or their licensees;

(3) Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the Recipient, assignee, or licensee; or

(4) Such action is necessary because the agreement required by paragraph (i) of this Patent Rights clause has not been obtained or waived or because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the U.S. is in breach of such agreement.

(k) Special Provisions for Awards With Nonprofit Organizations

If the Recipient is a nonprofit organization, it agrees that:

(1) Rights to a subject invention in the U.S. may not be assigned without the approval of DOE, except where such assignment is made to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions, provided that such assignee will be subject to the same provisions as the Recipient;

(2) The Recipient will share royalties collected on a subject invention with the inventor, including Federal employee co-inventors (when DOE deems it appropriate) when the subject invention is assigned in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(e) and 37 CFR 401.10;

(3) The balance of any royalties or income earned by the Recipient with respect to subject inventions, after payment of expenses (including payments to inventors) incidental to the administration of subject inventions, will be utilized for the support of scientific or engineering research or education; and

(4) It will make efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract licensees of subject inventions that are small business firms and that it will give preference to a small business firm if the Recipient determines that the small business firm has a plan or proposal for marketing the invention which, if executed, is equally likely to bring the invention to practical application as any plans or proposals from applicants that are not small business firms; provided that the Recipient is also satisfied that the small business firm has the capability and resources to carry out its plan or proposal. The decision whether to give a preference in any specific case will be at the discretion of the Recipient. However, the Recipient agrees that the Secretary of Commerce may review the Recipient's licensing program and decisions regarding small business applicants, and the Recipient will negotiate changes to its licensing policies, procedures or practices with the Secretary when the Secretary's review discloses that the Recipient could take reasonable steps to implement more effectively the requirements of this paragraph (k)(4).

(l) Communications

All communications required by this Patent Rights clause should be sent to the DOE Patent Counsel address listed in the Award Document.

(m) Electronic Filing

Unless otherwise Specified in the award, the information identified in paragraphs (f)(2) and (f)(3) may be electronically filed.

(End of clause)

PATENT RIGHTS (LARGE BUSINESS FIRMS)—NO WAIVER

(a) Definitions

DOE patent waiver regulations, as used in this clause, means the Department of Energy patent waiver regulations in effect on the date of award. See 10 CFR part 784.

Invention, as used in this clause, means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable of otherwise protectable under title 35 of the United States Code or any novel variety of plant that is or may be protectable under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321, *et seq.*).

Patent Counsel, as used in this clause, means the Department of Energy Patent Counsel assisting the awarding activity.

Subject invention, as used in this clause, means any invention of the Recipient conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this agreement.

(b) Allocations of Principal Rights

(1) Assignment to the Government. The Recipient agrees to assign to the Government the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world in and to each subject invention, except to the extent that rights are retained by the Recipient under subparagraph (b)(2) and paragraph (d) of this clause.

(2) Greater rights determinations. The Recipient, or an employee-inventor after consultation with the Recipient, may request greater rights than the nonexclusive license and the foreign patent rights provided in paragraph (d) of this clause on identified inventions in accordance with the DOE patent waiver regulation. Each determination of greater rights under this agreement shall be subject to paragraph (c) of this clause, unless otherwise provided in the greater rights determination, and to the reservations and conditions deemed to be appropriate by the Secretary of Energy or designee.

(c) Minimum Rights Acquired by the Government

With respect to each subject invention to which the Department of Energy grants the Recipient principal or exclusive rights, the Recipient agrees to grant to the Government: A nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced each subject invention throughout the world by or on behalf of the Government of the United States (including any Government agency); ''march-in rights'' as set forth in 37 CFR 401.14(a)(J)); preference for U.S. industry as set forth in 37 CFR 401.14(a)(I); periodic reports upon request, no more frequently than annually, on the utilization or intent of utilization of a subject invention in a manner consistent with 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(50; and such Government rights in any instrument transferring rights in a subject invention.

(d) Minimum Rights to the Recipient

(1) The Recipient is hereby granted a revocable, nonexclusive, royalty-free license in each patent application filed in any country on a subject invention and any resulting patent in which the Government obtains title, unless the Recipient fails to disclose the subject invention within the times specified in subparagraph (e)(2) of this clause. The Recipient's license extends to its domestic subsidiaries and affiliates, if any, within the

corporate structure of which the Recipient is a part and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope to the extent the Recipient was legally obligated to do so at the time the agreement was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of DOE except when transferred to the successor of that part of the Recipient's business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The Recipient may request the right to acquire patent rights to a subject invention in any foreign country where the Government has elected not to secure such rights, subject to the minimum rights acquired by the Government similar to paragraph (c) of this clause. Such request must be made in writhing to the Patent Counsel as part of the disclosure required by subparagraph (e)(2) of this clause, with a copy to the DOE Contracting Officer. DOE approval, if given, will be based on a determination that this would best serve the national interest.

(e) Invention Identification, Disclosures, and Reports

(1) The Recipient shall establish and maintain active and effective procedures to assure that subject inventions are promptly identified and disclosed to Recipient personnel responsible for patent matters within 6 months of conception and/or first actual reduction to practice, whichever occurs first in the performance of work under this agreement. These procedures shall include the maintenance of laboratory notebooks or equivalent records and other records as are reasonably necessary to document the conception and/or the first actual reduction to practice of subject inventions, and records that show that the procedures for identifying and disclosing the inventions are followed. Upon request, the Recipient shall furnish the Contracting Officer a description of such procedures for evaluation and for determination as to their effectiveness.

(2) The Recipient shall disclose each subject invention to the DOE Patent Counsel with a copy to the Contracting Officer within 2 months after the inventor discloses it in writing to Recipient personnel responsible for patent matters or, if earlier, within 6 months after the Recipient becomes aware that a subject invention has been made, but in any event before any on sale, public use, or publication of such invention known to the Recipient. The disclosure to DOE shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the agreement under which the invention was made and the inventor(s). It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding, to the extent known at the time of the disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and physical, chemical, biological, or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale, or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to DOE, the Recipient shall promptly notify Patent Counsel of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the Recipient. The report should also include any request for a greater rights determination in accordance with subparagraph (b)(2) of this clause. When an invention is disclosed to DOE under this paragraph, it shall be deemed to have been made in the manner specified in Sections (a)(1) and (a)(2) of 42 U.S.C. 5908, unless the Recipient contends in writing at the time the invention is disclosed that it was not so made.

(3) The Recipient shall furnish the Contracting Officer a final report, within 3 months after completion of the work listing all subject inventions or containing a statement that there were no such inventions, and listing all subawards/contracts at any tier containing a patent rights clause or containing a statement that there were no such subawards/contracts.

(4) The Recipient agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and nontechnical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the Recipient each subject invention made under subaward/contract in order that the Recipient can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c) of this clause, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the Government's rights in the subject inventions. This disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information required by subparagraph (e)(2) of this clause.

(5) The Recipient agrees, subject to FAR 27.302(j), that the Government may duplicate and disclose subject invention disclosures and all other reports and papers furnished or required to be furnished pursuant to this clause.

(f) Examination of Records Relating to Inventions

(1) The Contracting Officer or any authorized representative shall, until 3 years after final payment under this agreement, have the right to examine any books (including laboratory notebooks), records, and documents of the Recipient relating to the conception or first actual reduction to practice of inventions in the same field of technology as the work under this agreement to determine whether—

(i) Any such inventions are subject inventions;

(ii) The Recipient has established and maintains the procedures required by subparagraphs (e)(1) and (4) of this clause;

(iii) The Recipient and its inventors have complied with the procedures.

(2) If the Contracting Officer learns of an unreported Recipient invention which the Contracting Officer believes may be a subject invention, the Recipient may be required to disclose the invention to DOE for a determination of ownership rights.

(3) Any examination of records under this paragraph will be subject to appropriate conditions to protect the confidentiality of the information involved.

(g) Subaward/Contract

(1) The recipient shall include the clause PATENT RIGHTS (SMALL BUSINESS FIRMS AND NONPROFIT ORGANIZATIONS) (suitably modified to identify the parties) in all subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental, demonstration, or research work to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization, except where the work of the subaward/contract is subject to an Exceptional Circumstances Determination by DOE. In all other subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental, demonstration, or research work, the Recipient shall include this clause (suitably modified to identify the parties), or an alternate clause as directed by the contracting officer. The Recipient shall not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subaward/contract, obtain rights in the subrecipient's/contractor's subject inventions.

(2) In the event of a refusal by a prospective subrecipient/contractor to accept such a clause the Recipient:

(i) Shall promptly submit a written notice to the Contracting Officer setting forth the subrecipient/contractor's reasons for such refusal and other pertinent information that may expedite disposition of the matter; and

(ii) Shall not proceed with such subaward/contract without the written authorization of the Contracting Officer.

(3) In the case of subawards/contracts at any tier, DOE, the subrecipient/contractor, and Recipient agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subrecipient/contractor and DOE with respect to those matters covered by this clause.

(4) The Recipient shall promptly notify the Contracting Officer in writing upon the award of any subaward/contract at any tier containing a patent rights clause by identifying the subrecipient/contractor, the applicable patent rights clause, the work to be performed under the subaward/contract, and the dates of award and estimated completion. Upon request of the Contracting Officer, the Recipient shall furnish a copy of such subaward/contract, and, no more frequently than annually, a listing of the subawards/contracts that have been awarded.

(5) The Recipient shall identify all subject inventions of a subrecipient/contractor of which it acquires knowledge in the performance of this agreement and shall notify the Patent Counsel, with a copy to the contracting officer, promptly upon identification of the inventions.

(h) Atomic Energy

(1) No claim for pecuniary award of compensation under the provisions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, shall be asserted with respect to any invention or discovery made or conceived in the course of or under this agreement.

(2) Except as otherwise authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer, the Recipient will obtain patent agreements to effectuate the provisions of subparagraph (h)(1) of this clause from all persons who perform any part of the work under this agreement, except nontechnical personnel, such as clerical employees and manual laborers.

(i) Publication

It is recognized that during the course of the work under this agreement, the Recipient or its employees may from time to time desire to release or publish information regarding scientific or technical developments conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this agreement. In order that public disclosure of such information will not adversely affect the patent interests of DOE or the Recipient, patent approval for release of publication shall be secured from Patent Counsel prior to any such release or publication.

(j) Forfeiture of Rights in Unreported Subject Inventions

(1) The Recipient shall forfeit and assign to the Government, at the request of the Secretary of Energy or designee, all rights in any subject invention which the Recipient fails to report to Patent Counsel within six months after the time the Recipient:

(i) Files or causes to be filed a United States or foreign patent application thereon; or

(ii) Submits the final report required by subparagraph (e)(3) of this clause, whichever is later.

(2) However, the Recipient shall not forfeit rights in a subject invention if, within the time specified in subparagraph (e)(2) of this clause, the Recipient:

(i) Prepares a written decision based upon a review of the record that the invention was neither conceived nor first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under the agreement and delivers the decision to Patent Counsel, with a copy to the Contracting Officer, or

(ii) Contending that the invention is not a subject invention, the Recipient nevertheless discloses the invention and all facts pertinent to this contention to the Patent Counsel, with a copy of the Contracting Officer; or

(iii) Establishes that the failure to disclose did not result from the Recipient's fault or negligence.

(3) Pending written assignment of the patent application and patents on a subject invention determined by the Secretary of Energy or designee to be forfeited (such determination to be a final decision under the Disputes clause of this agreement), the Recipient shall be deemed to hold the invention and the patent applications and patents pertaining thereto in trust for the Government. The forfeiture provision of this paragraph (j) shall be in addition to and shall not supersede other rights and remedies which the Government may have with respect to subject inventions.

(End of clause)

RIGHTS IN DATA—GENERAL

(a) Definitions

Computer Data Bases, as used in this clause, means a collection of data in a form capable of, and for the purpose of, being stored in, processed, and operated on by a computer. The term does not include computer software.

Computer software, as used in this clause, means (i) computer programs which are data comprising a series of instructions, rules, routines or statements, regardless of the media in which recorded, that allow or cause a computer to perform a specific operation or series of operations and (ii) data comprising source code listings, design details, algorithms, processes, flow charts, formulae, and related material that would enable the computer program to be produced, created or compiled. The term does not include computer data bases.

Data, as used in this clause, means recorded information, regardless of form or the media on which it may be recorded. The term includes technical data and computer software. The term does not include information incidental to administration, such as financial, administrative, cost or pricing, or management information.

Form, fit, and function data, as used in this clause, means data relating to items, components, or processes that are sufficient to enable physical and functional interchangeability, as well as data identifying source, size, configuration, mating, and attachment characteristics, functional characteristics, and performance requirements; except that for computer software it means data identifying source, functional characteristics, and performance requirements but specifically excludes the source code, algorithm, process, formulae, and flow charts of the software.

Limited rights, as used in this clause, means the rights of the Government in limited rights data as set forth in the Limited Rights Notice of subparagraph (g)(2) if included in this clause.

Limited rights data, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) developed at private expense that embody trade secrets or are commercial or financial and confidential or privileged.

Restricted computer software, as used in this clause, means computer software developed at private expense and that is a trade secret; is commercial or financial and is confidential or privileged; or is published copyrighted computer software; including minor modifications of such computer software.

Restricted rights, as used in this clause, means the rights of the Government in restricted computer software, as set forth in a Restricted Rights Notice of subparagraph (g)(3) if included in this clause, or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated in and made part of this contract, including minor modifications of such computer software.

Technical data, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) which are of a scientific or technical nature. Technical data does not include computer software, but does include manuals and instructional materials and technical data formatted as a computer data base.

Unlimited rights, as used in this clause, means the right of the Government to use, disclose, reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, in any manner and for any purpose, and to have or permit others to do so.

(b) Allocations of Rights

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this clause regarding copyright, the Government shall have unlimited rights in—

(i) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement;

(ii) Form, fit, and function data delivered under this agreement;

(iii) Data delivered under this agreement (except for restricted computer software) that constitute manuals or instructional and training material for installation, operation, or routine maintenance and repair of items, components, or processes delivered or furnished for use under this agreement; and

(iv) All other data delivered under this agreement unless provided otherwise for limited rights data or restricted computer software in accordance with paragraph (g) of this clause.

(2) The Recipient shall have the right to—

(i) Use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or

specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this agreement, unless provided otherwise in paragraph (d) of this clause;

(ii) Protect from unauthorized disclosure and use those data which are limited rights data or restricted computer software to the extent provided in paragraph (g) of this clause;

(iii) Substantiate use of, add or correct limited rights, restricted rights, or copyright notices and to take over appropriate action, in accordance with paragraphs (e) and (f) of this clause; and

(iv) Establish claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement to the extent provided in subparagraph (c)(1) of this clause.

(c) Copyright

(1) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement. Unless provided otherwise in paragraph (d) of this clause, the Recipient may establish, without prior approval of the Contracting Officer, claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement. When claim to copyright is made, the Recipient shall affix the applicable copyright notices of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402 and acknowledgement of Government sponsorship (including agreement number) to the data when such data are delivered to the Government, as well as when the data are published or deposited for registration as a published work in the U.S. Copyright Office. For such copyrighted data, including computer software, the Recipient grants to the Government, and others acting on its behalf, a paid-up nonexclusive, irrevocable worldwide license in such copyrighted data to reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, by or on behalf of the Government.

(2) Data not first produced in the performance of this agreement. The Recipient shall not, without prior written permission of the Contracting Officer, incorporate in data delivered under this agreement any data not first produced in the performance of this agreement and which contains the copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402, unless the Recipient identifies such data and grants to the Government, or acquires on its behalf, a license of the same scope as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1) of this clause; provided, however, that if such data are computer software the Government shall acquire a copyright license as set forth in subparagraph (g)(3) of this clause if included in this agreement or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated in or made part of this agreement.

(3) Removal of copyright notices. The Government agrees not to remove any copyright notices placed on data pursuant to this paragraph (c), and to include such notices on all reproductions of the data.

(d) Release, Publication and Use of Data

(1) The Recipient shall have the right to use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this agreement, except to the extent such data may be subject to the Federal export control or national security laws or regulations, or unless otherwise provided in this paragraph of this clause or expressly set forth in this agreement.

(2) The Recipient agrees that to the extent it receives or is given access to data necessary for the performance of this award, which contain restrictive markings, the Recipient shall treat the data in accordance with such markings unless otherwise specifically authorized in writing by the contracting officer.

(e) Unauthorized Marking of Data

(1) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this agreement concerning inspection or acceptance, if any data delivered under this agreement are marked with the notices specified in subparagraph (g)(2) or (g)(3) of this clause and use of such is not authorized by this clause, or if such data bears any other restrictive or limiting markings not authorized by this agreement, the Contracting Officer may at any time either return the data to the Recipient or cancel or ignore the markings. However, the following procedures shall apply prior to canceling or ignoring the markings.

(i) The Contracting Officer shall make written inquiry to the Recipient affording the Recipient 30 days from receipt of the inquiry to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings;

(ii) If the Recipient fails to respond or fails to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the 30-day period (or a longer time not exceeding 90 days approved in writing by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown), the Government shall have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time after said period and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions.

(iii) If the Recipient provides written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the period set in subparagraph (e)(1)(i) of this clause, the Contracting Officer shall consider such written justification and determine whether or not the markings are to be cancelled or ignored. If the Contracting Officer determines that the markings are authorized, the Recipient shall be so notified in writing. If the Contracting Officer determines, with concurrence of the head of the contracting activity, that the markings are not authorized, the

Contracting Officer shall furnish the Recipient a written determination, which determination shall become the final agency decision regarding the appropriateness of the markings unless the Recipient files suit in a court of competent jurisdiction within 90 days of receipt of the Contracting Officer's decision. The Government shall continue to abide by the markings under this subparagraph (e)(1)(iii) until final resolution of the matter either by the Contracting Officer's determination becoming final (in which instance the Government shall thereafter have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions), or by final disposition of the matter by court decision if suit is filed.

(2) The time limits in the procedures set forth in subparagraph (e)(1) of this clause may be modified in accordance with agency regulations implementing the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if necessary to respond to a request thereunder.

(f) Omitted or Incorrect Markings

(1) Data delivered to the Government without either the limited rights or restricted rights notice as authorized by paragraph (g) of this clause, or the copyright notice required by paragraph (c) of this clause, shall be deemed to have been furnished with unlimited rights, and the Government assumes no liability for the disclosure, use, or reproduction of such data. However, to the extent the data has not been disclosed without restriction outside the Government, the Recipient may request, within 6 months (or a longer time approved by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown) after delivery or such data, permission to have notices placed on qualifying data at the Recipient's expense, and the Contracting Officer may agree to do so if the Recipient:

(i) Identifies the data to which the omitted notice is to be applied;

(ii) Demonstrates that the omission of the notice was inadvertent;

(iii) Establishes that the use of the proposed notice is authorized; and

(iv) Acknowledges that the Government has no liability with respect to the disclosure, use, or reproduction of any such data made prior to the addition of the notice or resulting from the omission of the notice.

(2) The Contracting Officer may also:

(i) Permit correction at the Recipient's expense of incorrect notices if the Recipient identifies the data on which correction of the notice is to be made, and demonstrates that the correct notice is authorized, or

(ii) Correct any incorrect notices.

(g) Protection of Limited Rights Data and Restricted Computer Software

When data other than that listed in subparagraphs (b)(1)(i), (ii), and (iii) of this clause are specified to be delivered under this agreement and qualify as either limited rights data or restricted computer software, if the Recipient desires to continue protection of such data, the Recipient shall withhold such data and not furnish them to the Government under this agreement. As a condition to this withholding, the Recipient shall identify the data being withheld and furnish form, fit, and function data in lieu thereof. Limited rights data that are formatted as a computer data base for delivery to the Government are to be treated as limited rights data and not restricted computer software.

(h) Subaward/Contract

The Recipient has the responsibility to obtain from its subrecipients/contractors all data and rights therein necessary to fulfill the Recipient's obligations to the Government under this agreement. If a subrecipient/contractor refuses to accept terms affording the Government such rights, the Recipient shall promptly bring such refusal to the attention of the Contracting Officer and not proceed with the subaward/contract award without further authorization.

(i) Additional Data Requirements

In addition to the data specified elsewhere in this agreement to be delivered, the Contracting Officer may, at anytime during agreement performance or within a period of 3 years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this agreement, order any data first produced or specifically used in the performance of this agreement. This clause is applicable to all data ordered under this subparagraph. Nothing contained in this subparagraph shall require the Recipient to deliver any data the withholding of which is authorized by this clause, or data which are specifically identified in this agreement as not subject to this clause. When data are to be delivered under this subparagraph, the Recipient will be compensated for converting the data into the prescribed form, for reproduction, and for delivery.

(j) The recipient agrees, except as may be otherwise specified in this award for specific data items listed as not subject to this paragraph, that the Contracting Officer or an authorized representative may, up to three years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this award, inspect at the Recipient's facility any data withheld pursuant to paragraph (g) of this clause, for purposes of verifying the Recipient's assertion pertaining to the limited rights or restricted rights status of the data or for evaluating work performance. Where the Recipient

whose data are to be inspected demonstrates to the Contracting Officer that there would be a possible conflict of interest if the inspection were made by a particular representative, the Contracting Officer shall designate an alternate inspector.

As prescribed in 600.325(d)(1), the following Alternate I and/or II may be inserted in the clause in the award instrument.

Alternate I:

(g)(2) Notwithstanding subparagraph (g)(1) of this clause, the agreement may identify and specify the delivery of limited rights data, or the Contracting Officer may require by written request the delivery of limited rights data that has been withheld or would otherwise be withholdable. If delivery of such data is so required, the Recipient may affix the following ''Limited Rights Notice'' to the data and the Government will thereafter treat the data, in accordance with such Notice:

LIMITED RIGHTS NOTICE

(a) These data are submitted with limited rights under Government agreement No. _____ (and subaward/contract No. _____, if appropriate). These data may be reproduced and used by the Government with the express limitation that they will not, without written permission of the Recipient, be used for purposes of manufacture nor disclosed outside the Government; except that the Government may disclose these data outside the Government for the following purposes, if any, provided that the Government makes such disclosure subject to prohibition against further use and disclosure:

(1) Use (except for manufacture) by Federal support services contractors within the scope of their contracts;

(2) This ''limited rights data'' may be disclosed for evaluation purposes under the restriction that the ''limited rights data'' be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed;

(3) This ''limited rights data'' may be disclosed to other contractors participating in the Government's program of which this Recipient is a part for information or use (except for manufacture) in connection with the work performed under their awards and under the restriction that the ''limited rights data'' be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed;

(4) This ''limited rights data'' may be used by the Government or others on its behalf for emergency repair or overhaul work under the restriction that the ''limited rights data'' be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed; and

(5) Release to a foreign government, or instrumentality thereof, as the interests of the United States Government may require, for information or evaluation, or for emergency repair or overhaul work by such government. This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of this data in whole or in part.

(b) This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of these data, in whole or in part.

(End of notice)

Alternate II:

(g)(3)(i) Notwithstanding subparagraph (g)(1) of this clause, the agreement may identify and specify the delivery of restricted computer software, or the Contracting Officer may require by written request the delivery of restricted computer software that has been withheld or would otherwise be withholdable. If delivery of such computer software is so required, the Recipient may affix the following ''Restricted Rights Notice'' to the computer software and the Government will thereafter treat the computer software, subject to paragraphs (e) and (f) of this clause, in accordance with the Notice.

RESTRICTED RIGHTS NOTICE

(a) This computer software is submitted with restricted rights under Government Agreement No. _____ (and subaward/contract _____, if appropriate). It may not be used, reproduced, or disclosed by the Government except as provided in paragraph (b) of this Notice or as otherwise expressly stated in the agreement.

(b) This computer software may be—

(1) Used or copies for use in or with the computer or computers for which it was acquired, including use at any Government installation to which such computer or computers may be transferred;

(2) Used or copied for use in a backup computer if any computer for which it was acquired is inoperative;

(3) Reproduced for safekeeping (archiv3es) or backup purposes;

(4) Modified, adapted, or combined with other computer software, provided that the modified, combined, or adapted portions of the derivative software are made subject to the same restricted rights;

(5) Disclosed to and reproduced for use by support service Recipients in accordance with subparagraph (b)(1) through (4) of this clause, provided the Government makes such disclosure or reproduction subject to these restricted rights; and

(6) Used or copied for use in or transferred to a replacement computer.

(c) Notwithstanding the foregoing, if this computer software is published copyrighted computer software, it is licensed to the Government, without disclosure prohibitions, with the minimum rights set forth in paragraph (b) of this clause.

(d) Any other rights or limitations regarding the use, duplication, or disclosure of this computer software are to be expressly stated, in, or incorporated in, the agreement.

(e) This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of this computer software, in whole or in part.

(End of notice)

(ii) Where it is impractical to include the Restricted Rights Notice on restricted computer software, the following short-form Notice may be used in lieu thereof:

RESTRICTED RIGHTS NOTICE

Use, reproduction, or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in agreement No. _____ (and subaward/contract _____, If appropriate) with _____ (name of Recipient and subrecipient/contractor).

(End of notice)

(iii) If restricted computer software is delivered with the copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401, it will be presumed to be published copyrighted computer software licensed to the government without disclosure prohibitions, with the minimum rights set forth in paragraph (b) of this clause, unless the Recipient includes the following statement with such copyright notice: ''Unpublished—rights reserved under the Copyright Laws of the United States.''

(End of clause)

RIGHTS IN DATA—PROGRAMS COVERED UNDER SPECIAL DATA STATUTES

(a) Definitions

Computer Data Bases, as used in this clause, means a collection of data in a form capable of, and for the purpose of, being stored in, processed, and operated on by a computer. The term does not include computer software.

Computer software, as used in this clause, means (i) computer programs which are data comprising a series of instructions, rules, routines, or statements, regardless of the media in which recorded, that allow or cause a computer to perform a specific operation or series of operations and (ii) data comprising source code listings, design details, algorithms, processes, flow charts, formulae and related material that would enable the computer program to be produced, created or compiled. The term does not include computer data bases.

Data, as used in this clause, means recorded information, regardless of form or the media on which it may be recorded. The term includes technical data and computer software. The term does not include information incidental to administration, such as financial, administrative, cost or pricing or management information.

Form, fit, and function data, as used in this clause, means data relating to items, components, or processes that are sufficient to enable physical and functional interchangeability as well as data identifying source, size, configuration, mating and attachment characteristics, functional characteristics, and performance requirements except that for computer software it means data identifying source, functional characteristics, and performance requirements but specifically excludes the source code, algorithm, process, formulae, and flow charts of the software.

Limited rights data, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) developed at private expense that embody trade secrets or are commercial or financial and confidential or privileged.

Restricted computer software, as used in this clause, means computer software developed at private expense and that is a trade secret; is commercial or financial and confidential or privileged; or is published copyrighted computer software; including modifications of such computer software.

Protected data, as used in this clause, means technical data or commercial or financial data first produced in the performance of the award which, if it had been obtained from and first produced by a non-federal party, would be a trade secret or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential under the meaning of 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4) and which data is marked as being protected data by a party to the award.

Protected rights, as used in this clause, mean the rights in protected data set forth in the Protected Rights Notice of paragraph (g) of this clause.

Technical data, as used in this clause, means that data which are of a scientific or technical nature. Technical data does not include computer software, but does include manuals and instructional materials and technical data formatted as a computer data base.

Unlimited rights, as used in this clause, means the right of the Government to use, disclose, reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, in any manner and for any purpose whatsoever, and to have or permit others to do so.

(b) Allocation of Rights

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this clause regarding copyright, the Government shall have unlimited rights in—

(i) Data specifically identified in this agreement as data to be delivered without restriction;

(ii) Form, fit, and function data delivered under this agreement;

(iii) Data delivered under this agreement (except for restricted computer software) that constitute manuals or instructional and training material for installation, operation, or routine maintenance and repair of items, components, or processes delivered or furnished for use under this agreement; and

(iv) All other data delivered under this agreement unless provided otherwise for protected data in accordance with paragraph (g) of this clause or for limited rights data or restricted computer software in accordance with paragraph (h) of this clause.

(2) The Recipient shall have the right to—

(i) Protect rights in protected data delivered under this agreement in the manner and to the extent provided in paragraph (g) of this clause;

(ii) Withhold from delivery those data which are limited rights data or restricted computer software to the extent provided in paragraph (h) of this clause;

(iii) Substantiate use of, add, or correct protected rights or copyrights notices and to take other appropriate action, in accordance with paragraph (e) of this clause; and

(iv) Establish claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement to the extent provided in subparagraph (c)(1) of this clause.

(c) Copyright

(1) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement. Except as otherwise specifically provided in this agreement, the Recipient may establish, without the prior approval of the Contracting Officer, claim to copyright subsisting in any data first produced in the performance of this agreement. If claim to copyright is made, the Recipient shall affix the applicable copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402 and acknowledgment of Government sponsorship (including agreement number) to the data when such data are delivered to the Government, as well as when the data are published or deposited for registration as a published work in the U.S. Copyright Office. For such copyrighted data, including computer software, the Recipient grants to the Government, and others acting on its behalf, a paid-up nonexclusive, irrevocable, worldwide license to reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, by or on behalf of the Government, for all such data.

(2) Data not first produced in the performance of this agreement. The Recipient shall not, without prior written permission of the Contracting Officer, incorporate in data delivered under this agreement any data that are not first produced in the performance of this agreement and that contain the copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402, unless the Recipient identifies such data and grants to the Government, or acquires on its behalf, a license of the same scope as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1) of this clause; provided, however, that if such data are computer software, the Government shall acquire a copyright license as set forth in subparagraph (h)(3) of this clause if included in this agreement or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated or made a part of this agreement.

(3) Removal of copyright notices. The Government agrees not to remove any copyright notices placed on data pursuant to this paragraph (c), and to include such notices on all reproductions of the data.

(d) Release, Publication and Use of Data

(1) The Receipt shall have the right to use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this contract, except to the extent such data may be subject to the Federal export control or national security laws or regulations, or unless otherwise provided in this paragraph of this clause or expressly set forth in this contract.

(2) The Recipient agrees that to the extent it receives or is given access to data necessary for the performance of this agreement which contain restrictive markings, the Recipient shall treat the data in accordance with such markings unless otherwise specifically authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer.

(e) Unauthorized Marking of Data

(1) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this agreement concerning inspection or acceptance, if any data delivered under this agreement are marked with the notices specified in subparagraph (g)(2) or (g)(3) of this clause and use of such is not authorized by this clause, or if such data bears any other restrictive or limiting markings not authorized by this agreement, the Contracting Officer may at any time either return the data to the Recipient or cancel or ignore the markings. However, the following procedures shall apply prior to canceling or ignoring the markings.

(i) The Contracting Officer shall make written inquiry to the Recipient affording the Recipient 30 days from receipt of the inquiry to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings;

(ii) If the Recipient fails to respond or fails to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the 30-day period (or a longer time not exceeding 90 days approved in writing by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown), the Government shall have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time after said period and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions.

(iii) If the Recipient provides written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the period set in subdivision (e)(1)(i) of this clause, the Contracting Officer shall consider such written justification and determine whether or not the markings are to be cancelled or ignored. If the Contracting Officer determines that

the markings are authorized, the Recipient shall be so notified in writing. If the Contracting Officer determines, with concurrence of the head of the contracting activity, that the markings are not authorized, the Contracting Officer shall furnish the Recipient a written determination, which determination shall become the final agency decision regarding the appropriateness of the markings unless the Recipient files suit in a court of competent jurisdiction within 90 days of receipt of the Contracting Officer's decision. The Government shall continue to abide by the markings under this subdivision (e)(1)(iii) until final resolution of the matter either by the Contracting Officer's determination become final (in which instance the Government shall thereafter have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions), or by final disposition of the matter by court decision if suit is filed.

(2) The time limits in the procedures set forth in subparagraph (e)(1) of this clause may be modified in accordance with agency regulations implementing the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if necessary to respond to a request thereunder.

(f) Omitted or Incorrect Markings

(1) Data delivered to the Government without either the limited rights or restricted rights notice as authorized by paragraph (*g*) of this clause, or the copyright notice required by paragraph (c) of this clause, shall be deemed to have been furnished with unlimited rights, and the Government assumes no liability for the disclosure, use, or reproduction of such data. However, to the extent the data has not been disclosed without restriction outside the Government, the Recipient may request, within 6 months (or a longer time approved by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown) after delivery of such data, permission to have notices placed on qualifying data at the Recipient's expense, and the Contracting Officer may agree to do so if the Recipient—

(i) Identifies the data to which the omitted notice is to be applied;

(ii) Demonstrates that the omission of the notice was inadvertent;

(iii) Establishes that the use of the proposed notice is authorized; and

(iv) Acknowledges that the Government has no liability with respect to the disclosure, use, or reproduction of any such data made prior to the addition of the notice or resulting from the omission of the notice.

(2) The Contracting Officer may also:

(i) Permit correction at the Recipient's expense of incorrect notices if the Recipient identifies the data on which correction of the notice is to be made, and demonstrates that the correct notice is authorized; or

(ii) Correct any incorrect notices.

(g) Rights to Protected Data

(1) The Recipient may, with the concurrence of DOE, claim and mark as protected data, any data first produced in the performance of this award that would have been treated as a trade secret if developed at private expense. Any such claimed ''protected data'' will be clearly marked with the following Protected Rights Notice, and will be treated in accordance with such Notice, subject to the provisions of paragraphs (e) and (f) of this clause.

PROTECTED RIGHTS NOTICE

These protected data were produced under agreement no. _____ with the U.S. Department of Energy and may not be published, disseminated, or disclosed to others outside the Government until (NOTE:) The period of protection of such data is fully negotiable, but cannot exceed the applicable statutorily authorized maximum), unless express written authorization is obtained from the recipient. Upon expiration of the period of protection set forth in this Notice, the Government shall have unlimited rights in this data. This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of this data, in whole or in part.

(End of notice)

(2) Any such marked Protected Data may be disclosed under obligations of confidentiality for the following purposes:

(a) For evaluation purposes under the restriction that the ''Protected Data'' be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed; or

(b) To subcontractors or other team members performing work under the Government's (insert name of program or other applicable activity) program of which this award is a part, for information or use in connection with the work performed under their activity, and under the restriction that the Protected Data be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed.

(3) The obligations of confidentiality and restrictions on publication and dissemination shall end for any Protected Data.

(a) At the end of the protected period;

(b) If the data becomes publicly known or available from other sources without a breach of the obligation of confidentiality with respect to the Protected Data;

(c) If the same data is independently developed by someone who did not have access to the Protected Data and such data is made available without obligations of confidentiality; or

(d) If the Recipient disseminates or authorizes another to disseminate such data without obligations of confidentiality.

(4) However, the Recipient agrees that the following types of data are not considered to be protected and shall be provided to the Government when required by this award

without any claim that the data are Protected Data. The parties agree that notwithstanding the following lists of types of data, nothing precludes the Government from seeking delivery of additional data in accordance with this award, or from making publicly available additional non-protected data, nor does the following list constitute any admission by the Government that technical data not on the list is Protected Data. (NOTE: It is expected that this paragraph will specify certain types of mutually agreed upon data that will be available to the public and will not be asserted by the recipient/contractor as limited rights or protected data).

(5) The Government's sole obligation with respect to any protected data shall be as set forth in this paragraph (g).

(h) Protection of Limited Rights Data

When data other than that listed in subparagraphs (b)(1)(i), (ii), and (iii) of this clause are specified to be delivered under this agreement and such data qualify as either limited rights data or restricted computer software, the Recipient, if the Recipient desires to continue protection of such data, shall withhold such data and not furnish them to the Government under this agreement. As a condition to this withholding the Recipient shall identify the data being withheld and furnish form, fit, and function data in lieu thereof.

(i) Subaward/Contract

The Recipient has the responsibility to obtain from its subrecipients/contractors all data and rights therein necessary to fulfill the Recipient's obligations to the Government under this agreement. If a subrecipient/contractor refuses to accept terms affording the Government such rights, the Recipient shall promptly bring such refusal to the attention of the Contracting Officer and not proceed with subaward/contract award without further authorization.

(j) Additional Data Requirements

In addition to the data specified elsewhere in this agreement to be delivered, the Contracting Officer may, at anytime during agreement performance or within a period of 3 years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this agreement, order any data first produced or specifically used in the performance of this agreement. This clause is applicable to all data ordered under this subparagraph. Nothing contained in this subparagraph shall require the Recipient to deliver any data the withholding of which is authorized by this clause or data which are specifically identified in this agreement as not subject to this clause. When data are to be delivered under this subparagraph, the Recipient will be compensated for converting the data into the prescribed form, for reproduction, and for delivery.

(k) The Recipient agrees, except as may be otherwise specified in this agreement for specific data items listed as not subject to this paragraph, that the Contracting Officer or an authorized representative may, up to three years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this contract, inspect at the Recipient's facility any data withheld pursuant to paragraph (h) of this clause, for purposes of verifying the Recipient's assertion pertaining to the limited rights or restricted rights status of the data or for evaluating work performance. Where the Recipient whose data are to be inspected demonstrates to the Contracting Officer that there would be a possible conflict of interest if the inspection were made by a particular representative, the Contracting Officer shall designate an alternate inspector.

As prescribed in 600.325(e)(2), the following Alternate I and/or II may be inserted in the clause in the award instrument.

Alternate I:

(h)(2) Notwithstanding subparagraph (h)(1) of this clause, the agreement may identify and specify the delivery of limited rights data, or the Contracting Officer may require by written request the delivery of limited rights data that has been withheld or would otherwise be withholdable. If delivery of such data is so required, the Recipient may affix the following ''Limited Rights Notice'' to the data and the Government will thereafter treat the data, in accordance with such Notice:

LIMITED RIGHTS NOTICE

(a) These data are submitted with limited rights under Government agreement No. _____ (and subaward/contract No. _____, if appropriate). These data may be reproduced and used by the Government with the express limitation that they will not, without written permission of the Recipient, be used for purposes of manufacture nor disclosed outside the Government; except that the Government may disclose these data outside the Government for the following purposes, if any, provided that the Government makes such disclosure subject to prohibition against further use and disclosure:

(1) Use (except for manufacture) by Federal support services contractors within the scope of their contracts;

(2) This ''limited rights data'' may be disclosed for evaluation purposes under the restriction that the ''limited rights data'' be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed;

(3) This ''limited rights data'' may be disclosed to other contractors participating in the Government's program of which this Recipient is a part for information or use (except for manufacture) in connection with the

work performed under their awards and under the restriction that the ''limited rights data'' be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed;

(4) This ''limited rights data'' may be used by the Government or others on its behalf for emergency repair or overhaul work under the restriction that the ''limited rights data'' be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed; and

(5) Release to a foreign government, or instrumentality thereof, as the interests of the United States Government may require, for information or evaluation, or for emergency repair or overhaul work by such government. This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of this data in whole or in part.

(b) This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of these data, in whole or in part.

(End of notice)

Alternate II:

(h)(3)(i) Notwithstanding subparagraph (h)(1) of this clause, the agreement may identify and specify the delivery of restricted computer software, or the Contracting Officer may require by written request the delivery of restricted computer software that has been withheld or would otherwise be withholdable. If delivery of such computer software is so required, the Recipient may affix the following ''Restricted Rights Notice'' to the computer software and the Government will thereafter treat the computer software, subject to paragraphs (d) and (e) of this clause, in accordance with the Notice:

RESTRICTED RIGHTS NOTICE

(a) This computer software is submitted with restricted rights under Government Agreement No. _____ (and subaward/contract _____, if appropriate). It may not be used, reproduced, or disclosed by the Government except as provided in paragraph (c) of this Notice or as otherwise expressly stated in the agreement.

(b) This computer software may be—

(1) Used or copied for use in or with the computer or computers for which it was acquired, including use at any Government installation to which such computer or computers may be transferred;

(2) Used or copies for use in a backup computer if any computer for which it was acquired is inoperative;

(3) Reproduced for safekeeping (archives) or backup purposes;

(4) Modified, adapted, or combined with other computer software, provided that the modified, combined, or adapted portions of the derivative software are made subject to the same restricted rights;

(5) Disclosed to and reproduced for use by Federal support service Contractors in accordance with subparagraphs (b)(1) through (4) of this clause, provided the Government makes such disclosure or reproduction subject to these restricted rights; and

(6) Used or copies for use in or transferred to a replacement computer.

(c) Notwithstanding the foregoing, if this computer software is published copyrighted computer software, it is licensed to the Government, without disclosure prohibitions, with the minimum rights set forth in paragraph (b) of this clause.

(d) Any other rights or limitations regarding the use, duplication, or disclosure of this computer software are to be expressly stated in, or incorporated in, the agreement.

(e) This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of this computer software, in whole or in part.

(End of notice)

(ii) Where it is impractical to include the Restricted Rights Notice on restricted computer software, the following short-form Notice may be used in lieu thereof:

RESTRICTED RIGHTS NOTICE

Use, reproduction, or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in Agreement No. _____ (and subaward/contract _____, if appropriate) with _____ (name of Recipient and subrecipient/contractor).

(End of notice)

(iii) If restricted computer software is delivered with the copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401, it will be presumed to be published copyrighted computer software licensed to the Government without disclosure prohibitions, with the minimum rights set forth in paragraph (b) of this clause, unless the Recipient includes the following statement with such copyright notice: ''Unpublished—rights reserved under the Copyright Laws of the United States.''

(End of clause)

APPENDIX B TO SUBPART D OF PART 600—CONTRACT PROVISIONS

All contracts awarded by a recipient, including those for amounts less than the simplified acquisition threshold, must contain the following provisions as applicable:

1. *Equal Employment Opportunity*—All contracts must contain a provision requiring compliance with E.O. 11246 (3 CFR, 1964–1965 Comp., p. 339), ''Equal Employment Opportunity,'' as amended by E.O. 11375 (3 CFR, 1966–1970 Comp., p. 684), ''Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity,'' and as supplemented by regulations at 41 CFR chapter 60, ''Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor.''

2. *Copeland ''Anti-Kickback'' Act (18 U.S.C. 874 and 40 U.S.C. 276c)*—All contracts and subawards in excess of $2,000 for construction or repair awarded by recipients and subrecipients must include a provision for compliance with the Copeland ''Anti-Kickback'' Act (18 U.S.C. 874), as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 3, ''Contractors and Subcontractors on Public Building or Public Work Financed in Whole or in Part by Loans or Grants from the United States''). The Act provides that each contractor or subrecipient must be prohibited from inducing, by any means, any person employed in the construction, completion, or repair of public work, to give up any part of the compensation to which he is otherwise entitled. The recipient must report all suspected or reported violations to the responsible DOE contracting officer.

3. *Contact Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327–333)*—Where applicable, all contracts awarded by recipients in excess of $100,000 for construction and other purposes that involve the employment of mechanics or laborers must include a provision for compliance with Sections 102 and 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327–333), as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5). Under Section 102 of the Act, each contractor is required to compute the wages of every mechanic and laborer on the basis of a standard work week of 40 hours. Work in excess of the standard work week is permissible provided that the worker is compensated at a rate of not less than 1½ times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours in the work week. Section 107 of the Act is applicable to construction work and provides that no laborer or mechanic is required to work in surroundings or under working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous. These requirements do not apply to the purchases of supplies or materials or articles ordinarily available on the open market, or contracts for transportation or transmission of intelligence.

4. *Rights to Inventions and Data Made Under a Contract or Agreement*—Contracts or agreements for the performance of experimental, development, or research work must provide for the rights of the Federal Government and the recipient in any resulting invention in accordance with 10 CFR 600.325 and Appendix A—Patent and Data Rights to Subpart D, Part 600.

5. *Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq.), as amended*—Contracts and subawards of amounts in excess of $100,000 must contain a provision that requires the recipient to agree to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act (41 U.S.C. 7401 *et seq.*) and the Federal Water Pollution control act as amended (33 U.S.C. 1251 *et seq.*). Violations must be reported to the responsible DOE contracting officer and the Regional Office of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

6. *Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment (31 U.S.C. 1352)*—Contractors who apply or bid for an award of $100,000 or more must file the required certification. Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C.1352. Each tier must also disclose any lobbing with non-Federal funds that takes place in connection with obtaining any Federal award. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the recipient.

7. *Debarment and Suspension (E.O.s 12549 and 12689*—Contract awards that exceed the simplified acquisition threshold and certain other contract awards must not be made to parties listed on nonprocurement portion of the General Services Administration's Lists of Parties Excluded from Federal Procurement and Nonprocurement Programs in accordance with E.O.s 12549 (3 CFR, 1986 Comp., p. 189) and 12689 (3 CFR, 1989 Comp., p. 235),''Debarment and Suspension.'' This list contains the names of parties debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded by agencies, and contractors declared ineligible under statutory or regulatory authority other than E.O. 12549. Contractors with awards that exceed the small purchase threshold must provide the required certification regarding its exclusion status and that of its principals.

8. *Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a)*—As a general rule, it is unlikely that the Davis-Bacon Act, which among other things requires payment of prevailing wages on projects for the construction of public works, would apply to financial assistance awards. However, the presence of certain factors (*e.g.*, requirement of particular program statutes; title to a construction facility resting in the Government) might necessitate a closer analysis of the award, to determine if the Davis-Bacon Act would apply in the particular factual situation presented.

Subpart E [Reserved]

Subpart F—Eligibility Determination for Certain Financial Assistance Programs—General Statement of Policy

SOURCE: 60 FR 65514, Dec. 20, 1995, unless otherwise noted.

§ 600.500 Purpose and scope.

This subpart implements section 2306 of the Energy Policy Act of 1992, 42 U.S.C. 13525, and sets forth a general statement of policy, including procedures and interpretations, for the guidance of implementing DOE officials in making mandatory pre-award determinations of eligibility for financial assistance under Titles XX through XXIII of that Act.

§ 600.501 Definitions.

The definitions in § 600.3 of this part, including the definition of the term ''financial assistance,'' are applicable to this subpart. In addition, as used in this subpart:

Act means the Energy Policy Act of 1992.

Company means any business entity other than an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. § 501 (c)(3)).

Covered program means a program under Titles XX through XXIII of the Act. (A list of covered programs, updated periodically as appropriate, is maintained and published by the Department of Energy.)

Parent company means a company that:

(1) Exercises ultimate ownership of the applicant company either directly, by ownership of a majority of that company's voting securities, or indirectly, by control over a majority of that company's voting securities through one or more intermediate subsidiary companies or otherwise, and

(2) Is not itself subject to the ultimate ownership control of another company.

United States means the several States, the District of Columbia, and all commonwealths, territories, and possessions of the United States.

United States-owned company means:

(1) A company that has majority ownership by individuals who are citizens of the United States, or

(2) A company organized under the laws of a State that either has no parent company or has a parent company organized under the laws of a State.

Voting security has the meaning given the term in the Public Utility Holding Company Act (15 U.S.C. 15b(17)).

§ 600.502 What must DOE determine.

A company shall be eligible to receive an award of financial assistance under a covered program only if DOE finds that—

(a) Consistent with § 600.503, the company's participation in a covered program would be in the economic interest of the United States; and

(b) The company is either—

(1) A United States-owned company; or

(2) Incorporated or organized under the laws of any State and has a parent company which is incorporated or organized under the laws of a country which—

(i) Affords to the United States-owned companies opportunities, comparable to those afforded to any other company, to participate in any joint venture similar to those authorized under the Act;

(ii) Affords to United States-owned companies local investment opportunities comparable to those afforded to any other company; and

(iii) Affords adequate and effective protection for the intellectual property rights of United States-owned companies.

§ 600.503 Determining the economic interest of the United States.

In determining whether participation of an applicant company in a covered program would be in the economic interest of the United States under § 600.502(a), DOE may consider any evidence showing that a financial assistance award would be in the economic interest of the United States including, but not limited to—

(a) Investments by the applicant company and its affiliates in the United States in research, development, and manufacturing (including, for example, the manufacture of major

components or subassemblies in the United States);

(b) Significant contributions to employment in the United States by the applicant company and its affiliates; and

(c) An agreement by the applicant company, with respect to any technology arising from the financial assistance being sought—

(1) To promote the manufacture within the United States of products resulting from that technology (taking into account the goals of promoting the competitiveness of United States industry); and

(2) To procure parts and materials from competitive suppliers.

§ 600.504 Information an applicant must submit.

(a) Any applicant for financial assistance under a covered program shall submit with the application for financial assistance, or at such later time as may be specified by DOE, evidence for DOE to consider in making findings required under § 600.502(a) and findings concerning ownership status under § 600.502(b).

(b) If an applicant for financial assistance is submitting evidence relating to future undertakings, such as an agreement under § 600.503(c) to promote manufacture in the United States of products resulting from a technology developed with financial assistance or to procure parts and materials from competitive suppliers, the applicant shall submit a representation affirming acceptance of these undertakings. The applicant should also briefly describe its plans, if any, for any manufacturing of products arising from the program-supported research and development, including the location where such manufacturing is expected to occur.

(c) If an applicant for financial assistance is claiming to be a United States-owned company, the applicant must submit a representation affirming that it falls within the definition of that term provided in § 600.501.

(d) DOE may require submission of additional information deemed necessary to make any portion of the determination required by § 600.502.

§ 600.505 Other information DOE may consider.

In making the determination under § 600.502(b)(2), DOE may—

(a) consider information on the relevant international and domestic law obligations of the country of incorporation of the parent company of an applicant;

(b) consider information relating to the policies and practices of the country of incorporation of the parent company of an applicant with respect to:

(1) The eligibility criteria for, and the experience of United States-owned company participation in, energy-related research and development programs;

(2) Local investment opportunities afforded to United States-owned companies; and

(3) Protection of intellectual property rights of United States-owned companies;

(c) Seek and consider advice from other federal agencies, as appropriate; and

(d) Consider any publicly available information in addition to the information provided by the applicant.

APPENDIX A TO PART 600—GENERALLY APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS

Socioeconomic Policy Requirements

Nondiscrimination in Federally Assisted Programs, 10 CFR part 1040 (45 FR 40514, June 13, 1980), as proposed to be amended by 46 FR 49546 (October 6, 1981).

Nondiscrimination Provisions in Federally Assisted Construction Contracts, Part III of Executive Order 11246 (September 24, 1965), 3 CFR 1964—65 Comp., p. 345.

Comprehensive Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism Prevention, Treatment and Rehabilitation Act of 1970, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4581).

Drug Abuse Office and Treatment Act of 1972, as amended (21 U.S.C. 1174).

Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4151 *et seq.*).

National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4321 *et seq.*), 40 CFR part 1500, as implemented by (45 FR 20694, March 28, 1980).

Sec. 306, Clean Air Act, as amended (42 U.S.C. 7606c).

Sec. 508, Federal Water Pollution Control Act of 1972 (33 U.S.C. 1251 *et seq.*); Executive Order 11738, September 12, 1973.

Title XIV, Public Health Service Act, as amended (42 U.S.C. 300f—*et seq.*).

Sec. 102(a), Flood Disaster Protection Act of 1973 (Pub. L. 93–234, 87 Stat. 975).

10 CFR part 1022, ''Protection of Wetlands and Floodplains.''

Uniform Relocation Assistance and Land Acquisition Policies Act of 1970 (42 U.S.C. 4601 *et seq.*).

Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972, as amended (16 U.S.C. 1451 *et seq.*) (15 CFR part 930).

Endangered Species Act of 1973, as amended (16 U.S.C. 1531 *et seq.*).

Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act (16 U.S.C. 661 *et seq.*).

Sec. 106, National Historic Preservation Act of 1966, as amended (16 U.S.C. 470f); Executive Order 11593, ''Protection and Enhancement of the Cultural Environment,'' May 13, 1971, 3 CFR 1971 Comp., p. 154; Archaeological and Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (16 U.S.C. 469 *et seq.*); Protection of Historic and Cultural Properties, 36 CFR part 800.

Wild and Scenic Rivers Act of 1968, as amended (16 U.S.C. 1271 *et seq.*).

Protection of Human Subjects, 10 CFR part 745.

Federal Laboratory Animal Welfare Act (7 U.S.C. 2131 *et seq.*) (9 CFR parts 1, 2, and 3).

Lead-Based Paint Prohibition (42 U.S.C. 4831(b)).

Sec. 7(b), Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act (25 U.S.C. 450e(b)).

Cargo Preference Act of 1954 (46 U.S.C. 1241(b)) (46 CFR §381.7).

International Air Transportation Fair Competitive Practices Act of 1974 (49 U.S.C. 1517).

Executive Order 12138, ''Creating a National Women's Business Enterprise Policy and Prescribing Arrangements for Developing, Coordinating, and Implementing a National Program for Women's Business Enterprise,'' (May 18, 1979) 3 CFR 1979 Comp., p. 393.

Sec. 403(b), Power Plant and Industrial Fuel Use Act of 1978, (42 U.S.C. 8373(b)); Executive Order 12185 (December 17, 1979, 3 CFR 1979 Comp., p. 474).

Administrative and Fiscal Policy Requirements

The Hatch Act (5 U.S.C. 1501–1508).

Federal Reports Act, as amended by the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980, Pub. L. 96–511 (44 U.S.C. 3501 *et seq.*).

OMB Circular A–111, Jointly Funded Assistance to State and Local Governments and Nonprofit Organizations—Policies and Procedures.

Federal Claims Collection Act of 1966, Pub. L. 89–508, 89 Stat. 309 (31 U.S.C. 951 *et seq.*).

OMB Circular A–88, Coordinating Indirect Cost Rates and Audit at Educational Institutions.

OMB Circular A–73, Audit of Federal Operations and Programs.

Single Audit Act of 1984, Pub. L. 98–502.

OMB Circular A–128, Audits of State and Local Governments.

[47 FR 44108, Oct. 5, 1982, as amended at 50 FR 42361, Oct. 18, 1985; 51 FR 4297, Feb. 4, 1986]

APPENDIX B TO PART 600—AUDIT REPORT DISTRIBUTEES

Distributee: Manager, Eastern Region, Office of Inspector General, U.S. Department of Energy, P.O. Box 1328, Oak Ridge, Tennessee 37831–1328.

For recipients in: Alabama, Arkansas, Connecticut, Delaware, District of Columbia, Florida, Georgia, Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Kentucky, Louisiana, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, Michigan, Minnesota, Mississippi, Missouri, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New York, North Carolina, Ohio, Pennsylvania, Puerto Rico, Rhode Island, South Carolina, Tennessee, Vermont, Virgin Islands, Virginia, West Virginia, Wisconsin.

Distributee: Manager, Western Region, Office of Inspector General, U.S. Department of Energy, P.O. Box 5400, Albuquerque, New Mexico 87115.

For recipients in: Alaska, Arizona, California, Colorado, Hawaii, Idaho, Kansas, Montana, Nebraska, Nevada, New Mexico, North Dakota, Oklahoma, Oregon, South Dakota, Texas, Utah, Washington, Wyoming.

[50 FR 42361, Oct. 18, 1985; 51 FR 4297, Feb. 4, 1986]

PART 601—NEW RESTRICTIONS ON LOBBYING

Subpart A—General

Sec.
601.100 Conditions on use of funds.
601.105 Definitions.
601.110 Certification and disclosure.

Subpart B—Activities by Own Employees

601.200 Agency and legislative liaison.
601.205 Professional and technical services.
601.210 Reporting.

Subpart C—Activities by Other Than Own Employees

601.300 Professional and technical services.

Subpart D—Penalties and Enforcement

601.400 Penalties.
601.405 Penalty procedures.
601.410 Enforcement.

Subpart E—Exemptions

601.500 Secretary of Defense.

Subpart F—Agency Reports

601.600 Semi-annual compilation.
601.605 Inspector General report.
APPENDIX A TO PART 601—CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING
APPENDIX B TO PART 601—DISCLOSURE FORM TO REPORT LOBBYING

AUTHORITY: 31 U.S.C. 1352; 42 U.S.C. 7254 and 7256; 31 U.S.C. 6301–6308; 28 U.S.C. 2461 note.

SOURCE: 55 FR 6737, 6746, Feb. 26, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

CROSS REFERENCE: See also Office of Management and Budget notice published at 54 FR 52306, Dec. 20, 1989.

Subpart A—General

§ 601.100 Conditions on use of funds.

(a) No appropriated funds may be expended by the recipient of a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative ageement to pay any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with any of the following covered Federal actions: the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(b) Each person who requests or receives from an agency a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement shall file with that agency a certification, set forth in appendix A, that the person has not made, and will not make, any payment prohibited by paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) Each person who requests or receives from an agency a Federal contract, grant, loan, or a cooperative agreement shall file with that agency a disclosure form, set forth in appendix B, if such person has made or has agreed to make any payment using nonappropriated funds (to include profits from any covered Federal action), which would be prohibited under paragraph (a) of this section if paid for with appropriated funds.

(d) Each person who requests or receives from an agency a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan shall file with that agency a statement, set forth in appendix A, whether that person has made or has agreed to make any payment to influence or attempt to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with that loan insurance or guarantee.

(e) Each person who requests or receives from an agency a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan shall file with that agency a disclosure form, set forth in appendix B, if that person has made or has agreed to make any payment to influence or attempt to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with that loan insurance or guarantee.

§ 601.105 Definitions.

For purposes of this part:

(a) *Agency*, as defined in 5 U.S.C. 552(f), includes Federal executive departments and agencies as well as independent regulatory commissions and Government corporations, as defined in 31 U.S.C. 9101(1).

(b) *Covered Federal action* means any of the following Federal actions:

(1) The awarding of any Federal contract;

(2) The making of any Federal grant;

(3) The making of any Federal loan;

(4) The entering into of any cooperative agreement; and,

(5) The extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

Covered Federal action does not include receiving from an agency a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan. Loan guarantees and loan insurance are addressed independently within this part.

(c) *Federal contract* means an acquisition contract awarded by an agency, including those subject to the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR), and any

other acquisition contract for real or personal property or services not subject to the FAR.

(d) *Federal cooperative agreement* means a cooperative agreement entered into by an agency.

(e) *Federal grant* means an award of financial assistance in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, by the Federal Government or a direct appropriation made by law to any person. The term does not include technical assistance which provides services instead of money, or other assistance in the form of revenue sharing, loans, loan guarantees, loan insurance, interest subsidies, insurance, or direct United States cash assistance to an individual.

(f) *Federal loan* means a loan made by an agency. The term does not include loan guarantee or loan insurance.

(g) *Indian tribe* and *tribal organization* have the meaning provided in section 4 of the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act (25 U.S.C. 450B). Alaskan Natives are included under the definitions of Indian tribes in that Act.

(h) *Influencing or attempting to influence* means making, with the intent to influence, any communication to or appearance before an officer or employee or any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with any covered Federal action.

(i) *Loan guarantee* and *loan insurance* means an agency's guarantee or insurance of a loan made by a person.

(j) *Local government* means a unit of government in a State and, if chartered, established, or otherwise recognized by a State for the performance of a governmental duty, including a local public authority, a special district, an intrastate district, a council of governments, a sponsor group representative organization, and any other instrumentality of a local government.

(k) *Officer or employee of an agency* includes the following individuals who are employed by an agency:

(1) An individual who is appointed to a position in the Government under title 5, U.S. Code, including a position under a temporary appointment;

(2) A member of the uniformed services as defined in section 101(3), title 37, U.S. Code;

(3) A special Government employee as defined in section 202, title 18, U.S. Code; and,

(4) An individual who is a member of a Federal advisory committee, as defined by the Federal Advisory Committee Act, title 5, U.S. Code appendix 2.

(l) *Person* means an individual, corporation, company, association, authority, firm, partnership, society, State, and local government, regardless of whether such entity is operated for profit or not for profit. This term excludes an Indian tribe, tribal organization, or any other Indian organization with respect to expenditures specifically permitted by other Federal law.

(m) *Reasonable compensation* means, with respect to a regularly employed officer or employee of any person, compensation that is consistent with the normal compensation for such officer or employee for work that is not furnished to, not funded by, or not furnished in cooperation with the Federal Government.

(n) *Reasonable payment* means, with respect to perfessional and other technical services, a payment in an amount that is consistent with the amount normally paid for such services in the private sector.

(o) *Recipient* includes all contractors, subcontractors at any tier, and subgrantees at any tier of the recipient of funds received in connection with a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement. The term excludes an Indian tribe, tribal organization, or any other Indian organization with respect to expenditures specifically permitted by other Federal law.

(p) *Regularly employed* means, with respect to an officer or employee of a person requesting or receiving a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement or a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan, an officer or employee who is employed by such person for at least 130 working days within one year immediately preceding the date of the submission that initiates agency consideration of such person for

receipt of such contract, grant, loan, cooperative agreement, loan insurance commitment, or loan guarantee commitment. An officer or employee who is employed by such person for less than 130 working days within one year immediately preceding the date of the submission that initiates agency consideration of such person shall be considered to be regularly employed as soon as he or she is employed by such person for 130 working days.

(q) *State* means a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, a territory or possession of the United States, an agency or instrumentality of a State, and a multi-State, regional, or interstate entity having governmental duties and powers.

§ 601.110 Certification and disclosure.

(a) Each person shall file a certification, and a disclosure form, if required, with each submission that initiates agency consideration of such person for:

(1) Award of a Federal contract, grant, or cooperative agreement exceeding $100,000; or

(2) An award of a Federal loan or a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan exceeding $150,000.

(b) Each person shall file a certification, and a disclosure form, if required, upon receipt by such person of:

(1) A Federal contract, grant, or cooperative agreement exceeding $100,000; or

(2) A Federal loan or a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan exceeding $150,000,

unless such person previously filed a certification, and a disclosure form, if required, under paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) Each person shall file a disclosure form at the end of each calendar quarter in which there occurs any event that requires disclosure or that materially affects the accuracy of the information contained in any disclosure form previously filed by such person under paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section. An event that materially affects the accuracy of the information reported includes:

(1) A cumulative increase of $25,000 or more in the amount paid or expected to be paid for influencing or attempting to influence a covered Federal action; or

(2) A change in the person(s) or individual(s) influencing or attempting to influence a covered Federal action; or,

(3) A change in the officer(s), employee(s), or Member(s) contacted to influence or attempt to influence a covered Federal action.

(d) Any person who requests or receives from a person referred to in paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section:

(1) A subcontract exceeding $100,000 at any tier under a Federal contract;

(2) A subgrant, contract, or subcontract exceeding $100,000 at any tier under a Federal grant;

(3) A contract or subcontract exceeding $100,000 at any tier under a Federal loan exceeding $150,000; or,

(4) A contract or subcontract exceeding $100,000 at any tier under a Federal cooperative agreement,

shall file a certification, and a disclosure form, if required, to the next tier above.

(e) All disclosure forms, but not certifications, shall be forwarded from tier to tier until received by the person referred to in paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section. That person shall forward all disclosure forms to the agency.

(f) Any certification or disclosure form filed under paragraph (e) of this section shall be treated as a material representation of fact upon which all receiving tiers shall rely. All liability arising from an erroneous representation shall be borne solely by the tier filing that representation and shall not be shared by any tier to which the erroneous representation is forwarded. Submitting an erroneous certification or disclosure constitutes a failure to file the required certification or disclosure, respectively. If a person fails to file a required certification or disclosure, the United States may pursue all available remedies, including those authorized by section 1352, title 31, U.S. Code.

(g) For awards and commitments in process prior to December 23, 1989, but not made before that date, certifications shall be required at award or

commitment, covering activities occurring between December 23, 1989, and the date of award or commitment. However, for awards and commitments in process prior to the December 23, 1989 effective date of these provisions, but not made before December 23, 1989, disclosure forms shall not be required at time of award or commitment but shall be filed within 30 days.

(h) No reporting is required for an activity paid for with appropriated funds if that activity is allowable under either subpart B or C.

Subpart B—Activities by Own Employees

§ 601.200 Agency and legislative liaison.

(a) The prohibition on the use of appropriated funds, in § 601.100 (a), does not apply in the case of a payment of reasonable compensation made to an officer or employee of a person requesting or receiving a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement if the payment is for agency and legislative liaison activities not directly related to a covered Federal action.

(b) For purposes of paragraph (a) of this section, providing any information specifically requested by an agency or Congress is allowable at any time.

(c) For purposes of paragraph (a) of this section, the following agency and legislative liaison activities are allowable at any time only where they are not related to a specific solicitation for any covered Federal action:

(1) Discussing with an agency (including individual demonstrations) the qualities and characteristics of the person's products or services, conditions or terms of sale, and service capabilities; and,

(2) Technical discussions and other activities regarding the application or adaptation of the person's products or services for an agency's use.

(d) For purposes of paragraph (a) of this section, the following agencies and legislative liaison activities are allowable only where they are prior to formal solicitation of any covered Federal action:

(1) Providing any information not specifically requested but necessary for an agency to make an informed decision about initiation of a covered Federal action;

(2) Technical discussions regarding the preparation of an unsolicited proposal prior to its official submission; and,

(3) Capability presentations by persons seeking awards from an agency pursuant to the provisions of the Small Business Act, as amended by Public Law 95–507 and other subsequent amendments.

(e) Only those activities expressly authorized by this section are allowable under this section.

§ 601.205 Professional and technical services.

(a) The prohibition on the use of appropriated funds, in § 601.100 (a), does not apply in the case of a payment of reasonable compensation made to an officer or employee of a person requesting or receiving a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement or an extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement if payment is for professional or technical services rendered directly in the preparation, submission, or negotiation of any bid, proposal, or application for that Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement or for meeting requirements imposed by or pursuant to law as a condition for receiving that Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(b) For purposes of paragraph (a) of this section, ''professional and technical services'' shall be limited to advice and analysis directly applying any professional or technical discipline. For example, drafting of a legal document accompanying a bid or proposal by a lawyer is allowable. Similarly, technical advice provided by an engineer on the performance or operational capability of a piece of equipment rendered directly in the negotiation of a contract is allowable. However, communications with the intent to influence made by a professional (such as a licensed lawyer) or a technical person (such as a licensed accountant) are not allowable under this section unless they provide advice and analysis directly applying their professional or

technical expertise and unless the advice or analysis is rendered directly and solely in the preparation, submission or negotiation of a covered Federal action. Thus, for example, communications with the intent to influence made by a lawyer that do not provide legal advice or analysis directly and solely related to the legal aspects of his or her client's proposal, but generally advocate one proposal over another are not allowable under this section because the lawyer is not providing professional legal services. Similarly, communications with the intent to influence made by an engineer providing an engineering analysis prior to the preparation or submission of a bid or proposal are not allowable under this section since the engineer is providing technical services but not directly in the preparation, submission or negotiation of a covered Federal action.

(c) Requirements imposed by or pursuant to law as a condition for receiving a covered Federal award include those required by law or regulation, or reasonably expected to be required by law or regulation, and any other requirements in the actual award documents.

(d) Only those services expressly authorized by this section are allowable under this section.

§ 601.210 Reporting.

No reporting is required with respect to payments of reasonable compensation made to regularly employed officers or employees of a person.

Subpart C—Activities by Other Than Own Employees

§ 601.300 Professional and technical services.

(a) The prohibition on the use of appropriated funds, in § 601.100 (a), does not apply in the case of any reasonable payment to a person, other than an officer or employee of a person requesting or receiving a covered Federal action, if the payment is for professional or technical services rendered directly in the preparation, submission, or negotiation of any bid, proposal, or application for that Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement or for meeting requirements imposed by or pursuant to law as a condition for receiving that Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(b) The reporting requirements in § 601.110 (a) and (b) regarding filing a disclosure form by each person, if required, shall not apply with respect to professional or technical services rendered directly in the preparation, submission, or negotiation of any commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan.

(c) For purposes of paragraph (a) of this section, ''professional and technical services'' shall be limited to advice and analysis directly applying any professional or technical discipline. For example, drafting or a legal document accompanying a bid or proposal by a lawyer is allowable. Similarly, technical advice provided by an engineer on the performance or operational capability of a piece of equipment rendered directly in the negotiation of a contract is allowable. However, communications with the intent to influence made by a professional (such as a licensed lawyer) or a technical person (such as a licensed accountant) are not allowable under this section unless they provide advice and analysis directly applying their professional or technical expertise and unless the advice or analysis is rendered directly and solely in the preparation, submission or negotiation of a covered Federal action. Thus, for example, communications with the intent to influence made by a lawyer that do not provide legal advice or analysis directly and solely related to the legal aspects of his or her client's proposal, but generally advocate one proposal over another are not allowable under this section because the lawyer is not providing professional legal services. Similarly, communications with the intent to influence made by an engineer providing an engineering analysis prior to the preparation or submission of a bid or proposal are not allowable under this section since the engineer is providing technical services but not directly in the preparation, submission or negotiation of a covered Federal action.

(d) Requirements imposed by or pursuant to law as a condition for receiving a covered Federal award include those required by law or regulation, or reasonably expected to be required by law or regulation, and any other requirements in the actual award documents.

(e) Persons other than officers or employees of a person requesting or receiving a covered Federal action include consultants and trade associations.

(f) Only those services expressly authorized by this section are allowable under this section.

Subpart D—Penalties and Enforcement

§ 601.400 Penalties.

(a) Any person who makes an expenditure prohibited herein shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $15,000 and not more than $160,000 for each such expenditure.

(b) Any person who fails to file or amend the disclosure form (see appendix B) to be filed or amended if required herein, shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $15,000 and not more than $160,000 for each such failure.

(c) A filing or amended filing on or after the date on which an administrative action for the imposition of a civil penalty is commenced does not prevent the imposition of such civil penalty for a failure occurring before that date. An administrative action is commenced with respect to a failure when an investigating official determines in writing to commence an investigation of an allegation of such failure.

(d) In determining whether to impose a civil penalty, and the amount of any such penalty, by reason of a violation by any person, the agency shall consider the nature, circumstances, extent, and gravity of the violation, the effect on the ability of such person to continue in business, any prior violations by such person, the degree of culpability of such person, the ability of the person to pay the penalty, and such other matters as may be appropriate.

(e) First offenders under paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of $15,000, absent aggravating circumstances. Second and subsequent offenses by persons shall be subject to an appropriate civil penalty between $15,000 and $160,000, as determined by the agency head or his or her designee.

(f) An imposition of a civil penalty under this section does not prevent the United States from seeking any other remedy that may apply to the same conduct that is the basis for the imposition of such civil penalty.

[55 FR 6737, 6746, Feb. 26, 1990, as amended at 62 FR 46183, Sept. 2, 1997; 74 FR 66032, Dec. 14, 2009; 79 FR 19, Jan. 2, 2014]

§ 601.405 Penalty procedures.

Agencies shall impose and collect civil penalties pursuant to the provisions of the Program Fraud and Civil Remedies Act, 31 U.S.C. 3803 (except subsection (c)), 3804, 3805, 3806, 3807, 3808, and 3812, insofar as these provisions are not inconsistent with the requirements herein.

§ 601.410 Enforcement.

The head of each agency shall take such actions as are necessary to ensure that the provisions herein are vigorously implemented and enforced in that agency.

Subpart E—Exemptions

§ 601.500 Secretary of Defense.

(a) The Secretary of Defense may exempt, on a case-by-case basis, a covered Federal action from the prohibition whenever the Secretary determines, in writing, that such an exemption is in the national interest. The Secretary shall transmit a copy of each such written exemption to Congress immediately after making such a determination.

(b) The Department of Defense may issue supplemental regulations to implement paragraph (a) of this section.

Subpart F—Agency Reports

§ 601.600 Semi-annual compilation.

(a) The head of each agency shall collect and compile the disclosure reports (see appendix B) and, on May 31 and November 30 of each year, submit to the Secretary of the Senate and the

Clerk of the House of Representatives a report containing a compilation of the information contained in the disclosure reports received during the six-month period ending on March 31 or September 30, respectively, of that year.

(b) The report, including the compilation, shall be available for public inspection 30 days after receipt of the report by the Secretary and the Clerk.

(c) Information that involves intelligence matters shall be reported only to the Select Committee on Intelligence of the Senate, the Permanent Select Committee on Intelligence of the House of Representatives, and the Committees on Appropriations of the Senate and the House of Representatives in accordance with procedures agreed to by such committees. Such information shall not be available for public inspection.

(d) Information that is classified under Executive Order 12356 or any successor order shall be reported only to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives or the Committees on Armed Services of the Senate and the House of Representatives (whichever such committees have jurisdiction of matters involving such information) and to the Committees on Appropriations of the Senate and the House of Representatives in accordance with procedures agreed to by such committees. Such information shall not be available for public inspection.

(e) The first semi-annual compilation shall be submitted on May 31, 1990, and shall contain a compilation of the disclosure reports received from December 23, 1989 to March 31, 1990.

(f) Major agencies, designated by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB), are required to provide machine-readable compilations to the Secretary of the Senate and the Clerk of the House of Representatives no later than with the compilations due on May 31, 1991. OMB shall provide detailed specifications in a memorandum to these agencies.

(g) Non-major agencies are requested to provide machine-readable compilations to the Secretary of the Senate and the Clerk of the House of Representatives.

(h) Agencies shall keep the originals of all disclosure reports in the official files of the agency.

§ 601.605 Inspector General report.

(a) The Inspector General, or other official as specified in paragraph (b) of this section, of each agency shall prepare and submit to Congress each year, commencing with submission of the President's Budget in 1991, an evaluation of the compliance of that agency with, and the effectiveness of, the requirements herein. The evaluation may include any recommended changes that may be necessary to strengthen or improve the requirements.

(b) In the case of an agency that does not have an Inspector General, the agency official comparable to an Inspector General shall prepare and submit the annual report, or, if there is no such comparable official, the head of the agency shall prepare and submit the annual report.

(c) The annual report shall be submitted at the same time the agency submits its annual budget justifications to Congress.

(d) The annual report shall include the following: All alleged violations relating to the agency's covered Federal actions during the year covered by the report, the actions taken by the head of the agency in the year covered by the report with respect to those alleged violations and alleged violations in previous years, and the amounts of civil penalties imposed by the agency in the year covered by the report.

APPENDIX A TO PART 601—CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING

Certification for Contracts, Grants, Loans, and Cooperative Agreements

The undersigned certifies, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

(1) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the

extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(2) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, ''Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying,'' in accordance with its instructions.

(3) The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all subawards at all tiers (including subcontracts, subgrants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by section 1352, title 31, U.S. Code. Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $15,000 and not more than $160,000 for each such failure.

Statement for Loan Guarantees and Loan Insurance

The undersigned states, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

If any funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, ''Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying,'' in accordance with its instructions.

Submission of this statement is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by section 1352, title 31, U.S. Code. Any person who fails to file the required statement shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $15,000 and not more than $160,000 for each such failure.

[55 FR 6737, 6746, Feb. 26, 1990, as amended at 62 FR 46184, Sept. 2, 1997; 74 FR 66032, Dec. 14, 2009; 79 FR 19, Jan. 2, 2014]

APPENDIX B TO PART 601—DISCLOSURE FORM TO REPORT LOBBYING

DISCLOSURE OF LOBBYING ACTIVITIES

Approved by OMB
0348-0046

Complete this form to disclose lobbying activities pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1352
(See reverse for public burden disclosure.)

1. Type of Federal Action:
☐ a. contract
b. grant
c. cooperative agreement
d. loan
e. loan guarantee
f. loan insurance

2. Status of Federal Action:
☐ a. bid/offer/application
b. initial award
c. post-award

3. Report Type:
☐ a. initial filing
b. material change
For Material Change Only:
year _____ quarter _____
date of last report _____

4. Name and Address of Reporting Entity:
☐ Prime ☐ Subawardee
Tier _____, *if known*:

Congressional District, *if known*:

5. If Reporting Entity in No. 4 is Subawardee, Enter Name and Address of Prime:

Congressional District, *if known*:

6. Federal Department/Agency:

7. Federal Program Name/Description:

CFDA Number, *if applicable*: _____

8. Federal Action Number, *if known*:

9. Award Amount, *if known*:
$

10. a. Name and Address of Lobbying Entity
(if individual, last name, first name, MI):

b. Individuals Performing Services *(including address if different from No. 10a)*
(last name, first name, MI):

(attach Continuation Sheet(s) SF-LLL-A, if necessary)

11. Amount of Payment *(check all that apply)*:
$ _____ ☐ actual ☐ planned

12. Form of Payment *(check all that apply)*:
☐ a. cash
☐ b. in-kind; specify: nature _____
value _____

13. Type of Payment *(check all that apply)*:
☐ a. retainer
☐ b. one-time fee
☐ c. commission
☐ d. contingent fee
☐ e. deferred
☐ f. other; specify: _____

14. Brief Description of Services Performed or to be Performed and Date(s) of Service, including officer(s), employee(s), or Member(s) contacted, for Payment Indicated in Item 11:

(attach Continuation Sheet(s) SF-LLL-A, if necessary)

15. Continuation Sheet(s) SF-LLL-A attached: ☐ Yes ☐ No

16. Information requested through this form is authorized by title 31 U.S.C. section 1352. This disclosure of lobbying activities is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed by the tier above when this transaction was made or entered into. This disclosure is required pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1352. This information will be reported to the Congress semi-annually and will be available for public inspection. Any person who fails to file the required disclosure shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such failure.

Signature: _____
Print Name: _____
Title: _____
Telephone No.: _____ **Date:** _____

Federal Use Only:

Authorized for Local Reproduction
Standard Form - LLL

DISCLOSURE OF LOBBYING ACTIVITIES
CONTINUATION SHEET

Approved by OMB
0348-0046

Reporting Entity: _____ **Page** _____ **of** _____

Authorized for Local Reproduction
Standard Form - LLL-A

INSTRUCTIONS FOR COMPLETION OF SF-LLL, DISCLOSURE OF LOBBYING ACTIVITIES

This disclosure form shall be completed by the reporting entity, whether subawardee or prime Federal recipient, at the initiation or receipt of a covered Federal action, or a material change to a previous filing, pursuant to title 31 U.S.C. section 1352. The filing of a form is required for each payment or agreement to make payment to any lobbying entity for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with a covered Federal action. Use the SF-LLL-A Continuation Sheet for additional information if the space on the form is inadequate. Complete all items that apply for both the initial filing and material change report. Refer to the implementing guidance published by the Office of Management and Budget for additional information.

1. Identify the type of covered Federal action for which lobbying activity is and/or has been secured to influence the outcome of a covered Federal action.
2. Identify the status of the covered Federal action.
3. Identify the appropriate classification of this report. If this is a followup report caused by a material change to the information previously reported, enter the year and quarter in which the change occurred. Enter the date of the last previously submitted report by this reporting entity for this covered Federal action.
4. Enter the full name, address, city, state and zip code of the reporting entity. Include Congressional District, if known. Check the appropriate classification of the reporting entity that designates if it is, or expects to be, a prime or subaward recipient. Identify the tier of the subawardee, e.g., the first subawardee of the prime is the 1st tier. Subawards include but are not limited to subcontracts, subgrants and contract awards under grants.
5. If the organization filing the report in item 4 checks "Subawardee", then enter the full name, address, city, state and zip code of the prime Federal recipient. Include Congressional District, if known.
6. Enter the name of the Federal agency making the award or loan commitment. Include at least one organizational level below agency name, if known. For example, Department of Transportation, United States Coast Guard.
7. Enter the Federal program name or description for the covered Federal action (item 1). If known, enter the full Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA) number for grants, cooperative agreements, loans, and loan commitments.
8. Enter the most appropriate Federal identifying number available for the Federal action identified in item 1 (e.g., Request for Proposal (RFP) number; Invitation for Bid (IFB) number; grant announcement number; the contract, grant, or loan award number; the application/proposal control number assigned by the Federal agency). Include prefixes, e.g., "RFP-DE-90-001."
9. For a covered Federal action where there has been an award or loan commitment by the Federal agency, enter the Federal amount of the award/loan commitment for the prime entity identified in item 4 or 5.
10. (a) Enter the full name, address, city, state and zip code of the lobbying entity engaged by the reporting entity identified in item 4 to influence the covered Federal action.

    (b) Enter the full names of the individual(s) performing services, and include full address if different from 10 (a). Enter Last Name, First Name, and Middle Initial (MI).
11. Enter the amount of compensation paid or reasonably expected to be paid by the reporting entity (item 4) to the lobbying entity (item 10). Indicate whether the payment has been made (actual) or will be made (planned). Check all boxes that apply. If this is a material change report, enter the cumulative amount of payment made or planned to be made.
12. Check the appropriate box(es). Check all boxes that apply. If payment is made through an in-kind contribution, specify the nature and value of the in-kind payment.
13. Check the appropriate box(es). Check all boxes that apply. If other, specify nature.
14. Provide a specific and detailed description of the services that the lobbyist has performed, or will be expected to perform, and the date(s) of any services rendered. Include all preparatory and related activity, not just time spent in actual contact with Federal officials. Identify the Federal official(s) or employee(s) contacted or the officer(s), employee(s), or Member(s) of Congress that were contacted.
15. Check whether or not a SF-LLL-A Continuation Sheet(s) is attached.
16. The certifying official shall sign and date the form, print his/her name, title, and telephone number.

Public reporting burden for this collection of information is estimated to average 30 mintues per response, including time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed, and completing and reviewing the collection of information. Send comments regarding the burden estimate or any other aspect of this collection of information, including suggestions for reducing this burden, to the Office of Management and Budget, Paperwork Reduction Project (0348-0046), Washington, D.C. 20503.

PART 602—EPIDEMIOLOGY AND OTHER HEALTH STUDIES FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE PROGRAM

Sec.

602.1 Purpose and scope.
602.2 Applicability.
602.3 Definitions.
602.4 Exceptions.
602.5 Epidemiology and Other Health Studies Financial Assistance Program.
602.6 Eligibility.
602.7 Solicitation.
602.8 Application requirements.

602.9 Application evaluation and selection.
602.10 Additional requirements.
602.11 Funding.
602.12 Cost sharing.
602.13 Limitation of DOE liability.
602.14 Fee.
602.15 Indirect cost limitations.
602.16 National security.
602.17 Continuation funding and reporting requirements.
602.18 Dissemination of results.
602.19 Records and data.
APPENDIX A TO PART 602—SCHEDULE OF RENEWAL APPLICATIONS AND REPORTS

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 2051; 42 U.S.C. 5817; 42 U.S.C. 5901–5920; 42 U.S.C. 7254 and 7256; 31 U.S.C. 6301–6308.

SOURCE: 60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, unless otherwise noted.

§ 602.1 Purpose and scope.

This part sets forth the policies and procedures applicable to the award and administration of grants and cooperative agreements by DOE (through the Office of Environment, Health Safety and Security or any office to which its functions are subsequently redelegated) for health related research, education/training, conferences, communication, and related activities.

[60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, as amended at 71 FR 68729, Nov. 28, 2006; 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014; 80 FR 5007, Jan. 30, 2015]

§ 602.2 Applicability.

(a) This part applies to all grants and cooperative agreements awarded after the effective date of this rule.

(b) Except as otherwise provided by this part, the award and administration of grants and cooperative agreements shall be governed by 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910 (DOE Financial Assistance Regulation).

[60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, as amended at 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 602.3 Definitions.

In addition to the definitions provided in 2 CFR part 200 and 2 CFR part 910, the following definitions are provided for purposes of this part:

Conference and communication activities means scientific or technical conferences, symposia, workshops, seminars, public meetings, publications, video or slide shows, and other presentations for the purpose of communicating or exchanging information or views pertinent to DOE.

DOE means the United States Department of Energy.

Education/Training means support for education or related activities for an individual or organization that will enhance educational levels and skills, in particular, scientific or technical areas of interest to DOE.

Epidemiology and Other Health Studies means research pertaining to potential health effects resulting from DOE or predecessor agency operations or from any aspect of energy production, transmission, or use (including electromagnetic fields) in the United States and abroad. Related systems or activities to enhance these areas, as well as other program areas that may be described by notice published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, are also included.

Principal investigator means the scientist or other individual designated by the recipient to direct the project.

Research means basic and applied research and that part of development not related to the development of specific systems or products. The primary aim of research is scientific study and experimentation directed toward advancing the state of the art or increasing knowledge or understanding rather than focusing on a specific system or product.

[60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, as amended at 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 602.4 Exceptions.

(a) Single-case exceptions from this part may be authorized in writing by the Associate Under Secretary for Environment, Health, Safety and Security, the Head of the Contracting Activity, or their designees, upon the written request of DOE staff, an applicant for award, or a recipient. A request from an applicant or a recipient must be submitted to or through the cognizant contracting officer.

(b) Whenever a proposed deviation from this part would be a deviation from 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910, the deviation must also be authorized in accordance with the procedures prescribed in that part.

[60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, as amended at 71 FR 68729, Nov. 28, 2006; 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014; 80 FR 5007, Jan. 30, 2015]

§ 602.5 Epidemiology and Other Health Studies Financial Assistance Program.

(a) DOE may issue under this part awards for research, education/training, conferences, communication, and related activities in the Office of Environment, Health, Safety and Security program areas set forth in paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) The program areas are:

(1) Health experience of DOE and DOE contractor workers;

(2) Health experience of populations living near DOE facilities;

(3) Workers exposed to toxic substances, such as beryllium;

(4) Use of biomarkers to recognize exposure to toxic substances;

(5) Epidemiology and other health studies relating to energy production, transmission, and use (including electromagnetic fields) in the United States and abroad;

(6) Compilation, documentation, management, use, and analysis of data for the DOE Comprehensive Epidemiologic Data Resource; and

(7) Other systems or activities enhancing these areas, as well as other program areas as may be described by notice published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

[60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, as amended at 71 FR 68729, Nov. 28, 2006; 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014; 80 FR 5007, Jan. 30, 2015]

§ 602.6 Eligibility.

Any individual or entity other than a Federal agency is eligible for a grant or cooperative agreement. An unaffiliated individual is also eligible for a grant or cooperative agreement.

§ 602.7 Solicitation.

(a) The Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance number for 10 CFR part 602 is 81.108 and its solicitation control number is EOHSFAP 10 CFR part 602.

(b) An application for a new or renewal award under this solicitation may be submitted at any time to DOE at the address specified in paragraph (c) of this section. New or renewal applications shall receive consideration for funding generally within 6 months but, in any event, no later than 12 months from the date of receipt by DOE.

(c) Except as otherwise provided in a notice of availability, applicants may obtain application forms, described in 602.8(b) of this part, and additional information from the Office of Domestic and International Health Studies, AU–13, U.S. Department of Energy, 1000 Independence Avenue SW., Washington, DC 20585, 301–903–2340, and shall submit applications to the same address.

(d) DOE will publish program notices in the FEDERAL REGISTER regarding the availability of epidemiology and other health studies financial assistance. DOE may also use other means of communication, as appropriate, such as the publication of notices of availability in trade and professional journals and news media.

(1) Each notice of availability shall cite this part and shall include:

(i) The Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance number and solicitation control number of the program;

(ii) The amount of money available or estimated to be available for award;

(iii) The name of the responsible DOE program official to contact for additional information and an address where application forms may be obtained;

(iv) The address for submission of applications; and

(v) Any evaluation criteria in addition to those set forth in § 602.9 of this part.

(2) The notice of availability may also include any other relevant information helpful to applicants such as:

(i) Program objectives;

(ii) A project agenda or potential area of project initiatives;

(iii) Problem areas requiring additional effort; and

(iv) Any other information that identifies areas in which grants or cooperative agreements may be made.

(e) DOE is under no obligation to pay for any costs associated with the preparation or submission of applications.

(f) DOE reserves the right to fund, in whole or in part, any, all, or none of the applications submitted.

(g) To be considered for a renewal award under this part, an incumbent recipient shall submit a continuation

or renewal application, as provided in § 602.8 (c) and (h) of this part.

[60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, as amended at 71 FR 68729, Nov. 28, 2006; 80 FR 5007, Jan. 30, 2015]

§ 602.8 Application requirements.

(a) An original and seven copies of the application for initial support must be submitted, except that State and local governments and Indian tribal governments shall not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of the application.

(b) Each new or renewal application in response to this part must include:

(1) An application face page, DOE Form 4650.2 (approved by OMB under OMB Control No. 1910–1400). However, the face page of an application submitted by a State or local government or an Indian tribal government shall be the face page of Standard Form 424 (approved by OMB under OMB Control Number 0348–0043).

(2) A detailed description of the proposed project, including its objectives, its relationship to DOE's program, its impact on the environment, if any, and the applicant's plan for carrying it out.

(3) Detailed information about the background and experience of the recipients of funds or, as appropriate, the principal investigator(s) (including references to publications), the facilities and experience of the applicant, and the cost-sharing arrangements, if any.

(4) A detailed budget for the entire proposed period of support with written justification sufficient to evaluate the itemized list of costs provided on the entire project. Applicants should note the following when preparing budgets:

(i) Numerical details on items of cost provided by State and local government and Indian tribal government applicants shall be on Standard Form 424A, ''Budget Information for Non-Construction Programs'' (approved under OMB Control No. 0348–0044). All other applicants shall use budget forms ERF 4620.1 (approved by OMB under Control No. 1910–1400).

(ii) DOE may, subsequent to receipt of an application, request additional budgetary information from an applicant when necessary for clarification or make informed pre-award determinations under 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910.

(5) Any pre-award assurances required pursuant to 10 CFR parts 600 and 602.

(c) Applications for a renewal award must be submitted with an original and seven copies, except that State and local governments and Indian tribal government applicants are required to submit only an original and two copies (Approved by OMB under OMB Control Numbers 0348–00050348–0009)

(d) The application must be signed by an official who is authorized to act for the applicant organization and to commit the applicant to comply with the terms and conditions of the award, if one is issued, or if unaffiliated, by the individual applicant. (See § 602.17(a)(1) for requirements on continuation awards.)

(e) DOE may return an application that does not include all information and documentation required by statute, this part, 10 CFR part 600, or the notice of availability, when the nature of the omission precludes review of the application.

(f) During the review of a complete application, DOE may request the submission of additional information only if the information is essential to evaluate the application.

(g) In addition to including the information described in paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section, an application for a renewal award must be submitted no later than 6 months before the expiration of the project period and must be on the same forms as required for initial applications. The renewal application must outline and justify a program and budget for the proposed project period, showing in detail the estimated cost of the proposed project, together with an indication of the amount of cost sharing, if any. The application shall also describe and explain the reasons for any change in the scope or objectives of the proposed project and shall compare and explain any difference between the estimates in the proposed budget and actual costs experienced as of the date of the application.

(h) DOE is not required to return an application to the applicant.

(i) Renewal applications must include a separate section that describes the results of work accomplished through the date of the renewal application and how such results relate to the activities proposed to be undertaken in the renewal period.

[60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, as amended at 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 602.9 Application evaluation and selection.

(a) Applications shall be evaluated for funding generally within 6 months, but in any event no later than 12 months, from the date of receipt by DOE. After DOE has held an application for 6 months, the applicant may, in response to DOE's request, be required to revalidate the terms of the original application.

(b) DOE shall perform an initial evaluation of all applications to ensure that the information required by this part is provided, that the proposed effort is technically sound and feasible, and that the effort is consistent with program funding priorities. For applications that pass the initial evaluation, DOE shall review and evaluate each application received based on the criteria set forth below and in accordance with the Office of Environment, Health, Safety, and Security Merit Review System developed, as required, under DOE Financial Assistance Regulations, 2 CFR 200 as amended by 2 CFR 910.

(c) DOE shall select evaluators on the basis of their professional qualifications and expertise. To ensure credible and inclusive peer review of applications, every effort will be made to select evaluators apart from DOE employees and contractors. Evaluators shall be required to comply with all applicable DOE rules or directives concerning the use of outside evaluators.

(d) DOE shall evaluate new and renewal applications based on the following criteria that are listed in descending order of importance:

(1) The scientific and technical merit of the proposed research;

(2) The appropriateness of the proposed method or approach;

(3) Competency of research personnel and adequacy of proposed resources;

(4) Reasonableness and appropriateness of the proposed budget; and

(5) Other appropriate factors consistent with the purpose of this part established and set forth in a Notice of Availability or in a specific solicitation.

(e) DOE shall also consider as part of the evaluation other available advice or information, as well as program policy factors, such as ensuring an appropriate balance among the program areas listed in § 602.5 of this part.

(f) In addition to the evaluation criteria set forth in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section, DOE shall consider the recipient's performance under the existing award during the evaluation of a renewal application.

(g) Selection of applications for award will be based upon the findings of the technical evaluations (including peer reviews, as specified in the Office of Environment, Health, Safety and Security Merit Review System), the importance and relevance of the proposal to the Office of Environment, Health, Safety and Security's mission, and the availability of funds. Cost reasonableness and realism will also be considered.

(h) After the selection of an application, DOE may, if necessary, enter into negotiations with an applicant. Such negotiations are not a commitment that DOE will make an award.

[60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, as amended at 71 FR 68729, Nov. 28, 2006; 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014; 80 FR 5007, Jan. 30, 2015]

§ 602.10 Additional requirements.

(a) A recipient performing research or related activities involving the use of human subjects must comply with DOE regulations in 10 CFR part 745, ''Protection of Human Subjects,'' and any additional provisions that may be included in the special terms and conditions of an award.

(b) A recipient performing research involving recombinant DNA molecules and/or organisms and viruses containing recombinant DNA molecules shall comply with the National Institutes of Health ''Guidelines for Research Involving Recombinant DNA Molecules'' (51 FR 16958, May 7, 1986),

or such later revision of those guidelines, as may be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. (The guidelines are available from the Office of Recombinant DNA Activities, National Institutes of Health, Building 31, Room BBB, Bethesda, MD 20892, or from the Office of Domestic and International Health Studies, AU–13, U.S. Department of Energy, 1000 Independence Avenue SW., Washington, DC 20585.

(c) A recipient performing research on warm-blooded animals shall comply with the Federal Laboratory Animal Welfare Act of 1966, as amended (7 U.S.C. 2131 *et seq.*), and the regulations promulgated thereunder by the Secretary of Agriculture at 9 CFR chapter I, subchapter A, pertaining to the care, handling, and treatment of warm-blooded animals held or used for research, teaching, or other activities supported by Federal awards. The recipient shall comply with the guidelines described in the Department of Health and Human Services Publication No. [NIH] 86–23, ''Guide for the Care and Use of Laboratory Animals,'' or succeeding revised editions. (This guide is available from the Office for Protection from Research Risks, Office of the Director, National Institutes of Health, Building 31, Room 4B09, Bethesda, MD 20892, or from the Office of Domestic and International Health Studies, AU–13, U.S. Department of Energy, 1000 Independence Avenue SW., Washington, DC 20585.

[60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, as amended at 71 FR 68730, Nov. 28, 2006; 80 FR 5007, Jan. 30, 2015]

§ 602.11 Funding.

(a) The project period during which DOE expects to provide support for an approved project under this part shall generally not exceed 3 years and may exceed 5 years only if DOE makes a renewal award or otherwise extends the award. The project period shall be specified on the Notice of Financial Assistance Grant (DOE Form 4600.1).

(b) Each budget period of an award under this part shall generally be 12 months and may be as much as 24 months, as DOE deems appropriate.

§ 602.12 Cost sharing.

Cost sharing is not required, nor will it be considered, as a criterion in the evaluation and selection process unless otherwise provided under § 602.9(d)(5).

§ 602.13 Limitation of DOE liability.

Awards made under this part are subject to the requirement that the maximum DOE obligation to the recipient is the amount shown in the Notice of Financial Assistance Award as the amount of DOE funds obligated. DOE shall not be obligated to make any additional, supplemental, continuation, renewal, or other award for the same or any other purpose.

§ 602.14 Fee.

(a) Notwithstanding 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910, a fee may be paid, in appropriate circumstances, to a recipient that is a small business concern, as qualified under the criteria and size standards of 13 CFR part 121, in order to permit the concern to participate in the Epidemiology and Other Health Studies Financial Assistance Program. Whether or not it is appropriate to pay a fee shall be determined by the contracting officer, who shall, at a minimum, apply the following guidelines:

(1) Whether the acceptance of an award will displace other work that the small business is currently engaged in or committed to assume in the near future; or

(2) Whether the acceptance of an award will, in the absence of paying a fee, cause substantial financial distress to the business. In evaluating financial distress, the contracting officer shall balance current displacement against reasonable future benefit to the company. (If the award will result in the beneficial expansion of the existing business base of the company, then no fee would generally be appropriate.) Fees shall not be paid to other entities except as a deviation from 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910, nor shall fees be paid under awards in support of conferences.

(b) To request a fee, a small business concern shall submit with its application a written self-certification that it is a small business concern qualified under the criteria and size standards in

13 CFR part 121. In addition, the application must state the amount of fee requested for the entire project period and the basis for requesting the amount and must also state why payment of a fee by DOE would be appropriate.

(c) If the contracting officer determines that payment of a fee is appropriate under paragraph (a) of this section, the amount of fee shall be that determined to be reasonable by the contracting officer. The contracting officer shall, at a minimum, apply the following guidelines in determining the fee amount:

(1) The fee base shall include the estimated allowable cost of direct salaries and wages and allocable fringe benefits. This fee base shall exclude all other direct and indirect costs.

(2) The fee amount expressed as a percentage of the appropriate fee base, pursuant to paragraph (c)(1) of this section, shall not exceed the percentage rate of fee that would result if a Federal agency contracted for the same amount of salaries, wages, and allocable fringe benefits under a cost reimbursement contract.

(3) Fee amounts, determined pursuant to paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section, shall be appropriately reduced when:

(i) Advance payments are provided; and/or

(ii) Title to property acquired with DOE funds vests in the recipient (2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910).

(d) Notwithstanding 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910, any fee awarded shall be a fixed fee and shall be payable on an annual basis in proportion to the work completed, as determined by the contracting officer, upon satisfactory submission and acceptance by DOE of the progress report. If the project period is shortened due to termination, or the project period is not fully funded, the fee shall be reduced by an appropriate amount.

[60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, as amended at 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 602.15 Indirect cost limitations.

Awards issued under this part for conferences and scientific/technical meetings will not include payment for indirect costs.

§ 602.16 National security.

Activities under the Epidemiology and Other Health Studies Financial Assistance Program are not expected to involve classified information (i.e., Restricted Data, Formerly Restricted Data, National Security Information). However, if in the opinion of the recipient or DOE such involvement becomes expected prior to the closeout of the award, the recipient or DOE shall notify the other in writing immediately. If the recipient believes any information developed or acquired may be classified, the recipient shall not provide the potentially classified information to anyone, including DOE officials with whom the recipient normally communicates, except the Director, Office of Classification, and shall protect such information as if it were classified until notified by DOE that a determination has been made that it does not require such handling. Correspondence that includes the specific information in question shall be sent by registered mail to the U.S. Department of Energy, Attn: Director, Office of Classification, AU–60, P.O. Box A, Germantown, MD 20875. If the information is determined to be classified, the recipient may wish to discontinue the project, in which case the recipient and DOE shall terminate the award by mutual agreement. If the award is to be terminated, all material deemed by DOE to be classified shall be forwarded to DOE in a manner specified by DOE for proper disposition. If the recipient and DOE wish to continue the award, even though classified information is involved, the recipient shall be requested to obtain both personnel and facility security clearances through the Office of Headquarters Security Operations awards or from the cognizant field office for awards obtained through DOE field organizations. Costs associated with handling and protecting any such classified information shall be negotiated at the time that the determination to proceed is made.

[60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, as amended at 71 FR 68730, Nov. 28, 2006; 80 FR 5008, Jan. 30, 2015]

§ 602.17 Continuation funding and reporting requirements.

(a) A recipient shall periodically report to DOE on the project's progress in meeting the project objectives of the award. The following types of reports shall be used:

(1) *Progress Reports.* After issuance of an initial award, recipients must submit a satisfactory progress report to receive a continuation award for the remainder of the project period. The original and two copies of the required report must be submitted to the Office of Environment, Health, Safety and Security program manager 90 days prior to the anticipated continuation funding date. The report should include results of work to date and emphasize findings and their significance to the field, and any real or anticipated problems. The report also should contain the following information: On the first page, provide the project title, principal investigator/project director name, period of time the report covers, name and address of recipient organization, DOE award number, the amount of unexpended funds, if any, that are anticipated to be left at the end of the current budget period. If the amount exceeds 10 percent of the funds available for the budget period, provide information as to why the excess funds are anticipated to be available and how they will be used in the next budget period. The report should state whether the aims have changed from the original application, and if they have, provide revised aims. A completed budget page must be submitted with the continuation progress report when a change to anticipated future costs will exceed 25 percent of the original recommended future budget.

(2) *Notice of Energy Research and Development (R&D) Project.* A Notice of Energy R&D Project, DOE Form 1430.22, which summarizes the purpose and scope of the project, must be submitted in accordance with the Distribution and Schedule of Documents set forth in appendix A to this part, Schedule of Renewal Applications and Reports. Copies of the form may be obtained from a DOE contracting office.

(3) *Special Reports.* The recipient shall report the following events to DOE as soon after they occur as possible:

(i) Problems, delays, or adverse conditions that will materially affect the ability to attain project objectives or prevent the meeting of time schedules and goals. The report must describe remedial action that the recipient has taken, or plans to take, and any action DOE should take to alleviate the problems.

(ii) Favorable developments or events that enable meeting time schedules and goals sooner, or a lower cost than anticipated, or producing more beneficial results than originally projected.

(4) *Final Report.* A final report covering the entire project must be submitted by the recipient within 90 days after the project period ends or the award is terminated. Satisfactory completion of an award will be contingent upon the receipt of this report. The final report shall follow the same outline as progress reports. Recipients will provide, as part of the final report, a description of records and data compiled during the project, along with a plan for its preservation or disposition (see § 602.19 of this part). All manuscripts prepared for publication should be appended to the final report.

(5) *Financial Status Report (FSR) (OMB No. 0348–0039).* The FSR is required within 90 days after completion of each budget period. For budget periods exceeding 12 months, an FSR is also required within 90 days after this first 12 months unless waived by the contracting officer.

(b) DOE may extend the deadline date for any report if the recipient submits a written request before the deadline, that adequately justifies an extension.

(c) A table summarizing the various types of reports, time for submission, and number of copies is set forth in appendix A to this part. The schedule of reports shall be as prescribed in this table, unless the award document specifies otherwise. These reports shall be submitted by the recipient to the awarding office.

(d) DOE, or its authorized representatives, may make site visits, at any reasonable time, to review the project. DOE may provide such technical assistance as may be requested.

(e) Recipients may place performance reporting requirements on a subrecipient consistent with the provisions of this section.

[60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, as amended at 71 FR 68730, Nov. 28, 2006; 80 FR 5008, Jan. 30, 2015]

§ 602.18 Dissemination of results.

(a) Recipients are encouraged to disseminate research results promptly. DOE reserves the right to utilize, and have others utilize to the extent it deems appropriate, the reports resulting from research awards.

(b) DOE may waive the technical reporting requirement of progress reports set forth in § 602.17, if the recipient submits to DOE a copy of its own report that is published or accepted for publication in a recognized scientific or technical journal and that satisfies the information requirements of the program.

(c) Recipients are urged to publish results through normal publication channels.

(d) The article shall include an acknowledgement that the project was supported, in whole or in part, by a DOE award, and specify the award number, but state that such support does not constitute an endorsement by DOE of the views expressed in the article.

[60 FR 5841, Jan. 31, 1995, as amended at 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 602.19 Records and data.

(a) In some cases, DOE will require submission of certain project records or data to facilitate mission-related activities. Recipients, therefore, must take adequate steps to ensure proper management, control, and preservation of all project records and data.

(b) Awardees must ensure that all project data is adequately documented. Documentation shall:

(1) Reference software used to compile, manage, and analyze data;

(2) Define all technical characteristics necessary for reading or processing the records;

(3) Define file and record content and codes;

(4) Describe update cycles or conditions and rules for adding or deleting information; and

(5) Detail instrument calibration effects, sampling and analysis, space and time coverage, quality control measures, data algorithms and reduction methods, and other activities relevant to data collection and assembly.

(c) Recipients agree to comply with designated DOE records and data management requirements, including providing electronic data in prescribed formats and retention of specified records and data for eventual transfer to the Comprehensive Epidemiologic Data Resource or to another repository, as directed by DOE. Recipients will provide, as part of the final report, a description of records and data compiled during the project along with a plan for its preservation or disposition.

(d) Recipients agree to make project records and data available as soon as possible when requested by DOE.

APPENDIX A TO PART 602—SCHEDULE OF RENEWAL APPLICATIONS AND REPORTS

Type	When due	Number of copies for awarding office
1. Summary: 200 words on scope and purpose (Notice of Energy R&D Project).	Immediately after a grant is awarded and with each application for renewal.	3
2. Renewal period ends	6 months before the budget	8
3. Progress Report period (or as part of a renewal application).	90 days prior to the next budget period	3
4. Other progress reports, brief topical reports, etc. (Designated when significant results develop or when work has direct programmatic impact).	As deemed appropriate by DOE or the recipient	3
5. Reprints, Conference	Same as 4. above	3
6. Final report of the project	Within 90 days after completion	3

Type	When due	Number of copies for awarding office
7. Financial Status Report (FSR)	Within 90 days after completion of the project period; for budget periods exceeding 12 months an FSR is also required within 90 days after the first 12-month period.	3

NOTE: Report types 5 and 6 require with submission two copies of DOE Form 1332.16, University-Type Contractor and Grantee Recommendations for Disposition of Scientific and Technical Document.

PART 603—TECHNOLOGY INVESTMENT AGREEMENTS

Subpart A—General

Sec.
603.100 Purpose.
603.105 Description.
603.110 Use of TIAs.
603.115 Approval requirements.
603.120 Contracting officer warrant requirements.
603.125 Applicability of other parts of the DOE Assistance Regulations.

Subpart B—Appropriate Use of Technology Investment Agreements

603.200 Contracting officer responsibilities.
603.205 Nature of the project.
603.210 Recipients.
603.215 Recipient's commitment and cost sharing.
603.220 Government participation.
603.225 Benefits of using a TIA.
603.230 Fee or profit.

Subpart C—Requirements for Expenditure-Based and Fixed-Support Technology Investment Agreements

603.300 Difference between an expenditure-based and a fixed-support TIA.
603.305 Use of a fixed-support TIA.
603.310 Use of an expenditure-based TIA.
603.315 Advantages of a fixed-support TIA.

Subpart D—Competition Phase

603.400 Competitive procedures.
603.405 Announcement format.
603.410 Announcement content.
603.415 Cost sharing.
603.420 Disclosure of information.

Subpart E—Pre-Award Business Evaluation

603.500 Pre-award business evaluation.
603.505 Program resources.

RECIPIENT QUALIFICATION

603.510 Recipient qualifications.
603.515 Qualification of a consortium.

TOTAL FUNDING

603.520 Reasonableness of total project funding.

COST SHARING

603.525 Value and reasonableness of the recipient's cost sharing contribution.
603.530 Acceptable cost sharing.
603.535 Value of proposed real property or equipment.
603.540 Acceptability of fully depreciated real property or equipment.
603.545 Acceptability of costs of prior RD&D.
603.550 Acceptability of intellectual property.
603.555 Value of other contributions.

FIXED-SUPPORT OR EXPENDITURE-BASED APPROACH

603.560 Estimate of project expenditures.
603.565 Use of a hybrid instrument.

ACCOUNTING, PAYMENTS, AND RECOVERY OF FUNDS

603.570 Determining milestone payment amounts.
603.575 Repayment of Federal cost share.

Subpart F—Award Terms Affecting Participants' Financial, Property, and Purchasing Systems

603.600 Administrative matters.
603.605 General policy.
603.610 Flow down requirements.

FINANCIAL MATTERS

603.615 Financial management standards for for-profit firms.
603.620 Financial management standards for nonprofit participants.
603.625 Cost principles or standards applicable to for-profit participants.
603.630 Use of Federally-approved indirect cost rates for for-profit firms.
603.635 Cost principles for nonprofit participants.
603.640 Audits of for-profit participants.
603.645 Periodic audits and award-specific audits of for-profit participants.
603.650 Designation of auditor for for-profit participants.

603.655 Frequency of periodic audits of for-profit participants.
603.660 Other audit requirements.
603.665 Periodic audits of nonprofit participants.
603.670 Flow down audit requirements to subrecipients.
603.675 Reporting use of IPA for subawards.

PROPERTY

603.680 Purchase of real property and equipment by for-profit firms.
603.685 Management of real property and equipment by nonprofit participants.
603.690 Requirements for Federally-owned property.
603.695 Requirements for supplies.

PURCHASING

603.700 Standards for purchasing systems of for-profit firms.
603.705 Standards for purchasing systems of nonprofit organizations.

Subpart G—Award Terms Related to Other Administrative Matters

603.800 Scope.

PAYMENTS

603.805 Payment methods.
603.810 Method and frequency of payment requests.
603.815 Withholding payments.
603.820 Interest on advance payments.

REVISION OF BUDGET AND PROGRAM PLANS

603.825 Government approval of changes in plans.
603.830 Pre-award costs.

PROGRAM INCOME

603.835 Program income requirements.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY

603.840 Negotiating data and patent rights.
603.845 Data rights requirements.
603.850 Marking of data.
603.855 Protected data.
603.860 Rights to inventions.
603.865 March-in rights.
603.870 Marking of documents related to inventions.
603.875 Foreign access to technology and U.S. competitiveness provisions.

FINANCIAL AND PROGRAMMATIC REPORTING

603.880 Reports requirements.
603.885 Updated program plans and budgets.
603.890 Final performance report.
603.895 Protection of information in programmatic reports.
603.900 Receipt of final performance report.

RECORDS RETENTION AND ACCESS REQUIREMENTS

603.905 Record retention requirements.
603.910 Access to a for-profit participant's records.
603.915 Access to a nonprofit participant's records.

TERMINATION AND ENFORCEMENT

603.920 Termination and enforcement requirements.

Subpart H—Executing the Award

603.1000 Contracting officer's responsibilities at time of award.

THE AWARD DOCUMENT

603.1005 General responsibilities.
603.1010 Substantive issues.
603.1015 Execution.

REPORTING INFORMATION ABOUT THE AWARD

603.1020 File documents.

Subpart I—Post-Award Administration

603.1100 Contracting officer's post-award responsibilities.
603.1105 Advance payments or payable milestones.
603.1110 Other payment responsibilities.
603.1115 Single audits.
603.1120 Award-specific audits.

Subpart J—Definitions of Terms Used in This Part

603.1200 Definitions.
603.1205 Advance.
603.1210 Articles of collaboration.
603.1215 Assistance.
603.1220 Award-specific audit.
603.1225 Cash contributions.
603.1230 Commercial firm.
603.1235 Consortium.
603.1240 Cooperative agreement.
603.1245 Cost sharing.
603.1250 Data.
603.1255 Equipment.
603.1260 Expenditure-based award.
603.1265 Expenditures or outlays.
603.1270 Grant.
603.1275 In-kind contributions.
603.1280 Institution of higher education.
603.1285 Intellectual property.
603.1290 Participant.
603.1295 Periodic audit.
603.1300 Procurement contract.
603.1305 Program income.
603.1310 Program official.
603.1315 Property.
603.1320 Real property.
603.1325 Recipient.
603.1330 Supplies.
603.1335 Termination.

603.1340 Technology investment agreement.
APPENDIX A TO PART 603—APPLICABLE FEDERAL STATUTES, EXECUTIVE ORDERS, AND GOVERNMENT-WIDE REGULATIONS
APPENDIX B TO PART 603—FLOW DOWN REQUIREMENTS FOR PURCHASES OF GOODS AND SERVICES

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.;* 31 U.S.C. 6301–6308; 50 U.S.C. 2401 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 71 FR 27161, May 9, 2006, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General

§ 603.100 Purpose.

This part establishes uniform policies and procedures for the implementation of DOE's ''other transactions'' authority and for award and administration of a technology investment agreement (TIA).

§ 603.105 Description.

(a) A TIA is a special type of assistance instrument used to increase involvement of commercial firms in the Department of Energy's (DOE) research, development and demonstration (RD&D) programs. A TIA, like a cooperative agreement, requires substantial Federal involvement in the technical or management aspects of the project. A TIA may be either a type of cooperative agreement or a type of assistance transaction other than a cooperative agreement, depending on the intellectual property provisions. A TIA is either:

(1) A type of cooperative agreement with more flexible provisions tailored for commercial firms (as distinct from a cooperative agreement subject to all of the requirements in 10 CFR 600), but with intellectual property provisions in full compliance with the DOE intellectual property statutes (*i.e.*, Bayh-Dole statute and 42 U.S.C. 2182 and 5908, as implemented in 10 CFR 600.325). The authority to award this type of TIA is 42 U.S.C. 7256(a), as well as any program-specific statute that provides authority to award cooperative agreements; or

(2) An assistance transaction other than a cooperative agreement, if its intellectual property provisions vary from the Bayh-Dole statute and 42 U.S.C. 2182 and 5908, which require the Government to retain certain intellectual property rights and require differing treatment between large businesses and nonprofit organizations or small businesses. The authority to award this type of TIA is 42 U.S.C. 7256(g), as well as any program-specific statute that provides authority to award assistance agreements.

(b) The two types of TIAs have similar requirements, except for the intellectual property requirements. If the contracting officer determines there is a unique, exceptional need to vary from the standard intellectual property requirements in 10 CFR 600.325, the TIA becomes an assistance transaction other than a cooperative agreement.

§ 603.110 Use of TIAs.

The ultimate goal for using a TIA is to broaden the technology base available to meet DOE mission requirements and foster within the technology base new relationships and practices to advance the national economic and energy security of the United States, to promote scientific and technological innovation in support of that mission, and to ensure the environmental cleanup of the national nuclear weapons complex. A TIA therefore is designed to:

(a) Reduce barriers to participation in RD&D programs by commercial firms that deal primarily in the commercial marketplace. A TIA allows contracting officers to tailor Government requirements and lower or remove barriers if it can be done with proper stewardship of Federal funds.

(b) Promote new relationships among performers in the technology base. Collaborations among commercial firms that deal primarily in the commercial marketplace, firms that regularly perform on the DOE RD&D programs and nonprofit organizations can enhance overall quality and productivity.

(c) Stimulate performers to develop and use new business practices and disseminate best practices throughout the technology base.

§ 603.115 Approval requirements.

An officer of the Department who has been appointed by the President by and

with the advice and consent of the Senate and who has been delegated the authority from the Secretary must approve the award of a TIA and may perform other functions of the Secretary as set forth in 42 U.S.C. 7256(g). This authority may not be re-delegated. The DOE or National Nuclear Security Administration (NNSA) Senior Procurement Executive also must concur in the award of a TIA.

§ 603.120 Contracting officer warrant requirements.

A contracting officer may award or administer a TIA only if the contracting officer's warrant authorizes the award or administration of a TIA.

§ 603.125 Applicability of other parts of the DOE Assistance Regulations.

(a) TIAs are explicitly covered in this part and 10 CFR part 600, subpart A—General. 10 CFR part 600, subpart A, addresses general matters that relate to assistance instruments.

(b) Three additional parts of the DOE Assistance Regulations apply to TIAs, although they do not mention a TIA explicitly. They are:

(1) 10 CFR part 601—lobbying restrictions apply by law (31 U.S.C. 1352) to a TIA that is a cooperative agreement and as a matter of DOE policy to a TIA that is an assistance transaction other than a cooperative agreement.

(2) 10 CFR part 606—debarment and suspension requirements apply because they cover nonprocurement instruments in general; and

(3) 10 CFR part 607—drug-free workplace (financial assistance) requirements apply because they cover all assistance instruments.

(c) Other portions of 10 CFR part 600 apply to a TIA as referenced in part 603.

Subpart B—Appropriate Use of Technology Investment Agreements

§ 603.200 Contracting officer responsibilities.

Contracting officers may use a TIA only in appropriate situations. To do so, the use of a TIA must be justified based on:

(a) The nature of the project, as discussed in § 603.205;

(b) The type of recipient, addressed in § 603.210;

(c) The recipient's commitment and cost sharing, as described in § 603.215;

(d) The degree of involvement of the Government program official, as discussed in § 603.220; and

(e) The contracting officer's judgment that the use of a TIA could benefit the RD&D objectives in ways that likely would not happen if another type of instrument were used (i.e., a contract, grant or cooperative agreement is not feasible or appropriate). Answers to the four questions in § 603.225 form the basis for the contracting officer's judgment.

§ 603.205 Nature of the project.

Judgments relating to the nature of the project include:

(a) The principal purpose of the project is to carry out a public purpose of support or stimulation of RD&D (i.e., assistance), rather than acquiring goods or services for the benefit of the Government (i.e., acquisition);

(b) To the maximum extent practicable, the TIA does not support RD&D that duplicates other RD&D being conducted under existing programs carried out by the DOE; and

(c) The use of a standard contract, grant or cooperative agreement for the project is not feasible or appropriate (see questions in § 603.225).

§ 603.210 Recipients.

(a) A TIA requires one or more for-profit firms, not acting in their capacity as the contractor of a FFRDC, to be involved either in the:

(1) Performance of the RD&D project; or

(2) The commercial application of the results.

(i) In those cases where there is only a non-profit performer or a consortium of non-profit performers or non-profit performers and FFRDC contractors, if and as authorized, the performers must have at least a tentative agreement with a specific for-profit partner or partners who plan on being involved in the commercial application of the results.

(ii) In consultation with legal counsel, the contracting officer should review the agreement between the performers and their for-profit partner to ensure that the for-profit partner is committed to being involved in the commercial application of the results.

(b) A TIA may be particularly useful for awards to consortia (a consortium may include one or more for-profit firms, as well as State or local government agencies, institutions of higher education, other nonprofit organizations, or FFRDC contractors, if and as authorized) because:

(1) If multiple performers are participating as a consortium, they may be more equal partners in the performance of the project than usually is the case with a prime recipient and subrecipients. All of the performers are more likely to be directly involved in developing and revising plans for the RD&D effort, reviewing technical progress, and overseeing financial and other business matters. That feature makes consortia well suited to building new relationships among performers in the technology base, a principal objective for the use of a TIA.

(2) In addition, interactions among the participants within a consortium potentially provide a self-governance mechanism. The potential for additional self-governance is particularly good when a consortium includes multiple for-profit participants that normally are competitors within an industry.

(c) A TIA may be used for carrying out RD&D performed by single firms or multiple performers (e.g., a teaming arrangement) in prime award-subaward relationships. In awarding a TIA in those cases, however, consideration should be given to providing for greater involvement of the program official or a way to increase self-governance (e.g., a prime award with multiple subawards arranged so as to give the subrecipients more insight into and authority and responsibility for the programmatic and business aspects of the overall project than they usually have).

§ 603.215 Recipient's commitment and cost sharing.

(a) The contracting officer should evaluate whether the recipient has a strong commitment to and self-interest in the success of the project and incorporating the technology into products and processes for the commercial marketplace. Evidence of that commitment and interest should be found in the proposal, in the recipient's management plan, or through other means.

(b) The contracting officer must seek cost sharing. The purpose of cost sharing is to ensure that the recipient incurs real risk that gives it a vested interest in the project's success; the willingness to commit to meaningful cost sharing is a good indicator of a recipient's self-interest. The requirements are that:

(1) To the maximum extent practicable, the non-Federal parties carrying out a RD&D project under a TIA are to provide at least half of the costs of the project; and

(2) The parties must provide the cost sharing from non-Federal resources unless otherwise provided by law.

(c) The contracting officer may consider whether cost sharing is impracticable in a given case, unless there is a statutory requirement for cost sharing that applies to the particular program under which the award is to be made. Before deciding that cost sharing is impracticable, the contracting officer should carefully consider if there are other factors that demonstrate the recipient's self-interest in the success of the current project.

§ 603.220 Government participation.

A TIA is used to carry out cooperative relationships between the Federal Government and the recipient(s) which require substantial involvement of the Government in the execution of the RD&D. For example, program officials will participate in recipients' periodic reviews of progress and may be substantially involved with the recipients in the resulting revisions of plans for future effort.

§ 603.225 Benefits of using a TIA.

Before deciding that a TIA is appropriate, the contracting officer also must judge that using a TIA could benefit the RD&D objectives in ways that likely would not happen if another type of assistance instrument were used (e.g., a cooperative agreement

subject to all of the requirements of 10 CFR part 600). The contracting officer, in conjunction with Government program officials, must consider the questions in paragraphs (a) through (d) of this section, to help identify the benefits that may justify using a TIA and reducing some of the usual requirements. The contracting officer must report the answers to these questions to help the DOE measure the benefits of using a TIA. Note full concise answers are required only to questions that relate to the benefits perceived for using the TIA, rather than another type of funding instrument, for the particular project. A simple ''no'' or ''not applicable'' is a sufficient response for other questions. The questions are:

(a) Will the use of a TIA permit the involvement of any commercial firms or business units of firms that would not otherwise participate in the project? If so:

(1) What are the expected benefits of those firms' or divisions' participation (e.g., is there a specific technology that could be better, more readily available, or less expensive)?

(2) Why would they not participate if an instrument other than a TIA were used? The contracting officer should identify specific provisions of the TIA or features of the TIA award process that enable their participation. For example, if the RD&D effort is based substantially on a for-profit firm's privately developed technology and the Government may be a major user of any commercial product developed as a result of the award, a for-profit firm may not participate unless the Government's intellectual property rights in the technology are modified.

(b) Will the use of a TIA allow the creation of new relationships among participants in a consortium, at the prime or subtier levels, among business units of the same firm, or between non-Federal participants and the Federal Government that will foster better technology? If so:

(1) Why do these new relationships have the potential for fostering technology that is better, more affordable, or more readily available?

(2) Are there provisions of the TIA or features of the TIA award process that enable these relationships to form? If so, the contracting officer should be able to identify specifically what they are. If not, the contracting officer should be able to explain specifically why the relationships could not be created if another type of assistance instrument were used. For example, a large business firm may not be willing to participate in a consortium or teaming arrangement with small business firms and nonprofit firms under a standard cooperative agreement because those entities have invention rights under the Bayh-Dole statute that are not available to large businesses. A large business firm may be willing to participate in a consortium or teaming arrangement only if all partners are substantially equal with regard to the allocation of intellectual property rights.

(c) Will the use of a TIA allow firms or business units of firms that traditionally accept Government awards to use new business practices in the execution of the RD&D project that will foster better technology, new technology more quickly or less expensively, or facilitate partnering with commercial firms? If so:

(1) What specific benefits result from the use of these new practices? The contracting officer should be able to explain specifically the potential for those benefits.

(2) Are there provisions of the TIA or features of the TIA award process that enable the use of the new practices? If so, the contracting officer should be able to identify those provisions or features and explain why the practices could not be used if the award were made using another type of assistance instrument.

(d) Are there any other benefits of the use of a TIA that could help DOE meet its objectives in carrying out the project? If so, the contracting officer should be able to identify specifically what they are, how they can help meet the objectives, what features of the TIA or award process enable DOE to realize them, and why the benefits likely would not be realized if an assistance instrument other than a TIA were used.

§ 603.230 Fee or profit.

The contracting officer may not use a TIA if any participant is to receive fee or profit. Note that this policy extends to all performers of the project, including any subawards for substantive program performance, but it does not preclude participants' or subrecipients' payment of reasonable fee or profit when making purchases from suppliers of goods (e.g., supplies and equipment) or services needed to carry out the RD&D.

Subpart C—Requirements for Expenditure-Based and Fixed-Support Technology Investment Agreements

§ 603.300 Difference between an expenditure-based and a fixed-support TIA.

The contracting officer may negotiate expenditure-based or fixed-support award terms for either types of TIA subject to the requirements in this subpart. The fundamental difference between an expenditure-based and a fixed-support TIA is:

(a) For an expenditure-based TIA, the amounts of interim payments or the total amount ultimately paid to the recipient are based on the amounts the recipient expends on project costs. If a recipient completes the project specified at the time of award before it expends all of the agreed-upon Federal funding and recipient cost sharing, the Federal Government may recover its share of the unexpended balance of funds or, by mutual agreement with the recipient, amend the agreement to expand the scope of the RD&D project. An expenditure-based TIA, therefore, is analogous to a cost-type procurement contract or grant.

(b) For a fixed-support TIA, the amount of assistance is established at the time of award and is not meant to be adjusted later. In that sense, a fixed-support TIA is somewhat analogous to a fixed-price procurement contract.

§ 603.305 Use of a fixed-support TIA.

The contracting officer may use a fixed-support TIA if:

(a) The agreement is to support or stimulate RD&D with outcomes that are well defined, observable, and verifiable;

(b) The resources required to achieve the outcomes can be estimated well enough to ensure the desired level of cost sharing (see example in § 603.560(b)); and

(c) The agreement does not require a specific amount or percentage of recipient cost sharing. In cases where the agreement does require a specific amount or percentage of cost sharing, a fixed-support TIA is not practicable because the agreement has to specify cost principles or standards for costs that may be charged to the project; require the recipient to track the costs of the project; and provide access for audit to allow verification of the recipient's compliance with the mandatory cost sharing. A fixed-support TIA may not be used if there is:

(1) A requirement (e.g., in statute or policy determination) for a specific amount or percentage of recipient cost sharing; or

(2) The contracting officer, in consultation with the program official, otherwise elects to include in the TIA a requirement for a specific amount or percentage of cost sharing.

§ 603.310 Use of an expenditure-based TIA.

In general, the contracting officer must use an expenditure-based TIA under conditions other than those described in § 603.305. Reasons for any exceptions to this general rule must be documented in the award file and must be consistent with the policy in § 603.230 that precludes payment of fee or profit to participants.

§ 603.315 Advantages of a fixed-support TIA.

In situations where the use of a fixed-support TIA is permissible (see §§ 603.305 and 603.310), its use may encourage some commercial firms' participation in the RD&D. With a fixed-support TIA, the contracting officer can eliminate or reduce some post-award requirements that sometimes are cited as disincentives for those firms to participate. For example, a fixed-support TIA need not:

(a) Specify minimum standards for the recipient's financial management system;

(b) Specify cost principles or standards stating the types of costs the recipient may charge to the project;

(c) Provide for financial audits by Federal auditors or independent public accountants of the recipient's books and records;

(d) Set minimum standards for the recipient's purchasing system; or

(e) Require the recipient to prepare financial reports for submission to the Federal Government.

Subpart D—Competition Phase

§ 603.400 Competitive procedures.

DOE policy is to award a TIA using competitive procedures and a merit-based selection process, as described in 10 CFR 600.6 and 600.13, respectively:

(a) In every case where required by statute; and

(b) To the maximum extent feasible, in all other cases. If it is not feasible to use competitive procedures, the contracting officer must comply with the requirements in 10 CFR 600.6(c).

§ 603.405 Announcement format.

If the contracting officer, in consultation with the program official, decides that a TIA is among the types of instruments that may be awarded, the additional elements described in §§ 603.410 through 603.420 should be included in the announcement.

§ 603.410 Announcement content.

Once the contracting officer, in consultation with the program official, considers the factors described in Subpart B of this part and decides that a TIA is among the types of instruments that may be awarded pursuant to a program announcement, it is important to state that fact in the announcement. The announcement also should state that a TIA is more flexible than a traditional financial assistance agreement and that requirements are negotiable in areas such as audits and intellectual property rights that may cause concern for commercial firms. Doing so should increase the likelihood that commercial firms will be willing to submit proposals.

§ 603.415 Cost sharing.

To help ensure a competitive process that is fair and equitable to all potential proposers, the announcement should state clearly:

(a) That, to the maximum extent practicable, the non-Federal parties carrying out a RD&D project under a TIA are to provide at least half of the costs of the project (see § 603.215(b));

(b) The types of cost sharing that are acceptable;

(c) How any in-kind contributions will be valued, in accordance with §§ 603.530 through 603.555; and

(d) Whether any consideration will be given to alternative approaches a proposer may offer to demonstrate its strong commitment to and self-interest in the project's success, in accordance with § 603.215.

§ 603.420 Disclosure of information.

The announcement should tell potential proposers that:

(a) For all TIAs, information described in paragraph (b) of this section is exempt from disclosure requirements of the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA)(codified at 5 U.S.C. 552) for a period of five years after the date on which the DOE receives the information from them; and

(b) As provided in 42 U.S.C. 7256(g) incorporating certain provisions of 10 U.S.C. 2371, disclosure is not required, and may not be compelled, under FOIA during that period if:

(1) A proposer submits the information in a competitive or noncompetitive process that could result in the award of a TIA; and

(2) The type of information is among the following types that are exempt:

(i) Proposals, proposal abstracts, and supporting documents; and

(ii) Business plans and technical information submitted on a confidential basis.

(c) If proposers desire to protect business plans and technical information for five years from FOIA disclosure requirements, they must mark them with a legend identifying them as documents submitted on a confidential basis. After the five-year period, information may be protected for longer periods if it meets any of the criteria in 5 U.S.C. 552(b) (as implemented by the

DOE in 10 CFR part 1004) for exemption from FOIA disclosure requirements.

Subpart E—Pre-Award Business Evaluation

§ 603.500 Pre-award business evaluation.

(a) The contracting officer must determine the qualification of the recipient, as described in §§ 603.510 and 603.515.

(b) As the business expert working with the program official, the contracting officer also must address the financial aspects of the proposed agreement. The contracting officer must:

(1) Determine that the total amount of funding for the proposed effort is reasonable, as addressed in § 603.520.

(2) Assess the value and determine the reasonableness of the recipient's proposed cost sharing contribution, as discussed in §§ 603.525 through 603.555.

(3) If contemplating the use of a fixed-support rather than expenditure-based TIA, ensure that its use is justified, as explained in §§ 603.560 and 603.565.

(4) Determine amounts for milestone payments, if used, as discussed in § 603.570.

§ 603.505 Program resources.

Program officials can be a source of information for determining the reasonableness of proposed funding (e.g., on labor rates, as discussed in § 603.520) or establishing observable and verifiable technical milestones for payments (see § 603.570).

RECIPIENT QUALIFICATION

§ 603.510 Recipient qualifications.

Prior to award of a TIA, the contracting officer's responsibilities for determining that the recipient is qualified are the same as those for awarding a grant or cooperative agreement. If the recipient is a consortium that is not formally incorporated, the contracting officer has the additional responsibility described in § 603.515.

§ 603.515 Qualification of a consortium.

(a) A consortium that is not formally incorporated must provide a collaboration agreement, commonly referred to as the articles of collaboration, which sets out the rights and responsibilities of each consortium member. This agreement binds the individual consortium members together and should discuss, among other things, the consortium's

(1) Management structure;

(2) Method of making payments to consortium members;

(3) Means of ensuring and overseeing members' efforts on the project;

(4) Provisions for members' cost sharing contributions; and

(5) Provisions for ownership and rights in intellectual property developed previously or under the agreement.

(b) If the prospective recipient of a TIA is a consortium that is not formally incorporated, the contracting officer must, in consultation with legal counsel, review the management plan in the consortium's collaboration agreement to ensure that the management plan is sound and that it adequately addresses the elements necessary for an effective working relationship among the consortium members. An effective working relationship is essential to increase the project's chances of success.

TOTAL FUNDING

§ 603.520 Reasonableness of total project funding.

In cooperation with the program official, the contracting officer must assess the reasonableness of the total estimated budget to perform the RD&D that will be supported by the agreement.

(a) *Labor*. Much of the budget likely will involve direct labor and associated indirect costs, which may be represented together as a ''loaded'' labor rate. The program official is an essential advisor on reasonableness of the overall level of effort and its composition by labor category. The contracting officer also may rely on experience with other awards as the basis for determining reasonableness.

(b) *Real property and equipment*. In almost all cases, the project costs should normally include only depreciation or use charges for real property and

equipment of for-profit participants, in accordance with § 603.680. Remember that the budget for an expenditure-based TIA may not include depreciation of a participant's property as a direct cost of the project if that participant's practice is to charge the depreciation of that type of property as an indirect cost, as many organizations do.

COST SHARING

§ 603.525 Value and reasonableness of the recipient's cost sharing contribution.

The contracting officer must:

(a) Determine that the recipient's cost sharing contributions meet the criteria for cost sharing and determine values for them, in accordance with §§ 603.530 through 603.555. In doing so, the contracting officer must:

(1) Ensure that there are affirmative statements from any third parties identified as sources of cash contributions, and

(2) Include in the award file an evaluation that documents how the values of the recipient's contributions to the funding of the project were determined.

(b) Judge that the recipient's cost sharing contribution, as a percentage of the total budget, is reasonable. To the maximum extent practicable, the recipient must provide at least half of the costs of the project, in accordance with § 603.215.

§ 603.530 Acceptable cost sharing.

The contracting officer may accept any cash or in-kind contributions that meet all of the following criteria.

(a) In the contracting officer's judgment, they represent meaningful cost sharing that demonstrates the recipient's commitment to the success of the RD&D project. Cash contributions clearly demonstrate commitment and they are strongly preferred over in-kind contributions.

(b) They are necessary and reasonable for accomplishment of the RD&D project's objectives.

(c) They are costs that may be charged to the project under § 603.625 and § 603.635, as applicable to the participant making the contribution.

(d) They are verifiable from the recipient's records.

(e) They are not included as cost sharing contributions for any other Federal award.

(f) They are not paid by the Federal Government under another award, except:

(1) Costs that are authorized by Federal statute to be used for cost sharing.

(2) Independent research and development (IR&D) costs, as described in 48 CFR part 31.208–18, that meet all of the criteria in paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section. IR&D is acceptable as cost sharing, even though it may be reimbursed by the Government through other awards. It is standard business practice for all for-profit firms, including commercial firms, to recover their IR&D costs through prices charged to their customers. Thus, the cost principles at 48 CFR part 31 allow a for-profit firm that has expenditure-based, Federal procurement contracts to recover through those procurement contracts the allocable portion of its research and development costs associated with a technology investment agreement. Contracting officers should note that in accordance with section 603.545, they may not count participant's costs of prior research, including IR&D, as a cost sharing contribution.

§ 603.535 Value of proposed real property or equipment.

The contracting officer rarely should accept values for cost sharing contributions of real property or equipment that are in excess of depreciation or reasonable use charges, as discussed in § 603.680 for for-profit participants. The contracting officer may accept the full value of a donated capital asset if the real property or equipment is to be dedicated to the project and the contracting officer expects that it will have a fair market value that is less than $5,000 at the project's end. In those cases, the contracting officer should value the donation at the lesser of:

(a) The value of the property as shown in the recipient's accounting records (*i.e.*, purchase price less accumulated depreciation); and

(b) The current fair market value. The contracting officer may accept the

use of any reasonable basis for determining the fair market value of the property. If there is a justification to do so, the contracting officer may accept the current fair market value even if it exceeds the value in the recipient's records.

§ 603.540 Acceptability of fully depreciated real property or equipment.

The contracting officer should limit the value of any contribution of a fully depreciated asset to a reasonable use charge. In determining what is reasonable, the contracting officer must consider:

(a) The original cost of the asset;

(b) Its estimated remaining useful life at the time of the negotiations;

(c) The effect of any increased maintenance charges or decreased performance due to age; and

(d) The amount of depreciation that the participant previously charged to Federal awards.

§ 603.545 Acceptability of costs of prior RD&D.

The contracting officer may not count any participant's costs of prior RD&D as a cost sharing contribution. Only the additional resources that the recipient will provide to carry out the current project (which may include pre-award costs for the current project, as described in § 603.830) are to be counted.

§ 603.550 Acceptability of intellectual property.

(a) In most instances, the contracting officer should not count costs of patents and other intellectual property (*e.g.*, copyrighted material, including software) as cost sharing because:

(1) It is difficult to assign values to these intangible contributions;

(2) Their value usually is a manifestation of prior research costs, which are not allowed as cost share under § 603.545; and

(3) Contributions of intellectual property rights generally do not represent the same cost of lost opportunity to a recipient as contributions of cash or tangible assets. The purpose of cost share is to ensure that the recipient incurs real risk that gives it a vested interest in the project's success.

(b) The contracting officer may include costs associated with intellectual property if the costs are based on sound estimates of market value of the contribution. For example, a for-profit firm may offer the use of commercially available software for which there is an established license fee for use of the product. The costs of the development of the software would not be a reasonable basis for valuing its use.

§ 603.555 Value of other contributions.

For types of participant contributions other than those addressed in §§ 603.535 through 603.550, the general rule is that the contracting officer is to value each contribution consistently with the cost principles or standards in § 603.625 and § 603.635 that apply to the participant making the contribution. When valuing services and property donated by parties other than the participants, the contracting officer may use as guidance the provisions of 10 CFR 600.313(b)(2) through (b)(5).

FIXED-SUPPORT OR EXPENDITURE-BASED APPROACH

§ 603.560 Estimate of project expenditures.

(a) To use a fixed-support TIA, rather than an expenditure-based TIA, the contracting officer must have confidence in the estimate of the expenditures required to achieve well-defined outcomes. Therefore, the contracting officer must work carefully with program officials to select outcomes that, when the recipient achieves them, are reliable indicators of the amount of effort the recipient expended. However, the estimate of the required expenditures need not be a precise dollar amount, as illustrated by the example in paragraph (b) of this section, if:

(1) The recipient is contributing a substantial share of the costs of achieving the outcomes, which must meet the criteria in § 603.305(a); and

(2) The contracting officer is confident that the costs of achieving the outcomes will be at least a minimum amount that can be specified and the recipient is willing to accept the possibility that its cost sharing percentage ultimately will be higher if the costs exceed that minimum amount.

(b) To illustrate the approach, consider a project for which the contracting officer is confident that the recipient will have to expend at least $800,000 to achieve the specified outcomes. The contracting officer must determine, in conjunction with program officials, the minimum level of recipient cost sharing required to demonstrate the recipient's commitment to the success of the project. For purposes of this illustration, let that minimum recipient cost sharing be 60% of the total project costs. In that case, the Federal share should be no more than 40% and the contracting officer could set a fixed level of Federal support at $320,000 (40% of $800,000). With that fixed level of Federal support, the recipient would be responsible for the balance of the costs needed to complete the project.

(c) Note, however, that the level of recipient cost sharing negotiated should be based solely on the level needed to demonstrate the recipient's commitment. The contracting officer may not use a shortage of Federal Government funding for the program as a reason to try to persuade a recipient to accept a fixed-support TIA, rather than an expenditure-based instrument, or to accept responsibility for a greater share of the total project costs than it otherwise is willing to offer. If there is insufficient funding to provide an appropriate Federal Government share for the entire project, the contracting officer should re-scope the effort covered by the agreement to match the available funding.

§ 603.565 Use of a hybrid instrument.

For a RD&D project that is to be carried out by a number of participants, the contracting officer may award a TIA that provides for some participants to perform under fixed-support arrangements and others to perform under expenditure-based arrangements. This approach may be useful, for example, if a commercial firm that is a participant will not accept an agreement with all of the post-award requirements of an expenditure-based award. Before using a fixed-support arrangement for that firm's portion of the project, the agreement must meet the criteria in § 603.305.

ACCOUNTING, PAYMENTS, AND RECOVERY OF FUNDS

§ 603.570 Determining milestone payment amounts.

(a) If the contracting officer selects the milestone payment method (see § 603.805), the contracting officer must assess the reasonableness of the estimated amount for reaching each milestone. This assessment enables the contracting officer to set the amount of each milestone payment to approximate the Federal share of the anticipated resource needs for carrying out that phase of the RD&D effort.

(b) The Federal share at each milestone need not be the same as the Federal share of the total project. For example, the contracting officer might deliberately set payment amounts with a larger Federal share for early milestones if a project involves a start-up company with limited resources.

(c) For an expenditure-based TIA, if the contracting officer establishes minimum cost sharing percentages for each milestone, those percentages should be indicated in the agreement.

(d) For a fixed-support TIA, the milestone payments should be associated with the well-defined, observable, and verifiable technical outcomes (*e.g.*, demonstrations, tests, or data analysis) that are established for the project in accordance with §§ 603.305(a) and 603.560(a).

§ 603.575 Repayment of Federal cost share.

In accordance with the Energy Policy Act of 2005 (Public Law 109–58), section 988(e), the contracting officer may not require repayment of the Federal share of a cost-shared TIA as a condition of making an award, unless otherwise authorized by statute.

Subpart F—Award Terms Affecting Participants' Financial, Property, and Purchasing Systems

§ 603.600 Administrative matters.

This subpart addresses ''systemic'' administrative matters that place requirements on the operation of a participant's financial management, property management, or purchasing system. Each participant's systems are organization-wide and do not vary with each agreement. Therefore, a TIA should address systemic requirements in a uniform way for each type of participant organization.

§ 603.605 General policy.

The general policy for an expenditure-based TIA is to avoid requirements that would force participants to use different financial management, property management, and purchasing systems than they currently use for:

(a) Expenditure-based Federal procurement contracts and assistance awards in general, if they receive them; or

(b) Commercial business, if they have no expenditure-based Federal procurement contracts and assistance awards.

§ 603.610 Flow down requirements.

If it is an expenditure-based award, the TIA must require participants to provide the same financial management, property management, and purchasing systems requirements to a subrecipient that would apply if the subrecipient were a participant. For example, a for-profit participant would require a university subrecipient to comply with requirements that apply to a university participant and would require a GOCO or FFRDC subrecipient to comply with standards that conform as much as practicable with the requirements in the GOCO/FFRDC procurement contract. Note that this policy applies to subawards for substantive performance of portions of the RD&D project supported by the TIA and not to participants' purchases of goods or services needed to carry out the RD&D.

FINANCIAL MATTERS

§ 603.615 Financial management standards for-profit firms.

(a) To avoid causing needless changes in participants' financial management systems, an expenditure-based TIA will make for-profit participants that currently perform under other expenditure-based Federal procurement contracts or assistance awards subject to the same standards for financial management systems that apply to those other awards. Therefore, if a for-profit participant has expenditure-based DOE assistance awards other than a TIA, the TIA must apply the standards in 10 CFR 600.311. The contracting officer may grant an exception and allow a for-profit participant that has other expenditure-based Federal Government awards to use an alternative set of standards that meets the minimum criteria in paragraph (b) of this section, if there is a compelling programmatic or business reason to do so. For each case in which an exception is granted, the contracting officer must document the reason in the award file.

(b) For an expenditure-based TIA, the contracting officer is to allow and encourage each for-profit participant that does not currently perform under expenditure-based Federal procurement contracts or assistance awards (other than a TIA) to use its existing financial management system as long as the system, as a minimum:

(1) Complies with Generally Accepted Accounting Principles.

(2) Effectively controls all project funds, including Federal funds and any required cost share. The system must have complete, accurate, and current records that document the sources of funds and the purposes for which they are disbursed. It also must have procedures for ensuring that project funds are used only for purposes permitted by the agreement (see § 603.625).

(3) Includes, if advance payments are authorized under § 603.805, procedures to minimize the time elapsing between the payment of funds by the Government and the firm's disbursement of the funds for program purposes.

§ 603.620 Financial management standards for nonprofit participants.

So as not to force system changes for any State, local government, institution of higher education, or other nonprofit organization, expenditure-based TIA requirements for the financial management system of any nonprofit participant are to be the same as those that apply to the participant's other Federal assistance awards. Specifically, the requirements are those in:

(a) 10 CFR 600.220 for State and local governments; and

(b) 10 CFR 600.121(b) for other nonprofit organizations, with the exception of nonprofit Government-owned, contractor-operated (GOCO) facilities and Federally Funded Research and Development Centers (FFRDCs) that are excepted from the definition of ''recipient'' in 10 CFR 600.101. If a GOCO or FFRDC is a participant, the contracting officer must specify appropriate standards that conform as much as practicable with requirements in their procurement contract.

§ 603.625 Cost principles or standards applicable to for-profit participants.

(a) So as not to require any firm to needlessly change its cost accounting system, an expenditure-based TIA is to apply the Government cost principles in 48 CFR part 31 to for-profit participants that currently perform under expenditure-based Federal procurement contracts or assistance awards (other than a TIA) and therefore have existing systems for identifying allowable costs under those principles. If there are programmatic or business reasons to do otherwise, the contracting officer may grant an exception from this requirement and use alternative standards as long as the alternative satisfies the conditions described in paragraph (b) of this section; if an exception is granted the reasons must be documented in the award file.

(b) For other for-profit participants, the contracting officer may establish alternative standards in the agreement as long as that alternative provides, as a minimum, that Federal funds and funds counted as recipients' cost sharing will be used only for costs that:

(1) A reasonable and prudent person would incur in carrying out the RD&D project contemplated by the agreement. Generally, elements of cost that appropriately are charged are those identified with RD&D activities under the Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (see Statement of Financial Accounting Standards Number 2, ''Accounting for Research and Development Costs,'' October 1974). Moreover, costs must be allocated to DOE and other projects in accordance with the relative benefits the projects receive. Costs charged to DOE projects must be given consistent treatment with costs allocated to the participants' other RD&D activities (e.g., activities supported by the participants themselves or by non-Federal sponsors).

(2) Are consistent with the purposes stated in the governing Congressional authorizations and appropriations. The contracting officer is responsible for ensuring that provisions in the award document address any requirements that result from authorizations and appropriations.

§ 603.630 Use Federally approved indirect cost rates for for-profit firms.

In accordance with the general policy in § 603.605, the contracting officer must require a for-profit participant that has federally approved indirect cost rates for its Federal procurement contracts to use those rates to accumulate and report costs under an expenditure-based TIA. This includes both provisional and final rates that are approved up until the time that the TIA is closed out.

§ 603.635 Cost principles for nonprofit participants.

So as not to force financial system changes for any nonprofit participant, an expenditure-based TIA will provide that costs to be charged to the RD&D project by any nonprofit participant must be determined to be allowable in accordance with:

(a) OMB Circular A–87, if the participant is a State or local governmental organization;

(b) OMB Circular A–21, if the participant is an institution of higher education;

(c) 45 CFR Part 74, Appendix E, if the participant is a hospital; or

(d) OMB Circular A–122, if the participant is any other type of nonprofit organization (the cost principles in 48 CFR parts 31 and 231 are to be used by any nonprofit organization that is identified in Circular A–122 as being subject to those cost principles).

§ 603.640 Audits of for-profit participants.

If the TIA is an expenditure-based award, the contracting officer must include in it an audit provision that addresses, for each for-profit participant:

(a) Whether the for-profit participant must have periodic audits, in addition to any award-specific audits, as described in § 603.645;

(b) Whether the Defense Contract Audit Agency (DCAA) or an independent public accountant (IPA) will perform required audits, as discussed in § 603.650;

(c) How frequently any periodic audits are to be performed, addressed in § 603.655; and

(d) Other matters described in § 603.660, such as audit coverage, allowability of audit costs, auditing standards, and remedies for noncompliance.

§ 603.645 Periodic audits and award-specific audits of for-profit participants.

The contracting officer needs to consider requirements for both periodic audits and award-specific audits (as defined in § 603.1295 and § 603.1220, respectively). The way that an expenditure-based TIA addresses the two types of audits will vary, depending upon the type of for-profit participant.

(a) For for-profit participants that are audited by the DCAA or other Federal auditors, as described in §§ 603.650(b) and 603.655, specific requirements for periodic audits need not be added because the Federal audits should be sufficient to address whatever may be needed. The inclusion in the TIA of the standard access-to-records provision for those for-profit participants, as discussed in § 603.910(a), gives the necessary access in the event that the contracting officer later needs to request audits to address award-specific issues that arise.

(b) For each other for-profit participant, the contracting officer:

(1) Should require that the participant have an independent auditor (i.e., the DCAA or an independent public accountant (IPA)) conduct periodic audits of its systems if it expends $500,000 or more per year in TIAs and other Federal assistance awards. A prime reason for including this requirement is that the Federal Government, for an expenditure-based award, necessarily relies on amounts reported by the participant's systems when it sets payment amounts or adjusts performance outcomes. The periodic audit provides some assurance that the reported amounts are reliable.

(2) Must ensure that the award provides an independent auditor the access needed for award-specific audits, to be performed at the request of the contracting officer if issues arise that require audit support. However, consistent with the government-wide policies on single audits that apply to nonprofit participants (see § 603.665), the contracting officer should rely on periodic audits to the maximum extent possible to resolve any award-specific issues.

§ 603.650 Designation of auditor for for-profit participants.

The auditor identified in an expenditure-based TIA to perform periodic and award-specific audits of a for-profit participant depends on the circumstances, as follows:

(a) The Federal cognizant agency or an IPA will be the auditor for a for-profit participant that does not meet the criteria in paragraph (b) of this section. Note that the allocable portion of the costs of the IPA's audit may be reimbursable under the TIA, as described in § 603.660(b). The IPA should be the one that the participant uses to perform other audits (e.g., of its financial statement), to minimize added burdens and costs.

(b) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, the Federal cognizant agency (e.g., DCAA) must be identified as the auditor for a GOCO or FFRDC and for any for-profit participant that is subject to Federal audits because it is currently performing under a Federal award that is subject to the:

(1) Cost principles in 48 CFR part 31 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR); or

(2) Cost Accounting Standards in 48 CFR Chapter 99.

(c) If there are programmatic or business reasons that justify the use of an auditor other than the Federal cognizant agency for a for-profit participant that meets the criteria in paragraph (b) of this section, the contracting officer may provide that an IPA will be the auditor for that participant in which case the reasons for this decision must be documented in the award file.

§ 603.655 Frequency of periodic audits of for-profit participants.

If an expenditure-based TIA provides for periodic audits of a for-profit participant by an IPA, the contracting officer must specify the frequency for those audits. The contracting officer should consider having an audit performed during the first year of the award, when the participant has its IPA do its next financial statement audit, unless the participant already had a systems audit due to other Federal awards within the past two years. The frequency thereafter may vary depending upon the dollars the participant is expending annually under the award, but it is not unreasonable to require an updated audit every two to three years to verify that the participant's systems continue to be reliable (the audit then would cover the two or three-year period between audits).

§ 603.660 Other audit requirements.

If an expenditure-based TIA provides for audits of a for-profit participant by an IPA, the contracting officer also must specify:

(a) What periodic audits are to cover. It is important to specify audit coverage that is only as broad as needed to provide reasonable assurance of the participant's compliance with award terms that have a direct and material effect on the RD&D project.

(b) Who will pay for periodic and award-specific audits. The allocable portion of the costs of any audits by IPAs may be reimbursable under the TIA. The costs may be direct charges or allocated indirect costs, consistent with the participant's accounting system and practices.

(c) The auditing standards that the IPA will use. The contracting officer must provide that the IPA will perform the audits in accordance with the Generally Accepted Government Auditing Standards.

(d) The available remedies for noncompliance. The agreement must provide that the participant may not charge costs to the award for any audit that the contracting officer determines was not performed in accordance with the Generally Accepted Government Auditing Standards or other terms of the agreement. It also must provide that the Government has the right to require the participant to have the IPA take corrective action and, if corrective action is not taken, that the agreements officer has recourse to any of the remedies for noncompliance identified in 10 CFR 600.352(a).

(e) Where the IPA is to send audit reports. The agreement must provide that the IPA is to submit audit reports to the contracting officer. It also must require that the IPA report instances of fraud directly to the Office of Inspector General (OIG), DOE.

(f) The retention period for the IPA's working papers. The contracting officer must specify that the IPA is to retain working papers for a period of at least three years after the final payment, unless the working papers relate to an audit whose findings are not fully resolved within that period or to an unresolved claim or dispute (in which case, the IPA must keep the working papers until the matter is resolved and final action taken).

(g) Who will have access to the IPA's working papers. The agreement must provide for Government access to working papers.

§ 603.665 Periodic audits of nonprofit participants.

An expenditure-based TIA is an assistance instrument subject to the Single Audit Act (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507), so nonprofit participants are subject to the requirements under that Act and OMB Circular A–133. Specifically, the requirements are those in:

(a) 10 CFR 600.226 for State and local governments; and

(b) 10 CFR 600.126 for other nonprofit organizations.

§ 603.670 Flow down audit requirements to subrecipients.

(a) In accordance with § 603.610, an expenditure-based TIA must require participants to flow down the same audit requirements to a subrecipient that would apply if the subrecipient were a participant.

(b) For example, a for-profit participant that is audited by the DCAA:

(1) Would flow down to a university subrecipient the Single Audit Act requirements that apply to a university participant;

(2) Could enter into a subaward allowing a for-profit participant, under the circumstances described in § 603.650(a), to use an IPA to do its audits.

(c) This policy applies to subawards for substantive performance of portions of the RD&D project supported by the TIA, and not to participants' purchases of goods or services needed to carry out the RD&D.

§ 603.675 Reporting use of IPA for subawards.

An expenditure-based TIA should require participants to report to the contracting officer when they enter into any subaward allowing a for-profit subawardee to use an IPA, as described in § 603.670(b)(2).

PROPERTY

§ 603.680 Purchase of real property and equipment by for-profit firms.

(a) With the two exceptions described in paragraph (b) of this section, the contracting officer must require a for-profit firm to purchase real property or equipment with its own funds that are separate from the RD&D project. The contracting officer should allow the firm to charge to an expenditure-based TIA only depreciation or use charges for real property or equipment (and the cost estimate for a fixed-support TIA only would include those costs). Note that the firm must charge depreciation consistently with its usual accounting practice. Many firms treat depreciation as an indirect cost. Any firm that usually charges depreciation indirectly for a particular type of property must not charge depreciation for that property as a direct cost to the TIA.

(b) In two situations, the contracting officer may grant an exception and allow a for-profit firm to use project funds, which includes both the Federal Government and recipient shares, to purchase real property or equipment (i.e., to charge to the project the full acquisition cost of the property). The two circumstances, which should be infrequent for equipment and extremely rare for real property, are those in which either:

(1) The real property or equipment will be dedicated to the project and has a current fair market value that is less than $5,000 by the time the project ends; or

(2) The contracting officer gives prior approval for the firm to include the full acquisition cost of the real property or equipment as part of the cost of the project (see § 603.535).

(c) If the contracting officer grants an exception in either of the circumstances described in paragraphs (b)(1) and (2) of this section, the real property or equipment must be subject to the property management standards in 10 CFR 600.321(b) through (e). As provided in those standards, the title to the real property or equipment will vest conditionally in the for-profit firm upon acquisition. A TIA, whether it is a fixed-support or expenditure-based award, must specify that any item of equipment that has a fair market value of $5,000 or more at the conclusion of the project also will be subject to the disposition process in 10 CFR 600.321(f), whereby the Federal Government will recover its interest in the property at that time.

§ 603.685 Management of real property and equipment by nonprofit participants.

For nonprofit participants, a TIA's requirements for vesting of title, use, management, and disposition of real property or equipment acquired under the award are the same as those that apply to the participant's other Federal assistance awards. Specifically, the requirements are those in:

(a) 10 CFR 600.231 and 600.232, for participants that are States and local governmental organizations; and

(b) 10 CFR 600.132 and 600.134, for other nonprofit participants, with the exception of nonprofit GOCOs and FFRDCs that are exempted from the definition of ''recipient'' in 10 CFR 600.101. If a GOCO or FFRDC is a participant, the contracting officer must specify appropriate standards that conform as much as practicable with the requirements in its procurement contract. Note also that:

(1) If the TIA is a cooperative agreement, 31 U.S.C. 6306 provides authority to vest title to tangible personal property in a nonprofit institution of higher education or in a nonprofit organization whose primary purpose is conducting scientific research, without further obligation to the Federal Government; and

(2) A TIA therefore must specify any conditions on the vesting of title to real property or equipment acquired by any such nonprofit participant.

§ 603.690 Requirements for Federally-owned property.

If DOE provides Federally-owned property to any participant for the performance of RD&D under a TIA, the contracting officer must require that participant to account for, use, and dispose of the property in accordance with:

(a) 10 CFR 600.322, if the participant is a for-profit firm.

(b) 10 CFR 600.232(f), if the participant is a State or local governmental organization. Note that 10 CFR 600.232(f) contains additional requirements for managing the property.

(c) 10 CFR 600.133(a) and 600.134(f), if the participant is a nonprofit organization other than a GOCO or FFRDC (requirements for GOCOs and FFRDCs should conform with the property standards in their procurement contracts).

§ 603.695 Requirements for supplies.

An expenditure-based TIA's provisions should permit participants to use their existing procedures to account for and manage supplies. A fixed-support TIA should not include requirements to account for or manage supplies.

PURCHASING

§ 603.700 Standards for purchasing systems of for-profit firms.

(a) If the TIA is an expenditure-based award, it should require for-profit participants that currently perform under DOE assistance instruments subject to the purchasing standards in 10 CFR 600.331 to use the same requirements for the TIA, unless there are programmatic or business reasons to do otherwise (in which case the reasons must be documented in the award file).

(b) Other for-profit participants under an expenditure-based TIA should be allowed to use their existing purchasing systems, as long as they flow down the applicable requirements in Federal statutes, Executive Orders or Government-wide regulations (see Appendices A and B to this part for a list of those requirements).

§ 603.705 Standards for purchasing systems of nonprofit organizations.

So as not to force system changes for any nonprofit participant, an expenditure-based TIA should provide that each nonprofit participant's purchasing system comply with:

(a) 10 CFR 600.236, if the participant is a State or local governmental organization.

(b) 10 CFR 600.140 through 10 CFR 600.149, if the participant is a nonprofit organization other than a GOCO or FFRDC that is excepted from the definition of ''recipient'' in 10 CFR 600.101. If a GOCO or FFRDC is a participant, the TIA must specify appropriate standards that conform as much as practicable with requirements in its procurement contract.

Subpart G—Award Terms Related to Other Administrative Matters

§ 603.800 Scope.

This subpart addresses administrative matters that do not impose organization-wide requirements on a participant's financial management, property management, or purchasing system. Because an organization does not

have to redesign its systems to accommodate award-to-award variations in these requirements, TIAs may differ in the requirements that they specify for a given participant, based on the circumstances of the particular RD&D project. To eliminate needless administrative complexity, the contracting officer should handle some requirements, such as the payment method, in a uniform way for the agreement as a whole.

PAYMENTS

§ 603.805 Payment methods.

A TIA may provide for:

(a) *Reimbursement*, as described in 10 CFR 600.312(a)(1), if it is an expenditure-based award.

(b) *Advance payments*, as described in 10 CFR 600.312(a)(2), subject to the conditions in 10 CFR 600.312(b)(2)(i) through (iii).

(c) *Payments based on payable milestones*. These are payments made according to a schedule that is based on predetermined measures of technical progress or other payable milestones. This approach relies upon the fact that, as the RD&D progresses throughout the term of the agreement, observable activity will be taking place. The recipient is paid upon the accomplishment of a predetermined measure of progress. A fixed-support TIA must use this payment method (this does not preclude use of an initial advance payment, if there is no alternative to meeting immediate cash needs). Payments based on payable milestones is the preferred method of payment for an expenditure-based TIA if well-defined outcomes can be identified.

§ 603.810 Method and frequency of payment requests.

The procedure and frequency for payment requests depend upon the payment method, as follows:

(a) For either reimbursements or advance payments, the TIA must allow recipients to submit requests for payment at least monthly. The contracting officer may authorize the recipients to use the forms or formats described in 10 CFR 600.312(d).

(b) If the payments are based on payable milestones, the recipient will submit a report or other evidence of accomplishment to the program official at the completion of each predetermined activity. If the award is an expenditure-based TIA that includes minimum cost sharing percentages for milestones (see 10 CFR 603.570(c)), the recipient must certify in the report that the minimum cost sharing requirement has been met. The contracting officer may approve payment to the recipient after receiving validation from the program manager that the milestone was successfully reached.

§ 603.815 Withholding payments.

A TIA must provide that the contracting officer may withhold payments in the circumstances described in 10 CFR 600.312(g), but not otherwise.

§ 603.820 Interest on advance payments.

If an expenditure-based TIA provides for either advance payments or payable milestones, the agreement must require the recipient to:

(a) Maintain in an interest-bearing account any advance payments or milestone payment amounts received in advance of needs to disburse the funds for program purposes unless:

(1) The recipient receives less than $120,000 in Federal grants, cooperative agreements, and TIAs per year;

(2) The best reasonably available interest-bearing account would not be expected to earn interest in excess of $1,000 per year on the advance or milestone payments; or

(3) The depository would require an average or minimum balance so high that it would not be feasible within the expected Federal and non-Federal cash resources for the project.

(b) Remit annually the interest earned to the contracting officer.

REVISION OF BUDGET AND PROGRAM PLANS

§ 603.825 Government approval of changes in plans.

If it is an expenditure-based award, a TIA must require the recipient to obtain the contracting officer's prior approval if there is to be a change in

plans that may result in a need for additional Federal funding (this is unnecessary for a fixed-support TIA because the recipient is responsible for additional costs of achieving the outcomes). Other than that, the program official's substantial involvement in the project should ensure that the Government has advance notice of changes in plans.

§ 603.830 Pre-award costs.

Pre-award costs, as long as they are otherwise allowable costs of the project, may be charged to an expenditure-based TIA only with the specific approval of the contracting officer. All pre-award costs are incurred at the recipient's risk (e.g., DOE is not obligated to reimburse the costs if, for any reason, the recipient does not receive an award, or if the award is less than anticipated and inadequate to cover the costs).

PROGRAM INCOME

§ 603.835 Program income requirements.

A TIA must apply the standards of 10 CFR 600.314 for program income that may be generated. The TIA must also specify if the recipient is to have any obligation to the Federal Government with respect to program income generated after the end of the project period (i.e., the period, as established in the award document, during which Federal support is provided).

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY

§ 603.840 Negotiating data and patent rights.

(a) The contracting officer must confer with program officials and assigned intellectual property counsel to develop an overall strategy for intellectual property that takes into account inventions and data that may result from the project and future needs the Government may have for rights in them. The strategy should take into account program mission requirements and any special circumstances that would support modification of standard patent and data terms, and should include considerations such as the extent of the recipient's contribution to the development of the technology; expected Government or commercial use of the technology; the need to provide equitable treatment among consortium or team members; and the need for the DOE to engage non-traditional Government contractors with unique capabilities.

(b) Because a TIA entails substantial cost sharing by recipients, the contracting officer must use discretion in negotiating Government rights to data and patentable inventions resulting from the RD&D under the agreements. The considerations in §§ 603.845 through 603.875 are intended to serve as guidelines, within which there is considerable latitude to negotiate provisions appropriate to a wide variety of circumstances that may arise.

§ 603.845 Data rights requirements.

(a) If the TIA is a cooperative agreement, the requirements at 10 CFR 600.325(d), Rights in data-general rule, apply. The ''Rights in Data—General'' provision in Appendix A to Subpart D of 10 CFR 600 normally applies. This provision provides the Government with unlimited rights in data first produced in the performance of the agreement, except as provided in paragraph (c) Copyright. However, in certain circumstances, the ''Rights in Data—Programs Covered Under Special Protected Data Statutes'' provision in Appendix A may apply.

(b) If the TIA is an assistance transaction other than a cooperative agreement, the requirements at 10 CFR 600.325(e), Rights in data—programs covered under special protected data statutes, normally apply. The ''Rights in Data—Programs Covered Under Special Data Statutes'' provision in Appendix A to Subpart D of 10 CFR 600 may be modified to accommodate particular circumstances (e.g., access to or expanded use rights in protected data among consortium or team members), or to list data or categories of data that the recipient must make available to the public. In unique cases, the contracting officer may negotiate special data rights requirements that vary from those in 10 CFR 600.325. Modifications to the standard data provisions must be approved by intellectual property counsel.

§ 603.850 Marking of data.

To protect the recipient's interests in data, the TIA should require the recipient to mark any particular data that it wishes to protect from disclosure as specified in 10 CFR 600.15(b).

[76 FR 26582, May 9, 2011]

§ 603.855 Protected data.

In accordance with law and regulation, the contracting officer must not release or disclose data marked with a restrictive legend (as specified in 603.850) to third parties, unless they are parties authorized by the award agreement or the terms of the legend to receive the data and are subject to a written obligation to treat the data in accordance with the marking.

§ 603.860 Rights to inventions.

(a) The contracting officer should negotiate rights in inventions that represent an appropriate balance between the Government's interests and the recipient's interests.

(1) The contracting officer has the flexibility to negotiate patent rights requirements that vary from that which the Bayh-Dole statute (Chapter 18 of Title 35, U.S.C.) and 42 U.S.C. 2182 and 5908 require. A TIA becomes an assistance transaction other than a cooperative agreement if its patent rights requirements vary from those required by these statutes.

(2) If the TIA is a cooperative agreement, the patent rights provision of 10 CFR 600.325(b) or (c) or 10 CFR 600.136 applies, depending on the type of recipient. Unless a class waiver has been issued under 10 CFR 784.7, it will be necessary for a large, for-profit business to request a patent waiver to obtain title to subject inventions.

(b) The contracting officer may negotiate Government rights that vary from the statutorily-required patent rights requirements described in paragraph (a)(2) of this section when necessary to accomplish program objectives and foster the Government's interests. Doing so would make the TIA an assistance transaction other than a cooperative agreement. The contracting officer must decide, with the help of the program manager and assigned intellectual property counsel, what best represents a reasonable arrangement considering the circumstances, including past investments and anticipated future investments of the recipient to the development of the technology, contributions under the current TIA, and potential commercial and Government markets. Any change to the standard patent rights provisions must be approved by assigned intellectual property counsel.

(c) Taking past investments as an example, the contracting officer should consider whether the Government or the recipient has contributed more substantially to the prior RD&D that provides the foundation for the planned effort. If the predominant past contributor to the particular technology has been:

(1) The Government, then the TIA's patent rights provision should be the standard provision as set forth in 10 CFR 600.325(b) or (c), or 10 CFR 600.136, as applicable.

(2) The recipient, then less restrictive patent requirements may be appropriate, which would make the TIA an assistance transaction other than a cooperative agreement. The contracting officer normally would, with the concurrence of intellectual property counsel, allow the recipient to retain title to subject inventions without going through the process of obtaining a patent waiver as required by 10 CFR 784. For example, with the concurrence of intellectual property counsel, the contracting officer also could eliminate or modify the nonexclusive paid-up license for practice by or on behalf of the Government to allow the recipient to benefit more directly from its investments.

(d) For subawards under a TIA that is other than a cooperative agreement, the TIA should normally specify that subrecipients' invention rights are to be negotiated between recipient and subrecipient; that subrecipients will get title to inventions they make; or some other disposition of invention rights. Factors to be considered by the contracting officer in addressing subrecipient's invention rights include: the extent of cost sharing by parties at all tiers; a subrecipient's status as a small business, nonprofit, or FFRDC; and whether an appropriate field of use

licensing requirement would meet the needs of the parties.

(e) Consortium members may allocate invention rights in their collaboration agreement, subject to the review of the contracting officer (See § 603.515). The contracting officer, in performing such review, should consider invention rights to be retained by the Government and rights that may be obtained by small business, nonprofit or FFRDC consortium members.

§ 603.865 March-in rights.

A TIA's patent rights provision should include the Bayh-Dole march-in rights set out in paragraph (j) of the Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit Organization) provision in Appendix A to subpart D of 10 CFR 600, or an equivalent clause, concerning actions that the Government may take to obtain the right to use subject inventions, if the recipient fails to take effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject inventions within a reasonable time. The march-in provision may be modified to best meet the needs of the program. However, only infrequently should the march-in provision be entirely removed (*e.g.*, if a recipient is providing most of the funding for a RD&D project, with the Government providing a much smaller share).

§ 603.870 Marking of documents related to inventions.

To protect the recipient's interest in inventions, the TIA should require the recipient to mark documents disclosing inventions it desires to protect by obtaining a patent. The recipient should mark the documents with a legend identifying them as intellectual property subject to public release or public disclosure restrictions, as provided in 35 U.S.C. 205.

§ 603.875 Foreign access to technology and U.S. competitiveness provisions.

(a) Consistent with the objective of enhancing national security and United States competitiveness by increasing the public's reliance on the United States commercial technology, the contracting officer must include provisions in a TIA that addresses foreign access to technology developed under the TIA.

(b) A provision must provide, as a minimum, that any transfer of the technology must be consistent with the U.S. export laws, regulations and the Department of Commerce Export Regulation at Chapter VII, Subchapter C, Title 15 of the CFR (15 CFR parts 730–774), as applicable.

(c) A provision should also provide that any products embodying, or produced through the use of, any created intellectual property, will be manufactured substantially in the United States, and that any transfer of the right to use or sell the products must, unless the Government grants a waiver, require that the products will be manufactured substantially in the United States. In individual cases, the contracting officer, with the approval of the program official and intellectual property counsel, may waive or modify the requirement of substantial manufacture in the United States at the time of award, or subsequent thereto, upon a showing by the recipient that:

(1) Alternative benefits are being secured for the United States taxpayer (*e.g.*, increased domestic jobs notwithstanding foreign manufacture);

(2) Reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to transfer the technology under similar terms to those likely to manufacture substantially in the United States; or

(3) Under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially feasible.

FINANCIAL AND PROGRAMMATIC REPORTING

§ 603.880 Reports requirements.

A TIA must include requirements that, as a minimum, provide for periodic reports addressing program performance and, if it is an expenditure-based award, business/financial status. The contracting officer must require submission of the reports at least annually, and may require submission as frequently as quarterly (this does not preclude a recipient from electing to submit more frequently than quarterly the financial information that is required to process payment requests if the award is an expenditure-based TIA

that uses reimbursement or advance payments under § 603.810(a)). The requirements for the content of the reports are as follows:

(a) The program portions of the reports must address progress toward achieving performance goals and milestones, including current issues, problems, or developments.

(b) The business/financial portions of the reports, applicable only to expenditure-based awards, must provide summarized details on the status of resources (federal funds and non-federal cost sharing), including an accounting of expenditures for the period covered by the report. The report should compare the resource status with any payment and expenditure schedules or plans provided in the original award; explain any major deviations from those schedules; and discuss actions that will be taken to address the deviations. The contracting officer may require a recipient to separately identify in these reports the expenditures for each participant in a consortium and for each programmatic milestone or task, if the contracting officer, after consulting with the program official, judges that those additional details are needed for good stewardship.

§ 603.885 Updated program plans and budgets.

In addition to reports on progress to date, a TIA may include a provision requiring the recipient to annually prepare an updated technical plan for future conduct of the research effort and a revised budget if there is a significant change from the initial budget.

§ 603.890 Final performance report.

A TIA must require a final performance report that addresses all major accomplishments under the TIA.

§ 603.895 Protection of information in programmatic reports.

If a TIA is awarded under the authority of 42 U.S.C. 7256(g) (*i.e.*, it is a type of assistance transaction ''other than'' a contract, grant or a cooperative agreement), the contracting officer may inform a participant that the award is covered by a special protected data statute, which provides for the protection from public disclosure, for a period of up to 5 years after the date on which the information is developed, any information developed pursuant to this transaction that would be trade secret, or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential, if the information had been obtained from a non-Federal party.

§ 603.900 Receipt of final performance report.

The TIA should make receipt of the final report a condition for final payment. If the payments are based on payable milestones, the submission and acceptance of the final report by the Government representative will be incorporated as an event that is a prerequisite for one of the payable milestones.

RECORDS RETENTION AND ACCESS REQUIREMENTS

§ 603.905 Record retention requirements.

A TIA must require participants to keep records related to the TIA (for which the agreement provides Government access under § 603.910) for a period of three years after submission of the final financial status report for an expenditure-based TIA or final program performance report for a fixed-support TIA, with the following exceptions:

(a) The participant must keep records longer than three years after submission of the final financial status report if the records relate to an audit, claim, or dispute that begins but does not reach its conclusion within the 3-year period. In that case, the participant must keep the records until the matter is resolved and final action taken.

(b) Records for any real property or equipment acquired with project funds under the TIA must be kept for three years after final disposition.

§ 603.910 Access to a for-profit participant's records.

(a) If a for-profit participant currently grants access to its records to the DCAA or other Federal Government auditors, the TIA must include for that participant the standard access-to-records requirements at 10 CFR 600.342(e). If the agreement is a fixed-

support TIA, the language in 10 CFR 600.342(e) may be modified to provide access to records concerning the recipient's technical performance, without requiring access to the recipient's financial or other records. Note that any need to address access to technical records in this way is in addition to, not in lieu of, the need to address rights in data (see § 603.845).

(b) For other for-profit participants that do not currently give the Federal Government direct access to their records and are not willing to grant full access to records pertinent to the award, the contracting officer may negotiate limited access to the recipient's financial records. For example, if the audit provision of an expenditure-based TIA gives an IPA access to the recipient's financial records for audit purposes, the Federal Government must have access to the IPA's reports and working papers and the contracting officer need not include a provision requiring direct Government access to the recipient's financial records. For both fixed-support and expenditure-based TIAs, the TIA must include the access-to-records requirements at 10 CFR 600.342(e) for records relating to technical performance.

§ 603.915 Access to a nonprofit participant's records.

A TIA must include for any nonprofit participant the standard access-to-records requirement at:

(a) 10 CFR 600.242(e), for a participant that is a State or local governmental organization;

(b) 10 CFR 600.153(e), for a participant that is a nonprofit organization. The same requirement applies to any GOCO or FFRDC, even though nonprofit GOCOs and FFRDCs are exempted from the definition of ''recipient'' in 10 CFR 600.101.

TERMINATION AND ENFORCEMENT

§ 603.920 Termination and enforcement requirements.

(a) *Termination*. A TIA must include the following conditions for termination:

(1) An award may be terminated in whole or in part by the contracting officer, if a recipient materially fails to comply with the terms and conditions of the award.

(2) Subject to a reasonable determination by either party that the project will not produce beneficial results commensurate with the expenditure of resources, that party may terminate in whole or in part the agreement by providing at least 30 days advance written notice to the other party, provided such notice is preceded by consultation between the parties. The two parties will negotiate the termination conditions, including the effective date and, in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. If either party determines in the case of partial termination that the reduced or modified portion of the award will not accomplish the purpose for which the award was made, the award may be terminated in its entirety.

(3) Unless otherwise negotiated, for terminations of an expenditure based TIA, DOE's maximum liability is the lesser of:

(i) DOE's share of allowable costs incurred up to the date of termination, or

(ii) The amount of DOE funds obligated to the TIA.

(4) Unless otherwise negotiated, for terminations of a fixed-support based TIA, DOE shall pay the recipient a proportionate share of DOE's financial commitment to the project based on the percent of project completion as of the date of termination.

(5) Notwithstanding paragraphs (3) and (4) of this section, if the award includes milestone payments, the Government has no obligation to pay the recipient beyond the last completed and paid milestone if the recipient decides to terminate.

(b) Enforcement. The standards of 10 CFR 600.352 (for enforcement) and the procedures in 10 CFR 600.22 (for disputes and appeals) apply.

Subpart H—Executing the Award

§ 603.1000 Contracting officer's responsibilities at time of award.

At the time of the award, the contracting officer must:

(a) Ensure that the award document contains the appropriate terms and

conditions and is signed by the appropriate parties, in accordance with §§ 603.1005 through 603.1015.

(b) Document the analysis of the agreement in the award file, as discussed in § 603.1020.

(c) Provide information about the award to the office responsible for reporting on TIAs.

THE AWARD DOCUMENT

§ 603.1005 General responsibilities.

The contracting officer is responsible for ensuring that the award document is complete and accurate. The document should:

(a) Address all issues;

(b) State requirements directly. It is not helpful to readers to incorporate statutes or rules by reference, without sufficient explanation of the requirements. The contracting officer generally should not incorporate clauses from the Federal Acquisition Regulation (48 CFR parts 1–53) or Department of Energy Acquisition Regulation (48 CFR parts 901–970) because those provisions are designed for procurement contracts that are used to acquire goods and services, rather than for a TIA or other assistance instruments.

(c) Be written in clear and concise language, to minimize potential ambiguity.

§ 603.1010 Substantive issues.

Each TIA is designed and negotiated individually to meet the specific requirements of the particular project, so the list of substantive issues that will be addressed in the award document may vary. Every award document must address:

(a) *Project scope*. The scope is an overall vision statement for the project, including a discussion of the project's purpose, objectives, and detailed commercial goals. It is a critical provision because it provides a context for resolving issues that may arise during post-award administration. In a fixed-support TIA, the well-defined outcomes that reliably indicate the amount of effort expended and serve as the basis for the level of the fixed support must be clearly specified (see §§ 603.305 and 603.560(a)).

(b) *Project management*. The TIA should describe the nature of the relationship between the Federal Government and the recipient; the relationship among the participants, if the recipient is an unincorporated consortium; and the overall technical and administrative management of the project. A TIA is used to carry out collaborative relationships between the Federal Government and the recipient. Consequently, there must be substantial involvement of the DOE program official (see § 603.220) and usually the contracting officer. The program official provides technical insight, which differs from the usual technical oversight of a project. The management provision also should discuss how modifications to the TIA are made.

(c) *Termination, enforcement, and disputes*. A TIA must provide for termination, enforcement remedies, and disputes and appeals procedures, in accordance with § 603.920.

(d) *Funding*. The TIA must:

(1) Show the total amount of the agreement and the total period of performance.

(2) If the TIA is an expenditure-based award, state the Government's and recipient's agreed-upon cost shares for the project period and for each budget period. The award document should identify values for any in-kind contributions, determined in accordance with §§ 603.530 through 603.555, to preclude later disagreements about them.

(3) Specify the amount of Federal funds obligated and the performance period for those obligated funds.

(4) State, if the agreement is to be incrementally funded, that the Government's obligation for additional funding is contingent upon the availability of funds and that no legal obligation on the part of the Government exists until additional funds are made available and the agreement is amended. The TIA also must include a prior approval requirement for changes in plans requiring additional Government funding, in accordance with § 603.825.

(e) *Payment*. The TIA must identify the payment method and tell the recipient how, when, and where to submit payment requests, as discussed in §§ 603.805 through 603.815. The payment method must take into account sound

cash management practices by avoiding unwarranted cash advances. For an expenditure-based TIA, the payment provision must require the return of interest should excess cash balances occur, in accordance with § 603.820. For any TIA using the milestone payment method described in § 603.805(c), the TIA must include language notifying the recipient that the contracting officer may adjust amounts of future milestone payments if a project's expenditures fall too far below the projections that were the basis for setting the amounts (see § 603.575(c) and § 603.1105(c)).

(f) *Records retention and access to records.* The TIA must include the records retention requirement at § 603.910. The TIA also must provide for access to for-profit and nonprofit participants' records, in accordance with § 603.915 and § 603.920.

(g) *Patents and data rights.* In designing the patents and data rights provision, the TIA must set forth the minimum required Federal Government rights in intellectual property generated under the award and address related matters, as provided in §§ 603.840 through 603.875. It is important to define all essential terms in the patent rights provision.

(h) *Foreign access to technology and U.S. competitiveness.* The TIA must include provisions, in accordance with § 603.875, concerning foreign access and domestic manufacture of products using technology generated under the award.

(i) *Title to, management of, and disposition of tangible property.* The property provisions for for-profit and nonprofit participants must be in accordance with §§ 603.685 through 603.700.

(j) *Financial management systems.* For an expenditure-based award, the TIA must specify the minimum standards for financial management systems of both for-profit and nonprofit participants, in accordance with §§ 603.615 and 603.620.

(k) *Allowable costs.* If the TIA is an expenditure-based award, it must specify the standards that both for-profit and nonprofit participants are to use to determine which costs may be charged to the project, in accordance with §§ 603.625 through 603.635, as well as § 603.830.

(l) *Audits.* If a TIA is an expenditure-based award, it must include an audit provision for both for-profit and nonprofit participants and subrecipients, in accordance with §§ 603.640 through 603.670 and § 603.675.

(m) *Purchasing system standards.* The TIA should include a provision specifying the standards in §§ 603.700 and 603.705 for purchasing systems of for-profit and nonprofit participants, respectively.

(n) *Program income.* The TIA should specify requirements for program income, in accordance with § 603.835.

(o) *Financial and programmatic reporting.* The TIA must specify the reports that the recipient is required to submit and tell the recipient when and where to submit them, in accordance with §§ 603.880 through 603.900.

(p) *Assurances for applicable national policy requirements.* The TIA must incorporate assurances of compliance with applicable requirements in Federal statutes, Executive Orders, or regulations (except for national policies that require certifications). Appendix A to this part contains a list of commonly applicable requirements that should be augmented with any specific requirements that apply to a particular TIA (e.g., general provisions in the appropriations act for the specific funds that are being obligating).

(q) *Other matters.* The agreement should address any other issues that need clarification, including the name of the contracting officer who will be responsible for post-award administration and the statutory authority or authorities for entering into the TIA. In addition, the agreement must specify that it takes precedence over any inconsistent terms and conditions in collateral documents such as attachments to the TIA or the recipient's articles of collaboration.

§ 603.1015 Execution.

(a) If the recipient is a consortium that is not formally incorporated and the consortium members prefer to have the agreement signed by all of them individually, the agreement may be executed in that manner.

(b) If they wish to designate one consortium member to sign the agreement on behalf of the consortium as a whole, the determination whether to execute the agreement in that way should not be made until the contracting officer reviews the consortium's articles of collaboration with legal counsel.

(1) The purposes of the review are to:

(i) Determine whether the articles properly authorize one participant to sign on behalf of the other participants and are binding on all consortium members with respect to the RD&D project; and

(ii) Assess the risk that otherwise could exist when entering into an agreement signed by a single member on behalf of a consortium that is not a legal entity. For example, the contracting officer should assess whether the articles of collaboration adequately address consortium members' future liabilities related to the RD&D project (e.g., whether they will have joint and severable liability).

(2) After the review, in consultation with legal counsel, the contracting officer should determine whether it is better to have all of the consortium members sign the agreement individually or to allow them to designate one member to sign on all members' behalf.

REPORTING INFORMATION ABOUT THE AWARD

§ 603.1020 File documents.

The award file should include an analysis which:

(a) Briefly describes the program and details the specific commercial benefits that should result from the project supported by the TIA. If the recipient is a consortium that is not formally incorporated, a copy of the signed articles of collaboration should be attached.

(b) Describes the process that led to the award of the TIA, including how DOE solicited and evaluated proposals and selected the one supported through the TIA.

(c) Explains the basis for the decision that a TIA was the most appropriate instrument, in accordance with the factors in Subpart B of this part. The explanation must include the answers to the relevant questions in § 603.225(a) through (d).

(d) Explains how the recipient's cost sharing contributions was valued in accordance with §§ 603.530 through 603.555. For a fixed-support TIA, the file must document the analysis required (see § 603.560) to set the fixed level of Federal support; the documentation must explain how the recipient's minimum cost share was determined and how the expenditures required to achieve the project outcomes were estimated.

(e) Documents the results of the negotiation, addressing all significant issues in the TIA's provisions.

Subpart I—Post-Award Administration

§ 603.1100 Contracting officer's post-award responsibilities.

Generally, the contracting officer's post-award responsibilities are the same responsibilities as those for any cooperative agreement. Responsibilities for a TIA include:

(a) Participating as the business partner to the DOE program official to ensure the Government's substantial involvement in the RD&D project. This may involve attendance with program officials at kickoff meetings or post-award conferences with recipients. It also may involve attendance at the consortium management's periodic meetings to review technical progress, financial status, and future program plans.

(b) Tracking and processing of reports required by the award terms and conditions, including periodic business status reports, programmatic progress reports, and patent reports.

(c) Handling payment requests and related matters. For a TIA using advance payments, that includes reviews of progress to verify that there is continued justification for advancing funds, as discussed in § 603.1105(b). For a TIA using milestone payments, it includes making any needed adjustments in future milestone payment amounts, as discussed in § 603.1105(c).

(d) Making continuation awards for subsequent budget periods, if the agreement includes separate budget periods. See 10 CFR 600.26(b). Any continuation award is contingent on availability of

funds, satisfactory progress towards meeting the performance goals and milestones, submittal of required reports, and compliance with the terms and conditions of the award.

(e) Coordinating audit requests and reviewing audit reports for both single audits of participants' systems and any award-specific audits that may be needed, as discussed in §§ 603.1115 and 603.1120.

(f) Responding, after coordination with program officials and intellectual property counsel, to recipient requests for permission to assign or license intellectual property to entities that do not agree to manufacture substantially in the United States, as described in § 603.875(b). Before granting approval for any technology, the contracting officer must secure assurance that any such assignment is consistent with license rights for Government use of the technology, and that other conditions for any such transfer are met.

§ 603.1105 Advance payments or payable milestones.

The contracting officer must:

(a) For any expenditure-based TIA with advance payments or payable milestones, forward to the responsible payment office any interest that the recipient remits in accordance with § 603.820(b). The payment office will return the amounts to the Department of the Treasury's miscellaneous receipts account.

(b) For any expenditure-based TIA with advance payments, consult with the program official and consider whether program progress reported in periodic reports, in relation to reported expenditures, is sufficient to justify the continued authorization of advance payments under § 603.805(b).

(c) For any expenditure-based TIA using milestone payments, work with the program official at the completion of each payable milestone or upon receipt of the next business status report to:

(1) Compare the total amount of project expenditures, as recorded in the payable milestone report or business status report, with the projected budget for completing the milestone; and

(2) Adjust future payable milestones, as needed, if expenditures lag substantially behind what was originally projected and the contracting officer judges that the recipient is receiving Federal funds sooner than necessary for program purposes. Before making adjustments, the contracting officer should consider how large a deviation is acceptable at the time of the milestone. For example, suppose that the first milestone payment for a TIA is $50,000, and that the awarding official set the amount based on a projection that the recipient would have to expend $100,000 to reach the milestone (*i.e.*, the original plan was for the recipient's share at that milestone to be 50% of project expenditures). If the milestone payment report shows $90,000 in expenditures, the recipient's share at this point is 44% ($40,000 out of the total $90,000 expended, with the balance provided by the $50,000 milestone payment of Federal funds). For this example, the contracting officer should adjust future milestones if a 6% difference in the recipient's share at the first milestone is judged to be too large, but not otherwise. Remember that milestone payment amounts are not meant to track expenditures precisely at each milestone and that a recipient's share will increase as it continues to perform RD&D and expend funds, until it completes another milestone to trigger the next Federal payment.

§ 603.1110 Other payment responsibilities.

Regardless of the payment method, the contracting officer should ensure that:

(a) The request complies with the award terms;

(b) Available funds are adequate to pay the request;

(c) The recipient will not have excess cash on hand, based on expenditure patterns; and

(d) Payments are not withheld, except in one of the circumstances described in 10 CFR 600.312(g).

§ 603.1115 Single audits.

For audits of for-profit participant's systems, under §§ 603.640 through 603.660, the contracting officer is the

focal point for ensuring that participants submit audit reports and for resolving any findings in those reports. The contracting officer's responsibilities regarding single audits of nonprofit participant's systems are identified in the DOE ''Guide to Financial Assistance.''

§ 603.1120 Award-specific audits.

Guidance on when and how the contracting officer should request additional audits for an expenditure-based TIA is identical to the guidance in 10 CFR 600.316(d). If the contracting officer requires an award-specific examination or audit of a for-profit participant's records related to a TIA, the contracting officer must use the auditor specified in the award terms and conditions, which should be the same auditor who performs periodic audits of the participant.

Subpart J—Definitions of Terms Used in this Part

§ 603.1200 Definitions.

The terms defined in 10 CFR 600.3 apply to all DOE financial assistance, including a TIA. In addition to those terms, the following terms are used in this part.

§ 603.1205 Advance.

A payment made to a recipient before the recipient disburses the funds for program purposes. Advance payments may be based upon a recipient's request or a predetermined payment schedule.

§ 603.1210 Articles of collaboration.

An agreement among the participants in a consortium that is not formally incorporated as a legal entity, by which they establish their relative rights and responsibilities (see § 603.515).

§ 603.1215 Assistance.

The transfer of a thing of value to a recipient to carry out a public purpose of support or stimulation authorized by a law of the United States (see 31 U.S.C. 6101(3)). Grants, cooperative agreements, and technology investment agreements are examples of legal instruments used to provide assistance.

§ 603.1220 Award-specific audit.

An audit of a single TIA, usually done at the cognizant contracting officer's request, to help resolve issues that arise during or after the performance of the RD&D project. An award-specific audit of an individual award differs from a periodic audit of a participant (as defined in § 603.1295).

§ 603.1225 Cash contributions.

A recipient's cash expenditures made as contributions toward cost sharing, including expenditures of money that third parties contributed to the recipient.

§ 603.1230 Commercial firm.

A for-profit firm or segment of a for-profit firm (*e.g.*, a division or other business unit) that does a substantial portion of its business in the commercial marketplace.

§ 603.1235 Consortium.

A group of RD&D-performing organizations that either is formally incorporated or that otherwise agrees to jointly carry out a RD&D project (see definition of ''articles of collaboration,'' in § 603.1210).

§ 603.1240 Cooperative agreement.

A legal instrument which, consistent with 31 U.S.C. 6305, is used to enter into the same kind of relationship as a grant (see definition of ''grant,'' in § 603.1270), except that substantial involvement is expected between the DOE and the recipient when carrying out the activity contemplated by the cooperative agreement. The term does not include ''cooperative research and development agreements'' as defined in 15 U.S.C. 3710a.

§ 603.1245 Cost sharing.

A portion of project costs from non-Federal sources that are borne by the recipient or non-Federal third parties on behalf of the recipient, rather than by the Federal Government.

§ 603.1250 Data.

Recorded information, regardless of form or the media on which it may be recorded. The term includes technical data and computer software. It does not include information incidental to administration, such as financial, administrative, cost or pricing, or other management information related to the administration of a TIA.

§ 603.1255 Equipment.

Tangible property, other than real property, that has a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of $5,000 or more per unit.

§ 603.1260 Expenditure-based award.

A Federal Government assistance award for which the amounts of interim payments or the total amount ultimately paid (*i.e.*, the sum of interim payments and final payment) are subject to redetermination or adjustment, based on the amounts expended by the recipient in carrying out the purposes for which the award was made, as long as the redetermination or adjustment does not exceed the total Government funds obligated to the award. Most Federal Government grants and cooperative agreements are expenditure-based awards.

§ 603.1265 Expenditures or outlays.

Charges made to the project or program. They may be reported either on a cash or accrual basis, as shown in the following table:

If reports are prepared on a . . .	Expenditures are the sum of . . .
(a) Cash basis	(1) Cash disbursements for direct charges for goods and services; (2) The amount of indirect expense charge; (3) The value of third party in-kind contributions applied; and (4) The amount of cash advances and payments made to any other organizations for the performance of a part of the RD&D effort.
(b) Accrual basis	(1) Cash disbursements for direct charges for goods and services; (2) The amount of indirect expense incurred; (3) The value of in-kind contributions applied; and (4) The net increase (or decrease) in the amounts owed by the recipient for goods and other property received, for services performed by employees, contractors, and other payees and other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance are required.

§ 603.1270 Grant.

A legal instrument which, consistent with 31 U.S.C. 6304, is used to enter into a relationship:

(a) The principal purpose of which is to transfer a thing of value to the recipient to carry out a public purpose of support or stimulation authorized by a law of the United States, rather than to acquire property or services for the Department of Energy's direct benefit or use.

(b) In which substantial involvement is not expected between the DOE and the recipient when carrying out the activity contemplated by the grant.

§ 603.1275 In-kind contributions.

The value of non-cash contributions made by a recipient or non-Federal third parties toward cost sharing.

§ 603.1280 Institution of higher education.

An educational institution that:

(a) Meets the criteria in section 101 of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1001); and

(b) Is subject to the provisions of OMB Circular A–110, ''Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations,'' as implemented by the Department of Energy at 10 CFR 600, Subpart B.

§ 603.1285 Intellectual property.

Patents, trademarks, copyrights, mask works, protected data, and other forms of comparable property protected by Federal law and foreign counterparts.

§ 603.1290 Participant.

A consortium member or, in the case of an agreement with a single for-profit entity, the recipient. Note that a for-profit participant may be a firm or a segment of a firm (*e.g.*, a division or other business unit).

§ 603.1295 Periodic audit.

An audit of a participant, performed at an agreed-upon time (usually a regular time interval), to determine whether the participant as a whole is managing its Federal awards in compliance with the terms of those awards. Appendix A to this part describes what such an audit may cover. A periodic audit of a participant differs from an award-specific audit of an individual award (as defined in § 603.1220).

§ 603.1300 Procurement contract.

A Federal Government procurement contract. It is a legal instrument which, consistent with 31 U.S.C. 6303, reflects a relationship between the Federal Government and a State, a local government, or other non-government entity when the principal purpose of the instrument is to acquire property or services for the direct benefit or use of the Federal Government. See the more detailed definition of the term ''contract'' at 48 CFR 2.101.

§ 603.1305 Program income.

Gross income earned by the recipient or a participant that is generated by a supported activity or earned as a direct result of a TIA. Program income includes but is not limited to: income from fees for performing services; the use or rental of real property, equipment, or supplies acquired under a TIA; the sale of commodities or items fabricated under a TIA; and license fees and royalties on patents and copyrights. Interest earned on advances of Federal funds is not program income.

§ 603.1310 Program official.

A Federal Government program manager, project officer, scientific officer, or other individual who is responsible for managing the technical program being carried out through the use of a TIA.

§ 603.1315 Property.

Real property, equipment, supplies, and intellectual property, unless stated otherwise.

§ 603.1320 Real property.

Land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, but excluding movable machinery and equipment.

§ 603.1325 Recipient.

An organization or other entity that receives a TIA from DOE. Note that a for-profit recipient may be a firm or a segment of a firm (*e.g.*, a division or other business unit).

§ 603.1330 Supplies.

Tangible property other than real property and equipment. Supplies have a useful life of less than one year or an acquisition cost of less than $5,000 per unit.

§ 603.1335 Termination.

The cancellation of a TIA, in whole or in part, at any time prior to either:

(a) The date on which all work under the TIA is completed; or

(b) The date on which Federal sponsorship ends, as given in the award document or any supplement or amendment thereto.

§ 603.1340 Technology investment agreement.

A TIA is a special type of assistance instrument used to increase involvement of commercial firms in the DOE research, development and demonstration (RD&D) programs. A TIA, like a cooperative agreement, requires substantial Federal involvement in the technical or management aspects of the project. A TIA may be either a type of cooperative agreement or a type of assistance transaction other than a cooperative agreement, depending on the intellectual property provisions. A TIA is either:

(a) A type of cooperative agreement with more flexible provisions tailored for involving commercial firms (as distinct from a cooperative agreement subject to all of the requirements in 10 CFR Part 600), but with intellectual property provisions in full compliance

with the DOE intellectual property statutes (*i.e.*, Bayh-Dole statute and 42 U.S.C. §§ 2182 and 5908, as implemented in 10 CFR 600.325); or

(b) An assistance transaction other than a cooperative agreement, if its intellectual property provisions vary from the Bayh-Dole statute and 42 U.S.C. §§ 2182 and 5908, which require the Government to retain certain intellectual property rights, and require differing treatment between large businesses and nonprofit organizations or small businesses.

APPENDIX A TO PART 603—APPLICABLE FEDERAL STATUTES, EXECUTIVE ORDERS, AND GOVERNMENT-WIDE REGULATIONS

Whether the TIA is a cooperative agreement or a type of assistance transaction other than a cooperative agreement, the terms and conditions of the agreement must provide for recipients' compliance with applicable Federal statutes, Executive Orders and Government-wide regulations. This appendix lists some of the more common requirements to aid in identifying ones that apply to a specific TIA. The list is not intended to be all-inclusive, however; the contracting officer may need to consult legal counsel to verify whether there are others that apply (*e.g.*, due to a provision in the appropriations act for the specific funds in use or due to a statute or rule that applies to a particular program or type of activity).

A. CERTIFICATIONS

All financial assistance applicants, including applicants requesting a TIA must comply with the prohibitions concerning lobbying in a Government-wide common rule that the DOE has codified at 10 CFR part 601. The ''List of Certifications and Assurances for SF 424(R&R)'' on the DOE Applicant and Recipient page at *http://grants.pr.doe.gov* includes the Government-wide certification that must be provided with a proposal for a financial assistance award, including a TIA.

B. ASSURANCES THAT APPLY TO A TIA

Currently the DOE approach to communicating Federal statutes, Executive Orders and Government-wide regulations is to provide potential applicants a list of ''National Policies Assurances to be Incorporated as Award Terms'' in the program announcement (This list is available on the Applicant and Recipient Page at *http://grants.pr.doe.gov* under Award Terms). The contracting officer should follow this approach for announcements that allow for the award of a TIA. The contracting officer should normally incorporate by reference or attach the list of national policy assurances to a TIA award. Of these requirements, the following four assurances apply to all TIA:

1. Prohibitions on discrimination on the basis of race, color, or national origin in Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. 2000d, *et seq.*) as implemented by DOE regulations at 10 CFR part 1040. These apply to all financial assistance. They require recipients to flow down the prohibitions to any subrecipients performing a part of the substantive RD&D program (as opposed to suppliers from whom recipients purchase goods or services).

2. Prohibitions on discrimination on the basis of age, in the Age Discrimination Act of 1975 (42 U.S.C. 6101, *et seq.*) as implemented by DOE regulations at 10 CFR part 1040. They apply to all financial assistance and require flow down to subrecipients.

3. Prohibitions on discrimination on the basis of handicap, in section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 794) as implemented by DOE regulations at 10 CFR part 1041. They apply to all financial assistance and require flow down to subrecipients.

4. Preferences for use of U.S.-flag air carriers in the International Air Transportation Fair Competitive Practices Act of 1974 (49 U.S.C. 40118), which apply to uses of U.S. Government funds.

C. OTHER ASSURANCES

Additional assurance requirements may apply in certain circumstances, as follows:

1. If construction work is to be done under a TIA or its subawards, it is subject to the prohibitions in Executive Order 11246 on discrimination on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin.

2. If the RD&D involves human subjects or animals, it is subject to the requirements codified by the Department of Health and Human Services at 45 CFR part 46 and implemented by DOE at 10 CFR part 745 and rules on animal acquisition, transport, care, handling and use in 9 CFR parts 1 through 4, Department of Agriculture rules and rules of the Department of Interior at 50 CFR parts 10 through 24 and Commerce at 50 CFR parts 217 through 277, respectively. See item a. or b., respectively, under the heading ''Live organisms'' included on the DOE ''National Policy Assurances To Be Incorporated As Award Terms'' on the Applicant and Recipient Page.

3. If the RD&D involves actions that may affect the environment, it is subject to the National Environmental Policy Act, and may also be subject to national policy requirements for flood-prone areas, coastal zones, coastal barriers, wild and scenic rivers, and underground sources of drinking water.

4. If the project may impact a historic property, it is subject to the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (16 U.S.C. 470, *et seq.*).

APPENDIX B TO PART 603—FLOW DOWN REQUIREMENTS FOR PURCHASES OF GOODS AND SERVICES

A. As discussed in § 603.705, the contracting officer must inform recipients of any requirements that flow down to their purchases of goods or services (e.g., supplies or equipment) under their TIA. Note that purchases of goods or services differ from subawards, which are for substantive RD&D program performance.

B. Appendix A to 10 CFR part 600, subpart D lists eight requirements that commonly apply to firms' purchases under grants or cooperative agreements. Of those eight, two that apply to all recipients' purchases under a TIA are:

1. *Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment (31 U.S.C. 1352).* A contractor submitting a bid to the recipient for a contract award of $100,000 or more must file a certification with the recipient that it has not and will not use Federal appropriations for certain lobbying purposes. The contractor also must disclose any lobbying with non-Federal funds that takes place in connection with obtaining any Federal award. For further details, see 10 CFR part 601, the DOE's codification of the Government-wide common rule implementing this amendment.

2. *Debarment and suspension.* Recipients may not make contract awards that exceed the simplified acquisition threshold (currently $100,000) and certain other contract awards may not be made to parties listed on the General Services Administration (GSA) ''List of Parties Excluded from Federal Procurement and Nonprocurement Programs.'' The GSA list contains the names of parties debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded by agencies, and parties declared ineligible under statutory or regulatory authority other than Executive Orders 12549 (3 CFR, 1986 Comp., p. 189) and 12689 (3 CFR, 1989 Comp., p. 235). For further details, see subparts A through E of 10 CFR part 606, which is the DOE's codification of the Government-wide common rule implementing Executive Orders 12549 and 12689.

C. One other requirement applies only in cases where construction work is to be performed under the TIA with Federal funds or recipient funds counted toward required cost sharing:

1. *Equal Employment Opportunity.* If the TIA includes construction work, the contracting officer should inform the recipient that Department of Labor regulations at 41 CFR 60–1.4(b) prescribe a clause that must be incorporated into construction awards and subawards. Further details are provided in Appendix B to 10 CFR 600 subpart D, item 1.

PART 605—THE OFFICE OF SCIENCE FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE PROGRAM

Sec.
605.1 Purpose and scope.
605.2 Applicability.
605.3 Definitions.
605.4 Exceptions.
605.5 The Office of Science Financial Assistance Program.
605.6 Eligibility.
605.7 [Reserved]
605.8 Solicitation.
605.9 Application requirements.
605.10 Application evaluation and selection.
605.11 Additional requirements.
605.12 Funding.
605.13 Cost sharing.
605.14 Limitation of DOE liability.
605.15 Fee.
605.16 Indirect cost limitations.
605.17 [Reserved]
605.18 National security.
605.19 Continuation funding and reporting requirements.
605.20 Dissemination of results.
APPENDIX A TO PART 605—ENERGY RESEARCH PROGRAM OFFICE DESCRIPTIONS

AUTHORITY: Section 31 of the Atomic Energy Act, as amended, Pub. L. 83–703, 68 Stat. 919 (42 U.S.C. 2051); sec. 107 of the Energy Reorganization Act of 1974, Pub. L. 93–438, 88 Stat. 1240 (42 U.S.C. 5817); Federal Nonnuclear Energy Research and Development Act of 1974, Pub. L. 93–577, 88 Stat. 1878 (42 U.S.C. 5901 *et seq.*); secs. 644 and 646 of the Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 599 (42 U.S.C. 7254 and 7256); Federal Grant and Cooperative Agreement Act, as amended (31 U.S.C. 6301 *et seq.*).

SOURCE: 57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, unless otherwise noted.

§ 605.1 Purpose and scope.

This part sets forth the policies and procedures applicable to the award and administration of grants and cooperative agreements by the DOE Office of Science (SC) for basic and applied research, educational and/or training activities, conferences and related activities.

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 605.2 Applicability.

(a) This part applies to all grants and cooperative agreements awarded after the effective date of this amended rule.

(b) Except as otherwise provided by this part, the award and administration of grants and cooperative agreements shall be governed by 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910 (DOE Financial Assistance Rules).

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 605.3 Definitions.

In addition to the definitions provided in 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910, the following definitions are provided for purposes of this part—

Basic and applied research means basic and applied research and that part of development not related to the development of specific systems or products. The primary aim of research is scientific study and experimentation directed toward advancing the state of the art or increasing knowledge or understanding rather than focusing on a specific system or product.

Educational/Training means support for education or related activities for an individual or organization that will enhance education levels and skills in particular scientific or technical areas of interest to DOE.

Principal investigator means the scientist or other individual designated by the recipient to direct the project.

Recipient obligation means the amounts of orders placed, contracts and subawards issued, services received, and similar transactions during a given period that will require payment by the recipient during the same or a future period.

Related conference means scientific or technical conferences, symposia, workshops or seminars for the purpose of communicating or exchanging information or views pertinent to SC.

Special purpose equipment means equipment which is used only for research, medical, scientific, educational, or other related project activity.

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 605.4 Exceptions.

Single-case exceptions from this part may be authorized in writing by the Director or Deputy Director of SC or the Head of a Contracting Activity upon the written request of DOE staff, an applicant for an award, or a recipient. A request from an applicant or a recipient must be submitted to or through the cognizant contracting officer. Whenever a proposed exception from this part would be a exception from 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910, the exception must also be authorized in accordance with the procedures prescribed in that part.

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 605.5 The Office of Science Financial Assistance Program.

(a) DOE may issue, under the Office of Science Financial Assistance Program, 10 CFR part 605, awards for basic and applied research, educational/training activities, conferences, and other related activities under the SC program areas set forth in paragraph (b) of this section and described in appendix A of this part.

(b) The Program areas are:

(1) Basic Energy Sciences

(2) Field Operations Management

(3) Fusion Energy

(4) Health and Environmental Research

(5) High Energy and Nuclear Physics

(6) Scientific Computing Staff

(7) Superconducting Super Collider

(8) University and Science Education Programs

(9) Program Analysis; and

(10) Other program areas of interest as may be described in a notice of availability published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 605.6 Eligibility.

Any university or other institution of higher education or other non-profit or for-profit organization, non-Federal agency, or entity is eligible for a grant or cooperative agreement. An unaffiliated individual also is eligible for a grant or cooperative agreement.

§ 605.7 [Reserved]

§ 605.8 Solicitation.

(a) The Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance number for this program is

81.049, and its solicitation control number is ERFAP 10 CFR part 605.

(b) An application for a new or renewal award under this solicitation may be submitted at any time to DOE at the address specified in paragraph (c) of this section. New or renewal applications shall receive consideration for funding generally within 6 months but, in any event, no later than 12 months from the date of receipt by DOE.

(c) Applicants may obtain application forms, described in § 605.9(b), and additional information from the Acquisition and Assistance Management Division, Office of Science, SC, Department of Energy, Washington, DC 20585, (301) 903–5544, and shall submit applications to the same address.

(d) DOE shall publish annually, in the FEDERAL REGISTER, a notice of the availability of the Office of Science Financial Assistance Program. DOE shall also publish notices or abbreviated notices of availability in trade and professional journals, and news media, and use other means of communication, as appropriate.

(1) Each notice of availability shall cite this part and shall include:

(i) The Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance number and solicitation control number of the program;

(ii) The amount of money available or estimated to be available for award;

(iii) The name of the responsible DOE program official to contact for additional information, and an address where application forms may be obtained;

(iv) The address for submission of applications; and

(v) Any evaluation criteria in addition to those set forth in § 605.10.

(2) The notice of availability may also include any other relevant information helpful to applicants such as:

(i) Program objectives,

(ii) A project agenda or potential areas for project initiatives,

(iii) Problem areas requiring additional effort, and

(iv) Any other information which identifies areas in which grants or cooperative agreements may be made.

(e) DOE is under no obligation to pay for any costs associated with the preparation or submission of applications.

(f) DOE reserves the right to fund, in whole or in part, any, all, or none of the applications submitted.

(g) To be considered for a renewal award under this part, an incumbent recipient shall submit a renewal application as provided in § 605.9 (c) and (h).

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 605.9 Application requirements.

(a) An original and seven copies of the application for initial support must be submitted except that State governments, local governments, or Indian tribal governments shall not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of the application.

(b) Each new or renewal application in response to this part must include:

(1) An application face page, DOE Form 4650.2 (approved by OMB under OMB Control No. 1910–1400). However, the facesheet of the application for State and local governments and Indian tribal government applicants shall be the facesheet of Standard Form (SF) 424 (approved by OMB under OMB Control Number 0348–0043).

(2) A detailed description of the proposed project, including the objectives of the project, in relationship to DOE's program and the applicant's plan for carrying it out;

(3) Detailed information about the background and experience of the principal investigator(s) (including references to publications), the facilities and experience of the applicant, and the cost-sharing arrangements, if any.

(4) A detailed budget for the entire proposed period of support with written justification sufficient to evaluate the itemized list of costs provided on the entire project.

(i) Numerical details on items of cost provided by State and local government and Indian tribal government applicants shall be on Standard Form 424A, Budget Information for Non-Construction Programs (approved under OMB Control No. 0348–0044). All other applicants shall use budget form ERF 4620.1 (approved by OMB under Control No. 1910–1400).

(ii) DOE may, subsequent to receipt of an application, request additional budgetary information from an applicant when necessary for clarification

or to make informed preaward determinations under 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910.

(5) Any preaward assurances required pursuant to 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910.

(c) Applications for a renewal award must be submitted in an original and seven copies, except that State governments, local governments, or Indian tribes are required to submit only an original and two copies. (Approved by OMB under OMB Control Numbers 0348–0005—0348–0009)

(d) The application must be signed by an official who is authorized to act for the applicant organization and to commit the applicant to comply with the terms and conditions of the award, if one is issued, or if unaffiliated, by the individual applicant. (See § 605.19(a)(1) for requirements on continuation awards.)

(e) All applications which involve research, development, or demonstration activities when such activities:

(1) Have a unique geographic focus and are directly relevant to the governmental responsibilities of a State or local government within the geographic area;

(2) Necessitate the preparation of an Environmental Impact Statement under the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (42 U.S.C. 4321 *et seq.* (1976)); or

(3) Are to be initiated at a particular site or location and require unusual measures to limit the possibility of adverse exposure or hazard to the general public, are subject to the provisions of Executive Order 12372 and 10 CFR part 1005.

Anyone planning to submit such applications should contact ER for further information about compliance requirements.

(f) DOE may return an application which does not include all information and documentation required by statute, this part, 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910 or the notice of availability, when the nature of the omission precludes review of the application.

(g) During the review of the complete application, DOE may request the submission of additional information only if the information is essential to evaluate the application.

(h) In addition to including the information described in paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section, an application for a renewal award must be submitted no later than six months prior to the scheduled expiration of the project period and must be on the same forms and include the same type of information as that required for initial applications. The renewal application must outline and justify a program and budget for the proposed project period, showing in detail the estimated cost of the proposed project, together with an indication of the amount of funds needed and the amount of cost sharing, if any. The application also shall describe and explain the reasons for any change in the scope or objectives of the proposed project, and shall compare and explain any difference between the estimates in the proposed budget and actual costs experienced as of the date of the application.

(i) DOE is not required to return to the applicant an application which is not selected or funded.

(j) Renewal applications must include a separate section that describes the results of work accomplished through the date of the renewal application and how such results relate to the activities proposed to be undertaken in the renewal period.

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 605.10 Application evaluation and selection.

(a) Applications shall be evaluated for funding generally within 6 months but, in any event, no later than 12 months from the date of receipt by DOE. After DOE has held an application for 6 months, the applicant may, in response to DOE's request, be required to revalidate the terms of the original application.

(b) DOE staff shall perform an initial evaluation of all applications to ensure that the information required by this part is provided, that the proposed effort is technically sound and feasible, and that the effort is consistent with program funding priorities. For applications which pass the initial evaluation, DOE shall review and evaluate

each application received based on the criteria set forth below and in accordance with the Merit Review System developed as required under DOE Financial Assistance Regulations, 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910.

(c) DOE shall select evaluators on the basis of their professional qualifications and expertise. Evaluators shall be required to comply with all applicable DOE rules or directives concerning the use of outside evaluators.

(d) DOE shall evaluate new and renewal applications based on the following criteria which are listed in descending order of importance:

(1) Scientific and/or technical merit or the educational benefits of the project;

(2) Appropriateness of the proposed method or approach;

(3) Competency of applicant's personnel and adequacy of proposed resources;

(4) Reasonableness and appropriateness of the proposed budget; and

(5) Other appropriate factors established and set forth by ER in a notice of availability or in a specific solicitation.

(e) Also, DOE shall consider, as part of the evaluation, other available advice or information as well as program policy factors such as ensuring an appropriate balance among the program areas listed in § 605.5(b) of this part.

(f) In addition to the evaluation criteria set forth in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section, DOE shall consider the recipient's performance under the existing award during the evaluation of a renewal application.

(g) Selection of applications for award will be based upon the findings of the technical evaluations, the importance and relevance of the proposed application to SC's mission, and fund availability. Cost reasonableness and realism will also be considered to the extent appropriate.

(h) After the selection of an application, DOE may, if necessary, enter into negotiation with an applicant. Such negotiations are not a commitment that DOE will make an award.

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76046, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 605.11 Additional requirements.

(a) A recipient performing research, development, or related activities involving the use of human subjects must comply with DOE regulations in 10 CFR part 745, ''Protection of Human Subjects,'' and any additional provisions which may be included in the Special Terms and Conditions of an award.

(b) A recipient performing research involving recombinant DNA molecules and/or organisms and viruses containing recombinant DNA molecules shall comply with the National Institutes of Health ''Guidelines for Research Involving Recombinant DNA Molecules'' (51 FR 16958, May 7, 1986), or such later revision of those guidelines as may be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. (The guidelines are available from the Office of Recombinant DNA Activities, National Institutes of Health, Building 31, room 4B11, Bethesda, Maryland 20892.)

(c) Any recipient performing research on warm-blooded animals shall comply with the Federal Laboratory Animal Welfare Act of 1966, as amended (7 U.S.C. 2131 *et seq.*) and the regulations promulgated thereunder by the Secretary of Agriculture at 9 CFR chapter I, subchapter A, pertaining to the care, handling, and treatment of warm blooded animals held or used for research, teaching, or other activities supported by Federal awards. The recipient shall comply with the guidelines described in DHHS Publication No. [NIH] 86–23, ''Guide for the Care and Use of Laboratory Animals,'' or succeeding revised editions. (This guide is available from the Office for Protection from Research Risks, Office of the Director, National Institutes of Health, Building 31, room 4B09, Bethesda, Maryland 20205.)

§ 605.12 Funding.

(a) The project period during which DOE expects to provide support for an approved project under this part shall generally not exceed 3 years and may exceed 5 years only if DOE makes a renewal award or otherwise extends the award. The project period shall be specified on the Notice of Financial Assistance Award (DOE Form 4600.1).

(b) Each budget period, of an award under this part, shall generally be 12 months and may be as much as 24 months as determined appropriate by SC.

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76047, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 605.13 Cost sharing.

Cost sharing is not required nor will it be considered as a criterion in the evaluation and selection process unless otherwise provided under § 605.10(d)(5).

§ 605.14 Limitation of DOE liability.

Awards under this part are subject to the requirement that the maximum DOE obligation to the recipient is the amount shown in the Notice of Financial Assistance Award as the amount of DOE funds obligated. DOE shall not be obligated to make any additional, supplemental, continuation, renewal or other awards for the same or any other purpose.

§ 605.15 Fee.

(a) Notwithstanding 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910, a fee may be paid, in appropriate circumstances, to a recipient which is a small business concern as qualified under the criteria and size standards of 13 CFR part 121 in order to permit the concern to participate in the ER Financial Assistance Program. Whether or not it is appropriate to pay a fee shall be determined by the Contracting Officer who shall, at a minimum, apply the following guidelines:

(1) Whether the acceptance of an award will displace other work the small business is currently engaged in or committed to assume in the near future; or

(2) Whether the acceptance of an award will, in the absence of paying a fee, cause substantial financial distress to the business. In evaluating financial distress, the Contracting Officer shall balance current displacement against reasonable future benefit to the company. (If the award will result in the beneficial expansion of the existing business base of the company, then no fee would generally be appropriate.) Fees shall not be paid to other entities except as a exceptionfrom 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910, nor shall fees be paid under awards in support of conferences.

(b) To request a fee, a small business concern shall submit with its application a written self certification that it is a small business concern qualified under the criteria and size standards in 13 CFR part 121. In addition, the application must state the amount of fee requested for the entire project period and the basis for requesting the amount, and must also state why payment of a fee by DOE would be appropriate.

(c) If the Contracting Officer determines that payment of a fee is appropriate under paragraph (a) of this section, the amount of fee shall be that determined to be reasonable by the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer shall, at a minimum, apply the following guidelines in determining the fee amount:

(1) The fee base shall include the estimated allowable cost of direct salaries and wages and allocable fringe benefits. This fee base shall exclude all other direct and indirect costs.

(2) The fee amount expressed as a percentage of the appropriate fee base pursuant to paragraph (c)(1) of this section, shall not exceed the percentage rate of fee that would result if a Federal agency contracted for the same amount of salaries, wages, and allocable fringe benefits under a cost reimbursement contract.

(3) Fee amounts, determined pursuant to paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section, shall be appropriately reduced when:

(i) Advance payments are provided; and/or

(ii) Title to property acquired with DOE funds vests in the recipient (10 CFR part 600).

(d) Notwithstanding 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910, any fee awarded shall be a fixed fee and shall be payable on an annual basis in proportion to the work completed, as determined by the Contracting Officer, upon satisfactory submission and acceptance by DOE of the progress report. If the project period is shortened

due to termination, or the project period is not fully funded, the fee shall be reduced by an appropriate amount.

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76047, Dec. 19, 2014]

EDITORIAL NOTE: At 79 FR 76047, Dec. 19, 2014, § 605.15 was amended; however, portions of the amendment could not be incorporated due to inaccurate amendatory instruction.

§ 605.16 Indirect cost limitations.

Awards issued under this part for conferences and scientific/technical meetings will not include payment for indirect costs.

§ 605.17 [Reserved]

§ 605.18 National security.

Activities under SC's Financial Assistance Program shall not involve classified information (i.e., Restricted Data, formerly Restricted Data, National Security Information). However, if in the opinion of the recipient or DOE such involvement becomes expected prior to the closeout of the award, the recipient or DOE shall notify the other in writing immediately. If the recipient believes any information developed or acquired may be classifiable, the recipient shall not provide the potentially classifiable information to anyone, including the DOE officials with whom the recipient normally communicates, except the Director of Classification, and shall protect such information as if it were classified until notified by DOE that a determination has been made that it does not require such handling. Correspondence which includes the specific information in question shall be sent by registered mail to U.S. Department of Energy, Attn: Director of Classification, DP–32, Washington, DC 20585. If the information is determined to be classified, the recipient may wish to discontinue the project in which case the recipient and DOE shall terminate the award by mutual agreement. If the award is to be terminated, all material deemed by DOE to be classified shall be forwarded to DOE, in a manner specified by DOE, for proper disposition. If the recipient and DOE wish to continue the award, even though classified information is involved, the recipient shall be required to obtain both personnel and facility security clearances through the Office of Safeguards and Security for Headquarters awards, or from the cognizant field office Division of Safeguards and Security for awards obtained through DOE field organizations. Costs associated with handling and protecting any such classified information shall be negotiated at the time that the determination to proceed is made.

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76047, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 605.19 Continuation funding and reporting requirements.

(a) A recipient shall periodically report to DOE on the project's progress in meeting the project objectives of the award. The following types of reports shall be used:

(1) *Progress reports.* After issuance of an initial award and if future support is recommended, recipients must submit a satisfactory progress report in order to receive continuation awards for the remainder of the project period. The original and two copies of the required report (generally not to exceed two pages per project or task) must be submitted to the SC program manager 90 days prior to the anticipated continuation funding date and contain the following information: on the first page, provide the project title, principal investigator/project director name, period of time report covers, name and address of recipient organization, DOE award number, the amount of unexpended funds, if any, that are anticipated to be left at the end of the current budget period, and if the amount exceeds 10 percent of the funds available for the budget period, provide information as to why the excess funds are anticipated to be available and how they will be used in the next budget period. Report should state whether aims have changed from original application and if they have, provided revised aims. Include results of work to date. Emphasize findings and their significance to the field, and any real or anticipated problems. A completed budget page must be submitted with the continuation progress report when a change to anticipated future costs will exceed 25 percent of the original recommended future budget.

(2) *Notice of Energy R&D Project.* A Notice of Energy R&D Project, DOE Form 1430.22, which summarizes the purpose and scope of the project, must be submitted in accordance with the Distribution and Schedule of Documents set forth at the end of this section. Copies of the form may be obtained from a DOE Contracting Office.

(3) *Special reports.* The recipient shall report the following events to DOE as soon after they occur as possible:

(i) Problems, delays, or adverse conditions which will materially affect the ability to attain project objectives, or prevent the meeting of time schedules and goals. The report must describe the remedial action the recipient has taken or plans to take and any action DOE should take to alleviate the problems.

(ii) Favorable developments or events which enable meeting time schedules and goals sooner or at less cost than anticipated or producing more beneficial results than originally projected.

(4) *Final report.* A final report summarizing the entire investigation must be submitted by the recipient within 90 days after the final project period ends or the award is terminated. Satisfactory completion of an award will be contingent upon the receipt of this report. The final report shall follow the same outline as a progress report. Manuscripts prepared for publication should be appended.

(5) *Financial status report (FSR) (OMB No. 0348–0039).* The FSR is required within 90 days after completion of each budget period; for budget periods exceeding 12 months, an FSR is also required within 90 days after this first 12 months unless waived by the Contracting Officer.

(b) DOE may extend the deadline date for any report if the recipient submits a written request before the deadline which adequately justifies an extension.

(c) A table summarizing the various types of reports, time for submission, number of copies is set forth below. The schedule of reports shall be as prescribed in this table, unless the award document specifies otherwise.

(d) *DOE review of performance.* DOE or its authorized representatives may make site visits, at any reasonable time, to review the project. DOE may provide such technical assistance as may be requested.

(e) *Subrecipient progress reporting.* Recipients may place progress reporting requirements on a subrecipient consistent with the provisions of this section.

DISTRIBUTION AND SCHEDULE OF DOCUMENTS

Type	When due	Number of copies to be submitted
1. Summary: 200 words on scope and purpose (Notice of Energy R&D Project).	Immediately after award and with each application for renewal.	3
2. Renewal	6 months before the project period ends.	8
3. Progress Report	90 days prior to the next budget period (or as part of a renewal application).	3
4. Other progress reports, brief topical reports, etc. (Designated when significant results develop or when work has direct programmatic impact).	As deemed appropriate by the recipient.	3
5. Reprints, Conference papers.	Same as 4 above	3
6. Final Report	Within 90 days after termination of the project.	3
7. Financial Status Report. (FSR).	Within 90 days after completion of the project period; for budget periods exceeding 12 months an FSR is also required within 90 days after the first 12-month period.	3

NOTE: Report types 5 and 6 require with submission two copies of DOE Form 1332.16, University-Type Contractor and Grantee Recommendations for Disposition of Scientific and Technical Document.

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76047, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 605.20 Dissemination of results.

(a) Recipients are encouraged to disseminate project results promptly. DOE reserves the right to utilize, and have others utilize, to the extent it deems appropriate, the reports resulting from awards.

(b) DOE may waive progress reporting requirements set forth in § 605.19, if the recipient submits to DOE a copy of its own report which is published or accepted for publication in a recognized

scientific or technical journal and which satisfies the information requirements of the program.

(c) Recipients are urged to publish results through normal publication channels in accordance with the applicable provisions of 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910.

(d) The article shall include an acknowledgment that the project was supported, in whole or in part, by a DOE award, and specify the award number, but state that such support does not constitute an endorsement by DOE of the views expressed in the article.

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76047, Dec. 19, 2014]

APPENDIX A TO PART 605—THE ENERGY RESEARCH PROGRAM OFFICE DESCRIPTIONS

1. BASIC ENERGY SCIENCES

This program supports basic science research efforts in a variety of disciplines to broaden the energy supply and technological base knowledge. The major science division and its objectives are as follows:

(a) Energy Biosciences

The primary objective of this program is to generate a basis of understanding of fundamental biological mechanisms in the areas of botanical and microbiological sciences that will support biotechnology development related to energy. The research serves as the basic information foundation with respect to renewable resource productivity for fuels and chemicals, microbial conversions or renewable materials and biological systems for the conservation of energy. This office has special requirements on the submission of preapplications, when to submit, and the length of the preapplication/application; applicants are encouraged to contact the office regarding these requirements.

(b) Chemical Sciences

This program sponsors experimental and theoretical research on liquids, gases, plasmas, and solids. The focus is on their chemical properties and the interactions of their component molecules, atoms, ions, and electrons. The subprogram objective is to expand, through support of basic research, our knowledge in the various areas of chemistry; the long-term goal is to contribute to new or improved processes for developing and using domestic energy resources in an efficient and environmentally sound manner. Disciplinary areas covered include physical, organic, and inorganic chemistry; chemical physics; atomic physics; photochemistry; radiation chemistry; thermodynamics; thermophysics; separations science; analytical chemistry; and actinide chemistry.

(c) Geosciences

The goal of this program is to develop a quantitative and predictive understanding of the energy-related aspects of processes within the earth and at the solar-terrestrial interface. The emphasis is on the upper levels of the earth's crust and the focus is on geophysics and geochemistry of rock-fluid systems and interactions. Specific topical areas receiving emphasis include: High resolution geophysical imaging; fundamental properties of rocks, minerals, and fluids; scientific drilling; and sedimentary basin systems. The resulting improved understanding and knowledge base are needed to assist efforts in the utilization of the Nation's energy resources in an environmentally acceptable fashion.

(d) Engineering Research

This program's objectives are: (1) To extend the body of knowledge underlying current engineering practice in order to open new ways for enhancing energy savings and production, prolonging useful equipment life, and reducing costs while maintaining output and performance quality; and (2) to broaden the technical and conceptual base for solving future engineering problems in the energy technologies. Long-term research topics of current interest include: foundations of bioprocessing of fuels and energy related wastes, fracture mechanics, experimental and theoretical studies of multiphase flows, intelligent machines, and diagnostics and control for plasma processing of materials.

(e) Materials Sciences

The objective of this program is to increase the understanding of phenomena and properties important to materials behavior that will contribute to meeting the needs of present and future energy technologies. It is comprised of the subfields metallurgy, ceramics, solid state physics, materials chemistry, and related disciplines where the emphasis is on the science of materials.

(f) Advanced Energy Projects

The objective of this program is to support exploratory research on novel concepts related to energy. The concepts may be in any field related to energy but must not fall into an area of programmatic responsibility of an existing ER technical program. The research is usually aimed at establishing the scientific feasibility of a concept and, where appropriate, at estimating its economic viability.

2. FIELD OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT

This office administers special purpose support programs that cut across DOE program areas. In conjunction with this activity, it supports related conferences, research, and training initiatives that further these areas of interest.

(a) Laboratory Technology Transfer Program

The SC Laboratory Technology Transfer (LTT) Program has dedicated funding which fulfills the legislative mandate to more effectively transfer research and technology from Science laboratories to industry. By design, this program provides only partial funding for technology research projects and personnel exchanges with industry and universities. Mandatory cost-sharing by industry and other partners ensures that cooperative projects will focus on those that generate real interest in the private sector and facilitate the transfer of technology. The program supports laboratory-industry personnel exchanges; comprehensive program evaluation; and cost-shared technology research, especially CRADAs to advance precompetitive research projects to a point where they can be evaluated for commercial applications. Other activities of the SC Laboratory Technology Transfer Program include coordinating technology transfer operations throughout the SC laboratory system; coordinating technology transfer elements of the institutional planning process; contributing to Departmental technology transfer policy development; and implementing appropriate outreach activities.

3. FUSION ENERGY

The magnetic fusion energy program is an applied research and development program whose goal is to develop the scientific and technological information required to design and construct magnetic fusion energy systems. This goal is pursued by three divisions, whose major functions are listed below.

(a) APPLIED PLASMA PHYSICS (APP)

This Division seeks to develop that body of physics knowledge which permits advancement of the fusion program on a sound basis. APP research programs provide: (1) The theoretical understanding of fusion plasmas necessary for interpreting results from present experiments, and the planning and design of future confinement devices; (2) the data on plasma properties, atomic physics and new diagnostic techniques for operational support of confinement experiments; research and development of Heavy Ion Fusion Accelerator (HIFAR) and reactor studies in support of the development of Inertial Fusion Energy (IFE).

(b) CONFINEMENT SYSTEMS

This Division has as its primary objective the conduct of research efforts to investigate and resolve basic physics issues associated with medium- to large-scale confinement devices. These devices are used to experimentally explore the limits of specific confinement concepts as well as to study associated physical phenomena. Specific areas of interest include: the production of increased plasma densities and temperatures; the understanding of the physical laws governing plasma energy transport and confinement scaling; equilibrium and stability of high plasma pressure; the investigation of plasma interaction with radio-frequency waves; and the study and control of particle transport in the plasma.

(c) DEVELOPMENT AND TECHNOLOGY

This Division supports research and development of the technology necessary for fabrication and operation of present and future plasma and fusion devices. The program also pursues R&D and system studies pertaining to critical feasibility issues of fusion technology and development.

4. HEALTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL RESEARCH

The goals of this research program are as follows: (1) To provide, through basic and applied research, the scientific information required to identify, understand and anticipate the long-term health and environmental consequences of energy use and development; and (2) to utilize the Department's unique resources to solve major scientific problems in medicine, biology and the environment. The goals of the program are accomplished through the effort of its divisions, which are:

(a) Health Effects and Life Sciences Research

This is a broad program of basic and applied biological research. The objectives are: (1) To develop experimental information from biological systems for estimating or predicting risks of carcinogenesis, mutagenesis, and delayed toxicological effects associated with low level human exposures to energy-related radiations and chemicals; (2) to define mechanisms involved in the induction of biological damage following exposure to low levels of energy-related agents; (3) to develop new technologies for detecting and quantifying latent health effects associated with such agents; (4) to support fundamental research in structural biology user facilities at DOE laboratories; and (5) to create and apply new technologies and resources for characterizing the molecular nature of the human genome.

Increasing emphasis will be placed on: Understanding of mechanisms by which low level exposures to radiation and/or energy-related chemicals produce long-term health impacts; development of new technologies

for estimating human health risks from low level exposures; development and application of technologies and approaches for cost-effective characterization of the human genome.

(b) Medical Applications and Biophysical Research

The objectives of this program comprise several areas: (1) To develop new concepts and techniques for detecting and measuring hazardous physical and chemical agents related to energy production; (2) to evaluate chemical and radiation exposures and dosimetry for health protection application; (3) to determine the physical and chemical mechanisms of radiation action in biological systems; and (4) to develop new instrumentation and technology for biological and biomedical research. In addition, Medical Application research is aimed at enhancing the beneficial applications of radiation, and radionuclides, in the diagnosis, study, and treatment of human diseases. This includes the development of new techniques for radioactive isotope production, labeled pharmaceuticals, imaging devices, and radiation beam applications for the improved diagnosis and therapy of human diseases or the study of human physiological processes. A new area of interest involves the integration of Nuclear Medicine and Molecular Biology. This includes development of radioisotopes and new molecular radiopharmaceutical probes specific to disease-associated targets for improved diagnosis and therapy.

(c) Environmental Sciences

The objectives of the program relate to environmental processes affected by energy production and use. For example, the program develops information on the physical, chemical and biological processes that cycle and transport energy related material and nutrients through the atmosphere, and the ocean margin. Specific emphasis is placed on hydrological transport, mobility and degradation of energy-related contaminants by microorganisms in subsurface systems.

This program also addresses global environmental change from increases in atmospheric carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases. The scope of the global change program encompasses the carbon cycle, climate modeling and diagnostics, ecosystem responses, the role of the ocean in global change and experiments to quantify the links between greenhouse gas increases and climate change. A new dimension of this program addresses the role of molecular biology in understanding the ecosystem response to global change.

5. HIGH ENERGY AND NUCLEAR PHYSICS

This program supports 90 percent of the U.S. efforts in high energy and nuclear physics. The objectives of these programs are indicated below:

(a) Nuclear Physics (Including Nuclear Data Program)

The primary objectives of this program are an understanding of the interactions and structures of atomic nuclei and nuclear matter at the most elementary level possible, and an understanding of the fundamental forces of nature as manifested in nuclear matter.

(b) High Energy Physics

The primary objectives of this program are to understand the nature and relationships among fundamental forces of nature and to understand the ultimate structure of matter in terms of the properties and interrelations of its basic constituents.

6. SCIENTIFIC COMPUTING STAFF

The goal of this program is to advance the understanding of the fundamental concepts of mathematics, statistics, and computer science underlying the complex mathematical models of the key physical processes involved in the research and development programs of DOE. Broad emphasis is given in three major categories: analytical and numerical methods, information analysis techniques, and advanced concepts.

7. SUPERCONDUCTING SUPER COLLIDER (SSC)

The goals of the Superconducting Super Collider are to build a proton-proton collider with an energy of 20 TeV per proton, to construct and operate experimental systems to study the interactions of these protons, to establish the premier international laboratory for high energy physics reasearch, and to create a major resource for science education. The Office of the Superconducting Super Collider administers research grants associated with the SSC Laboratory's physics, accelerator, and associated technology research and development programs.

8. UNIVERSITY AND SCIENCE EDUCATION

The Office of University and Science Education supports a variety of science, mathematics and engineering education precollege through postgraduate programs aimed at strengthening the Nation's science education and research infrastructure. DOE's education mission has been expanded to include increasing emphasis on the precollege and general public literacy areas. Much of the support involves the use of the unique resources (scientists, facilities and equipment) at DOE's national laboratories and research facilities, and includes research and/or other ''hands-on'' opportunities for precollege and postsecondary students, teachers, and faculty members. In addition to programs centered in DOE facilities, a number of other

educational activities are supported, including:

(a) Pre-Freshman Enrichment Program (PREP)

PREP supports projects at colleges and universities aimed at seeking out gindividuals, typically under-represented in science-based careers, during junior high school and early high school years (sixth through tenth grades) and providing these individuals with pre-freshman enrichment activities to identify, motivate and prepare them for science-based careers. Projects must include concentrated, integrated activities that enhance the student's understanding of science and mathematics, must have a summer component at least four weeks in length, and may also include a pre-summer or post-summer component.

(b) Museum Science Education Program

This program funds museum projects that support the development of the media of informal energy-related science education. The media of informal science education include, but are not limited to: Interactive exhibits, demonstrations, hands-on activities, teacher-student curriculum and film/video/software productions. Examples of energy-related subjects include, but are not limited to: high energy and nuclear physics, nuclear science and technologies, global warming, waste management, energy efficiency, new materials development, fossil energy resources, renewable technologies, risk assessment, energy/environment and other timely topics. The purpose of the program is the development and use of creative informal science education media which focus on energy-related science and technology.

(c) University Research Instrumentation Program

The University Research Instrumentation Program has been developed as part of an interagency effort under the coordination of the Office of Science and Technology Policy to help alleviate the overall shortage of sophisticated state-of-the-art instruments required for advanced scientific and technical research at universities. The overall program objective is to assist university and college scientists in strengthening their capabilities to conduct long-range experimental/scientific research in specific energy areas of direct interest to DOE through the acquisition of large scientific/technical pieces of equipment. Only those colleges and universities that currently have DOE funded research projects, which require the requested equipment, totalling at least $150,000 in the specific area will be selected (more complete eligibility guidelines and principal research areas of particular DOE interest in any given year are available from the program office). Smaller research instruments (less than $100,000 each) are not eligible for consideration in this program. No specific fraction of cost sharing is required but the level of non-Federal funds to be provided will be considered in final selection of awards under the program.

(d) Experimental Program To Stimulate Competitive Research

The purpose of the DOE Experimental Program to Stimulate Competitive Research is to enhance the capabilities of the eligible designated States to develop science and engineering manpower in energy-related areas and to conduct nationally competitive energy-related research. Planning committees within eligible States may apply for planning, implementation and/or training efforts (list of eligible States and activities to be supported in any given year as well as cost-sharing requirements are available from the program office). Separate applications for planning/implementation and graduate traineeships are required. Planning/implementation applications must contain information that details development of a Statewide improvement plan for energy-related research and human resources, while training grant applications must detail the need for energy-related specific and technical educational disciplines.

(e) Nuclear Engineering Research

The objective of this program is to support research efforts aimed at strengthening University-based nuclear engineering programs. Specific areas of basic and applied research of interest include, but are not limited to: (1) Material behavior in a radiation environment typical of advanced nuclear power plants; (2) real-time instrumentation that identifies and applies innovative measurements technologies in nuclear-related fields; (3) advanced nuclear reactor concepts; (4) applied nuclear sciences that address improvements in the applications of radiation and the understanding of the interaction of radiation with matter; (5) engineering science research applicable to advanced nuclear reactor concepts, industry safety and reliability concerns; (6) neutronics that address improvements in reactor computational methodologies and knowledge of the basic fission processes; and (7) nuclear thermal hydraulics that address improvements of models and analysis of thermal hydraulic behavior in an advanced nuclear reactor system.

(f) Used Energy-Related Laboratory Equipment (ERIE) Program

In accordance with DOE's responsibility to encourage research and development in the energy area, grants of used energy-related

laboratory equipment for use in energy-oriented educational programs in the life, physical and environmental sciences, and engineering are available to universities, colleges and other non-profit educational institutions of higher learning in the United States. An institution is not required to have a current DOE grant or contract in order to participate in this program. The program office should be contacted for specific information on how to access the list of eligible equipment under this program. The cost of care and handling incident to the grant must be borne by the institution.

9. PROGRAM ANALYSIS

The Office of Program Analysis conducts assessments to identify research opportunities in specific areas of interest to DOE programs.

[57 FR 40583, Sept. 3, 1992, as amended at 79 FR 76047, Dec. 19, 2014]

PART 609—LOAN GUARANTEES FOR PROJECTS THAT EMPLOY INNOVATIVE TECHNOLOGIES

Sec.

609.1 Purpose and scope.
609.2 Definitions.
609.3 Solicitations.
609.4 Submission of Pre-Applications.
609.5 Evaluation of Pre-Applications.
609.6 Submission of Applications.
609.7 Programmatic, technical and financial evaluation of Applications.
609.8 Term sheets and conditional commitments.
609.9 Closing on the Loan Guarantee Agreement.
609.10 Loan Guarantee Agreement.
609.11 Lender eligibility and servicing requirements.
609.12 Project Costs.
609.13 Principal and interest assistance contract.
609.14 Full faith and credit and incontestability.
609.15 Default, demand, payment, and collateral liquidation.
609.16 Perfection of liens and preservation of collateral.
609.17 Audit and access to records.
609.18 Deviations.

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 7254, 16511–16514.

SOURCE: 74 FR 63549, Dec. 4, 2009, unless otherwise noted.

§ 609.1 Purpose and scope.

(a) This part sets forth the policies and procedures that DOE uses for receiving, evaluating, and, after consultation with the Department of the Treasury, approving applications for loan guarantees to support Eligible Projects under Section 1703 of Title XVII of the Energy Policy Act of 2005, as amended.

(b) Except as set forth in paragraph (c) of this section, this part applies to all Pre-Applications, Applications, Conditional Commitments and Loan Guarantee Agreements to support Eligible Projects under Section 1703 of Title XVII of the Energy Policy Act of 2005, as amended.

(c) Sections 609.3, 609.4 and 609.5 of this part shall not apply to any Pre-Applications, Applications, Conditional Commitments or Loan Guarantee Agreements submitted, or entered into, as applicable, on or before December 31, 2007; provided, that DOE accepted the Pre-Application and invited an Application pursuant to such Pre-Application.

(d) Part 1024 of chapter X of title 10 of the Code of Federal Regulations shall not apply to actions taken under this part.

§ 609.2 Definitions.

Act means Title XVII of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 (42 U.S.C. 16511–16514), as amended.

Administrative Cost of Issuing a Loan Guarantee means the total of all administrative expenses that DOE incurs during:

(1) The evaluation of a Pre-Application, if a Pre-Application is requested in a solicitation, and an Application for a loan guarantee;

(2) The offering of a Term Sheet, executing the Conditional Commitment, negotiation, and closing of a Loan Guarantee Agreement; and

(3) The servicing and monitoring of a Loan Guarantee Agreement, including during the construction, startup, commissioning, shakedown, and operational phases of an Eligible Project.

Applicant means any person, firm, corporation, company, partnership, association, society, trust, joint venture, joint stock company, or other business entity or governmental non-Federal entity that has submitted an Application to DOE and has the authority to enter into a Loan Guarantee Agreement with DOE under the Act.

Application means a comprehensive written submission in response to a solicitation or a written invitation from DOE to apply for a loan guarantee pursuant to § 609.6 of this part.

Borrower means any Applicant who enters into a Loan Guarantee Agreement with DOE and issues Guaranteed Obligations.

Commercial Technology means a technology in general use in the commercial marketplace in the United States at the time the Term Sheet is issued by DOE. A technology is in general use if it has been installed in and is being used in three or more commercial projects in the United States in the same general application as in the proposed project, and has been in operation in each such commercial project for a period of at least five years. The five-year period shall be measured, for each project, starting on the in service date of the project or facility employing that particular technology. For purposes of this section, commercial projects include projects that have been the recipients of a loan guarantee from DOE under this part.

Conditional Commitment means a Term Sheet offered by DOE and accepted by the Applicant, with the understanding of the parties that if the Applicant thereafter satisfies all specified and precedent funding obligations and all other contractual, statutory and regulatory requirements, or other requirements, DOE and the Applicant will execute a Loan Guarantee Agreement: Provided that the Secretary may terminate a Conditional Commitment for any reason at any time prior to the execution of the Loan Guarantee Agreement; and Provided further that the Secretary may not delegate this authority to terminate a Conditional Commitment.

Contracting Officer means the Secretary of Energy or a DOE official authorized by the Secretary to enter into, administer and/or terminate DOE Loan Guarantee Agreements and related contracts on behalf of DOE.

Credit Subsidy Cost has the same meaning as ''cost of a loan guarantee'' in section 502(5)(C) of the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990 (2 U.S.C. 661a(5)(C)), which is the net present value, at the time the Loan Guarantee Agreement is executed, of the following estimated cash flows, discounted to the point of disbursement:

(1) Payments by the Government to cover defaults and delinquencies, interest subsidies, or other payments; less

(2) Payments to the Government including origination and other fees, penalties, and recoveries; including the effects of changes in loan or debt terms resulting from the exercise by the Borrower, Eligible Lender or other Holder of an option included in the Loan Guarantee Agreement.

DOE means the United States Department of Energy.

Eligible lender means:

(1) Any person or legal entity formed for the purpose of, or engaged in the business of, lending money, including, but not limited to, commercial banks, savings and loan institutions, insurance companies, factoring companies, investment banks, institutional investors, venture capital investment companies, trusts, or other entities designated as trustees or agents acting on behalf of bondholders or other lenders; and

(2) Any person or legal entity that meets the requirements of § 609.11 of this part, as determined by DOE; or

(3) The Federal Financing Bank.

Eligible project means a project located in the United States that employs a New or Significantly Improved Technology that is not a Commercial Technology, and that meets all applicable requirements of section 1703 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 16513), the applicable solicitation and this part.

Equity means cash contributed by the Borrowers and other principals. Equity does not include proceeds from the non-guaranteed portion of Title XVII loans, proceeds from any other non-guaranteed loans, or the value of any form of government assistance or support.

Federal Financing Bank means an instrumentality of the United States government created by the Federal Financing Bank Act of 1973 (12 U.S.C. 2281 *et seq*). The Bank is under the general supervision of the Secretary of the Treasury.

Guaranteed Obligation means any loan or other debt obligation of the Borrower for an Eligible Project for which

DOE guarantees all or any part of the payment of principal and interest under a Loan Guarantee Agreement entered into pursuant to the Act.

Holder means any person or legal entity that owns a Guaranteed Obligation or has lawfully succeeded in due course to all or part of the rights, title, and interest in a Guaranteed Obligation, including any nominee or trustee empowered to act for the Holder or Holders.

Intercreditor Agreement means any agreement or instrument among DOE and one or more other persons providing financing or other credit arrangements or that otherwise provides for rights of DOE, in each case, in form and substance satisfactory to DOE and entered into or accepted by DOE in connection with a DOE loan guarantee upon a determination by DOE that such agreement or instrument is reasonable and necessary to protect the interests of the United States, and addressing such matters as collateral sharing, priorities (subject always to Section 1702(d)(3) of Title XVII) and voting rights among creditors and other intercreditor arrangements, as such agreement or instrument may be amended or modified from time to time with the consent of DOE.

Loan Agreement means a written agreement between a Borrower and an Eligible Lender or other Holder containing the terms and conditions under which the Eligible Lender or other Holder will make loans to the Borrower to start and complete an Eligible Project.

Loan Guarantee Agreement means a written agreement that, when entered into by DOE and a Borrower, an Eligible Lender or other Holder, pursuant to the Act, establishes the obligation of DOE to guarantee the payment of all or a portion of the principal and interest on specified Guaranteed Obligations of a Borrower to Eligible Lenders or other Holders subject to the terms and conditions specified in the Loan Guarantee Agreement.

New or Significantly Improved Technology means a technology concerned with the production, consumption or transportation of energy and that is not a Commercial Technology, and that has either:

(1) Only recently been developed, discovered or learned; or

(2) Involves or constitutes one or more meaningful and important improvements in productivity or value, in comparison to Commercial Technologies in use in the United States at the time the Term Sheet is issued.

OMB means the Office of Management and Budget in the Executive Office of the President.

Pre-Application means a written submission in response to a DOE solicitation that broadly describes the project proposal, including the proposed role of a DOE loan guarantee in the project, and the eligibility of the project to receive a loan guarantee under the applicable solicitation, the Act and this part.

Project costs means those costs, including escalation and contingencies, that are to be expended or accrued by Borrower and are necessary, reasonable, customary and directly related to the design, engineering, financing, construction, startup, commissioning and shakedown of an Eligible Project, as specified in § 609.12 of this part. Project costs do not include costs for the items set forth in § 609.12(c) of this part.

Project Sponsor means any person, firm, corporation, company, partnership, association, society, trust, joint venture, joint stock company or other business entity that assumes substantial responsibility for the development, financing, and structuring of a project eligible for a loan guarantee and, if not the Applicant, owns or controls, by itself and/or through individuals in common or affiliated business entities, a five percent or greater interest in the proposed Eligible Project, or the Applicant.

Secretary means the Secretary of Energy or a duly authorized designee or successor in interest.

Term Sheet means an offering document issued by DOE that specifies the detailed terms and conditions under which DOE may enter into a Conditional Commitment with the Applicant. A Term Sheet imposes no obligation on the Secretary to enter into a Conditional Commitment.

United States means the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the

Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa or any territory or possession of the United States of America.

§ 609.3 Solicitations.

(a) DOE may issue solicitations to invite the submission of Pre-Applications or Applications for loan guarantees for Eligible Projects. DOE must issue a solicitation before proceeding with other steps in the loan guarantee process including issuance of a loan guarantee. A Project Sponsor or Applicant may only submit one Pre-Application or Application for one project using a particular technology. A Project Sponsor or Applicant, in other words, may not submit a Pre-Application or Application for multiple projects using the same technology.

(b) Each solicitation must include, at a minimum, the following information:

(1) The dollar amount of loan guarantee authority potentially being made available by DOE in that solicitation;

(2) The place and time for response submission;

(3) The name and address of the DOE representative whom a potential Project Sponsor may contact to receive further information and a copy of the solicitation;

(4) The form, format, and page limits applicable to the response submission;

(5) The amount of the application fee (First Fee), if any, that will be required;

(6) The programmatic, technical, financial and other factors the Secretary will use to evaluate response submissions, including the loan guarantee percentage requested by the Applicant and the relative weightings that DOE will use when evaluating those factors; and

(7) Such other information as DOE may deem appropriate.

§ 609.4 Submission of Pre-Applications.

In response to a solicitation requesting the submission of Pre-Applications, either Project Sponsors or Applicants may submit Pre-Applications to DOE. The information submitted in or in connection with Pre-Applications will be treated as provided in 10 CFR 600.15 and must be marked as provided in 10 CFR 600.15(b). Pre-Applications must meet all requirements specified in the solicitation and this part. At a minimum, each Pre-Application must contain all of the following:

(a) A cover page signed by an individual with full authority to bind the Project Sponsor or Applicant that attests to the accuracy of the information in the Pre-Application, and that binds the Project Sponsor(s) or Applicant to the commitments made in the Pre-Application. In addition, the information requested in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section should be submitted in a volume one and the information requested in paragraphs (d) through (h) of this section should be submitted in a volume two, to expedite the DOE review process.

(b) An executive summary briefly encapsulating the key project features and attributes of the proposed project (for clarity, with respect to any project in which project assets or facilities are jointly owned by the Applicant and one or more other persons, each of whom owns an undivided ownership interest in such project assets or facilities, the Applicant may submit a project proposal with respect to its undivided ownership interest in such project assets or facilities);

(c) A business plan which includes an overview of the proposed project, including:

(1) A description of the Project Sponsor, including all entities involved, and its experience in project investment, development, construction, operation and maintenance;

(2) A description of the new or significantly improved technology to be employed in the project, including:

(i) A report detailing its successes and failures during the pilot and demonstration phases;

(ii) The technology's commercial applications;

(iii) The significance of the technology to energy use or emission control;

(iv) How and why the technology is ''new'' or ''significantly improved'' compared to technology already in general use in the commercial marketplace in the United States;

(v) Why the technology to be employed in the project is not in ''general use;''

(vi) The owners or controllers of the intellectual property incorporated in and utilized by such technologies; and

(vii) The manufacturer(s) and licensee(s), if any, authorized to make the technology available in the United States, the potential for replication of commercial use of the technology in the United States, and whether and how the technology is or will be made available in the United States for further commercial use;

(3) The estimated amount, in reasonable detail, of the total Project Costs;

(4) The timeframe required for construction and commissioning of the project;

(5) A description of any primary offtake or other revenue-generating agreements that will provide the primary sources of revenues for the project, including repayment of the debt obligations for which a guarantee is sought.

(6) An overview of how the project complies with the eligibility requirements in section 1703 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 16513);

(7) An outline of the potential environmental impacts of the project and how these impacts will be mitigated;

(8) A description of the anticipated air pollution and/or anthropogenic greenhouse gas reduction benefits and how these benefits will be measured and validated; and

(9) A list of all of the requirements contained in this part and the solicitation and where in the Pre-Application these requirements are addressed;

(d) A financing plan overview describing:

(1) The amount of equity to be invested and the sources of such equity;

(2) The amount of the total debt obligations to be incurred and the funding sources of all such debt if available;

(3) The amount of the Guaranteed Obligation as a percentage of total project debt; and as a percentage of total project cost; and

(4) A financial model detailing the investments in and the cash flows generated and anticipated from the project over the project's expected life-cycle, including a complete explanation of the facts, assumptions, and methodologies in the financial model;

(e) An explanation of what estimated impact the loan guarantee will have on the interest rate, debt term, and overall financial structure of the project;

(f) Where the Federal Financing Bank is not the lender, a copy of a letter from an Eligible Lender or other Holder(s) expressing its commitment to provide, or interest in providing, the required debt financing necessary to construct and fully commission the project;

(g) A copy of the equity commitment letter(s) from each of the Project Sponsors and a description of the sources for such equity; and

(h) A commitment to pay the Application fee (First Fee), if invited to submit an Application.

[74 FR 63549, Dec. 4, 2009, as amended at 76 FR 26582, May 9, 2011]

§ 609.5 Evaluation of Pre-Applications.

(a) Where Pre-Applications are requested in a solicitation, DOE will conduct an initial review of the Pre-Application to determine whether:

(1) The proposal is for an Eligible Project;

(2) The submission contains the information required by § 609.4 of this part; and

(3) The submission meets all other requirements of the applicable solicitation.

(b) If a Pre-Application fails to meet the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, DOE may deem it non-responsive and eliminate it from further review.

(c) If DOE deems a Pre-Application responsive, DOE will evaluate:

(1) The commercial viability of the proposed project;

(2) The technology to be employed in the project;

(3) The relevant experience of the principal(s); and

(4) The financial capability of the Project Sponsor (including personal and/or business credit information of the principal(s)).

(d) After the evaluation described in paragraph (c) of this section, DOE will determine if there is sufficient information in the Pre-Application to assess the technical and commercial viability

of the proposed project and/or the financial capability of the Project Sponsor and to assess other aspects of the Pre-Application. DOE may ask for additional information from the Project Sponsor during the review process and may request one or more meetings with the Project Sponsor. Any additional information submitted will be treated as provided in 10 CFR 600.15 and must be marked as provided in 10 CFR 600.15(b).

(e) After reviewing a Pre-Application and other information acquired under paragraph (c) of this section, DOE may provide a written response to the Project Sponsor or Applicant either inviting the Applicant to submit an Application for a loan guarantee and specifying the amount of the Application filing fee (First Fee) or advising the Project Sponsor that the project proposal will not receive further consideration. Neither the Pre-Application nor any written or other feedback that DOE may provide in response to the Pre-Application eliminates the requirement for an Application.

(f) No response by DOE to, or communication by DOE with, a Project Sponsor, or an Applicant submitting a Pre-Application or subsequent Application shall impose any obligation on DOE to enter into a Loan Guarantee Agreement.

[74 FR 63549, Dec. 4, 2009, as amended at 76 FR 26582, May 9, 2011]

§ 609.6 Submission of Applications.

(a) In response to a solicitation or written invitation to submit an Application, an Applicant submitting an Application must meet all requirements and provide all information specified in the solicitation and/or invitation and this part. The information submitted in or in connection with Applications will be treated as provided in 10 CFR 600.15 and must be marked as provided in 10 CFR 600.15(b).

(b) An Application must include, at a minimum, the following information and materials:

(1) A completed Application form signed by an individual with full authority to bind the Applicant and the Project Sponsors;

(2) Payment of the Application filing fee (First Fee) for the Pre-Application, if any, and Application phase;

(3) A detailed description of all material amendments, modifications, and additions made to the information and documentation provided in the Pre-Application, if a Pre-Application was requested in the solicitation, including any changes in the proposed project's financing structure or other terms;

(4) A description of how and to what measurable extent the project avoids, reduces, or sequesters air pollutants and/or anthropogenic emissions of greenhouse gases, including how to measure and verify those benefits;

(5) A description of the nature and scope of the proposed project, including:

(i) Key milestones;

(ii) Location of the project;

(iii) Identification and commercial feasibility of the new or significantly improved technology(ies) to be employed in the project;

(iv) How the Applicant intends to employ such technology(ies) in the project; and

(v) How the Applicant intends to assure, to the extent possible, the further commercial availability of the technology(ies) in the United States;

(vi) For clarity, with respect to any project in which project assets or facilities are jointly owned by the Applicant and one or more other persons, each of whom owns an undivided ownership interest in such project assets or facilities, the Applicant may submit a project proposal with respect to its undivided ownership interest in such project assets or facilities.

(6) A detailed explanation of how the proposed project qualifies as an Eligible Project;

(7) A detailed estimate of the total Project Costs together with a description of the methodology and assumptions used;

(8) A detailed description of the engineering and design contractor(s), construction contractor(s), equipment supplier(s), and construction schedules for the project, including major activity and cost milestones as well as the performance guarantees, performance bonds, liquidated damages provisions,

and equipment warranties to be provided;

(9) A detailed description of the operations and maintenance provider(s), the plant operating plan, estimated staffing requirements, parts inventory, major maintenance schedule, estimated annual downtime, and performance guarantees and related liquidated damage provisions, if any;

(10) A description of the management plan of operations to be employed in carrying out the project, and information concerning the management experience of each officer or key person associated with the project;

(11) A detailed description of the project decommissioning, deconstruction, and disposal plan, and the anticipated costs associated therewith;

(12) An analysis of the market for any product to be produced by the project, including relevant economics justifying the analysis, and copies of any contractual agreements for the sale of these products or assurance of the revenues to be generated from sale of these products;

(13) A detailed description of the overall financial plan for the proposed project, including all sources and uses of funding, equity and debt, and the liability of parties associated with the project over the term of the Loan Guarantee Agreement;

(14) A copy of all material agreements, whether entered into or proposed, relevant to the investment, design, engineering, financing, construction, startup commissioning, shakedown, operations and maintenance of the project;

(15) A copy of the financial closing checklist for the equity and debt to the extent available;

(16) Applicant's business plan on which the project is based and Applicant's financial model presenting project *pro forma* statements for the proposed term of the Guaranteed Obligations including income statements, balance sheets, and cash flows. All such information and data must include assumptions made in their preparation and the range of revenue, operating cost, and credit assumptions considered;

(17) Financial statements for the past three years, or less if the Applicant has been in operation less than three years, that have been audited by an independent certified public accountant, including all associated notes, as well as interim financial statements and notes for the current fiscal year, of Applicant and parties providing Applicant's financial backing, together with business and financial interests of controlling or commonly controlled organizations or persons, including parent, subsidiary and other affiliated corporations or partners of the Applicant;

(18) A copy of all legal opinions, and other material reports, analyses, and reviews related to the project;

(19) An independent engineering report prepared by an engineer with experience in the industry and familiarity with similar projects. The report should address: the project's siting and permitting, engineering and design, contractual requirements, environmental compliance, testing and commissioning and operations and maintenance;

(20) Credit history of the Applicant and, if appropriate, any party who owns or controls, by itself and/or through individuals in common or affiliated business entities, a five percent or greater interest in the project or the Applicant;

(21) A preliminary credit assessment for the project without a loan guarantee from a nationally recognized rating agency for projects where the estimated total Project Costs exceed $25 million. For projects where the total estimated Project Costs are $25 million or less and where conditions justify, in the sole discretion of the Secretary, DOE may require such an assessment;

(22) A list showing the status of and estimated completion date of Applicant's required project-related applications or approvals for Federal, State, and local permits and authorizations to site, construct, and operate the project;

(23) A report containing an analysis of the potential environmental impacts of the project that will enable DOE to assess whether the project will comply with all applicable environmental requirements, and that will enable DOE

to undertake and complete any necessary reviews under the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969;

(24) A listing and description of assets associated, or to be associated, with the project and any other asset that will serve as collateral for the Guaranteed Obligations, including appropriate data as to the value of the assets and the useful life of any physical assets. With respect to real property assets listed, an appraisal that is consistent with the ''Uniform Standards of Professional Appraisal Practice,'' promulgated by the Appraisal Standards Board of the Appraisal Foundation, and performed by licensed or certified appraisers, is required;

(25) An analysis demonstrating that, at the time of the Application, there is a reasonable prospect that Borrower will be able to repay the Guaranteed Obligations (including interest) according to their terms, and a complete description of the operational and financial assumptions and methodologies on which this demonstration is based;

(26) Written affirmation from an officer of the Eligible Lender or other Holder confirming that it is in good standing with DOE's and other Federal agencies' loan guarantee programs;

(27) A list of all of the requirements contained in this part and the solicitation and where in the Application these requirements are addressed;

(28) A statement from the Applicant that it believes that there is ''reasonable prospect'' that the Guaranteed Obligations will be fully paid from project revenue; and

(29) Any other information requested in the invitation to submit an Application or requests from DOE in order to clarify an Application;

(c) DOE will not consider any Application complete unless the Applicant has paid the First Fee and the Application is signed by the appropriate entity or entities with the authority to bind the Applicant to the commitments and representations made in the Application.

[74 FR 63549, Dec. 4, 2009, as amended at 76 FR 26582, May 9, 2011]

§ 609.7 Programmatic, technical and financial evaluation of Applications.

(a) In reviewing completed Applications, and in prioritizing and selecting those to whom a Term Sheet should be offered, DOE will apply the criteria set forth in the Act, the applicable solicitation, and this part. Applications will be considered in a competitive process, *i.e.* each Application will be evaluated against other Applications responsive to the Solicitation. Greater weight will be given to applications that rely upon a smaller guarantee percentage, all else being equal. Concurrent with its review process, DOE will consult with the Secretary of the Treasury regarding the terms and conditions of the potential loan guarantee. Applications will be denied if:

(1) The project will be built or operated outside the United States;

(2) The project is not ready to be employed commercially in the United States, cannot yield a commercially viable product or service in the use proposed in the project, does not have the potential to be employed in other commercial projects in the United States, and is not or will not be available for further commercial use in the United States;

(3) The entity or person issuing the loan or other debt obligations subject to the loan guarantee is not an Eligible Lender or other Holder, as defined in § 609.11 of this part;

(4) The project is for demonstration, research, or development.

(5) The project does not avoid, reduce or sequester air pollutants or anthropogenic emissions of greenhouse gases; or

(6) The Applicant will not provide an equity contribution.

(b) In evaluating Applications, DOE will consider the following factors:

(1) To what measurable extent the project avoids, reduces, or sequesters air pollutants or anthropogenic emissions of greenhouses gases;

(2) To what extent the new or significantly improved technology to be employed in the project, as compared to Commercial Technology in general use in the United States, is ready to be employed commercially in the United States, can be replicated, yields a commercially viable project or service in

the use proposed in the project, has potential to be employed in other commercial projects in the United States, and is or will be available for further commercial use in the United States;

(3) To what extent the new or significantly improved technology used in the project constitutes an important improvement in technology, as compared to Commercial Technology, used to avoid, reduce or sequester air pollutants or anthropogenic emissions of greenhouse gases, and the Applicant has a plan to advance or assist in the advancement of that technology into the commercial marketplace;

(4) The extent to which the requested amount of the loan guarantee, the requested amount of Guaranteed Obligations and, if applicable, the expected amount of any other financing or credit arrangements are reasonable relative to the nature and scope of the project;

(5) The total amount and nature of the Eligible Project Costs and the extent to which Project Costs are funded by Guaranteed Obligations;

(6) The likelihood that the project will be ready for full commercial operations in the time frame stated in the Application;

(7) The amount of equity commitment to the project by the Applicant and other principals involved in the project;

(8) Whether there is sufficient evidence that the Applicant will diligently pursue the project, including initiating and completing the project in a timely manner;

(9) Whether and to what extent the Applicant will rely upon other Federal and non-Federal governmental assistance such as grants, tax credits, or other loan guarantees to support the financing, construction, and operation of the project and how such assistance will impact the project;

(10) The feasibility of the project and likelihood that the project will produce sufficient revenues to service the project's debt obligations over the life of the loan guarantee and assure timely repayment of Guaranteed Obligations;

(11) The levels of safeguards provided to the Federal government in the event of default through collateral, warranties, and other assurance of repayment described in the Application, including the nature of any anticipated intercreditor arrangements;

(12) The Applicant's capacity and expertise to successfully operate the project, based on factors such as financial soundness, management organization, and the nature and extent of corporate and personal experience;

(13) The ability of the applicant to ensure that the project will comply with all applicable laws and regulations, including all applicable environmental statutes and regulations;

(14) The levels of market, regulatory, legal, financial, technological, and other risks associated with the project and their appropriateness for a loan guarantee provided by DOE;

(15) Whether the Application contains sufficient information, including a detailed description of the nature and scope of the project and the nature, scope, and risk coverage of the loan guarantee sought to enable DOE to perform a thorough assessment of the project; and

(16) Such other criteria that DOE deems relevant in evaluating the merits of an Application.

(c) During the Application review process DOE may raise issues or concerns that were not raised during the Pre-Application review process where a Pre-Application was requested in the applicable solicitation. Any additional information submitted to DOE will be treated as provided in 10 CFR 600.15 and must be marked as provided in 10 CFR 600.15(b).

(d) If DOE determines that a project may be suitable for a loan guarantee, DOE will notify the Applicant and Eligible Lender or other Holder in writing and provide them with a Term Sheet. If DOE reviews an Application and decides not to proceed further with the issuance of a Term Sheet, DOE will inform the Applicant in writing of the reason(s) for denial.

[74 FR 63549, Dec. 4, 2009, as amended at 76 FR 26582, May 9, 2011]

§ 609.8 Term sheets and conditional commitments.

(a) DOE, after review and evaluation of the Application, additional information requested and received by DOE,

potentially including a preliminary credit rating or credit assessment, and information obtained as the result of meeting with the Applicant and the Eligible Lender or other Holder, may offer to an Applicant and the Eligible Lender or other Holder detailed terms and conditions that must be met, including terms and conditions that must be met by the Applicant and the Eligible Lender or other Holder.

(b) The terms and conditions required by DOE will be expressed in a written Term Sheet signed by a Contracting Officer and addressed to the Applicant and the Eligible Lender or other Holder, where appropriate. The Term Sheet will request that the Project Sponsor and the Eligible Lender or other Holder express agreement with the terms and conditions contained in the Term Sheet by signing the Term Sheet in the designated place. Each person signing the Term Sheet must be a duly authorized official or officer of the Applicant and Eligible Lender or other Holder. The Term Sheet will include an expiration date on which the terms offered will expire unless the Contracting Officer agrees in writing to extend the expiration date.

(c) The Applicant and/or the Eligible Lender or other Holder may respond to the Term Sheet offer in writing or may request discussions or meetings on the terms and conditions contained in the Term Sheet, including requests for clarifications or revisions. When DOE, the Applicant, and the Eligible Lender or other Holder agree on all of the final terms and conditions and all parties sign the Term Sheet, the Term Sheet becomes a Conditional Commitment. When and if all of the terms and conditions specified in the Conditional Commitment have been met, DOE and the Applicant may enter into a Loan Guarantee Agreement.

(d) DOE's obligations under each Conditional Commitment are conditional upon statutory authority having been provided in advance of the execution of the Loan Guarantee Agreement sufficient under FCRA and Title XVII for DOE to execute the Loan Guarantee Agreement, and payment in full of the Credit Subsidy Cost for the loan guarantee that is the subject of the Conditional Commitment from one of the following:

(1) A Congressional appropriation of funds;

(2) A payment from the Borrower deposited into the Treasury; or

(3) A combination of one or more appropriations under paragraph (d)(1) and one or more payments from the Borrower under paragraph (d)(2) of this section.

(e) The Applicant is required to pay fees to DOE to cover the Administrative Cost of Issuing a Loan Guarantee for the period of the Term Sheet through the closing of the Loan Guarantee Agreement (Second Fee).

[74 FR 63549, Dec. 4, 2009, as amended at 77 FR 29855, May 21, 2012]

§ 609.9 Closing on the Loan Guarantee Agreement.

(a) Subsequent to entering into a Conditional Commitment with an Applicant, DOE, after consultation with the Applicant, will set a closing date for execution of a Loan Guarantee Agreement.

(b) By the closing date, the Applicant and the Eligible Lender or other Holder must have satisfied all of the detailed terms and conditions contained in the Conditional Commitment and other related documents and all other contractual, statutory, and regulatory requirements. If the Applicant and the Eligible Lender or other Holder has not satisfied all such terms and conditions by the closing date, the Secretary may, in his/her sole discretion, set a new closing date or terminate the Conditional Commitment.

(c) In order to enter into a Loan Guarantee Agreement at closing:

(1) DOE must have received authority in an appropriations act for the loan guarantee; and

(2) All other applicable statutory, regulatory, or other requirements must be fulfilled.

(d) Prior to, or on, the closing date, DOE will ensure that:

(1) Pursuant to section 1702(b) of the Act, DOE has received payment in full of the Credit Subsidy Cost of the loan guarantee from one of the following:

(i) A Congressional appropriation of funds;

(ii) A payment from the Borrower deposited into the Treasury; or

(iii) A combination of one or more appropriations under paragraph (d)(1)(i) and one or more payments from the Borrower under paragraph (d)(1)(ii) of this section.

(2) Pursuant to section 1702(h) of the Act, DOE has received from the Borrower the First and Second Fees and, if applicable, the Third fee, or portions thereof, for the Administrative Cost of Issuing the Loan Guarantee, as specified in the Loan Guarantee Agreement;

(3) OMB has reviewed and approved DOE's calculation of the Credit Subsidy Cost of the loan guarantee;

(4) The Department of the Treasury has been consulted as to the terms and conditions of the Loan Guarantee Agreement;

(5) The Loan Guarantee Agreement and related documents contain all terms and conditions DOE deems reasonable and necessary to protect the interest of the United States; and

(6) All conditions precedent specified in the Conditional Commitment are either satisfied or waived by a Contracting Officer and all other applicable contractual, statutory, and regulatory requirements are satisfied.

(e) Not later than the period approved in writing by the Contracting Officer, which may not be less than 30 days prior to the closing date, the Applicant must provide in writing updated project financing information if the terms and conditions of the financing arrangements changed between execution of the Conditional Commitment and that date. The Conditional Commitment must be updated to reflect the revised terms and conditions.

(f) Where the total Project Costs for an Eligible Project are projected to exceed $25 million, the Applicant must provide a credit rating from a nationally recognized rating agency reflecting the revised Conditional Commitment for the project without a Federal guarantee. Where total Project Costs are projected to be $25 million or less than $25 million, the Secretary may, on a case-by-case basis, require a credit rating. If a rating is required, an updated rating must be provided to the Secretary not later than 30 days prior to closing.

(g) Changes in the terms and conditions of the financing arrangements will affect the Credit Subsidy Cost for the Loan Guarantee Agreement. DOE may postpone the expected closing date pursuant to any changes submitted under paragraph (e) and (f) of this section. In addition, DOE may choose to terminate the Conditional Commitment.

[74 FR 63549, Dec. 4, 2009, as amended at 77 FR 29855, May 21, 2012]

§ 609.10 Loan Guarantee Agreement.

(a) Only a Loan Guarantee Agreement executed by a duly authorized DOE Contracting Officer can contractually obligate DOE to guarantee loans or other debt obligations.

(b) DOE is not bound by oral representations made during the Pre-Application stage, if Pre-Applications were solicited, or Application stage, or during any negotiation process.

(c) Except if explicitly authorized by an Act of Congress, no funds obtained from the Federal Government, or from a loan or other instrument guaranteed by the Federal Government, may be used to pay for Credit Subsidy Costs, administrative fees, or other fees charged by or paid to DOE relating to the Title XVII program or any loan guarantee there under.

(d) Prior to the execution by DOE of a Loan Guarantee Agreement, DOE must ensure that the following requirements and conditions are satisfied:

(1) The project qualifies as an Eligible Project under the Act and is not a research, development, or demonstration project or a project that employs Commercial Technologies in service in the United States;

(2) The project will be constructed and operated in the United States, the employment of the new or significantly improved technology in the project has the potential to be replicated in other commercial projects in the United States, and this technology is or is likely to be available in the United States for further commercial application;

(3) The face value of the debt guaranteed by DOE is limited to no more than 80 percent of total Project Costs;

(4)(i) Where DOE guarantees 100 percent of the Guaranteed Obligation, the

loan shall be funded by the Federal Financing Bank;

(ii) Where DOE guarantees more than 90 percent of the Guaranteed Obligation, the guaranteed portion cannot be separated from or ''stripped'' from the non-guaranteed portion of the Guaranteed Obligation if the loan is participated, syndicated or otherwise resold in the secondary market;

(iii) Where DOE guarantees 90 percent or less of the Guaranteed Obligation, the guaranteed portion may be separated from or ''stripped'' from the non-guaranteed portion of the Guaranteed Obligation, if the loan is participated, syndicated or otherwise resold in the secondary debt market;

(5) The Borrower and other principals involved in the project have made or will make a significant equity investment in the project;

(6) The Borrower is obligated to make full repayment of the principal and interest on the Guaranteed Obligation and other project debt over a period of up to the lesser of 30 years or 90 percent of the projected useful life of the project's major physical assets, as calculated in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and practices. The non-guaranteed portion (if any) of any Guaranteed Obligation must be repaid on a pro-rata basis, and may not be repaid on a shorter or faster amortization schedule than the guaranteed portion. Any project-related financing or credit arrangement (other than the Guaranteed Obligation) may have a shorter or faster amortization schedule than the Guaranteed Obligation if DOE determines that the resulting financing structure of the project—

(i) Allocates to DOE a reasonably proportionate share of the default risk, in light of—

(A) DOE's share of the total project financing,

(B) Risk allocation among the credit providers, and

(C) Internal and external credit enhancements; and

(ii) Is appropriate to assure reasonable prospect of repayment of the principal of and interest on the DOE Guaranteed Obligation and to protect the interests of the United States in the case of default;

(7) The loan guarantee does not finance, either directly or indirectly, tax-exempt debt obligations, consistent with the requirements of section 149(b) of the Internal Revenue Code;

(8) The amount of the loan guaranteed, when combined with other funds committed to the project, will be sufficient to carry out the project, including adequate contingency funds;

(9) There is a reasonable prospect of repayment by Borrower of the principal of and interest on the Guaranteed Obligations and other project debt;

(10) The Borrower has pledged project assets and other collateral or surety, including non project-related assets, determined by DOE to be necessary to secure the repayment of the Guaranteed Obligations;

(11) The Loan Guarantee Agreement and related documents include detailed terms and conditions necessary and appropriate to protect the interest of the United States in the case of default, including ensuring availability of all the intellectual property rights, technical data including software, and technology necessary for any person or entity selected, including DOE, to complete, operate, convey, and dispose of the defaulted project;

(12) The interest rate on any Guaranteed Obligation is determined by DOE, after consultation with the Treasury Department, to be reasonable, taking into account the range of interest rates prevailing in the private sector for similar obligations of comparable risk guaranteed by the Federal government;

(13) Any Guaranteed Obligation is not subordinate to any loan or other debt obligation;

(14) There is satisfactory evidence that Borrower and Eligible Lenders or other Holders are willing, competent, and capable of performing the terms and conditions of the Guaranteed Obligations and other debt obligation and the Loan Guarantee Agreement, and will diligently pursue the project;

(15) The Borrower has made the initial (or total) payment of fees for the Administrative Cost of Issuing a Loan Guarantee for the construction and operational phases of the project (Third Fee), as specified in the Conditional Commitment;

(16) The Eligible Lender, other Holder or servicer has taken and is obligated to continue to take those actions necessary to perfect and maintain liens on assets which are pledged as collateral for the Guaranteed Obligation;

(17) If Borrower is to make payment in full or in part for the Credit Subsidy Cost of the loan guarantee pursuant to section 1702(b)(2) of the Act, such payment must be received by DOE prior to, or at the time of, closing;

(18) DOE or its representatives have access to the project site at all reasonable times in order to monitor the performance of the project;

(19) DOE, the Eligible Lender, or other Holder and Borrower have reached an agreement as to the information that will be made available to DOE and the information that will be made publicly available;

(20) The prospective Borrower has filed applications for or obtained any required regulatory approvals for the project and is in compliance, or promptly will be in compliance, where appropriate, with all Federal, State, and local regulatory requirements;

(21) The Borrower has no delinquent Federal debt, including tax liabilities, unless the delinquency has been resolved with the appropriate Federal agency in accordance with the standards of the Debt Collection Improvement Act of 1996;

(22) The Loan Guarantee Agreement and related agreements contain such other terms and conditions as DOE deems reasonable and necessary to protect the interests of the United States, including without limitation provisions for (i) such collateral and other credit support for the Guaranteed Obligation, and (ii) such collateral sharing, priorities (subject always to Section 1702(d)(3) of Title XVII) and voting rights among creditors and other intercreditor arrangements as, in each case, DOE deems reasonable and necessary to protect the interests of the United States; and

(23)(i) The Lender is an Eligible Lender, as defined in § 609.2 of this part, and meets DOE's lender eligibility and performance requirement contained in §§ 609.11 (a) and (b) of this part; and

(ii) The servicer meets the servicing performance requirements of § 609.11(c) of this part.

(e) The Loan Guarantee Agreement must provide that, in the event of a default by the Borrower:

(1) Interest accrues on the Guaranteed Obligations at the rate stated in the Loan Guarantee Agreement or Loan Agreement, until DOE makes full payment of the defaulted Guaranteed Obligations and, except when debt is funded through the Federal Financing Bank, DOE is not required to pay any premium, default penalties, or prepayment penalties;

(2) Upon payment of the Guaranteed Obligations by DOE, DOE is subrogated to the rights of the Holders of the debt, including all related liens, security, and collateral rights;

(3) The Eligible Lender or other servicer acting on DOE's behalf is obligated to take those actions necessary to perfect and maintain liens on assets which are pledged as collateral for the Guaranteed Obligations;

(4) The holder of pledged collateral is obligated to take such actions as DOE may reasonably require to provide for the care, preservation, protection, and maintenance of such collateral so as to enable the United States to achieve maximum recovery upon default by the Borrower on the Guaranteed Obligations;

(f) The Loan Guarantee Agreement must contain audit provisions which provide, in substance, as follows:

(1) The Eligible Lender or other Holder or other party servicing the Guaranteed Obligations, as applicable, and the Borrower, must keep such records concerning the project as are necessary to facilitate an effective and accurate audit and performance evaluation of the project as required in § 609.17 of this part; and

(2) DOE and the Comptroller General, or their duly authorized representatives, must have access, for the purpose of audit and examination, to any pertinent books, documents, papers, and records of the Borrower, Eligible Lender or other Holder, or other party servicing the Guaranteed Obligations, as applicable. Examination of records may be made during the regular business hours of the Borrower, Eligible

Lender or other Holder, or other party servicing the Guaranteed Obligations, or at any other time mutually convenient as required in § 609.17 of this part.

(g)(1) An Eligible Lender or other Holder may sell, assign or transfer a Guaranteed Obligation to another Eligible Lender that meets the requirements of § 609.11 of this part. Such Eligible Lender to which a Guaranteed Obligation is assigned or transferred, is required to fulfill all servicing, monitoring, and reporting requirements contained in the Loan Guarantee Agreement and these regulations if the transferring Eligible Lender was performing these functions and transfer such functions to the new Eligible Lender. Any assignment or transfer, however, of the servicing, monitoring, and reporting functions must be approved by DOE in writing in advance of such assignment.

(2) The Secretary, or the Secretary's designee or contractual agent, for the purpose of identifying Holders with the right to receive payment under the guarantees shall include in the Loan Guarantee Agreement or related documents a procedure for tracking and identifying Holders of Guarantee Obligations. These duties usually will be performed by the servicer. Any contractual agent approved by the Secretary to perform this function cannot transfer or assign this responsibility without the prior written consent of the Secretary.

[74 FR 63549, Dec. 4, 2009, as amended at 77 FR 29855, May 21, 2012]

§ 609.11 Lender eligibility and servicing requirements.

(a) An Eligible Lender shall meet the following requirements:

(1) Not be debarred or suspended from participation in a Federal government contract (under 48 CFR part 9.4) or participation in a non-procurement activity (under a set of uniform regulations implemented for numerous agencies, such as DOE, at 2 CFR part 180);

(2) Not be delinquent on any Federal debt or loan;

(3) Be legally authorized to enter into loan guarantee transactions authorized by the Act and these regulations and is in good standing with DOE and other Federal agency loan guarantee programs;

(4) Be able to demonstrate, or has access to, experience in originating and servicing loans for commercial projects similar in size and scope to the project under consideration; and

(5) Be able to demonstrate experience or capability as the lead lender or underwriter by presenting evidence of its participation in large commercial projects or energy-related projects or other relevant experience; or

(6) Be the Federal Financing Bank.

(b) When performing its duties to review and evaluate a proposed Eligible Project prior to the submission of a Pre-Application or Application, as appropriate, by the Project Sponsor through the execution of a Loan Guarantee Agreement, the Eligible Lender or DOE if loans are funded by the Federal Financing Bank, shall exercise the level of care and diligence that a reasonable and prudent lender would exercise when reviewing, evaluating and disbursing a loan made by it without a Federal guarantee.

(c) The servicing duties shall be performed by the Eligible Lender, DOE or other servicer if approved by the Secretary. When performing the servicing duties the Eligible Lender, DOE or other servicer shall exercise the level of care and diligence that a reasonable and prudent lender would exercise when servicing a loan made without a Federal guarantee, including:

(1) During the construction period, enforcing all of the conditions precedent to all loan disbursements, as provided in the Loan Guarantee Agreement, Loan Agreement and related documents;

(2) During the operational phase, monitoring and servicing the Debt Obligations and collection of the outstanding principal and accrued interest as well as ensuring that the collateral package securing the Guaranteed Obligations remains uncompromised; and

(3) As specified by DOE, providing annual or more frequent financial and other reports on the status and condition of the Guaranteed Obligations and the Eligible Project, and promptly notifying DOE if it becomes aware of any problems or irregularities concerning the Eligible Project or the ability of

the Borrower to make payment on the Guaranteed Obligations or other debt obligations.

(d) With regard to partial guarantees, even though DOE may in part rely on the Eligible Lender or other servicer to service and monitor the Guaranteed Obligation, DOE will also conduct its own independent monitoring and review of the Eligible Project.

§ 609.12 Project Costs.

(a) Before entering into a Loan Guarantee Agreement, DOE shall determine the estimated Project Costs for the project that is the subject of the agreement. To assist the Department in making that determination, the Applicant must estimate, calculate and record all such costs incurred in the design, engineering, financing, construction, startup, commissioning and shakedown of the project in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and practices. Among other things, the Applicant must calculate the sum of necessary, reasonable and customary costs that it has paid and expects to pay, which are directly related to the project, including costs for escalation and contingencies, to estimate the total Project Costs.

(b) Project Costs include:

(1) Costs of acquisition, lease, or rental of real property, including engineering fees, surveys, title insurance, recording fees, and legal fees incurred in connection with land acquisition, lease or rental, site improvements, site restoration, access roads, and fencing;

(2) Costs of engineering, architectural, legal and bond fees, and insurance paid in connection with construction of the facility; and materials, labor, services, travel and transportation for facility design, construction, startup, commissioning and shakedown;

(3) Costs of equipment purchases;

(4) Costs to provide equipment, facilities, and services related to safety and environmental protection;

(5) Financial and legal services costs, including other professional services and fees necessary to obtain required licenses and permits and to prepare environmental reports and data;

(6) The cost of issuing project debt, such as fees, transaction and legal costs and other normal charges imposed by Eligible Lenders and other Holders;

(7) Costs of necessary and appropriate insurance and bonds of all types;

(8) Costs of design, engineering, startup, commissioning and shakedown;

(9) Costs of obtaining licenses to intellectual property necessary to design, construct, and operate the project;

(10) A reasonable contingency reserve for cost overruns during construction; and

(11) Capitalized interest necessary to meet market requirements, reasonably required reserve funds and other carrying costs during construction; and

(12) Other necessary and reasonable costs.

(c) Project Costs do not include:

(1) Fees and commissions charged to Borrower, including finder's fees, for obtaining Federal or other funds;

(2) Parent corporation or other affiliated entity's general and administrative expenses, and non-project related parent corporation or affiliated entity assessments, including organizational expenses;

(3) Goodwill, franchise, trade, or brand name costs;

(4) Dividends and profit sharing to stockholders, employees, and officers;

(5) Research, development, and demonstration costs of readying the innovative energy or environmental technology for employment in a commercial project;

(6) Costs that are excessive or are not directly required to carry out the project, as determined by DOE, including but not limited to the cost of hedging instruments;

(7) Expenses incurred after startup, commissioning, and shakedown before the facility has been placed in service;

(8) Borrower-paid Credit Subsidy Costs and Administrative Costs of Issuing a Loan Guarantee; and

(9) Operating costs.

§ 609.13 Principal and interest assistance contract.

With respect to the guaranteed portion of any Guaranteed Obligation, and subject to the availability of appropriations, DOE may enter into a contract to pay Holders, for and on behalf

of Borrower, from funds appropriated for that purpose, the principal and interest charges that become due and payable on the unpaid balance of the guaranteed portion of the Guaranteed Obligation, if DOE finds that:

(a) The Borrower:

(1) Is unable to make the payments and is not in default; and

(2) Will, and is financially able to, continue to make the scheduled payments on the remaining portion of the principal and interest due under the non-guaranteed portion of the debt obligation, if any, and other debt obligations of the project, or an agreement, approved by DOE, has otherwise been reached in order to avoid a payment default on non-guaranteed debt.

(b) It is in the public interest to permit Borrower to continue to pursue the purposes of the project;

(c) In paying the principal and interest, the Federal government expects a probable net benefit to the Government will be greater than that which would result in the event of a default;

(d) The payment authorized is no greater than the amount of principal and interest that Borrower is obligated to pay under the terms of the Loan Guarantee Agreement; and

(e) Borrower agrees to reimburse DOE for the payment (including interest) on terms and conditions that are satisfactory to DOE and executes all written contracts required by DOE for such purpose.

§ 609.14 Full faith and credit and incontestability.

The full faith and credit of the United States is pledged to the payment of all Guaranteed Obligations issued in accordance with this part with respect to principal and interest. Such guarantee shall be conclusive evidence that it has been properly obtained; that the underlying loan qualified for such guarantee; and that, but for fraud or material misrepresentation by the Holder, such guarantee will be presumed to be valid, legal, and enforceable.

§ 609.15 Default, demand, payment, and collateral liquidation.

(a) In the event that the Borrower has defaulted in the making of required payments of principal or interest on any portion of a Guaranteed Obligation, and such default has not been cured within the period of grace provided in the Loan Guarantee Agreement and/or the Loan Agreement, the Eligible Lender or other Holder, or nominee or trustee empowered to act for the Eligible Lender or other Holder (referred to in this section collectively as ''Holder''), may make written demand upon the Secretary for payment pursuant to the provisions of the Loan Guarantee Agreement.

(b) In the event that the Borrower is in default as a result of a breach of one or more of the terms and conditions of the Loan Guarantee Agreement, note, mortgage, Loan Agreement, or other contractual obligations related to the transaction, other than the Borrower's obligation to pay principal or interest on the Guaranteed Obligation, as provided in paragraph (a) of this section, the Holder will not be entitled to make demand for payment pursuant to the Loan Guarantee Agreement, unless the Secretary agrees in writing that such default has materially affected the rights of the parties, and finds that the Holder should be entitled to receive payment pursuant to the Loan Guarantee Agreement.

(c) In the event that the Borrower has defaulted as described in paragraph (a) of this section and such default is not cured during the grace period provided in the Loan Guarantee Agreement, the Secretary shall notify the U.S. Attorney General and, subject to the terms of any applicable Intercreditor Agreement, may cause the principal amount of all Guaranteed Obligations, together with accrued interest thereon, and all amounts owed to the United States by Borrower pursuant to the Loan Guarantee Agreement, to become immediately due and payable by giving the Borrower written notice to such effect (without the need for consent or other action on the part of the Holders of the Guaranteed Obligations) and may exercise any other remedies available under the applicable agreements. In the event the Borrower is in default as described in paragraph (b) of this section, where the Secretary determines in writing that such a default has materially affected the rights of

the parties, the Borrower shall be given the period of grace provided in the Loan Guarantee Agreement to cure such default. If the default is not cured during the period of grace, the Secretary may, subject to the terms of any applicable Intercreditor Agreement, cause the principal amount of all Guaranteed Obligations, together with accrued interest thereon, and all amounts owed to the United States by Borrower pursuant to the Loan Guarantee Agreement, to become immediately due and payable by giving the Borrower written notice to such effect (without any need for consent or other action on the part of the Holders of the Guaranteed Obligations) and may exercise any other remedies available under the applicable agreements.

(d) No provision of this regulation shall be construed to preclude forbearance by any Holder with the consent of the Secretary for the benefit of the Borrower.

(e) Upon the making of demand for payment as provided in paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, the Holder shall provide, in conjunction with such demand or immediately thereafter, at the request of the Secretary, the supporting documentation specified in the Loan Guarantee Agreement and any other supporting documentation as may reasonably be required to justify such demand.

(f) Payment as required by the Loan Guarantee Agreement of the Guaranteed Obligation shall be made 60 days after receipt by the Secretary of written demand for payment, provided that the demand complies with the terms of the Loan Guarantee Agreement. The Loan Guarantee Agreement shall provide that interest shall accrue to the Holder at the rate stated in the Loan Guarantee Agreement until the Guaranteed Obligation has been fully paid by the Federal government.

(g) The Loan Guarantee Agreement shall provide that, upon payment of the Guaranteed Obligations, the Secretary shall be subrogated to the rights of the Holders. The Holder shall transfer and assign to the Secretary all rights held by the Holder of the Guaranteed Obligation. Such assignment shall include all related liens, security, and collateral rights to the extent held by the Holder.

(h) Where the Loan Guarantee Agreement or any applicable Intercreditor Agreement so provides, the Eligible Lender or other Holder, or other agent or servicer, as appropriate, and the Secretary may jointly agree to a workout strategy and/or a plan of liquidation of the assets pledged to secure the Guaranteed Obligation and other applicable debt.

(i) Where payment of the Guaranteed Obligation has been made (or at any such earlier time as may be permitted by applicable agreements), the Secretary, acting through the U.S. Attorney General, in accordance with the rights received through subrogation or other applicable agreements, subject to any applicable Intercreditor Agreement, may seek to foreclose on the collateral assets and/or take such other legal action as necessary for the protection of the Government.

(j) If the Secretary (or an agent acting for the benefit of the Secretary) is awarded title to collateral assets pursuant to a foreclosure proceeding, the Secretary may take action to complete, maintain, operate, or lease such assets, or otherwise dispose of any such assets or take any other necessary action which the Secretary deems appropriate (and consistent with any applicable Intercreditor Agreement), in order that the original goals and objectives of the project will, to the extent possible, be realized.

(k) In addition to foreclosure and sale of collateral pursuant thereto, the U.S. Attorney General shall take appropriate action in accordance with rights contained in the Loan Guarantee Agreement and any applicable Intercreditor Agreement to recover costs incurred by, and other amounts owed to, the Government as a result of the defaulted loan or other defaulted obligation. Any recovery so received by the U.S. Attorney General on behalf of the Government shall be applied in the following manner: First to the expenses incurred by the U.S. Attorney General, DOE and any agent acting for the benefit of DOE in effecting such recovery; second, to reimbursement of any amounts paid by DOE, and to pay any

other amounts owed to DOE, as a result of the defaulted obligation; third, to any amounts owed to DOE under related principal and interest assistance contracts; and fourth, to any other lawful claims held by the Government on such process. Any sums remaining after full payment of the foregoing shall be available for the benefit of other parties lawfully entitled to claim them.

(l) If there was a partial guarantee by DOE of the Guaranteed Obligation or if any other creditors are secured by a lien on collateral pledged to secure the Guaranteed Obligation, the proceeds received by the collateral agent or other responsible party as a result of any liquidation or sale of, collection from or other realization on any such collateral may, if so agreed in advance or unless otherwise agreed in the applicable agreements, be applied as follows (with any money distributed to the Federal Government to be further distributed according to § 609.15(k)):

(1) First, to the payment of reasonable and customary fees and expenses incurred in the liquidation or sale, collection or other realization (including without limitation any fees and expenses that the Attorney General of the United States is lawfully entitled to claim in connection with such action);

(2) Second, distributed among the Holders of the Guaranteed Obligation (including DOE, as subrogee) and the other creditors entitled to share in such proceeds on no greater than a pro rata share basis; and

(3) Third, as otherwise provided in the applicable agreement or agreements.

(m) No action taken by the Eligible Lender or other Holder or other agent or servicer in respect of any pledged assets will affect the rights of any party, including the Secretary, having an interest in the loan or other debt obligations, to pursue, jointly or severally, to the extent provided in the Loan Guarantee Agreement or other applicable agreement, legal action against the Borrower or other liable parties, for any deficiencies owing on the balance of the Guaranteed Obligations or other debt obligations after application of the proceeds received upon liquidation.

(n) In the event that the Secretary considers it necessary or desirable to protect or further the interest of the United States in connection with the liquidation or sale of, collection from or other realization on the collateral or recovery of deficiencies due under the loan, the Secretary will take such action as may be appropriate under the circumstances.

(o) Nothing in this part precludes the Secretary from purchasing any Holder's or other person's interest in the project upon liquidation or sale of, collection from or other realization on the collateral.

§ 609.16 Perfection of liens and preservation of collateral.

(a) The Loan Guarantee Agreement and other documents related thereto shall provide that:

(1) The Eligible Lender, or DOE in conjunction with the Federal Financing Bank where the loan is funded by the Federal Financing Bank, or other Holder or other agent or servicer will take those actions necessary or appropriate to perfect and maintain liens, as applicable, on assets which are pledged as collateral for the Guaranteed Obligation; and

(2) Upon default by the Borrower, the holder of pledged collateral shall take such actions as the Secretary (subject to any applicable Intercreditor Agreement) may reasonably require to provide for the care, preservation, protection, and maintenance of such collateral so as to enable the United States to achieve maximum recovery from the pledged assets. The Secretary shall reimburse the holder of collateral for reasonable and appropriate expenses incurred in taking actions required by the Secretary (unless otherwise provided in applicable agreements). Except as provided in § 609.15, no party may waive or relinquish, without the consent of the Secretary, any collateral securing the Guaranteed Obligation to which the United States would be subrogated upon payment under the Loan Guarantee Agreement.

(b) In the event of a default, the Secretary may enter into such contracts as the Secretary (subject to any applicable Intercreditor Agreement) determines are required or appropriate to

care for, preserve, protect or maintain the collateral. The cost of such contracts may be charged to the Borrower.

§ 609.17 Audit and access to records.

(a) The Loan Guarantee Agreement and related documents shall provide that:

(1) The Eligible Lender, or DOE in conjunction with the Federal Financing Bank where loans are funded by the Federal Financing Bank or other Holder or other party servicing the Guaranteed Obligations, as applicable, and the Borrower, shall keep such records concerning the project as is necessary, including the Pre-Application, Application, Term Sheet, Conditional Commitment, Loan Guarantee Agreement, Credit Agreement, mortgage, note, disbursement requests and supporting documentation, financial statements, audit reports of independent accounting firms, lists of all project assets and non-project assets pledged as security for the Guaranteed Obligations, all off-take and other revenue producing agreements, documentation for all project indebtedness, income tax returns, technology agreements, documentation for all permits and regulatory approvals and all other documents and records relating to the Eligible Project, as determined by the Secretary, to facilitate an effective audit and performance evaluation of the project; and

(2) The Secretary and the Comptroller General, or their duly authorized representatives, shall have access, for the purpose of audit and examination, to any pertinent books, documents, papers and records of the Borrower, Eligible Lender or DOE or other Holder or other party servicing the Guaranteed Obligation, as applicable. Such inspection may be made during regular office hours of the Borrower, Eligible Lender or DOE or other Holder, or other party servicing the Eligible Project and the Guaranteed Obligations, as applicable, or at any other time mutually convenient.

(b) The Secretary may from time to time audit any or all items of costs included as Project Costs in statements or certificates submitted to the Secretary or the servicer or otherwise, and may exclude or reduce the amount of any item which the Secretary determines to be unnecessary or excessive, or otherwise not to be an item of Project Costs. The Borrower will make available to the Secretary all books and records and other data available to the Borrower in order to permit the Secretary to carry out such audits. The Borrower will represent that it has within its rights access to all financial and operational records and data relating to Project Costs, and agrees that it will, upon request by the Secretary, exercise such rights in order to make such financial and operational records and data available to the Secretary. In exercising its rights hereunder, the Secretary may utilize employees of other Federal agencies, independent accountants, or other persons.

§ 609.18 Deviations.

To the extent that such requirements are not specified by the Act or other applicable statutes, DOE may authorize deviations on an individual request basis from the requirements of this part upon a finding that such deviation is essential to program objectives and the special circumstances stated in the request make such deviation clearly in the best interest of the Government. DOE will consult with OMB and the Secretary of the Treasury before DOE grants any deviation that would constitute a substantial change in the financial terms of the Loan Guarantee Agreement and related documents. Any deviation, however, that was not captured in the Credit Subsidy Cost will require either additional fees or discretionary appropriations. A recommendation for any deviation shall be submitted in writing to DOE. Such recommendation must include a supporting statement, which indicates briefly the nature of the deviation requested and the reasons in support thereof.

PART 611—ADVANCED TECHNOLOGY VEHICLES MANUFACTURER ASSISTANCE PROGRAM

Subpart A—General

Sec.

611.1 Purpose.
611.2 Definitions.

611.3 Advanced technology vehicle.

Subpart B—Direct Loan Program

611.100 Eligible applicant.
611.101 Application.
611.102 Eligible project costs.
611.103 Application evaluation.
611.104 [Reserved]
611.105 Agreement.
611.106 Environmental requirements.
611.107 Loan terms.
611.108 Perfection of liens and preservation of collateral.
611.109 Audit and access to records.
611.110 Assignment or transfer of loans.
611.111 Default, demand, payment, and collateral liquidation.
611.112 Termination of obligations.

Subpart C—Facility Funding Awards

611.200 Purpose and scope.
611.201 Applicability.
611.202 Advanced Technology Vehicle Manufacturing Facility Award Program.
611.203 Eligibility.
611.204 Awards.
611.205 Period of award availability.
611.206 Existing facilities.
611.207 Small automobile and component manufacturers.
611.208–611.209 [Reserved]

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 110–140 (42 U.S.C. 17013), Pub. L. 110–329.

SOURCE: 73 FR 66731, Nov. 12, 2008, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General

§ 611.1 Purpose.

This part is issued by the Department of Energy (DOE) pursuant to section 136 of the Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007, Public Law 110–140, as amended by section 129 of Public Law 110–329. Specifically, section 136(e) directs DOE to promulgate an interim final rule establishing regulations that specify eligibility criteria and that contain other provisions that the Secretary deems necessary to administer this section and any loans made by the Secretary pursuant to this section.

§ 611.2 Definitions.

The definitions contained in this section apply to provisions contained in both subpart A and subpart B.

Adjusted average fuel economy means a harmonic production weighted average of the combined fuel economy of all vehicles in a fleet, which were subject to CAFE.

Advanced technology vehicle means a passenger automobile or light truck that meets—

(1) The Bin 5 Tier II emission standard established in regulations issued by the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency under section 202(i) of the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7521(i)), as of the date of application, or a lower-numbered Bin emission standard;

(2) Any new emission standard in effect for fine particulate matter prescribed by the Administrator under that Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 *et seq.*), as of the date of application; and

(3) At least 125 percent of the harmonic production weighted average combined fuel economy, for vehicles with substantially similar attributes in model year 2005.

Agreement means the contractual loan arrangement between DOE and a Borrower for a loan made by and through the Federal Financing Bank with the full faith and credit of the United States government on the principal and interest.

Applicant means a party that submits a substantially complete application pursuant to this part.

Application means the compilation of the materials required by this part to be submitted to DOE by an Applicant. One Application can include requests for one or more loans and one or more projects. However, an Application covering more than one project must contain complete and separable information with respect to each project.

Automobile is used as that term is defined in 49 CFR part 523.

Borrower means an Applicant that receives a loan under this Program.

CAFE means the Corporate Average Fuel Economy program of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 49 U.S.C. 32901 *et seq.*

Combined fuel economy means the combined city/highway miles per gallon values, as are reported in accordance with section 32904 of title 49, United States Code. If CAFE compliance data is not available, the combined average fuel economy of a vehicle must be demonstrated through the use of a peer-reviewed model.

DOE or *Department* means the United States Department of Energy.

Eligible Facility means a manufacturing facility in the United States that produces qualifying advanced technology vehicles, or qualifying components.

Eligible Project means:

(1) Reequipping, expanding, or establishing a manufacturing facility in the United States to produce qualifying advanced technology vehicles, or qualifying components; or

(2) Engineering integration performed in the United States for qualifying advanced technology vehicles and qualifying components.

Engineering integration costs are the costs of engineering tasks relating to—

(1) Incorporating qualifying components into the design of advanced technology vehicles; and

(2) Designing tooling and equipment and developing manufacturing processes and material suppliers for production facilities that produce qualifying components or advanced technology vehicles.

Equivalent vehicle means a light-duty vehicle of the same vehicle classification as specified in 10 CFR part 523.

Financially viable means a reasonable prospect that the Applicant will be able to make payments of principal and interest on the loan as and when such payments become due under the terms of the loan documents, and that the applicant has a net present value that is positive, taking all costs, existing and future, into account.

Grantee means an entity awarded a grant made pursuant to section 136 and this Part.

Light-duty vehicle means passenger automobiles and light trucks.

Light truck is used as that term is defined in 49 CFR part 523.

Loan Documents mean the Agreement and all other instruments, and all documentation among DOE, the borrower, and the Federal Financing Bank evidencing the making, disbursing, securing, collecting, or otherwise administering the loan [references to loan documents also include comparable agreements, instruments, and documentation for other financial obligations for which a loan is requested or issued].

Model year is defined as that term is defined in 49 U.S.C. 32901.

Passenger automobile is used as that term is defined in 49 CFR part 523.

Qualifying components means components that the DOE determines are

(1) Designed for advanced technology vehicles; and

(2) Installed for the purpose of meeting the performance requirements of advanced technology vehicles.

Secretary means the United States Secretary of Energy.

Security means all property, real or personal, tangible or intangible, required by the provisions of the Loan Documents to secure repayment of any indebtedness of the Borrower under the Loan Documents.

§611.3 Advanced technology vehicle.

In order to demonstrate that a vehicle is an ''advanced technology vehicle'', an automobile manufacturer must provide the following:

(a) Emissions certification. An automobile manufacturer must written certify that the vehicle meets, or will meet, the emissions requirements specified in the definition of ''advanced technology vehicle''; and

(b) Demonstration of fuel economy performance. An automobile manufacturer must demonstrate that the vehicle has a combined average fuel economy of at least 125 percent of the average combined fuel economy for vehicles with substantially similar attributes for model year 2005.

(1) A combined average fuel economy calculation required under this paragraph for a vehicle that is a dual fueled automobile for the purpose of CAFE is calculated as if the vehicle were not a dual fueled automobile.

(2) The average combined fuel economy for vehicles with substantially similar attributes is a harmonic production weighted average of the combined average fuel economy of all vehicles with substantially similar attributes in model year 2005, as published by DOE.

(3) In the case of an electric drive vehicle with the ability to recharge from an off-board source, an automobile manufacturer must provide DOE with a test procedure and sufficient data to demonstrate that the vehicle meets or

exceeds the applicable average combined fuel economy of vehicles with substantially similar attributes.

Subpart B—Direct Loan Program

§ 611.100 Eligible applicant.

(a) In order to be eligible to receive a loan under this part, an applicant

(1) Must be either—

(i) An automobile manufacturer that can demonstrate an improved fuel economy as specified in paragraph (b) of this section, or

(ii) A manufacturer of a qualifying component; and

(2) Must be financially viable without receipt of additional Federal funding associated with the proposed eligible project.

(b) Improved fuel economy. (1) If the applicant is an automobile manufacturer that manufactured in model year 2005, vehicles subject to the CAFE requirements, the applicant must demonstrate that its adjusted average fuel economy for its light-duty vehicle fleet produced in the most recent year for which final CAFE compliance data is available, at the time of application, is greater than or equal to the adjusted average fuel economy of the applicant's fleet for MY 2005, based on the MY 2005 final CAFE compliance data.

(2) If the applicant is an automobile manufacturer that did not manufacture in model year 2005, vehicles subject to the CAFE requirements, the applicant must demonstrate that the projected combined fuel economy for the relevant the advanced technology vehicle that is the subject of the application is greater than or equal to the industry adjusted average fuel economy for model year 2005 of equivalent vehicles, based on final CAFE compliance data.

(3) The CAFE values under this paragraph are to be calculated using the CAFE procedures applicable to the model year being evaluated.

(4) An applicant must provide fuel economy data, at the model level, relied upon to make the demonstration required by this section.

(5) An applicant that is a manufacturer of a qualifying component under paragraph (a)(1)(ii) of this section does not need to make a showing of improved fuel economy under this paragraph.

(c) In determining under paragraph (a)(2) of this section whether an applicant is financially viable, the Department will consider a number of factors, including, but not limited to:

(1) The applicant's debt-to-equity ratio as of the date of the loan application;

(2) The applicant's earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (EBITDA) for the applicant's most recent fiscal year prior to the date of the loan application;

(3) The applicant's debt to EBITDA ratio as of the date of the loan application;

(4) The applicant's interest coverage ratio (calculated as EBITDA divided by interest expenses) for the applicant's most recent fiscal year prior to the date of the loan application;

(5) The applicant's fixed charge coverage ratio (calculated as EBITDA plus fixed charges divided by fixed charges plus interest expenses) for the applicant's most recent fiscal year prior to the date of the loan application;

(6) The applicant's liquidity as of the date of the loan application;

(7) Statements from applicant's lenders that the applicant is current with all payments due under loans made by those lenders at the time of the loan application; and

(8) Financial projections demonstrating the applicant's solvency through the period of time that the loan is outstanding.

(d). For purposes of making a determination under paragraph (a)(2) of this section, additional Federal funding includes any loan, grant, guarantee, insurance, payment, rebate, subsidy, credit, tax benefit, or any other form of direct or indirect assistance from the Federal government, or any agency or instrumentality thereof, other than the proceeds of a loan approved under this Part, that is, or is expected to be made available with respect to, the project for which the loan is sought under this Part.

§ 611.101 Application.

The information and materials submitted in or in connection with applications will be treated as provided in 10

CFR 600.15 and must be marked as provided in 10 CFR 600.15(b). An application must include, at a minimum, the following information and materials:

(a) A certification by the applicant that it meets each of the requirements of the program as set forth in statute, the regulations in this part, and any supplemental requirements issued by DOE;

(b) A description of the nature and scope of the proposed project for which a loan or award is sought under this part, including key milestones and location of the project;

(c) A detailed explanation of how the proposed project qualifies under applicable law to receive a loan or award under this part, including vehicle simulations using industry standard model (need to add name and location of this open source model) to show projected fuel economy;

(d) A detailed estimate of the total project costs together with a description of the methodology and assumptions used to produce that estimate;

(e) A detailed description of the overall financial plan for the proposed project, including all sources and uses of funding, equity, and debt, and the liability of parties associated with the project;

(f) Applicant's business plan on which the project is based and applicant's financial model presenting project *pro forma* statements for the proposed term of the obligations including income statements, balance sheets, and cash flows. All such information and data must include assumptions made in their preparation and the range of revenue, operating cost, and credit assumptions considered;

(g) An analysis of projected market use for any product (vehicle or component) to be produced by or through the project, including relevant data and assumptions justifying the analysis, and copies of any contractual agreements for the sale of these products or assurance of the revenues to be generated from sale of these products;

(h) Financial statements for the past three years, or less if the applicant has been in operation less than three years, that have been audited by an independent certified public accountant, including all associated notes, as well as interim financial statements and notes for the current fiscal year, of the applicant and parties providing the applicant's financial backing, together with business and financial interests of controlling or commonly controlled organizations or persons, including parent, subsidiary and other affiliated corporations or partners of the applicant;

(i) A list showing the status of and estimated completion date of applicant's required project-related applications or approvals for Federal, state, and local permits and authorizations to site, construct, and operate the project, a period of 5 years preceding the submission of an application under this Part;

(j) Information sufficient to enable DOE to comply with the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, as required by §611.106 of this part;

(k) A listing and description of assets associated, or to be associated, with the project and any other asset that will serve as collateral for the Loan, including appropriate data as to the value of the assets and the useful life of any physical assets. With respect to real property assets listed, an appraisal that is consistent with the ''Uniform Standards of Professional Appraisal Practice,'' promulgated by the Appraisal Standards Board of the Appraisal Foundation, and performed by licensed or certified appraisers, is required;

(l) An analysis demonstrating that, at the time of the application, the applicant is financially viable without receipt of additional Federal funding associated with the proposed project, and that there is a reasonable prospect that the Applicant will be able to make payments of principal and interest on the loan as and when such payments become due under the terms of the loan documents, and that the applicant has a net present value which is positive, taking all costs, existing and future, into account. This information must include, from publicly traded companies, relevant filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission;

(m) Written assurance that all laborers and mechanics employed by contractors or subcontractors during construction, alteration, or repair that is financed, in whole or in part, by a loan

under this Part shall be paid wages at rates not less than those prevailing on similar construction in the locality, as determined by the Secretary of Labor in accordance with 40 U.S.C. sections 3141–3144, 3146, and 3147;

(n) Completed Form SF–LLL, as required by 10 CFR Part 601; and

(o) Other information, as determined necessary by DOE.

[73 FR 66731, Nov. 12, 2008, as amended at 76 FR 26583, May 9, 2011]

§ 611.102 Eligible project costs.

(a) Eligible costs are:

(1) Those costs that are reasonably related to the reequipping, expanding, or establishing a manufacturing facility in the United States to produce qualifying advanced technology vehicles or qualifying components;

(2) Costs of engineering integration performed in the United States for qualifying vehicles or qualifying components;

(3) Costs for payment with loan proceeds that are incurred, but not yet paid by the borrower, after a substantially complete application has been submitted to DOE; and

(4) Costs incurred after closing of the loan.

(b) In determining the overall total cost of an Eligible Project, DOE and the applicant may include significant costs already incurred and capitalized by the applicant in accordance with Generally Accepted Accounting Principles and these costs may be considered by DOE in determining the Borrower's contribution to total project costs.

§ 611.103 Application evaluation.

(a) *Eligibility screening*. Applications will be reviewed to determine whether the applicant is eligible, the information required under § 611.101 is complete, and the proposed loan complies with applicable statutes and regulations. DOE can at any time reject an application, in whole or in part, that does not meet these requirements. Any additional information submitted to DOE will be treated as provided in 10 CFR 600.15 and must be marked as provided in 10 CFR 600.15(b).

(b) *Evaluation criteria*. Applications that are determined to be eligible pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section shall be subject to a substantive review by DOE based upon factors that include, but are not limited to, the following:

(1) The technical merit of the proposed advanced technology vehicles or qualifying components, with greater weight given for factors including, but not limited to:

(i) Improved vehicle fuel economy above that required for an advanced technology vehicle;

(ii) Potential contributions to improved fuel economy of the U.S. light-duty vehicle fleet;

(iii) Likely reductions in petroleum use by the U.S. light-duty fleet; and

(iv) Promotion of use of advanced fuel (e.g., E85, ultra-low sulfur diesel).

(2) Technical Program Factors such as economic development and diversity in technology, company, risk, and geographic location.

(3) The adequacy of the proposed provisions to protect the Government, including sufficiency of Security, the priority of the lien position in the Security, and the percentage of the project to be financed with the loan.

(4) In making loans to those manufacturers that have existing facilities, priority will be given to those facilities that are oldest or have been in existence for at least 20 years even if such facilities are idle at the time of application.

[73 FR 66731, Nov. 12, 2008, as amended at 76 FR 26583, May 9, 2011]

§ 611.104 [Reserved]

§ 611.105 Agreement.

(a) Only an Agreement executed by a duly authorized DOE Contracting Officer can contractually obligate the government to make a loan made by and through the Federal Financing Bank with the full faith and credit of the United States government on the principal and interest.

(b) DOE is not bound by oral representations made during the Application stage, or during any negotiation process.

(c) No funds obtained from the Federal Government, or from a loan or other instrument guaranteed by the Federal Government, may be used to

pay administrative fees, or other fees charged by or paid to DOE relating to the section 136 loan program.

(d) Prior to the execution by DOE of an Agreement, DOE must ensure that the following requirements and conditions, which must be specified in the Agreement, are satisfied:

(1) The Borrower is a Eligible Applicant as defined in this part;

(2) The Agreement is for an Eligible Project as defined in this part;

(3) The principal amount of the loan is limited to no more than 80 percent of reasonably anticipated total Project Costs;

(4) Loan funds will be disbursed only to meet immediate cash disbursement needs of the Borrower and not for investment purposes, and any investment earnings obtained in excess of accrued interest expense will be returned to United States Government; and

(5) Such documents, representations, warrants and covenants as DOE may require.

§611.106 Environmental requirements.

(a)(1) *In general*. Environmental review of the proposed projects under this part will be conducted in accordance with applicable statutes, regulations, and Executive Orders.

(2) The applicant must submit a comprehensive environmental report. The comprehensive environmental report shall consist of the specific reports and related material set forth in paragraphs (d) through (f) of this section.

(3) The regulations of the Council on Environmental Quality implementing NEPA require DOE to provide public notice of the availability of project specific environmental documents such as environmental impact statements, environmental assessments, findings of no significant impact, records of decision etc., to the affected public. See 40 CFR 1506.6(b). The comprehensive environmental report will provide substantial basis for any required environmental impact statement or environmental assessment and findings of no significant impact, pursuant to the procedures set forth in 10 CFR 1021.215. DOE may also make a determination as to whether a categorical exclusion is available with regard to an Application.

(b) The detail of each specific report must be commensurate with the complexity of the proposal and its potential for environmental impact. Each topic in each specific report shall be addressed or its omission justified, unless the specific report description indicates that the data is not required for that type of project. If material required for one specific report is provided in another specific report or in another exhibit, it may be incorporated by reference. If any specific report topic is required for a particular project but is not provided at the time the application is filed, the comprehensive environmental report shall explain why it is missing and when the applicant anticipates it will be filed.

(c) As appropriate, each specific report shall:

(1) Address conditions or resources that might be directly or indirectly affected by the project;

(2) Identify significant environmental effects expected to occur as a result of the project;

(3) Identify the effects of construction, operation (including maintenance and malfunctions), and termination of the project, as well as cumulative effects resulting from existing or reasonably foreseeable projects;

(4) Identify measures proposed to enhance the environment or to avoid, mitigate, or compensate for adverse effects of the project; and

(5) Provide a list of publications, reports, and other literature or communications that were cited or relied upon to prepare each report.

(d) Specific Report 1—Project impact and description. This report must describe the environmental impacts of the project, facilities associated with the project, special construction and operation procedures, construction timetables, future plans for related construction, compliance with regulations and codes, and permits that must be obtained.

(e) Specific Report 2—Socioeconomics. This report must identify and quantify the impacts of constructing and operating the proposed project on factors affecting towns and counties in the vicinity of the project. The report must:

(1) Describe the socioeconomic impact area;

(2) Evaluate the impact of any substantial immigration of people on governmental facilities and services and plans to reduce the impact on the local infrastructure;

(3) Describe on-site manpower requirements and payroll during construction and operation, including the number of construction personnel who currently reside within the impact area, would commute daily to the site from outside the impact area, or would relocate temporarily within the impact area;

(4) Determine whether existing housing within the impact area is sufficient to meet the needs of the additional population;

(5) Describe the number and types of residences and businesses that would be displaced by the project, procedures to be used to acquire these properties, and types and amounts of relocation assistance payments; and

(6) Conduct a fiscal impact analysis evaluating incremental local government expenditures in relation to incremental local government revenues that would result from construction of the project. Incremental expenditures include, but are not limited to, school operating costs, road maintenance and repair, public safety, and public utility costs.

(f) Specific Report 3—Alternatives. This report must describe alternatives to the project and compare the environmental impacts of such alternatives to those of the proposal. The discussion must demonstrate how environmental benefits and costs were weighed against economic benefits and costs, and technological and procedural constraints. The potential for each alternative to meet project deadlines and the environmental consequences of each alternative shall be discussed. The report must discuss the ''no action'' alternative and the potential for accomplishing the proposed objectives through the use of other means. The report must provide an analysis of the relative environmental benefits and costs for each alternative.

§ 611.107 Loan terms.

(a) All loans provided under this part shall be due and payable in full at the earlier of:

(1) the projected life, in years, of the Eligible facility that is built or installed as a result of the Eligible Project carried out using funds from the loan, as determined by the Secretary; or

(2) Twenty-five (25) years after the date the loan is closed.

(b) Loans provided under the Part must bear a rate of interest that is equal to the rate determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into consideration current market yields outstanding marketable obligations of the United States of comparable maturity. This rate will be determined separately for each drawdown of the loan.

(c) A loan provided under this part may be subject to a deferral in repayment of principal for not more than 5 years after the date on which the Eligible facility that is built or installed as a result of the Eligible Project first begins operations, as determined by the Secretary.

(d)(1) The performance of all of the Borrower's obligations under the Loan Documents shall be secured by, and shall have the priority in, such Security as provided for within the terms and conditions of the Loan Documents.

(2) Accordingly, the rule states that the Secretary must have a first lien or security interest in all property acquired with loan funds. This requirement may be waived only by the Secretary on a non-delegable basis. DOE must also have a lien on any other property of the applicant pledged to secure the loan.

(3) In the event of default, if recoveries from the property and revenues pledged to the repayment of the loan are insufficient to fully repay all principal and interest on the loan, then the Federal Government will have recourse to the assets and revenues of the Borrower to the same extent as senior unsecured general obligations of the Borrower.

(e) The Borrower will be required to pay at the time of the closing of the loan a fee equal to 10 basis points of the principal amount of the loan.

§611.108 Perfection of liens and preservation of collateral.

(a) The Agreement and other documents related thereto shall provide that:

(1) DOE and the Applicant, in conjunction with the Federal Financing Bank if necessary, will take those actions necessary to perfect and maintain liens, as applicable, on assets which are pledged as collateral for the loan; and

(2) Upon default by the Borrower, the holder of pledged collateral shall take such actions as DOE may reasonably require to provide for the care, preservation, protection, and maintenance of such collateral so as to enable the United States to achieve maximum recovery from the pledged assets. DOE shall reimburse the holder of collateral for reasonable and appropriate expenses incurred in taking actions required by DOE.

(b) In the event of a default, DOE may enter into such contracts as the Secretary determines are required to preserve the collateral. The cost of such contracts may be charged to the Borrower.

§611.109 Audit and access to records.

(a) The Agreement and related documents shall provide that:

(1) DOE in conjunction with the Federal Financing Bank, as applicable, and the Borrower, shall keep such records concerning the project as are necessary, including the Application, Term Sheet, Conditional Commitment, Agreement, mortgage, note, disbursement requests and supporting documentation, financial statements, audit reports of independent accounting firms, lists of all project assets and non-project assets pledged as security for the loan, all off-take and other revenue producing agreements, documentation for all project indebtedness, income tax returns, technology agreements, documentation for all permits and regulatory approvals and all other documents and records relating to the Eligible Project, as determined by the Secretary, to facilitate an effective audit and performance evaluation of the project; and

(2) The Secretary and the Comptroller General, or their duly authorized representatives, shall have access, for the purpose of audit and examination, to any pertinent books, documents, papers and records of the Borrower or DOE, as applicable. Such inspection may be made during regular office hours of the Borrower or DOE, as applicable, or at any other time mutually convenient.

(b) The Secretary may from time to time audit any or all statements or certificates submitted to the Secretary. The Borrower will make available to the Secretary all books and records and other data available to the Borrower in order to permit the Secretary to carry out such audits. The Borrower should represent that it has within its rights access to all financial and operational records and data relating to the project financed by the loan, and agrees that it will, upon request by the Secretary, exercise such rights in order to make such financial and operational records and data available to the Secretary. In exercising its rights hereunder, the Secretary may utilize employees of other Federal agencies, independent accountants, or other persons.

(c) Loan funds are being expended efficiently and effectively if documentation submitted and audits conducted under this section demonstrate that the borrower is making appropriate progress toward achieving the purpose for which the loan was originally made.

§611.110 Assignment or transfer of loans.

(a) The Loan Documents may not be modified, in whole or in part, without the prior written approval of DOE.

(b) Upon prior written approval by DOE and the Federal Financing Bank, a certification by the assignor that the assignee is an Eligible Applicant as described in §611.100 of this part, and subject to paragraph (c) of this section and other provisions of this part, a Borrower may assign or transfer its interest in a loan provided under this part, including the loan documents, to a party that qualifies as an Eligible Applicant.

(c) The provisions of paragraph (b) of this section shall not apply to transfers which occur by operation of law.

§ 611.111 Default, demand, payment, and collateral liquidation.

(a) In the event that the Borrower has defaulted in the making of required payments of principal or interest, and such default has not been cured within the period of grace provided in the Agreement, DOE may cause the principal amount of the loan, together with accrued interest thereon, and all amounts owed to the United States by Borrower pursuant to the Agreement, to become immediately due and payable by giving the Borrower written notice to such effect.

(b) In the event that the Borrower is in default as a result of a breach of one or more of the terms and conditions of the Agreement, note, mortgage, or other contractual obligations related to the transaction, other than the Borrower's obligation to pay principal or interest on the loan, and DOE determines, in writing, that such a default has materially affected the rights of the parties, the Borrower shall be given the period of grace provided in the Agreement to cure such default. If the default is not cured during the period of grace, DOE may cause the principal amount of the loan, together with accrued interest thereon, and all amounts owed to the United States by Borrower pursuant to the Agreement, to become immediately due and payable by giving the Borrower written notice to such effect.

(c) In the event that the Borrower has defaulted as described in paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section and such default is not cured during the grace period provided in the Agreement, DOE shall notify the U.S. Attorney General. DOE, acting through the U.S. Attorney General, may seek to foreclose on the collateral assets and/or take such other legal action as necessary for the protection of the Government.

(d) If DOE is awarded title to collateral assets pursuant to a foreclosure proceeding, DOE may take action to complete, maintain, operate, or lease the Eligible Facilities, or otherwise dispose of any property acquired pursuant to the Agreement or take any other necessary action which DOE deems appropriate.

(e) In addition to foreclosure and sale of collateral pursuant thereto, the U.S. Attorney General shall take appropriate action in accordance with rights contained in the Agreement to recover costs incurred by the Government as a result of the defaulted loan or other defaulted obligation. Any recovery so received by the U.S. Attorney General on behalf of the Government shall be applied in the following manner: First to the expenses incurred by the U.S. Attorney General and DOE in effecting such recovery; second, to reimbursement of any amounts paid by DOE as a result of the defaulted obligation; third, to any amounts owed to DOE under related principal and interest assistance contracts; and fourth, to any other lawful claims held by the Government on such process. Any sums remaining after full payment of the foregoing shall be available for the benefit of other parties lawfully entitled to claim them.

(f) In the event that DOE considers it necessary or desirable to protect or further the interest of the United States in connection with the liquidation of collateral or recovery of deficiencies due under the loan, DOE will take such action as may be appropriate under the circumstances.

§ 611.112 Termination of obligations.

DOE, the Federal Financing Bank, and the Borrower shall have such rights to terminate the Agreement as are set forth in the loan documents.

Subpart C—Facility/Funding Awards

§ 611.200 Purpose and scope.

This subpart sets forth the policies and procedures applicable to the award and administration of grants by DOE for advanced technology vehicle manufacturing facilities as authorized by section 136(b) of the Energy Independence and Security Act (Pub. L. 110–140).

§ 611.201 Applicability.

Except as otherwise provided by this subpart, the award and administration of grants shall be governed by 10 CFR part 600 (DOE Financial Assistance Rules).

§ 611.202 Advanced Technology Vehicle Manufacturing Facility Award Program.

DOE may issue, under the Advanced Technology Vehicle Manufacturing Facility Award Program, 10 CFR part 611, subpart C, awards for eligible projects.

§ 611.203 Eligibility.

In order to be eligible for an award, an applicant must be either—

(a) An automobile manufacturer that can demonstrate an improved fuel economy as specified in paragraph (b) of section 611.3, or

(b) A manufacturer of a qualifying component.

§ 611.204 Awards.

Awards issued for eligible projects shall be for an amount of no more than 30 percent of the eligible project costs.

§ 611.205 Period of award availability.

An award under section 611.204 shall apply to—

(a) Facilities and equipment placed in service before December 30, 2020; and

(b) Engineering integration costs incurred during the period beginning on December 19, 2007 and ending on December 30, 2020.

§ 611.206 Existing facilities.

The Secretary shall, in making awards to those manufacturers that have existing facilities, give priority to those facilities that are oldest or have been in existence for at least 20 years. Such facilities can currently be sitting idle.

§ 611.207 Small automobile and component manufacturers.

(a) In this section, the term ''covered firm'' means a firm that—

(1) Employs less than 500 individuals; and

(2) Manufactures automobiles or components of automobiles.

(b) *Set Aside*—Of the amount of funds that are used to provide awards for each fiscal year under this subpart, not less than 10 percent shall be used to provide awards to covered firms or consortia led by a covered firm.

§§ 611.208–611.209 [Reserved]

SUBCHAPTER I—SALES REGULATION

PART 622—CONTRACTUAL PROVISIONS

§ 622.103 Dispute provisions.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, all DOE contracts for the sale of personal property to any organization outside the U.S. Government shall include a Disputes clause which provides for:

(1) Binding final decisions by the Contracting Officer, subject to appeal;

(2) Appeal rights pursuant to the Contract Disputes Act of 1978;

(3) Continuation of performance by the contractor at the direction of the contracting officer pending final resolution of the dispute.

(b) Exceptions:

(1) The provisions of this part shall not apply to contracts for sale of electric power by the Power Marketing Administrations;

(2) The Secretary may exempt a contract or class of contracts from this requirement upon determination that it would not be in the public interest in an individual contract or class of contracts with a foreign government, or agency thereof, or international organization, or subsidiary body thereof, to include the Disputes clause, as permitted by section 3 of the Contract Disputes Act of 1978.

(c) The Energy Board of Contract Appeals (EBCA) has cognizance over disputes relating to DOE Sales contracts.

(d) The Disputes clause in § 624.102–4 shall be used in accordance with this § 622.103.

(Sec. 644, Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 599 (42 U.S.C. 7254))

[46 FR 34559, July 2, 1981]

PART 624—CONTRACT CLAUSES

§ 624.102–4 Disputes.

The following clause shall be used in accordance with the provisions of § 622.103:

DISPUTES

(a) This contract is subject to the Contract Disputes Act of 1978 (41 U.S.C. 601 *et seq.*). If a dispute arises relating to the contract, the purchaser may submit a claim to the Contracting Officer who shall issue a written decision on the dispute.

(b) *Claim* means:

(1) A written request submitted to the Contracting Officer;

(2) For payment of money, adjustment of contract terms, or other relief;

(3) Which is in dispute or remains unresolved after a reasonable time for its review and disposition by the Government; and

(4) For which a Contracting Officer's decision is demanded.

(c) In the case of disputed requests or amendments to such requests for payment exceeding $50,000, or with any amendment causing the total request in dispute to exceed $50,000, the purchaser shall certify, at the time of submission of a claim, as follows:

I certify that the claim is made in good faith, that the supporting data is accurate and complete to the best of my knowledge and belief, and that the amount requested accurately reflects the contract adjustment for which the Purchaser believes the Government is liable.

(Purchaser's Name) _____

(Title) _____

(d) The Government shall pay the Purchaser interest.

(1) On the amount found due to the purchaser and unpaid on claims submitted under this clause;

(2) At the rates fixed by the Secretary of the Treasury;

(3) From the date the amount is due until the Government makes payment.

(e) The purchaser shall pay the Government interest:

(1) On the amount found due to the Government and unpaid on claims submitted under this clause;

(2) At the rates fixed by the Department of Energy for the payment of interest on past due accounts;

(3) From the date the amount is due until the purchaser makes payment.

(f) The decision of the Contracting Officer shall be final and conclusive and not subject to review by any forum, tribunal, or Government agency unless an appeal or action is timely commenced within the times specified by the Contract Disputes Act of 1978.

(g) The purchaser shall comply with any decision of the Contracting Officer and at the direction of the Contracting Officer shall proceed diligently with performance of this contract pending final resolution of any request for relief, claim, appeal, or action related to this contract.

(Sec. 644, Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95–91, 91 Stat. 599 (42 U.S.C. 7254))

PART 625—PRICE COMPETITIVE SALE OF STRATEGIC PETROLEUM RESERVE PETROLEUM

Sec.
625.1 Application and purpose.
625.2 Definitions.
625.3 Standard sales provisions.
625.4 Publication of the Standard Sales Provisions.
625.5 Failure to perform in accordance with SPR Contracts of Sale.

APPENDIX A TO PART 625—STANDARD SALES PROVISIONS

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 761; 42 U.S.C. 7101; 42 U.S.C. 6201.

SOURCE: 48 FR 56541, Dec. 21, 1983, unless otherwise noted.

§ 625.1 Application and purpose.

This part shall apply to all price competitive sales of SPR petroleum by DOE. This section provides the rules for developing standard contract terms and conditions and financial and performance responsibility measures; notifying potential purchasers of those terms, conditions and measures; choosing applicable terms, conditions and measures for each sale of SPR petroleum; and notifying potential purchasers of which terms, conditions and measures will be applicable to particular sales of SPR petroleum.

§ 625.2 Definitions.

(a) *DOE*. DOE is the Department of Energy established by Public Law 95–91 (42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*) and any component thereof including the SPR Office.

(b) *Notice of Sale*. The Notice of Sale is the document announcing the sale of SPR petroleum, the amount, type and location of the petroleum being sold, the delivery period and the procedures for submitting offers. The Notice of Sale will specify which contractual provisions and financial and performance responsibility measures are applicable to that particular sale of petroleum, and will provide other pertinent information.

(c) *Petroleum*. Petroleum means crude oil, residual fuel oil or any refined petroleum product (including any natural gas liquid and any natural gas liquid product) owned or contracted for by DOE and in storage in any permanent SPR facility, or temporarily stored in other storage facilities, or in transit to such facilities (including petroleum under contract but not yet delivered to a loading terminal).

(d) *Price Competitive Sale*. A price competitive sale of SPR petroleum is one in which contract awards are made to those responsive, responsible persons offering the highest prices; sales conducted pursuant to rules adopted under section 161(e) of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (EPCA), Public Law 94–163 (42 U.S.C. 6201 *et seq.*), are not price competitive sales.

(e) *Purchaser*. A purchaser is any person or entity (including a Government agency) which enters into a contract with DOE to purchase SPR petroleum.

(f) *SPR*. SPR is the Strategic Petroleum Reserve, that program of the Department of Energy established by title I, part B of EPCA.

(g) *Standard Sales Provisions*. The Standard Sales Provisions are a set of terms and conditions of sale, which may contain or describe financial and performance responsibility measures, for petroleum sold from the SPR under this part.

§ 625.3 Standard sales provisions.

(a) *Contents*. The Standards Sales Provisions shall contain contract clauses which may be applicable to price competitive sales of SPR petroleum, including terms and conditions of sale, and purchaser financial and performance responsibility measures, or descriptions thereof. At his discretion, the Secretary or his designee may

specify in a Notice of Sale which of such terms and conditions, or financial and performance responsibility measures, shall apply to a particular sale of SPR petroleum; and, he may specify any revisions in such terms, conditions and measures, and any additional terms, conditions and measures which shall be applicable to that sale, that are consistent with the SPR Drawdown Plan adopted on December 1, 1982.

(b) *Acceptance by offerors.* All offerors must, as part of their offers for SPR petroleum in response to a Notice of Sale, agree without exception to all contractual provisions and financial and performance responsibility measures which the Notice of Sale makes applicable to the particular sale.

(c) *Award of contracts.* No contract for the sale of SPR petroleum may be awarded to any offeror who has not unconditionally agreed to all contractual provisions and financial and performance responsibility measures which the Notice of Sale makes applicable to the particular sale.

(d) *Contract documents.* The terms and conditions which the Notice of Sale makes applicable to a particular sale may be incorporated into a contract for the sale of SPR petroleum by reference to the Notice of Sale.

§ 625.4 Publication of the Standard Sales Provisions.

(a) *Publication.* The Standard Sales Provisions shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER and in the Code of Federal Regulations as an appendix to this rule.

(b) *Revisions of the Standard Sales Provisions.* The Standard Sales Provisions shall be reviewed periodically and republished in the FEDERAL REGISTER, with any revisions.

(c) *Notification of applicable clauses.* The Notice of Sale will specify, by referencing the FEDERAL REGISTER and the Code of Federal Regulations in which the latest version of the Standard Sales Provisions was published, which contractual terms and conditions and contractor financial and performance responsibility measures contained or described therein are applicable to that particular sale.

§ 625.5 Failure to perform in accordance with SPR Contracts of Sale.

(a) *Ineligibility.* In addition to any remedies available to the Government under the Contract of Sale, in the event that a purchaser fails to perform in accordance with applicable SPR petroleum sale contractual provisions, and such failure is not excused by those provisions, the Headquarters Senior Procurement Official, at his discretion, may make such purchaser ineligible for future awards of SPR petroleum sales contracts.

(b) *Determination of ineligibility.* No purchaser shall be made ineligible for the award of any SPR sales contract prior to notice and opportunity to respond in accordance with the requirements of this subsection.

(1) Upon the determination that a purchaser is to be considered for ineligibility, the purchaser shall be sent by certified mail return receipt requested, the following:

(i) Notification that the Headquarters Senior Procurement Official is considering making the purchaser ineligible for future awards;

(ii) Identification of the SPR sales contract which the purchaser failed to comply with, along with a brief description of the events and circumstances relating to such failure;

(iii) Advice that the purchaser may submit in writing for consideration by the Headquarters Senior Procurement Official in determining whether or not to impose ineligibility on the purchaser, any information or argument in opposition to the ineligibility; and

(iv) Advice that such information or argument in opposition to the ineligibility must be submitted within a certain time in order to be considered by the Headquarters Senior Procurement Official, such time to be not less than 21 days.

(2) After elapse of the time period established under paragraph (b)(1) of this section for receipt of the purchaser's response, the Headquarters Senior Procurement Official, at his discretion, and after consideration of the purchaser's written response, if any, may make the purchaser ineligible for future awards of SPR petroleum sales contracts. Such ineligibility shall continue for the time period determined

by the Headquarters Senior Procurement Official, as appropriate under the circumstances.

(3) The purchaser shall be notified of the Headquarters Senior Procurement Official's decision.

(c) *Reconsideration.* Any purchaser who has been excluded from participating in any SPR sale under paragraph (a) may request that the Headquarters Senior Procurement Offical reconsider the purchaser's ineligibility. The Headquarters Senior Procurement Official, at his discretion, may reinstate any such purchaser to eligibility for future competitive sales.

APPENDIX A TO PART 625—STANDARD SALES PROVISIONS

Index

Section A—General Pre-Sale Information
A.1 List of abbreviations
A.2 Definitions
A.3 Standard Sales Provisions (SSPs)
A.4 Periodic revisions of the Standard Sales Provisions
A.5 Sales Notification List (SNL)
A.6 Publication of the Notice of Sale
A.7 Penalty for false statements in offers to buy SPR petroleum
Section B—Sales Solicitation Provisions
B.1 Requirements for a valid offer—caution to offerors
B.2 Price indexing
B.3 Certification of independent price determination
B.4 Requirements for vessels—caution to offerors
B.5 ''Superfund'' tax on SPR petroleum—caution to offerors
B.6 Export limitations and licensing—caution to offerors
B.7 State of Hawaii access to SPR crude oil
B.8 Issuance of the Notice of Sale
B.9 Submission of offers and modification of previously submitted offers
B.10 Acknowledgment of amendments to a Notice of Sale
B.11 Late offers, modifications of offers, and withdrawal of offers
B.12 Offer guarantee
B.13 Explanation requests from offerors
B.14 Currency for offers
B.15 Language of offers and contracts
B.16 Proprietary data
B.17 SPR crude oil streams and delivery points
B.18 Notice of Sale line item schedule—petroleum quantity, quality, and delivery method
B.19 Line item information to be provided in the offer
B.20 Mistake in offer
B.21 Evaluation of offers
B.22 Procedures for evaluation of offers
B.23 Financial statements and other information
B.24 Resolicitation procedures on unsold petroleum
B.25 Offeror's certification of acceptance
B.26 Notification of Apparently Successful Offeror
B.27 Contract documents
B.28 [Reserved]
B.29 Procedures for selling to other U.S. Government agencies
Section C—Sales Contract Provisions
C.1 Delivery of SPR petroleum
C.2 Compliance with the ''Jones Act'' and the U.S. export control laws
C.3 [Reserved]
C.4 Environmental compliance
C.5 Delivery and transportation scheduling
C.6 Contract modification—alternate delivery line items
C.7 Application procedures for ''Jones Act'' and Construction Differential Subsidy waivers
C.8 Vessel loading procedures
C.9 Vessel laytime and demurrage
C.10 Vessel loading expedition options
C.11 Purchaser liability for excessive berth time
C.12 Pipeline delivery procedures
C.13 Title and risk of loss
C.14 Acceptance of crude oil
C.15 Delivery acceptance and verification
C.16 Price adjustments for quality differentials
C.17 Determination of quality
C.18 Determination of quantity
C.19 Delivery documentation
C.20 Contract amounts
C.21 Payment and Performance Letter of Credit
C.22 Billing and payment
C.23 Method of payments
C.24 Interest
C.25 Termination
C.26 Other Government remedies
C.27 Liquidated damages
C.28 Failure to perform under SPR contracts
C.29 Government options in case of impossibility of performance
C.30 Limitation of Government liability
C.31 Notices
C.32 Disputes
C.33 Assignment
C.34 Order of precedence
C.35 Gratuities

Exhibits:

A—SPR Crude Oil Comprehensive Analysis
B—SPR Delivery Point Data
C—Offer Standby Letter of Credit
D—Payment and Performance Letter of Credit

E—Strategic Petroleum Reserve Crude Oil Delivery Report—SPRPMO–F–6110.2–14b 1/87 REV.8/91

SECTION A—GENERAL PRE-SALE INFORMATION

A.1 List of Abbreviations

(a) ASO: Apparently Successful Offeror
(b) DLI: Delivery Line Item
(c) DOE: U.S. Department of Energy
(d) MLI: Master Line Item
(e) NA: Notice of Acceptance
(f) NS: Notice of Sale
(g) SNL: Sales Notification List
(h) SSPs: Standard Sales Provisions
(i) SPR: Strategic Petroleum Reserve
(j) SPRCODR: SPR Crude Oil Delivery Report (*Exhibit E*)
(k) SPR/PMO: Strategic Petroleum Reserve Project Management Office

A.2 Definitions

Affiliate. The term ''affiliate'' means associated business concerns or individuals if, directly or indirectly, (1) either one controls or can control the other, or (2) a third party controls or can control both.

Business Day. The term ''business day'' means any day except Saturday, Sunday or a U.S. Government holiday.

Contract. The term ''contract'' means the contract under which DOE sells SPR petroleum. It is composed of the NS, the NA, the successful offer, and the SSPs incorporated by reference.

Contracting Officer. The term ''Contracting Officer'' means the person executing sales contracts on behalf of the Government, and any other Government employee properly designated as Contracting Officer. The term includes the authorized representative of a Contracting Officer acting within the limits of his or her authority.

Electronic signature or signature means a method of signing an electronic message that—

(1) Identifies and authenticates a particular person as the source of the electronic message; and

(2) Indicates such person's approval of the information contained in the electronic message.

Government. The term ''Government'', unless otherwise indicated in the text, means the United States Government.

Head of the Contracting Activity. The term ''Head of the Contracting Activity'' means Project Manager, Strategic Petroleum Reserve Project Management Office.

Notice of Acceptance (NA). The term ''Notice of Acceptance'' means the document that is sent by DOE to accept the purchaser's offer to create a contract.

Notification of Apparently Successful Offeror (ASO). The term ''notification of apparently successful offeror'' means the notice, written or oral, by the Contracting Officer to an offeror that it will be awarded a contract if it is determined to be responsible.

Notice of Sale (NS). The term ''Notice of Sale'' means the document announcing the sale of SPR petroleum, the amount, characteristics and location of the petroleum being sold, the delivery period and the procedures for submitting offers. The NS will specify what contractual provisions and financial and performance responsibility measures are applicable to that particular sale of petroleum and provide other pertinent information.

Offeror. The term ''offeror'' means any person or entity (including a government agency) who submits an offer in response to a NS.

Petroleum. The term ''petroleum'' means crude oil, residual fuel oil, or any refined product (including any natural gas liquid, and any natural gas liquid product) owned or contracted for by DOE and in storage in any permanent SPR facility, or temporarily stored in other storage facilities.

Project Management Office (SPR/PMO). The term ''Project Management Office'' means the DOE personnel and DOE contractors located in Louisiana and Texas responsible for the operation of the SPR.

Purchaser. The term ''purchaser'' means any person or entity (including a government agency) who enters into a contract with DOE to purchase SPR petroleum.

Standard Sales Provisions (SSPs). The term ''Standard Sales Provisions'' means this set of terms and conditions of sale applicable to price competitive sales of SPR petroleum. These SSPs constitute the ''standard sales agreement'' referenced in the Strategic Petroleum Reserve ''Drawdown'' (Distribution) Plan, Amendment No. 4 (December 1, 1982, DOE/EP 0073) to the SPR Plan.

Strategic Petroleum Reserve (SPR). The term ''Strategic Petroleum Reserve'' means that DOE program established by Title I, Part B, of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6201, as amended.

Vessel. The term ''vessel'' means a tankship, an integrated tug-barge (ITB) system, a self-propelled barge, or other barge.

A.3 Standard Sales Provisions (SSPs)

(a) These SSPs contain pre-sale information, sales solicitation provisions, and sales contract clauses setting forth terms and conditions of sale, including purchaser financial and performance responsibility measures, or descriptions thereof, which may be applicable to price competitive sales of petroleum from the SPR in accordance with the SPR Sales Rule, 10 CFR Part 625. The NS will specify which of these provisions shall apply to a particular sale of such petroleum, and it may specify any revisions therein and any additional provisions which shall be applicable to that sale.

(b) All offerors must, as part of their offers for SPR petroleum in response to a NS, agree

without exception to all sales provisions of that NS.

A.4 Periodic Revisions of the Standard Sales Provisions

DOE will review the SSPs periodically and republish them in the FEDERAL REGISTER, with any revisions. When an NS is issued, it will cite the FEDERAL REGISTER and the Code of Federal Regulations (if any) in which the latest version of the SSPs was published. Offerors are cautioned that the Code of Federal Regulations may not contain the latest version of the SSPs published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. Interested persons may view the current SSPs at *http://www.spr.doe.gov/reports/SSPs/ssp.htm.*

A.5 Sales Notification List (SNL)

(a) The SPR/PMO will maintain a Sales Notification List (SNL) of those potential offerors who wish to receive notification of an NS whenever one is issued. In order to assure that prospective offerors will receive such notification in a timely fashion, all potential offerors are encouraged to register on the SNL as soon as possible.

(b) Any firm or individual may complete the SNL on-line registration process at *http://www.spr.doe.gov.*

A.6 Publication of the Notice of Sale

(a) Notification of a NS will be sent via e-mail to those who have registered on the SNL referenced in Provision A.5.

(b) The NS will be posted on the SPR web page *http://www.spr.doe.gov* for public viewing. In addition, the issuance of the NS will be publicized on the Fossil Energy web page *http://www.fe.doe.gov/programs/reserves/.*

(c) A DOE press release, which will include the salient features of the NS, will be made available to all news agencies.

A.7 Penalty for False Statements in Offers To Buy SPR Petroleum

(a) Making false statements in an offer to buy SPR petroleum may expose an offeror to a penalty under the False Statements Act, 18 U.S.C. 1001, which provides:

> Whoever, in any matter within the jurisdiction of any department or agency of the United States knowingly and willfully falsifies, conceals or covers up by any trick, scheme, or device a material fact, or makes any false, fictitious or fraudulent statements or representations, or makes or uses any false writing or document knowing the same to contain any false, fictitious or fraudulent statement or entry, shall be fined under this title or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

(b) Under 18 U.S.C. 3571, the maximum fine to which an individual or organization may be sentenced for violations of 18 U.S.C. (including Section 1001) is set at $250,000 and $500,000 respectively, unless there is a greater amount specified in the statute setting out the offense, or the violation is subject to special factors set out in Section 3571. The United States Sentencing Guidelines also apply to violations of Section 1001, and offenders may be subject to a range of fines under the guidelines up to and including the maximum amounts permitted by law.

SECTION B—SALES SOLICITATION PROVISIONS

B.1 Requirements for a Valid Offer—Caution to Offerors

(a) Offerors are advised that the submission of an offer electronically is required. Submission of an offer via the SPR's specified on-line system will constitute a legal, binding offer. The use of the combination of User Name and password to login and submit offers constitutes an electronic signature.

(b) A valid offer to purchase SPR petroleum must meet the following conditions:

(1) The offer must be submitted via the SPR's on-line system as designated in the NS;

(2) The offer must be received no later than the date and time set for receipt of offers;

(3) The offer guarantee (see Provision B.12) must be received no later than the time set for the receipt of offers;

(4) Any amendments to the NS that explicitly require acknowledgment of receipt must be properly acknowledged as specified in the NS; and

(5) Submission of an on-line offer in accordance with this provision constitutes agreement without exception to all provisions of the SSPs that the NS makes applicable to a particular sale, as well as to all provisions in the NS.

(c) At the discretion of the Contracting Officer, offers may be received by alternative means if circumstances preclude use of the specified on-line system.

B.2 Price Indexing

The Government, at its discretion, may make use of a price indexing mechanism to effect contract price adjustments based on petroleum market conditions, e.g., crude oil market price changes between the times of offer price submissions and physical deliveries. The NS will set forth the provisions applicable to any such mechanism.

B.3 Certification of Independent Price Determination

(a) The offeror certifies that:

(1) The prices in this offer have been arrived at independently, without, for the purposes of restricting competition, any consultation, communication, or agreement with any other offeror or competitor relating to:

(i) Those prices;

(ii) The intention to submit an offer; or

(iii) The methods or factors used to calculate the prices offered.

(2) The prices in this offer have not been and will not be knowingly disclosed by the offeror, directly or indirectly, to any other offeror or to any competitor before the time set for receipt of offers, unless otherwise required by law; and

(3) No attempt has been made or will be made by the offeror to induce any other concern to submit or not to submit an offer for the purpose of restricting competition.

(b) Each submission of an offer is considered to be a certification by the offeror that the offeror:

(1) Is the person within the offeror's organization responsible for determining the prices being offered, and that the offeror has not participated, and will not participate, in any action contrary to paragraphs (a)(1) through (a)(3) of this provision; or

(2)(i) Has been authorized in writing to act as agent for the persons responsible for such decision in certifying that such persons have not participated, and will not participate, in any action contrary to (a)(1) through (a)(3) of this provision;

(ii) As their agent does hereby so certify; and

(iii) As their agent has not participated, and will not participate, in any action contrary to paragraphs (a)(1) through (a)(3) of this provision.

B.4 Requirements for Vessels—Caution to Offerors

(a) The ''Jones Act'', 46 U.S.C. 883, prohibits the transportation of any merchandise, including SPR petroleum, by water or land and water, on penalty of forfeiture thereof, between points within the United States (including Puerto Rico, but excluding the Virgin Islands) in vessels other than vessels built in and documented under laws of the United States, and owned by United States citizens, unless the prohibition has been waived by the Secretary of Homeland Security. Further, certain U.S.-flag vessels built with Construction Differential Subsidies (CDS) are precluded by Section 506 of the Merchant Marine Act of 1936 (46 U.S.C. 1156) from participating in U.S. coastwise trade, unless such prohibition has been waived by the Secretary of Transportation, the waiver being limited to a maximum of 6 months in any given year. CDS vessels may also receive Operating Differential Subsidies, requiring separate permission from the Secretary of Transportation for domestic operation, under Section 805(a) of the same statute. The NS will advise offerors of any general waivers allowing use of non-coastwise qualified vessels or vessels built with Construction Differential Subsidies for a particular sale of SPR petroleum. If there is no general waiver, purchasers may request waivers in accordance with Provision C.7, but remain obligated to complete performance under this contract regardless of the outcome of that waiver process.

(b) The Department of Homeland Security's regulations concerning Vessels Carrying Oil, Noxious Liquid Substances, Garbage, Municipal or Commercial Waste, and Ballast Water (33 CFR part 151) and Reception Facilities For Oil, Noxious Liquid Substances, and Garbage (33 CFR part 158) implement the requirements of the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the 1978 Protocol relating thereto (MARPOL 73/78). These regulations prohibit any ocean-going tankship, required to retain oil or oily mixtures on-board while at sea, from entering any port or terminal unless the port or terminal has a valid Certificate of Adequacy as to its oil reception capabilities. Marine terminals in support of the SPR (*see Exhibit B,* SPR Delivery Point Data) have Certificates of Adequacy; however, they may not have reception facilities for oily ballast, vessel sludge or oily bilge water wastes. Accordingly, tankships will be required to make arrangements for and be responsible for all costs associated with appropriate disposal of such ballast, vessel sludge or oily bilge water waste or permission to load may be denied.

B.5 ''Superfund'' Tax on SPR Petroleum—Caution to Offerors

(a) Sections 4611 and 4612 of the Internal Revenue Code, provide for the imposition of taxes on domestic and imported petroleum to support the Hazardous Substance Response Fund (the ''Superfund'') and the Oil Spill Liability Trust Fund (''Trust Fund''). These taxes are not currently being collected.

(b) DOE has already paid the Superfund and Trust Fund taxes on some of the oil imported and stored in the SPR. However, no Superfund or Trust Fund tax has been paid on any domestic oil stored in the SPR or on imported oil stored prior to the imposition of these taxes. Because domestic and imported crude oil for which no Superfund and Trust Fund taxes have been paid and crude oils for which these taxes have been paid have been commingled in the SPR, the Government retains records of the tax status of all SPR petroleum in storage. The NS will advise purchasers in the event these taxes are reimposed.

B.6 Export Limitations and Licensing—Caution to Offerors

Offerors for SPR petroleum are put on notice that export of SPR crude oil is subject to U.S. export control laws implemented by the Department of Commerce Short Supply Controls, codified at 15 CFR part 754, §754.2,

Crude oil. Subsections of §754.2 provide for the approval of applications to export crude oil from the SPR in connection with refining or exchange of SPR oil. Specifically, these subsections are §§754.2(b)(iii), and 754.2(f), Refining or exchange of Strategic Petroleum Reserve Oil. These provisions implement the authority given to the President by 42 U.S.C. 6241(i) to permit the export of oil in the SPR for the purpose of obtaining refined petroleum for the U.S. market. In addition, the President could waive the requirement for an export license altogether. The NS will advise of any waivers under this Presidential authority.

B.7 State of Hawaii Access to SPR crude oil

Potential offerors are advised that pursuant to subsection 161 (j) of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (42 U.S.C. 6241 (j)), the State of Hawaii, or a State-designated eligible entity authorized to act on the State's behalf, may submit a ''binding offer'' for the purchase of SPR petroleum. By submission of a binding offer, the State of Hawaii is entitled to purchase up to three percent of the quantity of SPR petroleum offered for sale or one-twelfth of the state's annual import quantity barrels. The price will be equal to the volumetrically weighted average price of the successful competitive offers for the applicable Master Line Item. Furthermore, at the request of the Hawaii or its designated eligible entity, the petroleum purchased will have first preference in its scheduling for delivery. The State of Hawaii may also enter into exchange or processing agreements to permit delivery of the purchased petroleum to other locations, if a petroleum product of similar value or quantity is delivered to the State.

B.8 Issuance of the Notice of Sale

In the event petroleum is sold from the SPR, DOE will issue a NS containing all the pertinent information necessary for the offeror to prepare a priced offer. A NS may be issued with a week or less allowed for the receipt of offers. Offerors are expected to examine the complete NS document, and to become familiar with the SSPs cited therein. Failure to do so will be at the offeror's risk.

B.9 Submission of Offers and Modification of Previously Submitted Offers

(a) Unless otherwise provided in the NS, offers must be submitted via SPR's on-line system and received no later than the date and time set for offer receipt as specified in the NS.

(b) Unless otherwise provided in the NS, offers may be modified or withdrawn on-line, provided that the modification or withdrawal is accomplished prior to the date and time specified for receipt of offers.

(c) An offeror may withdraw an offer by deleting the submission in accordance with the instructions provided for the SPR's on-line system.

(d) An offeror may modify a previously submitted offer by withdrawing the original offer (see (c) above) and resubmitting the replacement offer in its entirety no later than the date and time set for offer receipt.

(e) DOE will not release to the general public the identities of the offerors, or their offer quantities and prices, until the Apparently Successful Offerors have been determined. DOE will inform simultaneously all offerors and other interested parties of the successful and unsuccessful offerors and their offer data by means of a public ''offer posting.'' The offer posting will normally occur within a week of receipt of offers and will provide all interested parties access to offer data as well as any DOE changes in the petroleum quantities or quality to be sold. DOE will announce the date, time, and location of the offer posting as soon as practicable.

B.10 Acknowledgment of Amendments to a Notice of Sale

When an amendment to a NS requires acknowledgment of issuance, it must be acknowledged by an offeror in accordance with instructions provided in the NS. Such acknowledgment must be received as part of a timely offer submission.

B.11 Late Offers, Modifications of Offers, and Withdrawal of Offers

(a) The date/time stamp affixed by the SPR's on-line system will be the sole determinant of timely offer receipt. Any offer received after the date and time specified in the NS for receipt will be considered only if

(1) it is received before award is made; and

(2) the Contracting Officer determines that the late receipt was due solely to a failure of the Government's electronic receiving equipment, or

(3) it is the only offer received.

(b) Any modification or withdrawal of an offer is subject to the same conditions as in (a) of this provision.

(c) Notwithstanding (a) and (b) of this provision, a late modification of an otherwise successful offer that makes its terms more favorable to the Government will be considered at any time it is received and may be accepted.

B.12 Offer Guarantee

(a) Each offeror must submit an acceptable offer guarantee for each offer submitted. Each offer guarantee must be received at the place specified in the NS no later than the date and time set for receipt of offers.

(b) An offeror's failure to submit a timely, acceptable guarantee will result in rejection

of its offer. A properly executed copy of the offer guarantee(s) may be faxed to the telephone numbers provided in the NS, with the original sent to the Contracting Officer as provided in paragraph (d) of this provision.

(c) The amount of each offer guarantee is $10 million or 5 percent of the maximum potential contract amount, whichever is less. The maximum potential contract amount is the sum of the products determined by multiplying the offer's maximum purchase quantity for each master line item, times the highest offer prices that the offeror would have to pay for that master line item if the offer were to be successful. The SPR on-line system will perform this calculation automatically as offer information is entered.

(d) For each offer, an offeror must submit an irrevocable standby letter of credit from a U.S. depository institution containing the substantive provisions set out in *Exhibit C*, Offer Standby Letter of Credit, all letter of credit costs to be borne by the offeror. If the letter of credit contains any provisions at variance with *Exhibit C* or fails to include any provisions contained in *Exhibit C*, nonconforming provisions must be deleted and missing substantive provisions must be added or the letter of credit will not be accepted. The depository institution must be located in and authorized to do business in any state of the United States or the District of Columbia, and authorized to issue letters of credit by the banking laws of the United States or any state of the United States or the District of Columbia. The depository institution must be an account holder with the Federal Reserve Banking system and a participant (on line) in the Fed's Fedwire Deposit System Network funds transfer system. The original of the letter of credit must be sent to the Contracting Officer at the address specified in the NS. The issuing bank must provide documentation indicating that the person signing the letter of credit is authorized to do so, in the form of corporate minutes, the Authorized Signature List, or the General Resolution of Signature Authority.

(e) The envelope containing the original letter of credit shall clearly be marked ''RE: NS # _____. OFFER STANDBY LETTER OF CREDIT (Name of Company). Offerors are cautioned that if they provide more than one Offer Standby Letter of Credit for multiple offers and, due to the absence of clear information from the offeror, the Government is unable to identify which letter of credit applies to which offer, the Contracting Officer in his sole discretion may assign the letters of credit to specific offers.

(f) The offeror shall be liable for any amount lost by DOE due to the difference between the offer and the resale price, and for any additional resale costs incurred by DOE in the event that the offeror:

(1) withdraws its offer within 10 days following the time set for receipt of offers;

(2) withdraws its offer after having agreed to extend its acceptance period; or

(3) having received a notification of ASO, fails to furnish an acceptable payment and performance letter of credit (see Provision C.21) within the time limit specified by the Contracting Officer.

The offer guarantee shall be used toward offsetting such price difference or additional resale costs. Use of the offer guarantee for such recovery shall not preclude recovery by DOE of damages in excess of the amount of the offer guarantee caused by such failure of the offeror.

(g) Letters of credit furnished as offer guarantees must be valid for at least 60 calendar days after the date set for the receipt of offers.

(h) Offer guarantee letters of credit may be returned upon request to an unsuccessful offeror 5 business days after expiration of the offeror's acceptance period, and, except as provided in (i) of this provision, to a successful offeror upon receipt of a satisfactory payment and performance letter of credit.

(i) If an offeror defaults on its offer, DOE will hold the offer guarantee so that damages can be assessed against it.

B.13 Explanation Requests From Offerors

Offerors may request explanations regarding meaning or interpretation of the NS from the individual at the telephone number and/or e-mail address indicated in the NS. On complex and/or significant questions, DOE reserves the right to have the offeror put the question in writing; explanation or instructions regarding these questions will be given as an amendment to the NS.

B.14 Currency for Offers

Prices shall be stated and invoices shall be paid in U.S. dollars.

B.15 Language of Offers and Contracts

All offers in response to the NS and all modifications of offers shall be in English. All correspondence between offerors or purchasers and DOE shall be in English.

B.16 Proprietary Data

Offer quantities and prices are not considered proprietary information. If any other information submitted in connection with a sale is considered proprietary, that information shall be identified by e-mail to the address indicated in the NS, and an explanation provided as to the reason such data should be considered proprietary. Any final decision as to whether the material so identified is proprietary will be made by DOE. DOE's Freedom of Information Act regulations governing the release of proprietary data shall apply.

B.17 SPR Crude Oil Streams and Delivery Points

(a) The geographical locations of the terminals, pipelines, and docks interconnected with permanent SPR storage locations, the SPR crude oil streams available at each location and the delivery points for those streams are as follows, (*See* also *Exhibit A*, SPR Crude Oil Comprehensive Analysis, and *Exhibit B*, SPR Delivery Point Data):

Geographical location	Delivery points	Crude oil stream
Freeport, Texas	Seaway Terminal or Seaway Pipeline Jones Creek.	SPR Bryan Mound Sweet, SPR Bryan Mound Sour
Texas City, Texas	Seaway Terminal or Local Pipelines	SPR Bryan Mound Sweet, SPR Bryan Mound Sour
Nederland, Texas	Sunoco Logistics Partners, Nederland Terminal.	SPR West Hackberry Sweet, SPR West Hackberry Sour, SPR Big Hill Sweet, SPR Big Hill Sour
Lake Charles, Louisiana	Shell 22-Inch/DOE Lake Charles Pipeline Connection.	SPR West Hackberry Sweet, SPR West Hackberry Sour
St. James, Louisiana	Shell Sugarland Terminal connected to LOCAP and Capline.	SPR Bayou Choctaw Sweet, SPR Bayou Choctaw Sour
Beaumont, Texas	Unocal Terminal	SPR Big Hill Sweet, SPR Big Hill Sour
Winnie, Texas	Shell 20-Inch Meter Station	SPR Big Hill Sweet, SPR Big Hill Sour

(b) The NS may change delivery points and it may also include additional crude oils, terminals, temporary storage facilities or systems utilized in connection with petroleum in transit to the SPR.

(c) The NS may contain additional information supplementing *Exhibit B*, SPR Delivery Point Data.

B.18 Notice of Sale Line Item Schedule—Petroleum Quantity, Quality, and Delivery Method

(a) Unless the NS provides otherwise, the possible master line items (MLI) that may be offered are as identified in Provision B.17. Currently, there are eight MLIs, one for each of the eight crude oil streams that the SPR has in storage. The NS may not offer all the possible MLIs.

(b) Each MLI contains multiple delivery line items (DLIs), each of which specifies an available delivery method and the nominal delivery period. Offerors are cautioned that the NS may alter the period of time covered by each DLI. The NS will specify which DLIs are offered for each MLI.

(1) DLI-A covers petroleum to be transported by pipeline, either common carrier or local. The nominal delivery period is one month.

(2) DLI-B covers petroleum to be transported by tankships. The nominal delivery period is one month.

(3) DLI-E covers petroleum to be transported by barges (Note: These DLIs are usually only applicable to deliveries of West Hackberry and Big Hill Sweet and Sour crude oil streams from Sun Docks). The nominal delivery period is one month.

(4) Where the storage site is connected to more than one terminal or pipeline, additional DLIs will be offered. The additional DLIs will include DLI-H, covering petroleum to be transported by pipeline over the period of a month; DLI-I, covering tankships, etc. The Notice of Sale will specify any additional DLIs which may be applicable.

(c) The NS will state the total estimated number of barrels to be sold on each MLI. An offeror may offer to buy all or part of the petroleum offered on an MLI. In making awards, the Contracting Officer shall attempt to achieve award of the exact quantities offered by the NS, but may sell a quantity of petroleum in excess of the quantity offered for sale on a particular MLI in order to match the DLI offers received. In addition, the Contracting Officer may reduce the MLI quantity available for award by any amount and reject otherwise acceptable offers, if he determines, in his sole discretion after consideration of the offers received on all of the MLIs, that award of those quantities is not in the best interest of the Government because the prices offered for them are not reasonable, or that, in light of market conditions after offers are received, a lesser quantity than that offered should be sold.

(d) The NS will specify a minimum contract quantity for each DLI. To be responsive, an offer on a DLI must be for at least that quantity.

(e) The NS will specify the maximum quantity that could be sold on each of the DLIs. The maximum quantity is not an indication of the amount of petroleum that, in fact, will be sold on that DLI. Rather, it represents DOE's best estimate of the maximum amount of the particular SPR crude oil stream that can be moved by that transportation system over the delivery period. The total DOE estimated DLI maximums may exceed the total number of barrels to be sold on that MLI, as the NS DLI estimates represent estimated transportation capacity, not the amount of petroleum offered for sale.

(f) The NS will not specify what portion of the petroleum that DOE offers on a MLI will, in fact, be sold on any given DLI. Rather, the highest priced offers received on the MLI will determine the DLIs against which the offered petroleum is sold.

(g) DOE will not sell petroleum on a DLI in excess of the DLI maximum; however, DOE reserves the right to revise its estimates at any time and to award or modify contracts in accordance with its revised estimates. Offerors are cautioned that: DOE cannot guarantee that such transportation capacity is available; offerors should undertake their own analyses of available transportation capacity; and each purchaser is wholly responsible for arranging all transportation other than terminal arrangements at the terminals listed in Provision B.17, which shall be made in accordance with Provision C.5. A purchaser against one DLI cannot change a transportation mode without prior written permission from DOE, although such permission will be given whenever possible, in accordance with Provision C.6.

(h) *Exhibit A*, SPR Crude Oil Comprehensive Analysis, contains nominal characteristics for each SPR crude oil stream. Prospective offerors are cautioned that these data may change with SPR inventory changes. The NS will provide, to the maximum extent practicable, the latest data on each stream offered.

B.19 Line Item Information To Be Provided in the Offer

(a) Each offeror, if determined to be an ASO on a DLI, agrees to enter into a contract under the terms of its offer for the purchase of petroleum in the offer and to take delivery of that petroleum (plus or minus 10 percent as provided for in Provision C.20) in accordance with the terms of that contract.

(b) An offeror may submit an offer for any or all the MLIs offered by the NS. However, offerors are cautioned that alternate offers on different MLIs are not permitted. For example, an offeror may offer to purchase 1,000,000 barrels of SPR West Hackberry Sweet and 1,000,000 barrels of SPR West Hackberry Sour, but may not offer to purchase, in the alternative, either 1,000,000 barrels of sweet or 1,000,000 barrels of sour.

(c) An offeror may submit multiple offers. However, separate on-line offers and offer guarantees must be submitted and each offer will be evaluated on an individual basis.

(d) The following information will be provided to DOE by the offeror on the SPR online offer form:

(1) Maximum MLI Quantity. The offer shall state the maximum quantity of each crude oil stream that the offeror is willing to buy.

(2) Desired Qty. The offer shall state the number of barrels that the offeror will accept on each DLI, *i.e.*, by the delivery mode and during the delivery period specified. The quantity stated on a single DLI shall not exceed the Maximum MLI Quantity for the MLI. The offeror shall designate a quantity on at least one DLI for the MLI, but may designate quantities on more than one DLI. If the offeror is willing to accept alternate DLIs, the total of its desired DLI quantities would exceed its Maximum MLI quantity; otherwise, the total of its desired DLI quantities should equal its Maximum MLI quantity.

(3) Price. The offer shall state the price per barrel for each DLI for which the offeror has designated a Desired Qty. Where offers have indicated quantities on more than one DLI with a different price on each, DOE will award the highest priced DLI first. If the offeror has the same price for two or more DLIs, it may indicate its first choice, second choice, etc., for award of those items; if the offeror does not indicate a preference, or indicates the same preference for more than one DLI, DOE may select the DLIs to be awarded at its discretion. Prices may be stated in hundredths of a cent ($0.0001). DOE shall drop from the offer and not consider any numbers of less than one one-hundredth of a cent.

(4) Accept Minimum Quantity. The offeror must choose whether to accept only the Desired Qty (by deselecting the Accept Min Qty checkbox to indicate an unwillingness to accept less than the Desired Qty for that DLI) or, in the alternative, to accept any quantity awarded between the offer's Desired Qty and the minimum contract quantity for the DLI (by leaving the Accept Min Qty checkbox selected). However, DOE will award less than the Desired Qty only if the quantity available to be awarded is less than the Desired Qty.

B.20 Mistake in Offer

(a) After receiving offers, the Contracting Officer shall examine all offers for mistakes. If the Contracting Officer discovers any quantity discrepancies, he may obtain from the offeror oral or written verification of the offer actually intended, but in any event, he shall proceed with offer evaluation applying the following procedures:

(1) In case of conflict between the maximum MLI quantity and the stated DLI quantities (for example, if a single stated DLI quantity exceeds the corresponding maximum MLI quantity), the lesser quantity will govern in the evaluation of the offer.

(2) In the event that the offer fails to specify a maximum MLI quantity, the offer will be evaluated as though the largest stated DLI quantity is the offer's maximum MLI quantity.

(b) In cases where the Contracting Officer has reason to believe a mistake not covered by the procedures set forth in paragraph (a) may have been made, he shall request from the offeror a verification of the offer, calling

attention to the suspected mistake. The Contracting Officer may telephone the offeror and confirm the request by electronic means. The Contracting Officer may set a limit of as little as 6 hours for telephone response, with any required written documentation to be received within 2 business days. If no response is received, the Contracting Officer may determine that no error exists and proceed with offer evaluation.

(c) The Head of the Contracting Activity will make administrative determinations described in paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this provision if an offeror alleges a mistake after receipt of offers and before award.

(1) The Head of the Contracting Activity may refuse to permit the offeror to withdraw an offer, but permit correction of the offer if clear and convincing evidence establishes both the existence of a mistake and the offer actually intended. However, if such correction would result in displacing one or more higher acceptable offers, the Head of the Contracting Activity shall not so determine unless the existence of the mistake and the offer actually intended are ascertainable substantially from the NS and offer itself.

(2) The Head of the Contracting Activity may determine that an offeror shall be permitted to withdraw an offer in whole, or in part if only part of the offer is affected, without penalty under the offer guarantee, where the offeror requests permission to do so and clear and convincing evidence establishes the existence of a mistake, but not the offer actually intended.

(d) In all cases where the offeror is allowed to make verbal corrections to the original offer, confirmation of these corrections must be received in writing within the time set by the Contracting Officer or the original offer will stand as submitted.

B.21 Evaluation of Offers

(a) The Contracting Officer will be the determining official as to whether an offer is responsive to the SSPs and the NS. DOE reserves the right to reject any or all offers and to waive minor informalities or irregularities in offers received.

(b) A minor informality or irregularity in an offer is an inconsequential defect the waiver or correction of which would not be prejudicial to other offerors. Such a defect or variation from the strict requirements of the NS is inconsequential when its significance as to price, quantity, quality or delivery is negligible.

B.22 Procedures for Evaluation of Offers

(a) Award on each DLI will be made to the responsible offerors that submit the highest priced offers responsive to the SSPs and the NS and that have provided the required payment and performance guarantee as required by Provision C.21.

(b) DOE will array all offers on an MLI from highest price to lowest price for award evaluation regardless of DLI. However, DOE will award against the DLIs and will not award a greater quantity on a DLI than DOE's estimate (which is subject to change at any time) of the maximum quantity that can be moved by the delivery method. Selection of the apparently successful offers involves the following steps:

(1) Any offers below the minimum acceptable price, if any minimum price has been established for the sale, will be rejected as nonresponsive.

(2) All offers on each MLI will be arrayed from highest price to lowest price.

(3) (i) Offers may be rejected if they are below 95 percent of the sales price, as estimated by the Government, of comparable crude oil being sold in the same area at the same time. In making the sales price estimate, the Government will consider both the ''Base Reference Price'' as defined in the Notice of Sale and other available information bearing on the issue.

(ii) For price offers at or above 95 percent of the sales price estimate, the Contracting Officer will determine price reasonableness, considering offers received and prevailing market conditions.

(iii) Price offers below 95 percent may be accepted only if the Contracting Officer determines such action is necessary to achieve SPR crude oil supply objectives and such offered prices are reasonable.

(4) The highest priced offers will be reviewed for responsiveness to the NS.

(5) In the event the highest priced offer does not take all the petroleum available on the MLI, sequentially, the next highest priced offer will be selected until all of the petroleum offered on the MLI is awarded or there are no more acceptable offers. In the event that acceptance of an offer against an MLI or a DLI would result in the sale of more petroleum on an MLI than DOE has offered or the sale of more petroleum on a DLI than DOE estimates can be delivered by the specified delivery method, DOE will not award the full amount of the offer, but rather the remaining MLI quantity or DLI capacity, provided such portion exceeds DOE's minimum contract quantity. In the event that the quantity remaining is less than the offeror is willing to accept, but more than DOE's minimum contract quantity, the Contracting Officer shall proceed to the next highest priced offer.

(6) In the event of tied offers and an insufficient remaining quantity available on the MLI or insufficient remaining capacity on the DLI to fully award all tied offers, the Contracting Officer shall apply an objective random methodology for allocating the remaining MLI quantity or DLI capacity among the tied offers, taking into consideration the quantity the offeror is willing to

accept as indicated in its offer. When making this allocation, the Contracting Officer in his sole discretion may do one or more of the following:

(i) Make an additional quantity or capacity available;

(ii) Contact an offeror to determine whether alternative delivery arrangements can be made; or

(iii) Not award all or part of the remaining quantity of petroleum.

(7) The Contracting Officer may reduce the MLI quantity available for award by any amount and reject otherwise acceptable offers if in his sole discretion he determines, after consideration of the offers received on all of the MLIs, that award of those quantities is not in the best interest of the Government because the prices offered for them are not reasonable; or if the Government determines, in light of market conditions after offers are received, to sell less than the overall quantity of SPR petroleum offered for sale.

(8) Determinations of ASO responsibility will be made by the Contracting Officer before each award. All ASOs will be notified and advised to provide to the Contracting Officer within five business days a letter of credit (*See Exhibit D*, Payment and Performance Letter of Credit) as specified in Provision C.21, all letter of credit costs to be borne by the purchaser.

(9) Compliance with required payment and performance guarantees will effectively assure a finding of responsibility of offerors, except where:

(i) An offeror is on either DOE's or the Federal Government's list of debarred, ineligible and suspended bidders; or

(ii) Evidence, with respect to an offeror, comes to the attention of the Contracting Officer of conduct or activity that represents a violation of law or regulation (including an Executive Order); or

(iii) Evidence is brought to the attention of the Contracting Officer of past activity or conduct of an offeror that shows a lack of integrity (including actions inimical to the welfare of the United States) or willingness to perform, so as to substantially diminish the Contracting Officer's confidence in the offeror's performance under the proposed contract.

B.23 Financial Statements and Other Information

(a) As indicated in Provision B.22(b)(9), compliance with the required payment and performance guarantee will in most instances effectively assure a finding of responsibility. Therefore, DOE does not intend to ask for financial information from all offerors. However, after receipt of offers, but prior to making award, DOE reserves the right to ask for the audited financial statements for an offeror's most recent fiscal year and unaudited financial statements for any subsequent quarters. These financial statements must include a balance sheet and profit and loss statement for each period covered thereby. A certification by a principal accounting officer that there have been no material changes in financial condition since the date of the audited statements, and that these present the true financial condition as of the date of the offer, shall accompany the statements. If there has been a change, the amount and nature of the change must be specified and explained in the unaudited statements and a principal accounting officer shall certify that they are accurate. The Contracting Officer shall set a deadline for receipt of this information.

(b) DOE also reserves the right to require the submission of information from the offeror regarding its plans for use of the petroleum, the status of requests for export licenses, plans for complying with the Jones Act, and any other information relevant to the performance of the contract. The Contracting Officer shall set a deadline for receipt of this information.

B.24 Resolicitation Procedures on Unsold Petroleum

(a) In the event that petroleum offered on an MLI remains unsold after evaluation of all offers, the Contracting Officer, at his option, may issue an amendment to the NS, resoliciting offers from all interested parties. DOE reserves the right to alter the MLIs and/or offer different MLIs in the resolicitation.

(b) In the event that for any reason petroleum that has been awarded or allotted for award becomes available to DOE for resale, the following procedures will apply:

(1) If priced offers remain valid in accordance with Provision B.25, the petroleum may go to the next highest ranked offer.

(2) If offers have expired in accordance with Provision B.25, the Contracting Officer at his option may offer the petroleum to the highest offeror for that MLI. The pertinent offeror may, at its option, accept or reject that petroleum at the price it originally offered. If that offeror rejects the petroleum, it may be offered to the next highest offeror. This process may continue until all the remaining petroleum has been allotted for award.

(3) If the petroleum is not then resold, the Contracting Officer may at his option proceed to amend the NS to resolicit offers for that petroleum or add the petroleum to the next sales cycle.

B.25 Offeror's Certification of Acceptance Period

(a) By submission of an offer, the offeror certifies that its priced offer will remain valid for 10 calendar days after the date set

for the receipt of offers, and further that the successful line items of its offer will remain valid for an additional 30 calendar days should it receive a notification of ASO either by telephone or in writing during the initial 10-day period.

(b) By mutual agreement of DOE and the offeror, an individual offeror's acceptance period may be extended for a longer period.

B.26 Notification of Apparently Successful Offeror

The following information concerning its offer will be provided to the apparently successful offeror by DOE in the notification of ASO:

(a) Identification of SPR crude oil streams to be awarded;

(b) Total quantity to be awarded on each MLI and on each DLI;

(c) Price in U.S. dollars per barrel for each DLI;

(d) Extended total price offer for each DLI;

(e) Provisional contract number;

(f) Any other data necessary.

B.27 Contract Documents

If an offeror is successful, DOE will make award using an NA signed by the Contracting Officer. The NA will identify the items, quantities, prices and delivery method which DOE is accepting. The NS will be attached to the NA. Provisions of the SSPs will be made applicable through incorporation by reference in the NS. DOE may accept the offeror's offer by an electronic notice and the contract award shall be effective upon issuance of such notice. The electronic notice will be followed by a mailing of full documentation as described in Provision B.26.

B.28 [Reserved]

B.29 Procedures for Selling to Other U.S. Government Agencies

(a) If a U.S. Government agency submits an offer for petroleum in a price competitive sale, that offer will be arrayed for award consideration in accordance with Provision B.22. If a U.S. Government agency is an ASO, award and payment will be made exclusively in accordance with statutory and regulatory requirements governing transactions between agencies, and the U.S. Government agency will be responsible for complying with these requirements within the time limits set by the Contracting Officer.

(b) U.S. Government agencies are exempt from all guarantee requirements, but must make all necessary arrangements to accept delivery of and transport SPR petroleum as set out in Provision C.1. Failure by a U.S. Government agency to comply with any of the requirements of these SSPs shall not provide a basis for challenging a contract award to that agency.

SECTION C—SALES CONTRACT PROVISIONS

C.1 Delivery of SPR Petroleum

(a) The purchaser, at its expense, shall make all necessary arrangements to accept delivery of and transport the SPR petroleum, except for terminal arrangements which shall be coordinated with the SPR/PMO. The DOE will deliver and the purchaser will accept the petroleum at delivery points listed in the NS. The purchaser also shall be responsible for meeting any delivery requirements imposed at those points including complying with the rules, regulations, and procedures contained in applicable port/terminal manuals, pipeline tariffs or other applicable documents.

(b) For petroleum in the SPR's permanent storage sites, DOE shall provide, at no cost to the purchaser, transportation by pipeline from the SPR to the supporting SPR distribution terminal facility specified for the MLI and, for vessel loadings, a safe berth and loading facilities sufficient to deliver petroleum to the vessel's permanent hose connection. The purchaser agrees to assume responsibility for, to pay for, and to indemnify and hold DOE harmless for any other costs associated with terminal, port, vessel and pipeline services necessary to receive and transport the petroleum, including but not limited to demurrage charges assessed by the terminal, ballast and oily waste reception services, mooring and line-handling services, tank storage charges and port charges incurred in the delivery of SPR petroleum to the purchaser. The purchaser also agrees to assume responsibility for, to pay for and to indemnify and hold DOE harmless for any liability, including consequential or other damages, incurred or occasioned by the purchaser, its agent, subcontractor at any tier, assignee or any subsequent purchaser, in connection with movement of petroleum sold under a contract incorporating this provision.

C.2 Compliance With the ''Jones Act'' and the U.S. Export Control Laws

Failure to comply with the ''Jones Act,'' 46 U.S.C. 883, regarding use of U.S.-flag vessels in the transportation of oil between points within the United States, and with any applicable U.S. export control laws affecting the export of SPR petroleum will be considered to be a failure to comply with the terms of any contract containing these SSPs and may result in termination for default in accordance with Provision C.25. Purchasers who have failed to comply with the ''Jones Act'' or the export control laws in SPR sales may be found to be non-responsible in the evaluation of offers in subsequent sales under Provision B.22 of the SSPs. Those purchasers may also be subject to proceedings

to make them ineligible for future awards in accordance with 10 CFR Part 625.

C.3 [Reserved]

C.4 Environmental Compliance

(a) SPR offerors must ensure that vessels used to transport SPR oil comply with all applicable statutes, including, among others, the Ports and Waterways Safety Act of 1972; the Port and Tanker Safety Act of 1978; the Act to Prevent Pollution from Ships of 1980 (implementing Annexes I, II, and V of MARPOL 73/78), and the Oil Pollution Act of 1990. Offerors also must ensure that vessels used to transport SPR oil comply with all applicable regulations, including 33 CFR parts 151, 153, 155, 157, 159, and 160–169, and 46 CFR chapter I, subchapter D.

(b) To transport SPR oil, a purchaser or the purchaser's subcontractors must use only those tank vessels for which the vessel's owner, operator, or demise charter has made a showing of financial responsibility under 33 CFR part 138, *Financial Responsibility for Water Pollution (Vessels)*.

(c) Failure of the purchaser or purchaser's subcontractor to comply with all applicable statutes and regulations in the transportation of SPR petroleum will be considered a failure to comply with the terms of any contract containing these SSPs, and may result in termination for default, unless, in accordance with Provision C.25, such failure was beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the purchaser, its affiliates, or subcontractors.

C.5 Delivery and Transportation Scheduling

(a) Unless otherwise instructed in the notification of ASO, each purchaser shall submit a proposed vessel lifting program and/or pipeline delivery schedule to the SPR/PMO point of contact identified in the NS, no later than the fifteenth day prior to the earliest delivery date offered by the NS. The vessel lifting program shall specify the requested three-day loading window for each tanker and the quantity to be lifted. The pipeline schedule will specify the five day shipment ranges (*i.e.*, day 1–5, 6–10, 11–15, etc.) for which deliveries are to be tendered to the pipeline and the quantity to be tendered for each date. In the event conflicting requests are received, preference will be given to such requests in descending order, the highest offered price first. The SPR/PMO will respond to each purchaser no later than the tenth day prior to the start of deliveries, either confirming the schedule as originally submitted or proposing alterations. The purchaser shall be deemed to have agreed to those alterations unless the purchaser requests the SPR/PMO to reconsider within two days after receipt of such alterations. The SPR/PMO will use its best efforts to accommodate such requests, but its decision following any such reconsideration shall be final and binding.

(b) In order to expedite the scheduling process, at the time of submission of each vessel lifting program or pipeline delivery schedule, each purchaser shall provide the DOE Contracting Officer's Representative with a written notice of the intended destination for each cargo scheduled, if such destination is known at that time. For pipeline deliveries, the purchaser shall also include, if known, the name of each pipeline in the routing to the final destination.

(c) Notwithstanding paragraph (a) of this provision, ASOs and purchasers may request early deliveries, *i.e.*, deliveries commencing prior to the contractual delivery period. DOE will use its best efforts to honor such requests, unless unacceptable costs might be incurred or SPR schedules might be adversely affected or other circumstances make it unreasonable to honor such requests. DOE's decision following any such consideration for a change shall be final and binding. Requests accepted by DOE will be handled on a first-come, first-served basis, except that where conflicting requests are received on the same day, the highest-priced offer will be given preference. Requests that include both a change in delivery method and an early delivery date may also be accommodated subject to Provision C.6. DOE may not be able to confirm requests for early deliveries until 24 hours prior to the delivery date.

(d) Not withstanding paragraphs (a) and (c) of this provision, in no event will schedules be confirmed prior to award of contracts.

C.6 Contract Modification—Alternate Delivery Line Items

(a) A purchaser may request a change in delivery method after the issuance of the NA. Such requests may be made either orally (to be confirmed in writing within 24 hours) or in writing, but will require written modification of the contract by the Contracting Officer. Such modification shall be permitted by DOE, provided, in the sole judgment of DOE, the change is viewed as reasonable and would not interfere with the delivery plans of other purchasers, and further provided that the purchaser agrees to pay all increased costs incurred by DOE because of such modification.

(b) Changes in delivery method will only be considered after the initial confirmation of schedules described in Provision C.5(a).

C.7 Application Procedures for ''Jones Act'' and Construction Differential Subsidy Waivers

(a) Unless otherwise specified in the Notice of Sale, an ASO or purchaser seeking a waiver of the ''Jones Act'' should submit a request by letter or electronic means to: U.S. Bureau of Customs and Border Protection,

Office of Regulations and Rulings, Chief, Entry Procedures and Carriers Branch, Washington, DC 20229, Telephone: (202) 572–8724.

(b) A purchaser seeking a waiver to use a vessel built with a Construction Differential Subsidy should have the vessel owner submit a waiver request by letter or electronic means to: Associate Administrator for Ship Financial Assistance and Cargo Preference, Maritime Administration, U.S. Department of Transportation, 400 7th Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.

For speed and brevity, the request may incorporate by reference appropriate contents of any earlier ''Jones Act'' waiver request by the purchaser. Under 46 U.S.C. App. 1223, a hearing is also required for any intervenor, and a waiver may not be approved if it will result in unfair competition to any person, firm, or corporation operating exclusively in the coastwise or intercoastal service.

(c) Copies of the Jones Act or CDS waiver requests should also be sent, as appropriate, to:

(1) Associate Administrator for Port, Intermodal and Environmental Activities, Maritime Administration, U.S. Department of Transportation, 400 7th Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.

(2) U.S. Department of Energy, ATTN: Deputy Assistant Secretary for Petroleum Reserves, FE–40, 1000 Independence Avenue, SW., Washington, DC 20585.

(3) Contracting Officer, FE–4451, Strategic Petroleum Reserve Project Management Office, Acquisition and Sales Division, 900 Commerce Road East, New Orleans, LA 70123.

(d) In addition to the addresses in paragraph (c), copies of the ''Jones Act'' request should also be sent to: Office of the Under Secretary of Defense (Acquisition, Technology and Logistics), U.S. Department of Defense, Washington, DC 20301–3020.

(e) Any request for waiver should include the following information:

(1) Name, address and telephone number of requestor;

(2) Purpose for which waiver is sought, *e.g.*, to take delivery of so many barrels of SPR crude oil, with reference to the SPR NS number and the provisional or assigned contract number;

(3) Name and flag of registry of vessel for which waiver is sought, if known at the time of waiver request, and the scheduled 3-day delivery window(s), if available, or delivery period applicable to the contract;

(4) The intended number of voyages, including the ports for loading and discharging;

(5) Estimated period of time for which vessel will be employed; and

(6) Reason for not using qualified U.S.-flag vessel, including documentary evidence of good faith effort to obtain suitable U.S.-flag vessel and responses received from that effort. Such evidence would include copies of correspondence and telephone conversation summaries. Requests for waivers by electronic transmittals may reference such documentary evidence, with copies to be provided by mail, postmarked no more than one business day after the transmission requesting the waiver.

(7) For waivers to use Construction Differential Subsidy vessels, the request must also contain a specific agreement for Construction Differential Subsidies payback pursuant to section 506 of the Merchant Marine Act of 1936 and must be signed by an official of the vessel owner authorized to make a payback commitment.

(f) If there are shown to be ''Jones Act'' vessels available and in a position to meet the loading dates required, no waivers may be approved.

(g) The names of any vessel(s) to be employed under a ''Jones Act'' waiver must be provided to the U.S. Bureau of Customs and Border Protection no later than 3 days prior to the beginning of the 3-day loading window scheduled in accordance with Provision C.5.

C.8 Vessel Loading Procedures

(a) After notification of ASO, each ASO shall provide the SPR/PMO a proposed schedule of vessel loading windows in accordance with Provision C.5.

(b) The length of the scheduled loading window shall be 3 days. If the purchaser schedules more than one window, the average quantity to be lifted during any single loading window will be no less than DOE's minimum lot quantity.

(c) Tankships, ITBs, and self-propelled barges shall be capable of sustaining a minimum average load rate commensurate with receiving an entire full cargo within twenty-four (24) hours pumping time. Barges with a load rate of not less than 4,000 BPH shall be permitted at the Sun Terminal barge docks. With the consent of the SPR/PMO, lower loading rates and the use of barges at suitably equipped tankship docks at other terminals supporting the SPR may be permitted if such do not interfere with DOE's obligations to other parties.

(d) At least 7 days in advance of the beginning of the scheduled loading window, the purchaser shall furnish the SPR/PMO with vessel nominations specifying:

(i) Name and size of vessel or advice that the vessel is ''To Be Nominated'' at a later date (such date to be no later than 3 days before commencement of the loading window);

(ii) Estimated date of arrival (to be narrowed to a firm date not later than 72 hours prior to the first day of the vessel's 3-day window, as provided in paragraph (f) of this provision);

(iii) Quantity to be loaded and contract number; and

(iv) Other relevant information requested by the SPR/PMO including but not limited to ship's specifications, last three ports and cargoes, vessel owner/operator and flag, any known deficiencies, and on board quantities of cargo and slops.

DOE will advise the purchaser, in writing, of the acceptance or rejection of the nominated vessel within 24 hours of such nomination. If no advice is furnished within 24 hours, the nomination will be firm. Once established, changes in such nomination details may be made only by mutual agreement of the parties, to be confirmed by DOE in writing. The purchaser shall be entitled to substitute another vessel of similar size for any vessel so nominated, subject to DOE's approval. DOE must be given at least 3 days' notice prior to the first day of the 3-day loading window of any such substitution. DOE shall make a reasonable effort to accept any nomination for which notice has not been given in strict accordance with this provision.

(e) In the event the purchaser intends to use more than one vessel to take delivery of the contract quantity scheduled to be delivered during a loading window, the information in paragraphs (d) and (f) of this provision shall be provided for each vessel.

(f) The vessel or purchaser shall notify the SPR/PMO of the expected day of arrival 72 hours before the beginning of his scheduled 3-day loading window. This notice establishes the firm agreed-upon date of arrival which is the 1-day window for the purposes of vessel demurrage (see Provision C.9). If the purchaser fails to make notification of the expected day of arrival, the 1-day window will be deemed to be the middle day of the scheduled 3-day window. The vessel shall also notify the SPR/PMO of the expected hour of arrival 72, 48 and 24 hours in advance of arrival, and after the first notice, to advise of any variation of more than 4 hours. With the first notification of the hour of arrival, the Master shall advise the SPR/PMO:

(i) Cargo loading rate requested;

(ii) Number, size, and material of vessel's manifold connections; and

(iii) Defects in vessel or equipment affecting performance or maneuverability.

(g) Notice of Readiness shall be tendered upon arrival at berth or at customary anchorage which is deemed to be any anchorage within 6 hours vessel time to the SPR dock. The preferred anchorages are identified in *Exhibit B*. The Notice of Readiness shall be confirmed promptly in writing to the SPR/PMO and the terminal responsible for coordination of crude oil loading operations. Such notice shall be effective only if given during customary port operating hours. If notice is given after customary business hours of the port, it shall be effective as of the beginning of customary business hours on the next business day.

(h) DOE shall use its best efforts to berth the purchaser's vessel as soon as possible after receipt of the Notice of Readiness.

(i) Standard hose and fittings (American Standard Association standard connections) for loading shall be provided by DOE. Purchasers must arrange for line handling, deballasting, tug boat and pilot services, both for arrival and departure, through the terminal or ship's agent, and bear all costs associated with such services.

(j) Tankships, ITBs, and self-propelled barges shall be allowed berth time of 36 hours. Barges shall be allowed berth time of three (3) hours plus the quotient determined by dividing the cargo size (gross standard volume barrels) by four thousand (4,000). Vessels loading cargo quantities in excess of 500,000 barrels shall be allowed berth time of 36 hours plus 1 hour for each 20,000 barrels to be loaded in excess of 500,000 barrels. Conditions of this provision excepted, however, the vessel shall not remain at berth more than 6 hours after completion of cargo loading unless hampered by tide or weather.

(1) Berth time shall commence with the vessel's first line ashore and shall continue until loading of the vessel, or vessels in case more than one vessel is loaded, is completed and the last line is off. In addition, allowable berth time will be increased by the amount of any delay occurring subsequent to the commencement of berth time and resulting from causes due to adverse weather, labor disputes, force majeure and the like, decisions made by port authorities affecting loading operations, actions of DOE, its contractors and agents resulting in delay of loading operations (providing this action does not arise through the fault of the purchaser or purchaser's agent), and customs and immigration clearance. The time required by the vessel to discharge oily wastes or to moor multiple vessels sequentially into berth shall count as used berth time.

(2) For all hours of berth time used by the vessel in excess of allowable berth time as provided for in this provision, the purchaser shall be liable for dock demurrage and also shall be subject to the conditions of Provision C.11.

C.9 Vessel Laytime and Demurrage

(a) The laytime allowed DOE for handling of the purchaser's vessel shall be 36 running hours. For vessels with cargo quantities in excess of 500,000 barrels, laytime shall be 36 running hours plus 1 hour for each 20,000 barrels of cargo to be loaded in excess of 500,000 barrels. Vessel laytime shall commence when the vessel is moored alongside (all fast) the loading berth or 6 hours after receipt of a Notice of Readiness, whichever occurs first. It shall continue 24 hours per day, seven days per week without interruption from its commencement until loading of the

vessel is completed and cargo hoses or loading arms are disconnected. Any delay to the vessel in reaching berth caused by the fault or negligence of the vessel or purchaser, delay due to breakdown or inability of the vessel's facilities to load, decisions made by vessel owners or operators or by port authorities affecting loading operations, discharge of ballast or slops, customs and immigration clearance, weather, labor disputes, force majeure and the like shall not count as used laytime. In addition, movement in roads shall not count as used laytime.

(b) If the vessel is tendered for loading on a date earlier than the firm agreed-upon arrival date, established in accordance with Provision C.8, and other vessels are loading or have already been scheduled for loading prior to the purchaser's vessel, the purchaser's vessel shall await its turn and vessel laytime shall not commence until the vessel moors alongside (all fast), or at 0600 hours local time on the firm agreed-upon date of arrival, whichever occurs first. If the vessel is tendered for loading later than 2400 hours on the firm agreed-upon date of arrival, DOE will use its best efforts to have the vessel loaded as soon as possible in its proper turn with other scheduled vessels, under the circumstances prevailing at the time. In such instances, vessel laytime shall commence when the vessel moors alongside (all fast).

(c) For all hours or any part thereof of vessel laytime that elapse in excess of the allowed vessel laytime for loading provided for in this provision, demurrage shall be paid by DOE, for U.S.-flag vessels, at the lesser of the demurrage rate in the tanker voyage or charter party agreement, or the most recently available United States Freight Rate Average (USFRA) for a hypothetical tanker with a deadweight in long tons equal to the weight in long tons of the petroleum loaded, multiplied by the most recent edition of the American Tanker Rate Schedule rate for such hypothetical tanker and voyage. For foreign flag vessels, demurrage shall be as determined in this provision, except that the London Tanker Brokers' Panel Average Freight Rate Assessment (AFRA) and most recent edition of the New Worldwide Tanker Nominal Freight Scale ''Worldscale'' shall be used as appropriate, if less than the charter party rate. For all foreign flag vessel loadings that commence during a particular calendar month, the applicable AFRA shall be the one that is determined on the basis of freight assessments for the period ended on the 15th day of the preceding month. The demurrage rate for barges will be the lesser of the hourly rate contained in the charter of a chartered barge, or a rate determined by DOE as a fair rate under prevailing conditions. If demurrage is incurred because of breakdown of machinery or equipment of DOE or its contractors (other than the purchaser), the rate of demurrage shall be reduced to one-half the rate stipulated herein per running hour and pro rata of such reduced rate for part of an hour for demurrage so incurred. Demurrage payable by DOE, however, shall in no event exceed the actual demurrage expense incurred by the purchaser as the result of the delay.

(d) In the event the purchaser is using more than one vessel to load the contract quantity scheduled to be delivered during a single loading window, the terms of this provision and the Government's liability for demurrage apply only to the first vessel presenting its Notice of Readiness in accordance with (a) of this provision.

(e) The primary source document and official record for demurrage calculations is the SPRCODR (see Provision C.19).

C.10 Vessel Loading Expedition Options

(a) Notwithstanding Provision C.8(j)(1), in order to avoid disruption in the SPR distribution process, the Government may limit berthing time for any vessel receiving SPR petroleum to that period required for loading operations and the physical berthing/unberthing of the vessel. At the direction of the Government, activities not associated with the physical loading of the vessel (*e.g.*, preparing documentation, gauging, sampling, etc.) may be required to be accomplished away from the berth. Time consumed by these activities will not be for the Government's account. If berthing time is to be restricted, the Government will so advise the vessel prior to berthing of the vessel.

(b) In addition to paragraph (a) of this provision, the Government may limit vessels calling at SPR terminals to a total of 24 hours for petroleum transfer operations. In such an event, the loading will be considered completed if the vessel has loaded 95 percent or more of the nominated quantity within a total of 24 hours. If the vessel has loaded less than 95 percent of its nominated quantity, then Provision C.11 shall apply.

C.11 Purchaser Liability for Excessive Berth Time

The Government reserves the right to direct a vessel loading SPR petroleum at a delivery point specified in the NS, to vacate its SPR berth, and absorb all costs associated with this movement, should such vessel, through its operational inability to receive oil at the average rates provided for in Provision C.8, cause the berth to be unavailable for an already scheduled follow-on vessel. Furthermore, should a breakdown of the vessel's propulsion system prevent its getting under way on its own power, the Government may cause the vessel to be removed from the berth with all costs to be borne by the purchaser.

C.12 Pipeline Delivery Procedures

(a) The purchaser shall nominate his delivery requirements to the pipeline carrier, to include the total quantity to be moved and his preferred five-day shipment range(s) as specified in C.5. The purchaser shall provide confirmation of the carrier's acceptance of the nominated quantity (in thousands of barrels per day) and shipment ranges to the SPR/PMO no later than the last day of the month preceding the month of delivery. The purchaser shall also furnish the SPR/PMO with the name, telephone number, and e-mail address of the pipeline point of contact with whom the SPR/PMO should coordinate the delivery.

(b) The SPR/PMO will ensure oil is made available to the carrier within the shipment date range(s) established in accordance with Provision C.5. Once established, the pipeline delivery schedule can only be changed with SPR/PMO's prior written consent. Should the schedule established in accordance with (a) of this provision vary from the original schedule established in accordance with Provision C.5, the Government will provide its best efforts to accommodate this revised schedule but will incur no liability for failure to provide delivery on the dates requested.

(c) Three days prior to the beginning of any five-day shipping range in which the purchaser is to receive delivery, the purchaser shall furnish the SPR/PMO the firm date within that range on which the movement is to commence, the quantity to be moved, and the contract number.

(d) The date of delivery, which will be recorded on the CODR (see Provision C.19), is the date delivery commenced to the custody transfer point, as identified in the NS.

(e) The purchaser shall receive pipeline deliveries at a minimum average rate of 100,000 barrels per day. The purchaser is solely responsible for making the necessary arrangements with pipeline carriers, including storage, to achieve the stated minimum.

C.13 Title and Risk of Loss

Unless otherwise provided in the NS, title to and risk of loss for SPR petroleum will pass to the purchaser at the delivery point as follows:

(a) For vessel shipment—when the petroleum passes from the dock loading equipment connections to the vessel's permanent hose connection.

(b) For pipeline shipment—as identified in the NS.

C.14 Acceptance of Crude Oil

(a) When practical, the NS shall update the SPR crude oil stream characteristics shown in *Exhibit A*, SPR Crude Oil Comprehensive Analysis. However, the purchaser shall accept the crude oil delivered regardless of characteristics. Except as provided in this provision, DOE assumes no responsibility for deviations in quality.

(b) In the event that the crude oil stream delivered both has a total sulfur content (by weight) in excess of 2.0 percent if a sour crude oil stream, or 0.50 percent if a sweet crude oil stream, and, in addition, has an API gravity less than 28°API if a sour crude oil stream, or 32°API if a sweet crude oil stream, the purchaser shall accept the crude oil delivered and either pay the contract price adjusted in accordance with Provision C.16, or request negotiation of the contract price. Unless the purchaser submits a written request for negotiation of the contract price to the Contracting Officer within 10 days from the date of invoice, the purchaser shall be deemed to have accepted the adjustment of the price in accordance with Provision C.16. Should the purchaser request a negotiation of the price and the parties be unable to agree as to that price, the dispute shall be settled in accordance with Provision C.32.

C.15 Delivery Acceptance and Verification

(a) The purchaser shall provide written confirmation to SPR/PMO, no later than 72 hours prior to the scheduled date of the first delivery under the contract, the name(s) of the authorized agent(s) given signature authority to sign/endorse the delivery documentation (CODR, etc.) on the purchaser's behalf. Any changes to this listing of names must be provided to the SPR/PMO in writing no later than 72 hours before the first delivery to which such change applies. In the event that an independent surveyor (separate from the authorized signatory agent) is appointed by the purchaser to witness the delivery operation (gauging, sampling, testing, etc.), written notification must be provided to SPR/PMO, no later than 72 hours prior to the scheduled date of each applicable cargo delivery.

(b) Absence of the provision of the name(s) of bona fide agent(s) and the signature of such agent on the delivery documentation constitutes acceptance of the delivery quantity and quality as determined by DOE and/or its agents.

C.16 Price Adjustments for Quality Differentials

(a) The NS will specify quality price adjustments applicable to the crude oil streams offered for sale. Unless otherwise specified by the NS, quality price adjustments will be applied only to the amount of variation by which the API gravity of the crude oil delivered differs by more than plus or minus five-tenths of one degree API (±0.5°API) from the API gravity of the crude oil stream contracted for as published in the NS.

(b) Price adjustments for SPR crude oil are expected to be similar to one or more commercial crude oil postings for equivalent quality crude oil. The contract price per barrel shall be increased by that amount if the API gravity of the crude oil delivered exceeds the published API gravity by more than 0.5°API and decreased by that amount if the API gravity of the crude oil delivered falls below the published API gravity by more than 0.5°API.

C.17 Determination of Quality

(a) The quality of the crude oil delivered to the purchaser will be determined from samples taken from the delivery tanks in accordance with API Manual of Petroleum Measurement Standards, Chapter 8.1, Manual Sampling of Petroleum and Petroleum Products (ASTM D4057), latest edition; or from a representative sample collected by an automatic sampler whose performance has been proven in accordance with the API Manual of Petroleum Measurement Standards, Chapter 8.2, Automatic Sampling of Petroleum and Petroleum Products (ASTM D4177), latest edition. Preference will be given to samples collected by means of an automatic sampler when such a system is available and operational. Tests to be performed by DOE or its authorized contractor are:

(1) Sediment and Water

Primary methods: API Manual of Petroleum Measurement Standards, Chapter 10.1, Determination of Sediment in Crude Oils and Fuel Oils by the Extraction Method (ASTM D473) (IP53), latest edition; or API Manual of Petroleum Measurement Standards, Chapter 10.8, Sediment in Crude Oil by Membrane Filtration (ASTM D4807), latest edition; and API Manual of Petroleum Measurement Standards, Chapter 10.2, Determination of Water in Crude Oil by Distillation (ASTM D4006) (IP358), latest edition; or API Manual of Petroleum Measurement Standards, Chapter 10.9, Water in Crude Oil by Coulometric Karl Fischer Titration (ASTM D4928) (IP 386), latest edition.

Alternate methods: API Manual of Petroleum Measurement Standards, Chapter 10.3, Determination of Water and Sediment in Crude Oil by the Centrifuge Method (Laboratory Procedure) (ASTM D4007) (IP 359), latest edition.

(2) Sulfur

Primary method: ASTM D4294, Sulfur in Petroleum Products by Energy-Dispersive X-ray Fluorescence Spectrometry, latest edition.

Alternate method: ASTM D2622, Sulfur in Petroleum Products by Wavelength Dispersive X-ray Fluorescence Spectrometry.

(3) API Gravity

Primary methods: API Manual of Petroleum Measurement Standards, Chapter 9.1, Density, Relative Density (Specific Gravity), or API Gravity of Crude Petroleum and Liquid Petroleum Products by Hydrometer Method (ASTM D1298) (IP 160), latest edition; or Density and Relative Density of Crude Oils by Digital Density Analyzer (ASTM D5002), latest edition.

Alternate method: API Gravity of Crude Petroleum and Petroleum Products (Hydrometer Method) (ASTM D287), latest edition.

To the maximum extent practicable, the primary methods will be used for determination of SPR crude oil quality characteristics. However, because of conditions prevailing at the time of delivery, it may be necessary to use alternate methods of test for one or more of the quality characteristics. The Government's test results will be binding in any dispute over quality characteristics of SPR petroleum.

(b) The purchaser or his representative may arrange to witness and verify testing simultaneously with the U.S. government representative. Such services, however, will be for the account of the purchaser. Any disputes will be settled in accordance with Provision C.32. Should the purchaser opt not to witness the testing, then the Government findings will be binding on the purchaser.

C.18 Determination of Quantity

(a) The quantity of crude oil delivered to the purchaser will be determined by opening and closing tank gauges with adjustment for opening and closing free water and sediment and water as determined from shore tank samples where an automatic sampler is not available, or delivery meter reports. All volumetric measurements will be corrected to net standard volume in barrels at 60 °F, using the API Manual of Petroleum Measurement Standards, Chapter 11.1, Volume 1, Volume Correction Factors (ASTM D1250) (IP 200); Table 5A—Generalized Crude Oils, Correction of Observed API Gravity to API Gravity at 60 °F; Table 6A—Generalized Crude Oils, Correction of Volume to 60 °F Against API Gravity at 60 °F, latest edition, and by deducting the tanks' free water, and the entrained sediment and water as determined by the testing of composite all-levels samples taken from the delivery tanks; or by deducting the sediment and water as determined by testing a representative portion of the sample collected by a certified automatic sampler, and also corrected by the applicable pressure correction factor and meter factor.

(b) The quantity measurements shall be performed and certified by the DOE contractor responsible for delivery operations,

and witnessed by the U.S. government representative at the delivery point. The purchaser shall have the right to have representatives present at the gauging/metering, sampling, and testing. Should the purchaser arrange for additional inspection services, such services will be for the account of the purchaser. Any disputes shall be settled in accordance with Provision C.32. Should the purchaser not arrange for additional services, then DOE's quantity determination shall be binding on the purchaser.

C.19 Delivery Documentation

The quantity and quality determination shall be documented on the SPR/PMO Crude Oil Delivery Report (SPRCODR), SPRPMO–F–6110.2–14b (Rev 8/91) (see *Exhibit E* for copy of this form). The SPRCODR will be signed by the purchaser's agent to acknowledge receipt of the quantity and quality of crude oil indicated. In addition, for vessel deliveries, the time statement on the SPRCODR will be signed by the vessel's Master when loading is complete. Copies of the completed SPRCODR, with applicable supporting documentation (i.e., metering or tank gauging tickets and appropriate calculation worksheets), will be furnished to the purchaser and/or the purchaser's authorized representative after completion of delivery. They will serve as the basis for invoicing and/or reconciliation invoicing for the sale of petroleum as well as for any associated services that may be provided.

C.20 Contract Amounts

The contract quantities and dollar value stated in the NA are estimates. The per barrel unit price is subject to adjustment due to variation in the API gravity from the published characteristics, changes in delivery mode and price index values, if applicable. In addition, due to conditions of vessel loading and shipping or pipeline transmission, the quantity actually delivered may vary by ±10 percent for each shipment. However, a purchaser is not required to engage additional transportation capacity if sufficient capacity to take delivery of at least 90 percent of the contract quantity has been engaged.

C.21 Payment and Performance Letter of Credit

(a) Within five business days of receipt of notification of Apparently Successful Offeror, the Purchaser must provide to the Contracting Officer an ''Irrevocable Standby Letter of Credit'' established in favor of the United States Department of Energy equal to 100 percent of the contract awarded value and containing the substantive provisions set out in *Exhibit D*. The purchaser must furnish an acceptable letter of credit before DOE will execute the NA. The letter of credit MUST NOT VARY IN SUBSTANCE from the sample at *Exhibit D*. If the letter of credit contains any provisions at variance with *Exhibit D* or fails to include any provisions contained in *Exhibit D*, nonconforming provisions must be deleted and missing substantive provisions must be added or the letter of credit will not be accepted. The letter of credit must be effective on or before the first delivery under the contract and remain in effect for a period of 120 days, must permit multiple partial drawings, and must contain the contract number. The original of the letter of credit must be sent to the Contracting Officer.

(b) The letter of credit must be issued by a depository institution located in and authorized to do business in any state of the United States or the District of Columbia, and authorized to issue letters of credit by the banking laws of the United States or any state of the United States or the District of Columbia. The depository institution must be an account holder with the Federal Reserve Banking system and a participant (online) in the Fed's Fedwire Deposit System Network funds transfer system. The issuing bank must provide documentation indicating that the person signing the letter of credit is authorized to do so, in the form of corporate minutes, the Authorized Signature List, or the General Resolution of Signature Authority.

(c) All letter of credit costs will be borne by the purchaser.

(d) The letter of credit must be maintained at 100 percent of the contract value of the petroleum remaining to be delivered as well as delivered quantities for which payment has not been remitted, plus any other charges owed to the Government under the contract. In the event the letter of credit falls below the level specified, or at the discretion of the Contracting Officer must be increased because of the effect of the price indexing mechanism provided for in Provision B.2, DOE reserves the right to demand the purchaser modify the letter of credit to a level deemed sufficient by the Contracting Officer. The purchaser shall make such modification within two business days of being notified by the Contracting Officer by express mail or electronic means. The purchaser is deemed to have received such notification the next business day after its dispatch. If such modification is not made within two days after purchaser is deemed to have received the notice, the Contracting Officer may, on the 3rd business day, without prior notice to the purchaser, withhold deliveries in whole or in part under the contract and/or terminate the contract in whole or in part under Provision C.25.

(e) Within 30 calendar days after final payment under the contract, the Contracting Officer shall authorize the cancellation of the letter of credit and shall return it to the

bank or financial institution issuing the letter of credit. A copy of the notice of cancellation will be provided to the purchaser.

C.22 Billing and Payment

(a) The Government will invoice the Purchaser at the conclusion of each delivery.

(b) Payment is due in full on the 20th of the month following each delivery month. Should the 20th of the month fall on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday, payment will be due and payable in full on the last business day preceding the 20th of the month.

(c) If an invoice is not paid in full, the Government may provide the Purchaser oral or written notification that Purchaser is delinquent in its payments; draw against the letter of credit for all quantities for which unpaid invoices are outstanding; withhold all or any part of future deliveries under the contract; and/or terminate the contract, in whole or in part, in accordance with Provision C.25.

(d) In the event that the bank refuses to honor the draft against the letter of credit, the purchaser shall be responsible for paying the principal and any interest due (see Provision C.24) from the due date.

C.23 Method of Payments

(a) All amounts payable by the purchaser shall be paid by either:

(1) Deposit to the account of the U.S. Treasury by wire transfer of funds over the Fedwire Deposit System Network. The information to be included in each wire transfer will be provided in the NS.

(2) Electronic funds transfer through the Automated Clearing House (ACH) network, using the Federal Remittance Express Program. The information to be included in each transfer will be provided in the NS.

All wire deposit electronic funds transfer costs will be borne by the purchaser.

(b) If the purchaser disagrees with the amounts invoiced by the Government, the purchaser shall immediately pay the amount invoiced, and notify the Contracting Officer of the basis for its disagreement. The Contracting Officer will receive and act upon any such objection. Failure to agree to any adjustment shall be a dispute, and a purchaser shall file a claim promptly in accordance with Provision C.32.

(c) DOE may designate another place, different timing, or another method of payment after reasonable written notice to the purchaser.

(d) Notwithstanding any other contract provision, DOE may via a draft message request a wire transfer of funds against the standby letter of credit at any time for payment of monies due under the contract and remaining unpaid in violation of the terms of the contract. These would include but not be limited to interest, liquidated damages, demurrage, amounts owing for any services provided under the contract, and the difference between the contract price and price received on the resale of undelivered petroleum as defined in Provision C.25. If the invoice is for delinquent payments, interest shall accrue from the payment due date.

(e) No payment due DOE hereunder shall be subject to reduction or set-off for any claim of any kind against the United States arising independently of the contract.

C.24 Interest

(a) Amounts due and payable by the purchaser or its bank that are not paid in accordance with the provisions governing such payments shall bear interest from the date due until the date payment is received by the Government.

(b) Interest shall be computed on a daily basis. The interest rate shall be in accordance with the Current Value of Funds rate as established by the Department of the Treasury in accordance with the Debt Collection Improvement Act of 1997 and published periodically in Bulletins to the Treasury Fiscal Requirements Manual and in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

C.25 Termination

(a) Immediate termination.

(1) The Contracting Officer may terminate this contract in whole or in part, without liability of DOE, by written notice to the purchaser effective upon its being deposited in the U.S. Postal System addressed to the purchaser as provided in Provision C.31 in the event that the purchaser either notifies the Contracting Officer that it will not be able to accept, or fails to accept, any delivery line item in accordance with the terms of the contract. Such notice shall invite the purchaser to submit information to the Contracting Officer as to the reasons for the failure to accept the delivery line item in accordance with the terms of the contract.

(2) Within 10 business days after the issuance of the notice of termination, the Contracting Officer may determine that such termination was a termination for default under paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this provision. In the absence of information which persuades the Contracting Officer that the purchaser's failure to accept the delivery line item was excusable, the fact of such failure may be the basis for the Contracting Officer determining the purchaser to be in default, without first determining under paragraphs (b)(2) and (b)(3) whether such failure was excusable under the terms of the contract. The Contracting Officer shall promptly give the purchaser written notice of such determination.

(3) Any immediate termination other than one determined to be a termination for default in accordance with paragraph (a)(2) and paragraph (b) of this provision shall be a termination for the convenience of DOE without liability of the Government.

(b) Termination for Default.

(1) Subject to the provisions of paragraphs (b)(2) and (b)(3), the Contracting Officer may terminate the contract in whole or in part for purchaser default, without liability of DOE, by written notice to the purchaser, effective upon its being deposited in the U.S. Postal System, addressed to the purchaser as provided in Provision C.31 in the event that:

(i) The Government does not receive payment in accordance with any payment provision of the contract;

(ii) The purchaser fails to accept delivery of petroleum in accordance with the terms of the contract; or

(iii) The purchaser fails to comply with any other term or condition of the contract within 5 business days after the purchaser is deemed to have received written notice of such failure from the Contracting Officer.

(2) Except with respect to defaults of subcontractors, the purchaser shall not be determined to be in default or be charged with any liability to DOE under circumstances which prevent the purchaser's acceptance of delivery hereunder due to causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the purchaser as determined by the Contracting Officer. Such causes shall include but are not limited to:

(i) Acts of God or the public enemy;

(ii) Acts of the Government acting in its sovereign or contractual capacity;

(iii) Fires, floods, earthquakes, explosions, unusually severe weather, or other catastrophes; or

(iv) Strikes.

(3) If the failure to perform is caused by the default of a subcontractor, the purchaser shall not be determined to be in default or to be liable for any excess costs for failure to perform, unless the supplies or services to be furnished by the subcontractor were obtainable from other sources in sufficient time to permit the purchaser to meet the delivery schedule, if:

(i) Such default arises out of causes beyond the control of the purchaser and its subcontractor, and without the fault or negligence of either of them; or

(ii) Such default arises out of causes within the control of a transportation subcontractor, not an affiliate of the purchaser, hired to transport the purchaser's petroleum by vessel or pipeline, and such causes are beyond the purchaser's control, without the fault or negligence of the purchaser, and notwithstanding the best efforts of the purchaser to avoid default.

(4) In the event that the contract is terminated in whole or in part for default, the purchaser shall be liable to DOE for:

(i) The difference between the contract price on the contract termination date and any lesser price the Contracting Officer obtained upon resale of the petroleum; and

(ii) Liquidated damages as specified in Provision C.27 as fixed, agreed, liquidated damages for each day of delay until the petroleum is delivered to a purchaser under either a resolicitation for the sale of the quantities of oil defaulted on, or an NS issued after the date of default that specifies that it is for the sale of quantities of oil defaulted on. In no event shall liquidated damages be assessed for more than 30 days.

(5) In the event that the Government exercises its right of termination for default, and it is later determined that the purchaser's failure to perform was excused in accordance with paragraphs (2) and (3), the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if such termination was a termination for convenience without liability of the Government under paragraph (c).

(c) Termination for convenience.

(1) In addition to any other right or remedy provided for in the contract, the Government may terminate this contract at any time in whole or in part whenever the Contracting Officer shall determine that such termination is in the best interest of the Government. Such termination shall be without liability of the Government if such termination arises out of causes specified in paragraphs (a)(1) or (b)(1) of this provision, acts of the Government in its sovereign capacity, or causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Government, its contractors (other than the purchaser of SPR crude oil under this contract) and agents. For any other termination for convenience, the Government shall be liable for such reasonable costs incurred by the purchaser in preparing to perform the contract, but under no circumstances shall the Government be liable for consequential damages or lost profits as the result of such termination.

(2) The purchaser will be given immediate written notice of any decrease of petroleum deliveries greater than 10 percent, or of termination, under this paragraph (c). The termination or reduction shall be effective upon its notice being deposited in the U.S. Postal System unless otherwise specified in the notice. The purchaser is deemed to have received a mailed notice on the second day after its dispatch and an electronic or express mail notice on the day after dispatch.

(3) Termination for the convenience of the Government shall not excuse the purchaser from liquidated damages accruing prior to the effective date of the termination.

(d) Nothing herein contained shall limit the Government in the enforcement of any

legal or equitable remedy that it might otherwise have, and a waiver of any particular cause for termination shall not prevent termination for the same cause occurring at any other time or for any other cause.

(e) In the event that the Government exercises its right of termination, as provided in paragraphs (a), (b), or (c)(1) of this provision, the Contracting Officer may sell any undelivered petroleum under such terms and conditions as he deems appropriate.

(f) DOE's ability to deliver petroleum on the date on which the defaulted purchaser was scheduled to accept delivery, under another contract awarded prior to the date of the contractor's default, shall not excuse a purchaser that has been terminated for default from either liquidated damages or the difference between the contract price and any lesser price obtained on resale.

(g) Any disagreement with respect to the amount due the Government for either resale costs or liquidated damages shall be deemed to be a dispute and will be decided by the Contracting Officer pursuant to Provision C.32.

(h) The term ''subcontractor'' or ''subcontractors'' includes subcontractors at any tier.

C.26 Other Government Remedies

(a) The Government's rights under this provision are in addition to any other right or remedy available to it by law or by virtue of this contract.

(b) The Government may, without liability on its part, withhold deliveries of petroleum under this contract or any other contract the purchaser may have with DOE if payment is not made in accordance with this contract.

(c) If the purchaser fails to take delivery of petroleum in accordance with the delivery schedule developed under the terms of the contract, and such tardiness is not excused under the terms of Provision C.25, but the Government does not elect to terminate that item for default, the purchaser nonetheless shall be liable to the Government for liquidated damages in the amount established by Provision C.27 for each calendar day of delay or fraction thereof until such time as it accepts delivery of the petroleum. In no event shall such damages be assessed for longer than 30 days. No purchaser that fails to perform in accordance with the terms of the contract shall be excused from liability for liquidated damages by virtue of the fact that DOE is able to deliver petroleum on the date on which the non-performing purchaser was scheduled to accept delivery, under another contract awarded prior to the date of default.

C.27 Liquidated Damages

(a) In case of failure on the part of the purchaser to perform within the time fixed in the contract or any extension thereof, the purchaser shall pay to the Government liquidated damages in the amount of 1 percent of the contract price of the undelivered petroleum per calendar day of delay or fraction thereof in accordance with Provision C.25(b) and Provision C.26(c).

(b) As provided in (a) of this provision, liquidated damages will be assessed for each day or fraction thereof a purchaser is late in accepting delivery of petroleum in accordance with this contract, unless such tardiness is excused under Provision C.25. For petroleum to be lifted by vessel, damages will be assessed in the event that the vessel has not commenced loading by 11:59 p.m. on the second day following the last day of the 3-day delivery window established under Provision C.5, unless the vessel has arrived in roads and its Master has presented a notice of readiness to the Government or its agents. Liquidated damages shall continue until the vessel presents its notice of readiness. For petroleum to be moved by pipeline, if delivery arrangements have not been made by the last day of the month prior to delivery, liquidated damages shall commence on the 3rd day of the delivery month until such delivery arrangements are completed; if delivery arrangements have been made, then liquidated damages shall begin on the 3rd day after the scheduled delivery date if delivery is not commenced and shall continue until delivery is commenced.

(c) Any disagreement with respect to the amount of liquidated damages due the Government will be deemed to be a dispute and will be decided by the Contracting Officer pursuant to Provision C.32.

C.28 Failure To Perform Under SPR Contracts

In addition to the usual debarment procedures, 10 CFR 625.3 provides procedures to make purchasers that fail to perform in accordance with these provisions ineligible for future SPR contracts.

C.29 Government Options in Case of Impossibility of Performance

(a) In the event that DOE is unable to deliver petroleum contracted for to the purchaser due either to events beyond the control of the Government, including actions of the purchaser, or to acts of the Government, its agents, its contractors or subcontractors at any tier, the Government at its option may do either of the following:

(1) Terminate for the convenience of the Government under Provision C.25; or

(2) Offer different SPR crude oil streams or delivery times to the purchaser in substitution for those specified in the contract.

(b) In the event that a different SPR crude oil stream than originally contracted for is offered to the purchaser, the contract price will be negotiated between the parties. In no event shall the negotiated price be less than the minimum acceptable price established for the same or similar crude oil streams at the time of contract award.

(c) DOE's obligation in such circumstances is to use its best efforts, and DOE under no circumstances shall be liable to the purchaser for damages arising from DOE's failure to offer alternate SPR crude oil streams or delivery times.

(d) If the parties are unable to reach agreement as to price, crude oil streams or delivery times, DOE may terminate the contract for the convenience of the Government under Provision C.25.

C.30 Limitation of Government liability

DOE's obligation under these SSPs and any resultant contract is to use its best efforts to perform in accordance therewith. The Government under no circumstances shall be liable thereunder to the purchaser for the conduct of the Government's contractors or subcontractors or for indirect, consequential, or special damages arising from its conduct, except as provided herein; neither shall the Government be liable thereunder to the purchaser for any damages due in whole or in part to causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Government, including but not restricted to, acts of God or public enemy, acts of the Government acting in its sovereign capacity, fires, floods, earthquakes, explosions, unusually severe weather, other catastrophes, or strikes.

C.31 Notices

(a) Any notices required to be given by one party to the contract to the other in writing shall be forwarded to the addressee, prepaid, by U.S. registered, return receipt requested mail, express mail, or electronic means as provided in the NS. Parties shall give each other written notice of address changes.

(b) Notices to the purchaser shall be forwarded to the purchaser's address as it appears in the offer and in the contract.

(c) Notices to the Contracting Officer shall be forwarded to the following address: U.S. Department of Energy, Strategic Petroleum Reserve, Project Management Office, Acquisition and Sales Division, Mail Stop FE–4451, 900 Commerce Road East, New Orleans, Louisiana 70123.

C.32 Disputes

(a) This contract is subject to the Contract Disputes Act of 1978 (41 U.S.C. 601 *et seq.*). If a dispute arises relating to the contract, the purchaser may submit a claim to the Contracting Officer, who shall issue a written decision on the dispute in the manner specified in 48 CFR 1–33.211.

(b) ''Claim'' means:

(1) A written request submitted to the Contracting Officer;

(2) For payment of money, adjustment of contract terms, or other relief;

(3) Which is in dispute or remains unresolved after a reasonable time for its review and disposition by the Government; and

(4) For which a Contracting Officer's decision is demanded.

(c) In the case of dispute requests or amendments to such requests for payment exceeding $50,000, the purchaser shall certify at the time of submission as a claim, as follows:

I certify that the claim is made in good faith, that the supporting data are current, accurate and complete to the best of my knowledge and belief and that the amount requested accurately reflects the contract adjustment for which the purchaser believes the Government is liable.

Purchaser's Name
Signature
Title

(d) The Government shall pay to the purchaser interest on the amount found due to the purchaser on claims submitted under this provision at the rate established by the Department of the Treasury from the date the amount is due until the Government makes payment. The Contract Disputes Act of 1978 and the Prompt Payment Act adopt the interest rate established by the Secretary of the Treasury under the Renegotiation Act as the basis for computing interest on money owed by the Government. This rate is published semi-annually in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(e) The purchaser shall pay to DOE interest on the amount found due to the Government and unpaid on claims submitted under this provision at the rate specified in Provision C.24 from the date the amount is due until the purchaser makes payment.

(f) The decision of the Contracting Officer shall be final and conclusive and shall not be subject to review by any forum, tribunal, or Government agency unless an appeal or action is commenced within the times specified by the Contract Disputes Act of 1978.

(g) The purchaser shall comply with any decision of the Contracting Officer and at the direction of the Contracting Officer shall proceed diligently with performance of this contract pending final resolution of any request for relief, claim, appeal, or action related to this contract.

C.33 Assignment

The purchaser shall not make or attempt to make any assignment of a contract that incorporates these SSPs or any interest therein contrary to the provisions of Federal

law, including the Anti-Assignment Act (41 U.S.C. 15), which provides:

No contract or order, or any interest therein, shall be transferred by the party to whom such contract or order is given to any other party, and any such transfer shall cause the annulment of the contract or order transferred, so far as the United States is concerned. All rights of action, however, for any breach of such contract by the contracting parties, are reserved to the United States.

C.34 Order of Precedence

In the event of an inconsistency between the terms of the various parts of this contract, the inconsistency shall be resolved by giving precedence in the following order:

(a) The NA and written modifications thereto;

(b) The NS;

(c) Those provisions of the SSPs made applicable to the contract by the NS;

(d) Instructions provided in the Crude Oil Sales Offer Program; and

(e) The successful offer.

C.35 Gratuities

(a) The Government, by written notice to the purchaser, may terminate the right of the purchaser to proceed under this contract if it is found, after notice and hearing, by the Secretary of Energy or his duly authorized representative, that gratuities (in the form of entertainment, gifts, or otherwise) were offered by or given by the purchaser, or any agent or representative of the purchaser, to any officer or employee of the Government with a view toward securing a contract or securing favorable treatment with respect to the awarding, amending, or making of any determinations with respect to the performing of such contract; provided, that the existence of the facts upon which the Secretary of Energy or his duly authorized representative makes such findings shall be in issue and may be reviewed in any competent court.

(b) In the event that this contract is terminated as provided in paragraph (a) hereof, the Government shall be entitled (1) to pursue the same remedies against the purchaser as it could pursue in the event of a breach of the contract by purchaser, and (2) as a penalty in addition to any other damages to which it may be entitled by law, to exemplary damages in an amount (as determined by the Secretary of Energy or his duly authorized representative) which shall not be less than three nor more than 10 times the cost incurred by the purchaser in providing any such gratuities to any such officer or employee.

(c) The rights and remedies of the Government provided in this clause shall not be exclusive and are in addition to any other rights and remedies provided by law or under this contract.

EXHIBITS:

A—SPR Crude Oil Comprehensive Analysis
B—SPR Delivery Point Data
C—Offer Standby Letter of Credit
D—Payment and Performance Letter of Credit
E—Strategic Petroleum Reserve Crude Oil Delivery Report—SPRPMO–F–6110.2–14b 1/87 REV. 8/91

EXHIBIT B—SPR DELIVERY POINT DATA

SEAWAY FREEPORT TERMINAL

(Formerly Phillips Terminal)

LOCATION: Brazoria County, Texas (three miles southwest of Freeport, Texas on the Old Brazos River, four miles from the sea buoy)

CRUDE OIL STREAMS: Bryan Mound Sweet and Bryan Mound Sour.

DELIVERY POINTS: Seaway Terminal marine dock facility number 2.

MARINE DOCK FACILITIES AND VESSEL RESTRICTIONS:

TANKSHIP DOCKS: 2 Docks: Nos. 2 and 3.

MAXIMUM LENGTH

OVERALL (LOA): Docks 2 and 3—820 feet (up to 900 feet with pilot approval) during daylight and 615 feet during hours of darkness.

MAXIMUM BEAM: Docks 2 and 3—145 feet.

MAXIMUM DRAFT: Docks 2 and 3—42 feet salt water; subject to change due to weather and silting conditions.

MAXIMUM AIR DRAFT: None.

MAXIMUM DEADWEIGHT TONS (DWT): Dock Nos. 2 and 3 can accommodate up to 120,000 DWT if they meet other port restrictions. Maximum DWT is theoretical berth handling capability; however, purchasers are cautioned that varying harbor and channel physical constraints are the controlling factors as to vessel size, and they are responsible for confirming that proposed vessels can be accommodated.

BARGE LOADING CAPABILITY: None.

OILY WASTE RECEPTION FACILITIES: Facilities are available for oily bilge water and sludge wastes. Purchasers are responsible for making arrangements with the terminal and for bearing costs associated with such arrangements.

CUSTOMARY ANCHORAGE: Freeport Harbor sea-buoy approximately 4.5 miles from the terminal.

SEAWAY TEXAS CITY TERMINAL (Formerly ARCO Texas City)

LOCATION: Docks 11 and 12, Texas City Harbor, Galveston County, Texas.

CRUDE OIL STREAMS: Bryan Mound Sweet and Bryan Mound Sour.

DELIVERY POINTS: Marine Docks (11 and 12) and connections to local commercial pipelines.

MARINE DOCK FACILITIES AND VESSEL RESTRICTIONS:

TANKSHIP DOCKS: 2 Docks: Nos. 11 and 12.

MAXIMUM LENGTH

OVERALL (LOA): 1,020 feet. Maximum bow to manifold centerline distance is 468 feet.

MAXIMUM BEAM: Dock 11—180 feet; Dock 12—220 feet.

MAXIMUM DRAFT: 39.5 feet brackish water; subject to change due to weather and silting conditions.

MAXIMUM AIR DRAFT: None.

MAXIMUM DEADWEIGHT TONS (DWT): 150,000 DWT each. Terminal permission is required for less than 30,000 DWT or greater than 150,000 DWT. Vessels larger than 120,000 DWT are restricted to daylight transit. Purchasers are cautioned that varying harbor and channel physical constraints are the controlling factors as to vessel size, and they are responsible for confirming that proposed vessels can be accommodated.

BARGE LOADING CAPABILITY: None.

OILY WASTE RECEPTION FACILITIES: Facilities are available for oily bilge water and sludge wastes. Purchasers are responsible for making arrangements with the terminal and for bearing all costs associated with such arrangements.

CUSTOMARY ANCHORAGE: Bolivar Roads (breakwater) or Galveston sea-buoy.

SUNOCO LOGISTICS TERMINAL

LOCATION: Nederland, Texas (on the Neches River at Smiths Bluff in southwest Texas, 47.6 nautical miles from the bar).

CRUDE OIL STREAMS: West Hackberry Sweet and West Hackberry Sour.

DELIVERY POINTS: Sun Terminal marine dock facility and Sun Terminal connections to local commercial pipelines.

MARINE DOCK FACILITIES AND VESSEL RESTRICTIONS:

TANKSHIP DOCKS: 5 Docks: Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5.

MAXIMUM LENGTH

OVERALL (LOA): 1000 feet.

MAXIMUM BEAM: 150 feet.

MAXIMUM DRAFT: 40 feet fresh water.

MAXIMUM AIR DRAFT: 136 feet.

MAXIMUM DEADWEIGHT TONS (DWT): Maximum DWT at Dock No. 1 is 85,000 DWT. Dock Nos. 2, 3, 4 and 5 can accommodate up to 150,000 DWT. Vessels larger than 85,000 DWT, 875 feet LOA, or 125 feet beam are restricted to daylight transit. Maximum DWT is theoretical berth handling capability; however, purchasers are cautioned that varying harbor and channel physical constraints are the controlling factors as to vessel size, and they are responsible for confirming that proposed vessels can be accommodated.

BARGE LOADING CAPABILITY: 3 Barge Docks: A, B and C. Each is capable of handling barges up to 25,000 barrels capacity.

OILY WASTE RECEPTION FACILITIES: Facilities are available for oily bilge water and sludge wastes. Purchasers are responsible for making arrangements with the terminal and for bearing costs associated with such arrangements.

CUSTOMARY ANCHORAGE: South of Sabine Bar-Buoy. There is an additional anchorage at the Sabine Bar for vessels with draft of 39 feet of less.

SHELL 22-INCH/DOE LAKE CHARLES PIPELINE CONNECTION

LOCATION: Lake Charles Upper Junction, located in Section 36, Township 10 South, Range 10 West, Calcasieu Parish, (Lake Charles) Louisiana.

CRUDE OIL STREAMS: West Hackberry Sweet and West Hackberry Sour.

DELIVERY POINT: Shell 22-Inch/DOE Lake Charles Pipeline Connection.

MARINE DISTRIBUTION FACILITIES: None.

SHELL SUGARLAND TERMINAL

LOCATION: St. James Parish, Louisiana (30 miles southwest of Baton Rouge on the west bank of the Mississippi River at milemarker 158.3).

CRUDE OIL STREAMS: Bayou Choctaw Sweet and Bayou Choctaw Sour.

DELIVERY POINTS: Sugarland Terminal marine dock facility and LOCAP and Capline Terminals (connections to Capline interstate pipeline system and local commercial pipelines).

MARINE DOCK FACILITIES AND VESSEL RESTRICTIONS:

TANKSHIP DOCKS: 2 Docks: Nos. 1 and 2.

MAXIMUM LENGTH

OVERALL (LOA): 940 feet.

MAXIMUM BEAM: None.

MAXIMUM DRAFT: 45 feet fresh water.

MAXIMUM AIR DRAFT: 153 feet less the river stage.

MAXIMUM DEADWEIGHT TONS (DWT): 100,000 DWT. Maximum DWT is theoretical berth handling capability; however, purchasers are cautioned that varying harbor and channel physical constraints are the controlling factors as to vessel size, and they are responsible for confirming that proposed vessels can be accommodated.

BARGE LOADING CAPABILITY: Dock 1.

OILY WASTE RECEPTION FACILITIES: Facilities are available for oily bilge water and sludge wastes. Purchasers are responsible for making arrangements and for bearing all

costs associated with such arrangements. Terminal can provide suitable contacts.

CUSTOMARY ANCHORAGE: Grandview Reach approximately 11 miles from the terminal.

UNOCAL BEAUMONT TERMINAL

LOCATION: Beaumont Terminal, located downstream south bank of the Neches River, approximately 8 miles SE of Beaumont, Texas.

CRUDE OIL STREAMS: Big Hill Sweet and Big Hill Sour.

DELIVERY POINTS: Unocal Beaumont Terminal No. 2 Crude Dock and connections to local commercial pipelines.

MARINE DOCK FACILITIES AND VESSEL RESTRICTIONS:

TANKSHIP DOCKS: 1 Dock (No. 2).

MAXIMUM LENGTH

OVERALL (LOA): 1,020 feet.

MAXIMUM BEAM: 150 feet.

MAXIMUM DRAFT: 40 feet fresh water.

MAXIMUM AIR DRAFT: 136 feet.

MAXIMUM DEADWEIGHT TONS (DWT): Maximum DWT at Dock No. 2 is 150,000 DWT. Vessels larger than 85,000 DWT, 875 feet LOA, or 125 feet beam are restricted to daylight transit. Maximum DWT is theoretical berth handling capability; however, purchasers are cautioned that varying harbor and channel physical constraints are the controlling factors as to vessel size and they are responsible for confirming that proposed vessels can be accommodated.

BARGE LOADING CAPABILITY: None.

OILY WASTE RECEPTION FACILITIES: Facilities are available for oily bilge water and sludge wastes. Purchasers are responsible for making arrangements with the terminal and for bearing costs associated with such arrangements.

CUSTOMARY ANCHORAGE: South of Sabine Bar-Buoy. There is an additional anchorage at the Sabine Bar for vessels with draft of 39 feet or less.

SHELL 20-INCH PIPELINE (SPL)

LOCATION: Jefferson County, Texas, Seven miles west and one mile north of FM 365 and Old West Port Arthur Road.

CRUDE OIL STREAMS: Big Hill Sweet and Big Hill Sour.

DELIVERY POINT: SPL East Houston Terminal, Exxon Junction (Channelview), Oil Tanking Junction.

MARINE DISTRIBUTION FACILITIES: None.

EXHIBIT C

SAMPLE—OFFER GUARANTEE STANDBY LETTER OF CREDIT

BANK LETTERHEAD

IRREVOCABLE STANDBY LETTER OF CREDIT

Date: _____

To: Acquisition and Sales Division, Mail Stop FE–4451, Strategic Petroleum Reserve, Project Management Office, U.S. Department of Energy, 900 Commerce Road East, New Orleans, LA 70123

AMOUNT OF LETTER OF CREDIT: _____
U.S. $ (_____)
CONTRACTOR: _____
NOTICE OF SALE NO: _____
LETTER OF CREDIT NO: _____
EXPIRATION DATE: _____
AMERICAN BANKERS ASSOCIATION (ABA) NO: _____

Gentlemen:

We hereby establish in the U.S. Department of Energy's favor our irrevocable standby Letter of Credit effective immediately for the account of our customer in response to the above U.S. Department of Energy's Notice of Sale, including any amendments thereto, for the sale of Strategic Petroleum Reserve petroleum. This Letter of Credit expires 60 days from the date set for receipt of offers.

This letter of credit is available by your draft/s at sight, drawn on us and accompanied by a manually signed statement that the signer is an authorized representative of the Department of Energy, and the following statement:

''THIS DRAWING OF U.S. $_____ (_____) AGAINST YOUR LETTER OF CREDIT NUMBERED _____, DATED _____, IS DUE THE U.S. GOVERNMENT BECAUSE OF THE FAILURE OF (*CONTRACTOR*) TO HONOR ITS OFFER TO ENTER INTO A CONTRACT FOR THE PURCHASE OF PETROLEUM FROM THE STRATEGIC PETROLEUM RESERVE, IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE U.S. GOVERNMENT'S NOTICE OF SALE NO. _____, INCLUDING ANY AMENDMENTS THERETO.''

Drafts must be presented for payment on or before the expiration date of this Letter of Credit at our bank. The Government may make multiple drafts against this Letter of Credit.

Upon receipt of the U.S. Department of Energy's demand by hand, mail express delivery, or other means, at our office located at _____, we will honor the demand and make payment, by 3 p.m. Eastern Time of the next business day following receipt of the demand, by either wire transfer

of funds as a deposit to the account of the U.S. Treasury over the Fedwire Deposit System Network, or by electronic funds transfer through the Automated Clearing House Network, using the Federal Remittance Express Program. The information to be included in each transfer will be as provided in the above referenced Notice of Sale.

This Letter of Credit is subject to the Uniform Customs and Practice for Documentary Credits (1993 Revision, International Chamber of Commerce Publication no. 500) and except as may be inconsistent therewith, to the Uniform Commercial Code in effect on the date of issuance of this Letter of Credit in the state in which the issuer's head office within the United States is located.

We hereby agree with the drawers, endorsers and bona fide holders that all drafts drawn under and in compliance with the terms of this Letter of Credit will be duly honored upon presentation and delivery of the above documents for payment at our bank on or before the expiration date.

Address all communications regarding this Letter of Credit to (*name and phone number*).

Very truly yours,

_____

(Authorized Signature)

_____

(Typed Name and Title)

INSTRUCTIONS FOR OFFER LETTER OF CREDIT

1. The depository institution must be an account holder with the Federal Reserve Banking System and a participant (on line) in the Fed's Fedwire Deposit System Network funds transfer system.

2. Letter of Credit must not vary in substance from this attachment. Provide a copy of this attachment to your bank.

3. Banks shall fill in blanks except those in the drawing statement. The drawing statement is in bold print with double underlines for the blanks. Do not fill in double underlined blanks.

4. The information to be included and format to be used either for a wire transfer as a deposit over the Fedwire Deposit System Network or electronic funds transfer through the Automated Clearing House network, using the Federal Remittance Express Program, will be provided in the Contract.

5. Type name and title under authorized signature.

EXHIBIT D

SAMPLE—PAYMENT AND PERFORMANCE LETTER OF CREDIT

BANK LETTERHEAD

IRREVOCABLE STANDBY LETTER OF CREDIT

Date: _____

To: Acquisition and Sales Division, Mail Stop FE–4451, Strategic Petroleum Reserve, Project Management Office, U.S. Department of Energy, 900 Commerce Road East, New Orleans, LA 70123

AMOUNT OF LETTER OF CREDIT U.S. $: __ (_____)

CONTRACTOR: _____

CONTRACT NO: _____

LETTER OF CREDIT NO: _____

EXPIRATION DATE: _____

AMERICAN BANKERS ASSOCIATION (ABA) NO: _____

Gentlemen:

We hereby establish in the U.S. Department of Energy's favor our irrevocable standby Letter of Credit effective immediately for the account of our customer's above contract with the U.S. Department of Energy for the sale of Strategic Petroleum Reserve petroleum.

This letter of credit is available by your draft/s at sight, drawn on us and accompanied by a manually signed statement that the signer is an authorized representative of the Department of Energy, and one or both of the following statements:

a. ''I HEREBY CERTIFY THAT THE UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT HAS DELIVERED CRUDE OIL UNDER THE TERMS OF CONTRACT NUMBER _____ AND THAT (*CONTRACTOR*) HAS NOT PAID UNDER THE TERMS OF THAT CONTRACT, AND AS A RESULT OWES THE U.S. GOVERNMENT U.S. $_____.''

b. ''I HEREBY CERTIFY THAT (*CONTRACTOR*) HAS FAILED TO TAKE DELIVERY OF CRUDE OIL UNDER THE TERMS OF CONTRACT NUMBER _____, AND AS A RESULT OWES THE U.S. GOVERNMENT U.S. $_____.''

Drafts must be presented for payment on or before the expiration date of this Letter of Credit at our bank. The Government may make multiple drafts against this Letter of Credit.

Upon receipt of the U.S. Department of Energy's demand by hand, mail express delivery, or other means, at our office located at _____, we will honor the demand and make payment, by 3 p.m. Eastern Time of the next business day following receipt of the demand, by either wire transfer of funds as a deposit to the account of the U.S. Treasury over the Fedwire Deposit System Network, or by electronic funds transfer through the Automated Clearing House Network, using the Federal Remittance Express Program. The information to be included in each transfer will be as provided in the above referenced contract.

This Letter of Credit is subject to the Uniform Customs and Practice for Documentary

Credits (1993 Revision, International Chamber of Commerce Publication no. 500) and except as may be inconsistent therewith, to the Uniform Commercial Code in effect on the date of issuance of this Letter of Credit in the state in which the issuer's head office within the United States is located.

We hereby agree with the drawers, endorsers and bona fide holders that all drafts drawn under and in compliance with the terms of this Letter of Credit will be duly honored upon presentation and delivery of the above documents for payment at our bank on or before the expiration date.

Address all communications regarding this Letter of Credit to (*name and phone number*).

Very truly yours,

_____

(Authorized Signature)

_____

(Typed Name and Title)

INSTRUCTIONS FOR PAYMENT AND PERFORMANCE

Letter of Credit

1. The depository institution must be an account holder with the Federal Reserve Banking system and a participant (on line) in the Fed's Fedwire Deposit System Network funds transfer system.

2. Letter of Credit must not vary in substance from this attachment. Provide a copy of this attachment to your bank.

3. Banks shall fill in blanks except those in the drawing statements. The drawing statements are in bold print with double underlines for the blanks. Do not fill in double underlined blanks.

4. The information to be included and format to be used either for a wire transfer as a deposit over the Fedwire Deposit System Network or electronic funds transfer through the Automated Clearing House network, using the Federal Remittance Express Program, will be provided in the Contract.

5. Type name and title under authorized signature.

Exhibit E

STRATEGIC PETROLEUM RESERVE CRUDE OIL DELIVERY REPORT

1. SALES CONTRACT NUMBER	2. TERMINAL REPORT NUMBER	3. CARGO NUMBER

4. DATE DELIVERED	5. TRANSPORTATION MODE	6. ACCEPTANCE POINT	7. PRICE DATE
	☐ TANKER ☐ BARGE ☐ PIPELINE	☐ ORIGIN ☐ DESTINATION	

8. SHIPPING SPR SITE/TERMINAL	9. PURCHASER-NAME AND ADDRESS	10. CARRIER

11. CONTRACT LINE ITEM		12. DESCRIPTION OF CRUDE OIL AND GROSS BBLS	13. API GRAVITY	14. TOTAL SULPHUR %	15. DEL'D NET BBLS @ 60°F	16. UNIT PRICE	17. AMOUNT DUE
MLI	DLI						
		18. QUALITY ADJUSTMENT – INCREASE/(DECREASE)					
		18A. NET GRAVITY ADJUSTMENT FROM 18B(5)____.__°					

18B. CALCULATION OF GRAVITY ADJUSTMENT

(1) ADVERTISED API GRAVITY	
(2) DELIVERED API GRAVITY	
(3) VARIANCE—(2) MINUS (1)	
(4) ALLOWABLE VARIANCE	
(5) NET VARIANCE—(3) MINUS (4)	

19. NET AMOUNT DUE

20. THE DELIVERED NET BARRELS, UNIT PRICE, PRICE DATE, QUALITY ADJUSTMENT AND NET AMOUNT DUE HAVE BEEN VERIFIED.

SIGNATURE: _____

ACCOUNTABLE OFFICER

22. REMARKS

21. TIME STATEMENT	DATE	TIME
NOTICE OF READINESS TO LOAD		
VESSEL ARRIVED IN ROADS		
PILOT ON BOARD		
WEIGHED ANCHOR		
FIRST LINE ASHORE		
MOORED ALONGSIDE		
STARTED BALLAST DISCHARGE		
FINISHED BALLAST DISCHARGE		
INSPECTED AND READY TO LOAD		
CARGO HOSES CONNECTED		
COMMENCED LOADING		
STOPPED LOADING		
RESUMED LOADING		
FINISHED LOADING		
CARGO HOSES REMOVED		
VESSEL RELEASED BY INSPECTOR		
COMMENCED BUNKERING		
FINISHED BUNKERING		
VESSEL LEFT BERTH (ACTUAL OR ESTIMATED)		

23. GOVERNMENT INSPECTOR'S CERTIFICATE:

I HEREBY CERTIFY THAT THE (VESSEL CARGO) (PIPELINE SHIPMENT) WAS INSPECTED, DELIVERED AND ACCEPTED AS SHOWN HEREON.

DATE_____ SIGNATURE_____

NAME TYPED/PRINTED

24. RECEIPT IS ACKNOWLEDGED FOR THE QUANTITY AND QUALITY SHOWN HEREON:

DATE RECEIVED:_____

AGENT:_____

BY:_____

NAME TYPED/PRINTED

25. I CERTIFY THAT THE TIME STATEMENT SHOWN HEREON IS CORRECT.

SIGNATURE_____

MASTER OF VESSEL

SPRPMO-F-6110.2-14b 1/87 REV. 8/91

[70 FR 39367, July 7, 2005]

PART 626—PROCEDURES FOR ACQUISITION OF PETROLEUM FOR THE STRATEGIC PETROLEUM RESERVE

Sec.

626.1 Purpose.

626.2 Definitions.
626.3 Applicability.
626.4 General acquisition strategy.
626.5 Acquisition procedures-general.
626.6 Acquiring oil by direct purchase.
626.7 Royalty transfer and exchange.
626.8 Deferrals of contractually scheduled deliveries.

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 6240(c); 42 U.S.C. 7101, *et seq.*

SOURCE: 71 FR 65380, Nov. 8, 2006, unless otherwise noted.

§ 626.1 Purpose.

This part establishes the procedures for acquiring petroleum for, and deferring contractually scheduled deliveries to, the Strategic Petroleum Reserve. The procedures do not represent actual terms and conditions to be contained in the contracts for the acquisition of SPR petroleum.

§ 626.2 Definitions.

Backwardation means a market situation in which prices are progressively lower in succeeding delivery months than in earlier months.

Contango means a market situation in which prices are progressively higher in the succeeding delivery months than in earlier months.

Contract means the agreement under which DOE acquires SPR petroleum, consisting of the solicitation, the contract form signed by both parties, the successful offer, and any subsequent modifications, including those granting requests for deferrals.

Contracting Officer means a person with the authority to enter into, administer, and/or terminate contracts and make related determinations and findings, including entering into sales contracts on behalf of the Government. The term includes certain authorized representatives of the Contracting Officer acting within the limits of their authority as delegated by the Contracting Officer.

DEAR means the Department of Energy Acquisition Regulation.

Deferral means a process whereby petroleum scheduled for delivery to the SPR in a specific contract period is rescheduled for later delivery, outside of that period and encompasses the future delivery of the originally scheduled quantity plus an in-kind premium.

DOE means the Department of Energy.

DOI means the Department of the Interior.

Exchange means a process whereby petroleum owned by or due to the SPR is provided to a person or contractor in return for petroleum of comparable quality plus a premium quantity of petroleum delivered to the SPR in the future, or when SPR petroleum is traded for petroleum of a different quality for operational reasons based on the relative values of the quantities traded.

FAR means the Federal Acquisition Regulation.

Government means the United States Government, and includes DOE as its representative.

International Energy Program means the program established by the Agreement on an International Energy Program, signed by the United States on November 18, 1974, including any subsequent amendments and additions to that Agreement.

OPR means the Office of Petroleum Reserves within the DOE Office of Fossil Energy, whose responsibilities include the operation of the Strategic Petroleum Reserve.

Petroleum means crude oil, residual fuel oil, or any refined product (including any natural gas liquid, and any natural gas liquid product) owned, or contracted for, by DOE and in storage in any permanent SPR facility, or temporarily stored in other storage facilities.

Secretary means the Secretary of Energy.

Strategic Petroleum Reserve or *SPR* means the DOE program established by Title I, Part B, of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6201 *et seq.*

§ 626.3 Applicability.

The procedures in this part apply to the acquisition of petroleum by DOE for the Strategic Petroleum Reserve through direct purchase or transfer of royalty-in-kind oil, as well as to deferrals of contractually scheduled deliveries.

§ 626.4 General acquisition strategy.

(a) *Criteria for commencing acquisition.* To reduce the potential for negative

impacts from market participation, DOE shall review the following factors prior to commencing acquisition of petroleum for the SPR:

(1) The current inventory of the SPR;

(2) The current level of private inventories;

(3) Days of net import protection;

(4) Current price levels for crude oil and related commodities;

(5) The outlook for international and domestic production levels;

(6) Existing or potential disruptions in supply or refining capability;

(7) The level of market volatility;

(8) Futures market price differentials for crude oil and related commodities; and

(9) Any other factor the consideration of which the Secretary deems to be necessary or appropriate.

(b) *Review of rate of acquisition.* DOE shall review the appropriate rate of oil acquisition each time an open market acquisition has been suspended for more than three months, and every six months in the case of ongoing or suspended royalty-in-kind transfers.

(c) *Acquisition through other Federal agencies.* DOE may enter into arrangements with another Federal agency for that agency to acquire oil for the SPR on behalf of DOE.

§ 626.5 Acquisition procedures—general.

(a) *Notice of acquisition.* (1) Except when DOE has determined there is good cause to do otherwise, DOE shall provide advance public notice of its intent to acquire petroleum for the SPR. The notice of acquisition is usually in the form of a solicitation. DOE shall state in the notice of acquisition the general terms and details of DOE's crude oil acquisition and, to the extent feasible, shall inform the public of its overall fill goals, so that they may be factored into market participants' plans and activities.

(2) The notice of acquisition generally states:

(i) The method of acquisition to be employed;

(ii) The time that the solicitations will be open;

(iii) The quantity of oil that is sought;

(iv) The minimum crude oil quality requirements;

(v) The acceptable delivery locations; and

(vi) The necessary instructions for the offer process.

(b) *Method of acquisition.* (1) DOE shall define the method of crude oil acquisition, direct purchase or royalty-in-kind transfer and exchange, in the notice of acquisition.

(2) DOE shall determine the method of crude oil acquisition after taking into account the availability of appropriated funds, current market conditions, the availability of oil from the Department of the Interior, and other considerations DOE deems to be relevant.

(c) *Solicitation.* (1) To secure the economic benefit and security of a diversified base of potential suppliers of petroleum to the SPR, DOE shall maintain a listing, developed through online registration and personal contact, of interested suppliers. Upon the issuance of a solicitation, DOE shall notify potential suppliers via their registered e-mail addresses.

(2) DOE shall make the solicitation publicly available on the Web sites of the DOE Office of Fossil Energy *http://www.fe.doe.gov/programs/reserves* and the OPR *http://www.spr.doe.gov*.

(d) *Timing and duration of solicitation.* (1) DOE shall determine crude oil requirements on nominal six-month cycles, and shall review and update these requirements prior to each solicitation cycle.

(2) DOE may terminate all solicitations and contracts pertaining to the acquisition of crude oil at the convenience of the Government, and in such event shall not be responsible for any costs incurred by suppliers, other than costs for oil delivered to the SPR and for reasonable, customary, and applicable costs incurred by the supplier in the performance of a valid contract for delivery before the effective date of termination of such contract. In no event shall the Government be liable for consequential damages or the contractor's lost profits as a result of such termination.

(e) *Quality.* (1) DOE shall define minimum crude oil quality specifications for the SPR. DOE shall include such

specifications in acquisition solicitations, and shall make them available on the Web sites of the DOE Office of Fossil Energy *http://www.fe.doe.gov/programs/reserves* and the OPR *http://www.spr.doe.gov*.

(2) DOE shall periodically review the quality specifications to ensure, to the greatest extent practicable, the crude oil mix in storage matches the demand of the United States refining system.

(f) *Quantity*. In determining the quantities of oil to be delivered to the SPR, DOE shall:

(1) Take into consideration market conditions and the availability of transportation systems; and

(2) Seek to avoid adversely affecting other market participants or crude oil market fundamentals.

(g) *Offer and evaluation procedures*. (1) Each solicitation shall provide necessary instructions on offer format and submission procedures. The details of the offer, evaluation and award procedures may vary depending on the method of acquisition.

(2) DOE shall use relative crude values and time differentials to the maximum extent practicable to manage acquisition and delivery schedules to reduce acquisition costs.

(3) DOE shall evaluate offers based on prevailing market prices of specific crude oils, and shall award contracts on a competitive basis.

(4) Whether acquisition is by direct purchase or royalty transfer and exchange on a term contract basis, DOE shall use a price index to account for fluctuations in absolute and relative market prices at the time of delivery to reduce market risk to all parties throughout the contract term.

(h) *Scheduling and delivery*. (1) Except as provided in paragraph (h)(4) of this section, DOE shall accept offers for crude oil delivered to specified SPR storage sites via pipeline or as waterborne cargos delivered to the terminals serving those sites.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (h)(4) of this section, DOE shall generally establish schedules that allow for evenly spaced deliveries of economically-sized marine and pipeline shipments within the constraints of SPR site and commercial facilities receipt capabilities.

(3) DOE shall strive to maximize U.S. flag carrier utilization through the terms of its supply contracts.

(4) DOE reserves the right to accept offers for other methods of delivery if, in DOE's sole judgment, market conditions and logistical constraints require such other methods.

§ 626.6 Acquiring oil by direct purchase.

(a) *General*. For the direct purchase of crude oil, DOE shall, through certified contracting officers, conduct crude oil acquisitions in accordance with the FAR and the DEAR.

(b) *Acquisition strategy*. (1) DOE solicitations:

(i) May be either continuously open or fixed for a period of time (usually no longer than 6 months); and

(ii) May provide either for prompt delivery or for delivery at future dates.

(2) DOE may alter the acquisition plan to take advantage of differentials in prices for different qualities of oil, based on a consideration of the availability of storage capacity in the SPR sites, the logistics of changing delivery streams, and the availability of ships, pipelines and terminals to move and receive the oil.

(3) Based on the market analysis described in paragraph (d) of this section, DOE may refuse offers or suspend the acquisition process on the basis of Government estimates that project substantially lower oil prices in the future than those contained in offers. If DOE determines there is a high probability that the cost to the Government can be reduced without significantly affecting national energy security goals, DOE may either contract for delivery at a future date or delay purchases to take advantage of projected future lower prices. Conversely, DOE may increase the rate of purchases if prices fall below recent price trends or futures markets present a significant contango and prices offer the opportunity to reduce the average cost of oil acquisitions in anticipation of higher prices.

(4) Based on the market analysis described in paragraph (d) of this section, DOE may refuse offers, decrease the

rate of purchase, or suspend the acquisition process if DOE determines acquisition will add significant upward pressure to prices either regionally or on a world-wide basis. DOE may consider recent price changes, private inventory levels, oil acquisition by other stockpiling entities, the outlook for world oil production, incipient disruptions of supply or refining capability, logistical problems for moving petroleum products, macroeconomic factors, and any other considerations that may be pertinent to the balance of petroleum supply and demand.

(c) *Fill requirements determination.* DOE shall develop SPR fill requirements for each solicitation based on an assessment of national energy security goals, the availability of storage capacity, and the need for specific grades and quantities of crude oil.

(d) *Market analysis.* (1) DOE shall establish a market value for each crude type to be acquired based on a market analysis at the time of contract award.

(2) In conducting the market analysis, DOE may use prices on futures markets, spot markets, recent price movements, current and projected shipping rates, forecasts by the DOE Energy Information Administration, and any other analytic tools available to DOE to determine the most desirable purchase profile.

(3) A market analysis may also consider recent price changes, private inventory levels, oil acquisition by other stockpiling entities, the outlook for world oil production, incipient disruptions of supply or refining capability, logistical problems for moving petroleum products, macroeconomic factors, and any other considerations that may be pertinent to the balance of petroleum supply and demand.

(e) *Evaluation of offers.* (1) DOE shall evaluate offers using:

(i) The criteria and requirements stated in the solicitation; and

(ii) The market analysis under paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) DOE shall require financial guarantees from contractors, in the form of a letter of credit or equivalent financial assurance.

§ 626.7 Royalty transfer and exchange.

(a) *General.* DOE shall conduct royalty transfers pursuant to an agreement between DOE and DOI for the transfer of royalty oil.

(b) *Acquisition strategy.* (1) DOE and DOI shall select a royalty volume from specified leases for transfer usually over six-month periods.

(2) If logistics and crude oil quality are compatible with SPR receipt capabilities and requirements respectively, DOE may take the royalty oil directly from DOI and place it in SPR storage sites. Otherwise, DOE may competitively solicit suppliers to deliver oil of comparable value to the SPR in exchange for the receipt of royalty-in-kind oil.

(3) If, based on the market analysis described in paragraph (d) of this section, DOE determines there is a high probability that the cost to the Government can be reduced without significantly affecting national energy security goals, DOE may contract for delivery at a future date in expectation of lower prices and a higher quantity of oil in exchange. Conversely, it may schedule deliveries at an earlier date under the contract in anticipation of higher prices at later dates.

(4) Based on the market analysis in paragraph (d) of this section, DOE may, after consultation with DOI, suspend the transfer of royalty oil to DOE if it appears the added demand for oil will add significant upward pressure to prices either regionally or on a worldwide basis.

(c) *Fill requirements determination.* DOE shall develop SPR fill requirements for each solicitation based on an assessment of national energy security goals, the availability of royalty oil and storage capacity, and need for specific grades and quantities of crude oil.

(d) *Market analysis.* (1) DOE may use prices on futures markets, spot markets, recent price movements, current and projected shipping rates, forecasts by the DOE Energy Information Administration, and any other analytic tools to determine the most desirable acquisition profile.

(2) A market analysis may also consider recent price changes, private inventory levels, oil acquisition by other stockpiling entities, the outlook for

world oil production, incipient disruptions of supply or refining capability, logistical problems for moving petroleum products, macroeconomic factors, and any other considerations that may be pertinent to the balance of petroleum supply and demand.

(e) *Evaluation of royalty exchange offers.* (1) DOE shall evaluate offers using:

(i) The criteria and requirements stated in the solicitation; and

(ii) The market analysis under paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) DOE shall require financial guarantees from contractors in the form of a letter of credit or equivalent financial assurance.

§ 626.8 Deferrals of contractually scheduled deliveries.

(a) *General.* (1) DOE prefers to take deliveries of petroleum for the SPR at times scheduled under applicable contracts. However, in the event the market is distorted by disruption to supply or other factors, DOE may defer scheduled deliveries or request or entertain deferral requests from contractors.

(2) A contractor seeking to defer scheduled deliveries of oil to the SPR may submit a deferral request to DOE.

(b) *Deferral criteria.* DOE shall only grant a deferral request for negotiation under paragraph (c) of this section if it determines that DOE can receive a premium for the deferral paid in additional barrels of oil and, based on DOE's deferral analysis, that at least one of the following conditions exists:

(1) DOE can reduce the cost of its oil acquisition per barrel and increase the volume of oil being delivered to the SPR by means of the premium barrels required by the deferral process.

(2) DOE anticipates private inventories are approaching a point where unscheduled outages may occur.

(3) There is evidence that refineries are reducing their run rates for lack of feedstock.

(4) There is an unanticipated disruption to crude oil supply.

(c) *Negotiating terms.* (1) If DOE decides to negotiate a deferral of deliveries, DOE shall estimate the market value of the deferral and establish a strategy for negotiating with suppliers the minimum percentage of the market value to be taken by the Government. During these negotiations, if the deferral request was initiated by DOE, DOE may consider any reasonable, customary, and applicable costs already incurred by the supplier in the performance of a valid contract for delivery. In no event shall such consideration account for any consequential damages or lost profits suffered by the supplier as a result of such deferral.

(2) DOE shall only agree to amend the contract if the negotiation results in an agreement to give the Government a fair and reasonable share of the market value.

PARTS 627–699 [RESERVED]